





**Columbia University**  
**in the City of New York**

THE LIBRARIES

































THE  
HISTORY AND CHRONICLES  
OF  
SCOTLAND.



THE  
HISTORY AND CHRONICLES  
OF  
SCOTLAND:

WRITTEN IN LATIN

BY HECTOR BOECE,

CANON OF ABERDEEN;

AND TRANSLATED

BY JOHN BELLENDEN,

ARCHDEAN OF MORAY, AND CANON OF ROSS.

---

VOLUME II.

---

EDINBURGH:

REPRINTED FOR W. AND C. TAIT.

M.DCCC.XXI.



241.01

B633

v. 2

# The Aucht Buke.

---

## HEIR BEGINNIS THE AUCHT BUKE OF THE CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

### Chap. First.

*How mony Romane provinces fell in pray to sindry pepill ; and how  
sindry realmis began thairthrow.*



UHEN Britane wes tane, in this maner, fra the empire of Romanis, and maid tributar to Scottis and Pichtis ; the Vandalis, Gothis, Hunnis, and Franchemen maid gret slauchter in Spanye, Affrik, Italie, Almanay, and France : throw quhilk apperit the manifest declinatioun of Romane empire in sindry realmes, as the variant chance of fortoun succedis. For the Franchemen, quhais beginning is uncertane, come ouir the river of Rine, and past throw ane gret part of Gallia, quhilk wes, eftir, callit France be thir Franchemen : and eftir that thay had tane Orliance and Paris, thay sat down beside the reveir of Sane, quhare thay chesit Veremond

to be king; and maid the first foundement of the nobil realme of France: throw quhilk it wes commandit, that all the landis lyand betwix the mouth of Rine and the hillis of Pirrony, deviding France fra Spanye, on the ta side, and fra the montanis of Savoy, to the occeane seis, on the tothir side, suld be callit France.

About this same time, Genserik began the realme of Vandalis in Affrik, and wes the first king that rang above the pepill; quhais posterite had na better chance in the end than in the beginning of thair empire: for as thay began with tyranny and slauchter of innocent pepill, siclike thay wer invadit baith with extern weris and civill battall, and, finally, brocht to ane miserabill end. The Visigothis and Astrogothis, ane pepill borne in perdition of Romanis, began to regne, this same time, in Italy and Spanye. And in this time began the Hunnis to regne in Pannonia; and, becaus thay grew under ane blude with the auld inhabitantis of the cuntre, callit Garis, the cuntre was callit Ungaria. Mony uthir infinite cumpanyis of barbar pepill went throw the warld that time, persewand Romanis with all malice: throw quhilk it hapnit that na man nicht travall in thay dayis but extreme dangeir of thair life. For quhen passingeris war inquirit, quhat thay war; gif thay answerit, Thay war freindis of the senat and pepil of Rome; the demandaris said, Thay war ennimes; and, for that caus, thay war spulyeit of thair geir or livis. Siclike, gif thay answerit, Thay war ennimes to Romanis; the demandaris wald allege thaim freindis; and sa thay war spulyeit and slane in the samin maner. Sic thingis maid the Gallis, quhilkis war the auld inhabitantis of France, astonist to intercommon with Romanis and Franchemen.

The Britonis, quhilkis war laitly sittin down in Bertanye, knawing this trubill be the Romane weris, sufferit na uncouth blude to cum within thaim; for thay knew nocht quhay was freindis or fayis.

## Chap. Second.

*How Conanus exhortit the Britonis to recover thair liberte. Of the Message send be Scottis and Pichtis to Britonis; and how the Noblis and Commonis of Britane invadit othir be battall.*



HE nobillis of Britane, brokin with frequent weris, and seing na pepill but trubil, held thaim in quiete certane yeris, paying justly thair tribute to the victorius and confiderat kingis: and sa past x yeris, or evir the Britonis began ony rebelloun aganis Scottis and Pichtis.

In the mene time, rais new trubill in Kent; for Conanus, sonne of Conanus, quhilk was slane afore, as we schew, convenit sindry nobillis of Britane, be secrete messingeris, to ane counsal within ane wod; and said in this maner: “Ye se now, wise freindis, how  
 “our pepill, sumtime sa pissant and vailyeant in deidis of chevalry,  
 “and haldin in reverence to all pepil, is now maid tributar to  
 “Scottis and Pichtis, with infinite calamiteis daily wrocht on us.  
 “Quhat may be, allace! the caus of this affliction? nocht bot our  
 “awin sleuth, be quhilk we have failyeit sa far to ourself, and bro-  
 “kin be the gile of Maximiane, that we, as maist febil creaturis,  
 “hes tane the yok upon our nek. We may sone consider how far  
 “we bene degenerit fra the curage of our nobil eldaris, quhilkis  
 “sumtime dang the Scottis out of Albion. And thought in this last  
 “unhappy battal strikin be us, x yeris ago, aganis Scottis and Pichtis,  
 “we war constranit, for the huge slauchter of oure nobillis, to seik  
 “peace, mair necessar than honest; yit now the tyrane Maximiane is  
 “put down, and our pissance convalescit; for now ar rissin in Britane  
 “mony rank and forcy young men, reddy for al laubour and jeo-  
 “perdes, quhais unbridillit insolence sal be mair noisum to us than  
 “ony cruelte of ennimes, gif we suffer the samin to dul in sleuth:  
 “we have plente of riches and strenth, and na thing laikis bot  
 “curage, baith to vincus our ennimes, and to deliver us of barbar  
 “servitude. Remember, thairfore, vailyeant campionis, the illus-



“ter dedis of your eldaris. Devoid yow of sleuth, and belt yow  
 “with gud hoip, gladnes, and virtew; for sic thingis ar the sover-  
 “est way to bring your materis to gud fine; that ye may resembill  
 “the anciant excellence of your progenitouris in sic wise, that nocht  
 “onely your ennimes, bot al othir pepil, may understand that ye  
 “ar mair gevin to virtew and glore of battall, than to ony feir of  
 “deith.”

The nobillis of Britane, be thir wourdis, war drawin in sindry opinionis. Sum of thaim, with furius vult and continence, desirit nocht bot battal: otheris, mair prudent, dred, gif thay movit weir in this sort, that thair sonnis quhilkis lay in hoistage suld be slane; and wald nocht consent, thairfore, to battall. Finaly, quhen thay had put of the day with mony altercationis, thay severit on ilk side, but ony effect of thair purpos.

Nocht lang efter, the confiderat kingis wer advertist of thir consultationis maid amang the Britonis, and began to punis thair plegis with sindry afflictionis; and maid thair ordinance to invade the Britonis, as brekaris of thair faith and promis. Yit, afore thay rasit thair army, thay send ambassatouris to Britonis, to espy the mindis of thair nobillis and commonis. Thir ambassatouris, at thair cuming in Britane, schew thame send fra the victorius and confiderat kingis, to exhort the Britonis to perseveir in the band afore, be thair faith and promis: and prayit thaim to geif na credit to thaim that persuadit thame, be vane reasonis, to rebellion; in adventure, gif thay sa did, thay laborit mair in thair awin dammage than profit. Attoure, thay brocht certane chargis fra the confiderat kingis to the said Britonis, with certification, gif the samin war nocht obeyit, thay sall be invadit with mair awfull battall than afore. The chargis war: That the Britonis sall hald na publik counsal nor parliament amang thaim, in times cuming, but advise of the confiderat kingis; and thay sal keip the auld conditionis of peace, in all pointis as it was afore contrackit; and thay sal ressave agane thair auld plegis, and deliver doubil als mony new plegis for the samin.

The Britonis, grevit with thir importabill chargis, thocht first, extreme chance of battal erar to be assailyeit, than sa shameful conditionis of peace to be observit; and, thairfore, thay had ruschit

all of ane mind, with maist cruelte, to harnes, war nocht thair noyis and din of armoure wes haistely mesit be the nobillis. The commonis, brokin of thair purpos in this wise, maid ane lamentabil regrait amang thaimself, of the febill cowardy of thair nobillis, throw quhilk thair common weil was put to gret affliction. Nocht lang efter, followit amang thaim ane mair sorrowfull contention than afore; for the commonis, impacient to suffer uncouth servitude, ruschit to harnes, and be plane rebellion thocht to distroy all the nobillis of Britane, becaus thay war degenerit fra the virtew of thair eldaris, and thirllit thaim to the empire of barbar pepill. This pley was finaly discussit be the swerd; for the commonis, rageand in maist fury, faucht aganis the nobillis with mair hatrent than ordour of chevalry, and war discomfist, with incredibill slauchter. This cruelte of commonis was nocht dantit be this bergan; for sone efter, thay ruschit agane till harnes, and faucht aganis thair nobillis, with litil better fortoun than afore: throw quhilk thair pissance was sa brokin, that thay durst not remane in thair awin housis, bot fled with thair wiffis and childrin to the montanis, and maid frequent heirschippis on the noblis. At last, thay war constrainit, on athir sidis, to have peace; for the nobillis nicht not leif but industry of commonis, nor the commonis but the autorite and prudence of nobillis.

Thir civill weris hurt the realme of Britane with na les damage than did the tyranny of Maximiane afore, quhen he maid it nakit baith of weirmen and pepill.

### Chap. Third.

*Of sindry afflictionis and plagis quhilkis fell on the Britonis, for thair iniquite and corruppit life. Of the Deith of King Eugenius.*



OLLOWIT, be thir civil battallis, gret mortalite and hungir, and continewit thre yeris togidder amang the Britonis. Than followit incredibil plente, with mair habundance and fouth than was evir rememberit in ony time afore: throw quhilk rais uncouth lust, the pomp of all mischeif, amang the pepil; every ane of thaim gevin mair til riatus surfet and glutony of thair wambe, than to ony virtew of thair eldaris: throw quhilk thay become of sa vicious and sa corruppit life, that na pepill of gud maneris micht leif amang thaim; and nocht onely, as Sanct Bede testifyis, war the temporall estait drownit in thir vicis, bot the spretuall estait in the samin maner. This terribill pest of glutony hurt the Britonis mair in thair virtew, guddis, and glore of armis, than evir did ony swerd afore. And schortly, as the reward of glutony is, thair come on thaim sa huge mortalite, that the quik was skarsly sufficient to bury the deid. And thought thay war maist cruelly punist in this wise, nothir the feir of deith, nor present calamite, micht draw thaim fra thair inhansit sinne; and thairfore thair vicis, in quhilkis thay war drownit sa miserably, was occasioun that thay war, efter, conquest be the Saxonis, and tint baith thair riall majeste and crown, with sic displeoure, that thay micht nevir recover agane thair anciant honouris.

Quhill Britane was in sic trubill, the Scottis and Pichtis wer in gud peace, gevand thair attendance, efter sa lang weris, to decore thaimself in riches, faith, and honest institutionis; and gaif thankis to God, that causit thaim perseveir in gud felicite, and thair ennimes in sic displeiseir, be just punitioun of thair demeritis, that thay

nicht nothir defend thaimself, nor invade thair nichtbouris; and, thairfore, traistit all the landis betwix Humber and the Franche seis to cum haistely under thair perpetuall dominioun.

King Eugenius, havand na weris nor ennimes, in this maner, brocht his realme to mair honour than ever it had afore; and de-ceissit, the xxx yeir of his regne: quhilk was in the fourt yeir of Leo, Empriour; fra the incarnatioun, cccclxi.

### Chap. Fourth.

*Of King Dongard; and of the secund Orisone maid be Conanus to the Britonis: and how thay send Ambassatouris to Adroenus, King of Bertanye, for support aganis Scottis and Pichtis.*



UGENIUS deceissit on this maner, but ony airis of his body, his brothir Dongard was maid king. This Dongard wes nocht far different fra the maneris of his brothir Eugenius; richt desirus of peace, and nocht detesting weir quhen it was necessar. And becaus he had na occasion of weris, he send prudent men in sindry partis of his realme to minister justice; and reparit all failyeit castellis and strenthis of his realme, quhare thay war ruinus or decayit, that the samin nicht be reddy aganis quhatsumever chance that nicht fall; knowing weill al realmes and pepill sa thirllit to mutabilite of fortoun, that thay nicht nocht perseveir lang time in quiet. Attoure, becaus peace engeneris riches, and riches engeneris insolence, and insolence gevis occasion of battall; he began to have the gret felicite succeeding to his empire in suspition, traisting na thing mair surelie than battall succeeding efter sa lang peace: and, thairfore, he garnist all the munitionis of the bordouris with maist weirly ordinance, in na les diligence than the weir war instantly appering. Sic thingis done, he dotat the kirkis of Palladius, and otheris his colleigis, with mony riche landis and rentis, to the sustentation of devine service; and commandit the kirkis and sanctuaris of his realme to be sicker refuge to all criminal personis, during thair residence in the samin,



nochtwithstanding quhatsumever offence of lese majeste committit be thaim. Attoure, he dotat the kirkis with otheris privilegis, and eikit thaim, be his riall magnificence, with mair ampill boundis than thay war afore.

Quhill sic thingis war done in Scotland, the Britonis lamentit thair sorrowfull chance, seand thaimself tributar to the last pepill of the world, and sa thirllit to servitude, that thay nothir durst nor yit nicht resave strangearis amang thaim, to riche thaim be sic chance of marchandice, as thair eldaris did afore; and above thir calamiteis, thay war punist for thair wickit sinne with swerd, hunger, and deith. Efter mony sorrowfull afflictionis, thay maid generall processionis in al partis of thair realme, and prayit the mercifull God to deliver thaim of al trubil and plaigis falling on thame for thair iniquite, that thay nicht recover thair anciant fame and honouris. Finaly, thir Britonis war sa penitent, that thay maid thair solempne votis, all atanis, to amend thair livis, and desist fra thair sinnis, for delivering of thaim fra injure and servitude of ennimes. Than Conanus, quhilk maid the orison afore to Britonis, traisting to have oportunitie to move the nobillis to recover thair honoure and liberte, said in this maner: “ Had my wordis said  
 “ in your last counsall movit your mindis, wise Britonis, to battall  
 “ contrar your dispitfull ennimes, it had nocht bene necessar, this  
 “ day, to mak this orison; for ye nicht nocht onely have doun  
 “ your ennimes out of al boundis of your realm, bot als nicht have  
 “ had baith youre realme extendit to the auld marchis, and your  
 “ pepill dwelling under native Kingis of Britane, but ony injuris of  
 “ ennimes. Now, ye ar brokin be swerd, hunger, and pest, with  
 “ mony othir calamiteis; and hes now gud experience quhat mis-  
 “ cheif, vengeance, and sorrow fallis to mortal pepil be corruptit  
 “ lust, nocht havand God nor his institutionis in reverence. Your  
 “ pissance, in times bygane, was mair ampill and strang than now:  
 “ howbeit, youre mindis war nocht gevin than, as the deid schew,  
 “ to regard quhat precious treasure is liberte, nor yit quhat honoure  
 “ was to recover youre realme: bot now, be advers fortoun, ye be  
 “ mair prudent, and hes recoverit your curage to attempt sic thingis  
 “ as bene maist expedient for your common weill; for now the de-  
 “ sire of your anciant honouris and liberte enforcis you to assaile,

“ for your commoun weill, the chance of fortoun. And will we de-  
 “ geistly ponder this mater, we sall knaw oure ennimes inressing  
 “ awfull, and ilk day mair repugnant to our weil. I se, thairfore,  
 “ na thing that may seme us les, than to ourpas our dayis in mise-  
 “ rabill sleuth, of quhilk the end is nocht bot schame. And sen  
 “ we, but reason, ar gevin to riatus and vicius leving, be quhilk al  
 “ vengeance sproutes in displesour of man; lat us returne to God,  
 “ the fontane of mercy and grace, and pray him to put ane end to  
 “ our affliction: for as be his wraith all realmes failyeis, sa be his  
 “ favour and mercy all pepil convalescis, quhen thay ar penitent.  
 “ And sen we have sufferit gret punitioun, justlie deservit for our  
 “ iniquite, lat us have sicker confidence in God to pardoun our of-  
 “ fencis be his mercy, changeand our drery life in better fortoun.  
 “ The time sall wirk all thingis weil gif we meis the ire of God;  
 “ for he repellis nane that seikis to him. Quhat is he that evir suf-  
 “ ferit ony adversite of forton, fechtand in just battall, bot gif it  
 “ cum throw his folie? Thairfore, gif we be worthy to be callit  
 “ the posterite of thay vailyeant campionis quhilkis vincust sa oft  
 “ the Scottis and Pichtis, lat us assailye how we may best recover  
 “ our landis, and revenge the crueltis done sa mony yeris to us,  
 “ with sicker confidence of victory; sen fortoun is changit be oure  
 “ curage, and oure ennimes dullit be lang sleuth; and maist of  
 “ all, that we ar to fecht, in just battall, aganis oure perverst en-  
 “ nimes.”

This orison of Conanus movit sa the pepil, that thay had run  
 haistely to harnes, wer nocht sindry prudent men schew, be evident  
 signes, thay war nocht of sic pissance for the time, that thay may  
 withstand thair ennimes, without thay had support of othir cuntreis.  
 Thus was it concludit to send ambassatouris to Androene, King of  
 Bertanye, quhilk was bot fourt persoun fra Conane, the first king  
 of the blude; to schaw him the intollerabil injuris done to thaim be  
 Scottis and Pichtis, and to desire support aganis thaim, to recover  
 thair landis. Nocht lang efter, Conanus, and Guitelline, Bischop  
 of London, wer send, as ambassatouris, to Androene, King of Ber-  
 tanye, for support of Britonis aganis the confiderat pepil.

nochtwithstanding quhatsumever offence of lese majeste committit be thaim. Attoure, he dotat the kirkis with otheris privilegis, and eikit thaim, be his riall magnificence, with mair ampill boundis than thay war afore.

Quhill sic thingis war done in Scotland, the Britonis lamentit thair sorrowfull chance, seand thaimself tributar to the last pepill of the warld, and sa thirllit to servitude, that thay nothir durst nor yit nicht resave strangearis amang thaim, to riche thaim be sic chance of marchandice, as thair eldaris did afore; and above thir calamiteis, thay war punist for thair wickit sinne with swerd, hunger, and deith. Efter mony sorrowfull afflictionis, thay maid generall processionis in al partis of thair realme, and prayit the mercifull God to deliver thaim of al trubil and plaigis falling on thame for thair iniquite, that thay nicht recover thair anciant fame and honouris. Finaly, thir Britonis war sa penitent, that thay maid thair solempne votis, all atanis, to amend thair livis, and desist fra thair sinnis, for delivering of thaim fra injure and servitude of ennimes. Than Conanus, quhilk maid the orison afore to Britonis, traisting to have oportunitie to move the nobillis to recover thair honoure and liberte, said in this maner: “ Had my wordis said  
 “ in your last counsall movit your mindis, wise Britonis, to battall  
 “ contrar your dispitfull ennimes, it had nocht bene necessar, this  
 “ day, to mak this orison; for ye nicht nocht onely have dounge  
 “ your ennimes out of al boundis of your realm, bot als nicht have  
 “ had baith youre realme extendit to the auld marchis, and your  
 “ pepill dwelling under native Kingis of Britane, but ony injuris of  
 “ ennimes. Now, ye ar brokin be swerd, hunger, and pest, with  
 “ mony othir calamiteis; and hes now gud experience quhat mis-  
 “ cheif, vengeance, and sorrow fallis to mortal pepil be corruppit  
 “ lust, nocht havand God nor his institutionis in reverence. Your  
 “ pissance, in times bygane, was mair ampill and strang than now:  
 “ howbeit, youre mindis war nocht gevin than, as the deid schew,  
 “ to regard quhat precius treasure is liberte, nor yit quhat honoure  
 “ was to recover youre realme: bot now, be advers fortun, ye be  
 “ mair prudent, and hes recoverit your curage to attempt sic thingis  
 “ as bene maist expedient for your common weill; for now the de-  
 “ sire of your anciant honouris and liberte enforcis you to assailye,



“ for your commoun weil, the chance of fortoun. And will we de-  
 “ geistly ponder this mater, we sall knaw oure ennimes incressing  
 “ awfull, and ilk day mair repugnant to our weil. I se, thairfore,  
 “ na thing that may seme us les, than to ouirpas our dayis in mise-  
 “ rabill sleuth, of quhilk the end is nocht bot schame. And sen  
 “ we, but reason, ar gevin to riatus and vicius leving, be quhilk al  
 “ vengeance sproutes in displesour of man; lat us returne to God,  
 “ the fontane of mercy and grace, and pray him to put ane end to  
 “ our affliction: for as be his wraith all realmes failyeis, sa be his  
 “ favour and mercy all pepil convalescis, quhen thay ar penitent.  
 “ And sen we have sufferit gret punitioun, justlie deservit for our  
 “ iniquite, lat us have sicker confidence in God to pardoun our of-  
 “ fencis be his mercy, changeand our drery life in better fortoun.  
 “ The time sall wirk all thingis weil gif we meis the ire of God;  
 “ for he repellis nane that seikis to him. Quhat is he that evir suf-  
 “ ferit ony adversite of forton, fechtand in just battall, bot gif it  
 “ cum throw his folie? Thairfore, gif we be worthy to be callit  
 “ the posterite of thay vailyeant campionis quhilkis vincust sa oft  
 “ the Scottis and Pichtis, lat us assailye how we may best recover  
 “ our landis, and revenge the cruelteis done sa mony yeris to us,  
 “ with sicker confidence of victory; sen fortoun is changit be oure  
 “ curage, and oure ennimes dullit be lang sleuth; and maist of  
 “ all, that we ar to fecht, in just battall, aganis oure perverst en-  
 “ nimes.”

This orison of Conanus movit sa the pepil, that thay had run  
 haistely to harnes, wer nocht sindry prudent men schew, be evident  
 signes, thay war nocht of sic pissance for the time, that thay may  
 withstand thair ennimes, without thay had support of othir cuntreis.  
 Thus was it concludit to send ambassatouris to Androene, King of  
 Bertanye, quhilk was bot fourt persoun fra Conane, the first king  
 of the blude; to schaw him the intollerabil injuris done to thaim be  
 Scottis and Pichtis, and to desire support aganis thaim, to recover  
 thair landis. Nocht lang efter, Conanus, and Guitelline, Bischop  
 of London, wer send, as ambassatouris, to Androene, King of Ber-  
 tanye, for support of Britonis aganis the confiderat pepil.



“compassioun on this sorrowfull chance falling to us thy progeni-  
 “touris, quhilkis ar put to sic punitioun, that we may make na de-  
 “fence aganis oure undantit fais, les than thow support us with thir  
 “thy vailyeant pepill: quhilkis beand grantit, we sal deliver us,  
 “schortly, of all dishonour falling to us, thir sindry yeris, be our  
 “awin defalt; for nane is bot thow, that dar oppone thaim aganis  
 “the cruelteis of Scottis and Pichtis. Understand, heirfore, thow  
 “sall nocht defend uncouth housis, bot onely the felicite of thy  
 “awin realme, quhais crown is native to the: for thought the em-  
 “pire of Britonis was sumtime devidit in two realmes, Britane and  
 “Bertanye, now remanis nane on live sa neir of blude as thow, to  
 “succede to thaim baith. Contempne nocht this occasion, sa ple-  
 “santly offerit to the: support this mater, for it pertenis na les to  
 “thyself, than to us. Thow may regne and have empire of baith  
 “the realmes, with gud felicite.”

King Androene answerit, That he was na les sorrowful for the  
 calamiteis falling to the Britonis than to himself: nochtheles, the  
 chance of the warld is sa, that mortall pepill ar oftymes dejeckit fra  
 hie felicite in supreme misery, and fra supreme miserie exaltit agane  
 in maist prosperite; for Nature hes subdewit men to sic lawis, that  
 thair estait is nocht but mortal, and sumtime hes experience of gud  
 fortoun, sumtime of evill: and forthir, he thocht the Britonis war  
 worthy to be lovit, becaus thay had na les curage in thair adversite,  
 than fortoun was respondent to thair desiris. As to his cumming in  
 Britane, he schew him sa agit, that he micht nocht sustene the  
 charge of weris: nochtheles, he suld send his sonne Constantine,  
 ane young and vailyeant prince, with all the power that he micht  
 provide, in Britane, to support thaim aganis the Scottis and Pichtis.  
 And quhen he had promittit this support, he causit Bischop Gwi-  
 telline to pas to the town of Redone, to mak his residence, quhill  
 the army wer reddy to pas with him. Incontinent, King Andro-  
 ene commandit all the schippis of his land to cum, at ane prefixit  
 day, in the port of Sanct Maclovius, with thair patronis and mari-  
 neris, in thair best avise.

Als sone as all thingis wer dewlie providit, Constantine pullit up  
 salis: and finalie arrivit in Britane, quhair he wes ressavit with in-  
 credible triumphe and joy; for the pepill traistit, be his gret man-

heid and prudence, to recover thair realme and liberte. Nocht lang eftir, ane counsell wes maid be the nobillis of Britane; in the quhilk Constantine wes maid king, and sworn to fecht, for the common weil of his realme, to the deith.

### Chap. Sixth.

*How Dongard, King of Scottis, come with gret power aganis Constantine, King of Britonis. Of his Orison to his army. How he was slane, and the Britonis discomfist.*



ONSTANTINE, King of Britonis, sone eftir his coronatioun, commandit, be generall edict, all fensabil personis to convene, the XL day eftir, at Humber, providit in thair best avise, to obey the command of thair capitane. The pepill had sic ardent desire to recover thair liberte, that few wes absent at the prefixit day; al inflammit atanis with sic curage, strenth, and pissance, that thay semit alluterly to distroy the Scottis.

Als sone as King Dongard wes advertist of this rebelloun of Britonis, he commandit all thair pledgis to be slane; and with maist deligence assemblit ane army out of all boundis under his empire, and come to York: quhair he, with spreit na thing affrayit, abaid the cuming of Britonis. On the morrow, knowing be his spyis that his ennimes wer within foure milis, he rasit his tentis, and come haistelie in his ennimes sicht, quhilkis wer lyand nocht far fra the montanis of Humber. On the nixt morrow, Dongard went to ane hie mote, and said to his armie as followis: “ It suld be na admiration to yow, gud companyeonis, thought Britonis have left the feildis quhair thay suld have fouchtin, and fled to the montanis of Humber; for thay bene of sa febill ingine and nature, that howbeit thay mak gret bost and mannassing, as thay wer maist vailyeant aganis thair ennimes, yit thair spreit and curage sone dekeyis, quhen thay se thair ennimes in sicht, that dantit thaim afore. Now ye have experience, how facill the Britonis bene to

“ move new trubill, so full of windis and vane behechtis; and now  
“ ye know how soft thay ar to execute thair interpris. Thay  
“ come on us, this last day, with schinand armour and wappinnis,  
“ desiring battall, as thay wer haistelic to invaid us; cryand, with  
“ frequent vocis, Quhen sall oure ennimes cum? quhare ar thay  
“ fled now? quhare ar thay hid? Bot now this ardent desire of  
“ battall is foryet; for thay ar fled to the montanis, discomfist be  
“ our onlie sicht. Nochtheles, gif thay retourn to gif yow battal,  
“ traist nocht bot sicker victorie; for ye ar to fecht aganis fals and  
“ treasonabil pepil, brekaris of thair faith and band: and thought  
“ thair pissance be sum part ekit now, yit thair curage is na mair  
“ ereckit than afore. Beleif ye that Constantine, quhilk is brocht  
“ out of ane uncouth realme, and now maid King of Britonis, may  
“ quickin the curage or spreit of thaim that ar gevin onely to bor-  
“ dellis, sensualiteis, or surfet nurising of thair wambe, and accus-  
“ tomat, afore the juning of battallis, to fle: or beleif ye that thay  
“ may resist yow, quhom thay have found sa oft victorious. Traist  
“ fermely, gud companyeonis, the houndis ar nocht sa dreidfull to  
“ the haris, nor the wolffis to the schip, as your visage is to thaim.  
“ Be nocht abasit for thir arrowis, dartis, ganyeis, and othir muni-  
“ tionis that ye se in thair army; becaus the samin may nocht be  
“ usit but strenth of body and craft of ingine, of quhilk is nocht  
“ amang our fayis. And sen our ennimes bene febil and effeminat  
“ personis, sic ordinance sal be mair impediment to thaim than  
“ proffit quhen thay fle, les than the same be haistely cassin fra  
“ thaim. Nochtheles, I beseik yow, haif na les sicht to all materis  
“ pertenand to your ennimes than to yourself; and gif ye intend to  
“ fecht, pas nocht fra discipline of chevalry. Gif ye happin to fol-  
“ low on the chace of ennimes, bewar that ye follow in array and  
“ ordoure; in adventure, gif ye stragill fra your fallowis, ye fall in  
“ pray to your vincust ennimes, to our gret dishonour and schame.  
“ Pas forthwart, lusty gallandis, and assailye gif Britonis can de-  
“ cide the richt of battall be the swerd. Pas forthwart, my trew  
“ knichtis, in quhome dekeyit never manheid, wisdome, nor pis-  
“ sance; and know well, I am he that sal condingly reward nobill  
“ and vailyeant men with maist riches, and punis febill cowartis  
“ with torment and schame.”

Skarsly was this orison endit, quhen the Britonis war sene descend in arrayit battall to the planis. Than Dongard, with gret curage and spreit, arrayit his army, and commandit na prisoneris nor spulyeis to be tane, quhill the feild war clêrely discomfist; and maist of all desirit, that na gentillman suffer himself to be tane cowardly as prisoneir. Incontinent, baith the armyis junit, with huge noyis and clamoure. The confiderat pepil assailyeit thair ennimes in sic cruelte, that thay put baith the wingis to flicht; bot the middilward maid resistance, quhare King Constantine faucht maist vailyeantlie, and prolongit battall. Than King Dongard ernstly beheld in every part quhare King Constantine faucht; and finalie, was enkendlit, be hie curage, to do sum notabill vassalage, and richt desirus to sla King Constantine: and in this fury, accompanyit with ane few nowmer of chosin men, he ruschit, fersly, amang the thickest preis of Britonis; quhare he, fechtand with na les manheid than cruelte to the deith, for falt of support, was borne to the ground with dint of speris, and slane, becaus he wald nocht be tane. Mony of the Scottis, astonist be suddane slauchter of the king, tuke the flicht; otheris, not affrayit, bot mair feirs and rasit to revenge his slauchter, perseverit in continewall battall to the deith; and the Pichtis, on the same maner, faucht with gret manheid and curage to the end of this battall: and yit the victory was uncertane quhill midday, and than the Britonis wer discomfist and put abak.

In this unhappy battall wer slane of Britonis xvi.m., and of Scottis and Pichtis xiv.m. King Dongard wes slane, the fift yeir of his regnè; in the viii yeir of Leo, Emprioure; fra the incarnation, cccclxv yeris.



## Chap. Seventh.

*How Constantine the First, and thrid brothir to Eugenius, was maid King of Scottis. Of his unhappy life and tyranny; and how Constantine, King of Britonis, was slane be gile of Pichtis.*



HE Scottis and Pichtis wer sa brokin be this sorrowfull victorie, that thay micht nocht follow with lang chace on the Britonis; and returnit hame with the body of King Dongard, and buryit it, with funerall triumphe, in Colmekill.

Sone eftir, ane convention wes maid, and Constantine, brodir to Dongard, maid king; for the sonnis of Dongard wer of so tender age, that thay micht nocht immediatlie succeid to the crown. This Constantine wes richt discrepant fra the maneris and virtew of his brodir; for he wes borne more to sensual pleseir than to ony governance of ane realm: for he wes ane ravisar of virginis, fulyear of matronis, gret nurisar and favorar of detractouris. He wes ay trist and sorowfull amang his nobillis, and come bot sendill in thair companyis. Be contrar, he rejosit and schew him triumphant prince amang fidlaris, sangstaris, and siclik men of vile reputation. And thought he wes lik Constantine, King of Britonis, in name, yit he was far discordant fra him in maneris: for Constantine, King of Britonis, na les religious than civill in his governance, recoverit the realme of Britonis, and decorit it with notable maneris; bot Constantine, King of Scottis, wes sa degenerat and ignobill, that he did nothing semand to ane king. Quhen his nobillis desirit him to revenge the slauchter of King Dongard his brodir, he said, He knew weill eneuch quhat wes to be done concerning publik administratioun, and nedit na ingine bot his awin to beir all chargis of his realme. Finaly, his governance maid his folie patent: for he gave peace to Britonis with small tretie; and, but ony consultatioun of his nobillis, he remittit nocht onlie the tribute of Britonis, bot ran-



derit to thaim sindry strenthis of the bordouris; and wes to do sindry thingis more importable to thair commoun weill, wer nocht the nobillis withstude his insolence in time. At last, quhen the mater wes brocht to sic point, that nocht apperit bot rebelloun aganis him in al partis, Dougall of Galloway, ane man of gret auctorite, schew be mony reasonis, quhat infinite trubill wer appering to the cuntre, gif it wer invadit with domistik and civill weris: and than, specialle, sen the Britonis hes laitlie recoverit thair realme, and rising, ilk day, with more pissance; having ane yong prince richt fers and desirus of glore, and reddy, quhen he saw occasion, to invaid the Scottis and Pichtis with battall. Atour, the Britonis kepit, nevir, gud peace to thair nichtbouris, bot quhen thay dred thaim maist. Als, the Pichtis wer ane pepill full of slichtis, inclinand ay quhair thay belevit victorie to follow. Bot Constantine, King of Scottis, wes bot ane effeminat glutoun, and luffit na man of virtew nor honeste, bot onlie thaim that wer gevin to thair sensualite and lust of wambe. Thus apperit he nothir abill for privat nor publik administratioun: and, thairfore, the ire and seditioun that wes amang thaim wes to be first mesit, and abid ane ganand time; that every thing may be done with more wisdom. The pepill obeyit to thir persuasionis of Dougall: howbeit, mony of thame wer variant in thair opinioun, richt commovit that the realme wes sa mony yeris misgidit be this wickit tyrane.

The Pichtis, seing the King of Scottis drownit in vice on this maner, but ony signe of virtew appering, dred that the Britonis suld incres, thairthrow, the more fers and insolent, and invaid thaim, to revenge auld injuris: and, thairfore, the said Pichtis tuke purpos to do the thing be slicht, that thay nicht nocht do be force; and instruckit certane men quietlie to sla Constantine, King of Britonis. The men that wer subornat to this effect come in Britane, and wer haldin as native pepill thair of. At last, thay come in the kingis court; quhair thay, be vane assentationis and subtell behavingis, gat sic familiarite with the king, that thay purchest credence in sindry his maist grave materis. At last, watand thair time, quhen the king wes at quiet, thay come to him, as sum hie besines wer to be done; and slew him, suspekand na thing les than thair

treason. The kingis gard, herand the rummissing and granis of ane deand man, ruschit haistely in the chalmer, quhair thay fand the king slane, and bullerand in his blude. Nochtwithstanding, with brim furie, thay followit sa fast on thir Pichtis, that thay wer baith taikin, and cruelly put to deid.

This slauchter of Constantine, King of Britonis, happinnit in the xv yeir of Constantine, King of Scottis: quhilk had litil better fortoun than had this othir Constantine, King of Britonis; for he wes slane be ane gentilman of the Ilis, for the defowling of his douchter, eftir that he had governit Scotland, unworthely, xvii yeris.

### Chap. Eighth.

*Of King Congallus, and of his administration. How the monk Constantius was maid King of Britonis. How Vortigern, be slauchter of the said Constantius, take the crown of Britane.*



ONSTANTINE, King of Scottis, slane in this maner, his nepote Congallus, sonne to King Dongard, wes maid king. This Congallus wes a man of hie ingine, als abill to weir as peace: yit, in the beginning of his regne, he schew him gevin halelie to peace; and maid him to repare all thingis done be negligence of Constantine, his eme. Sum gaif him counsal to revenge the slauchter of his fadir, Dongard: nocht-theles, becaus he wes bot ane young prince, nocht stabillit in his empire, he supersedit sic hie materis, quhill ane time more ganand occurrit. And finalie, he did sic justice throw al partis of his realme, that the same wes brocht to gud tranquillite and peace.

Quhill Congallus wes gevin to werkis of justice on this wise, Vortigern, ane man of gret slicht and autorite amang the Britonis, tuk purpos to conques the crown; and to bring his purpos to effect, he take Constantius, sonne to Constantine, King of Britonis, afore rehersit, out of the religion quhare he was profest monk, eftir that his fader fand him unabill to regne; and, be assistance of sindry

gret princis of Britane, this Vortigern maid this Constantius King of Britane. This slicht procedit be avarice of Vortigern; traisting, becaus this monk had na experience of the warld, that he micht have the governance of the realme, and conquies gret riches under his empire; and efter that he was enrichit in guddis, to distroy the said Constantius, and usurpe the crown of Britane. Yit, to covir his slicht, as he war gevin allutterly for the common weill, he maid peace with Scottis and Pichtis, and causit ane hundreth Scottis and Pichtis to come to London, to remane as ane gard about this Constantius, and to have his body in keping. At last, quhen Vortigern had gaderit gret treasouris under the empire of Constantius, he thoct the time convenient to tak the crown, and quietly seducit ane certane of Scottis and Pichtis, with gret soumes of money, to sla the king; and promittit, gif thay brocht this mater to effect, to reward thaim condingly for thair laubouris. The Scottis and Pichtis, blindit be avarice, and gevand our haistely credence, slew, finaly, this King Constantius. Als sone as Vortigern knew the king slane, for he was not far of, abiding the end of that mater, he ruschit fersly in the secret chalmer quhare the king was lyand deid, baithand in his blude; and incontinent tuk the slayaris of the king, and slew thaim haistely, that thay suld nocht schaw that he perswadit thaim to sla the king: and incontinent he began to lament the kingis slauchter, as na thing war sa displesand to him as the kingis deith; for be his deith, mony infinit harmis sall haistely follow, in damage of the commoun weill. Incontinent, this Vortigern socht the residew of Scottis and Pichtis out of all partis of the town, howbeit thay war innocent of his treason, and gart have thaim to strang presoun; syne maid him to burie the king. On the morow, he come with his freindis and favouraris, quhilkis war corruppit with his money, to the stretis quhare maist confluence of pepill was, and complanit the treasoun of Scottis and Pichtis, quhilkis slew the king, that was committit in thair keping, and maid the realm, sa far as was in thame, but ane heid, to that purpos, as apperit, othir to devide the Britonis amang thaimself, or ellis to make al the landis under thair empire, for falt of ane king, patent to injure of ennimes. Heirfore, gif this odious cruelte war nocht condinglie

punist, mair displesouris sall follow haistely, gif mair may be, in eversion of thair commoun weill. Necessar war, thairfore, to punis all the remanent Scottis and Pichtis; for thay war na les criminall than the principall personis that was tane be him with hait blud, and put to deith. Quhen he had movit the pepil, in maist cruelte, aganis thir innocent men, he tuk thaim out of prison quhare thay war, and put thaim all to deith.

This punitioun maid on the Scottis and Pichtis causit Vortigern to be haldin, amang the ignorant pepil, as fader and defendoure of thair realme: nochtheles, to cover this dissait, he desiret thaim to have respect to thair commoun weill, and to suffer nocht Ambrosius, the sonne of King Constantine, to regne; saying, Thocht he was richtuous aire to the crown of Britane, yit he was of sa febill and tender age, that infinite harmis sall follow to the realme, in the empire of his nonage. At last, quhen thay had concludit that Ambrose sall not be maid king, Vortigern demandit thame, quhom thay wald make king; and incontinent, all the pepill, with huge noyis and clamour, declarit him king.

Als sone as Vortigern was maid king on this wise, he stuffit al the castellis and strenthis of London with gret munitionis and weir-men; syne commandit ane certane of his familiaris and freindis, quhome he promovit afore to riches and honouris, to wait on him. And incontinent, he set him to sla all the freindis and linage of King Constantine: sum of thaim, be vane causis, banist; of otheris, confiscat thair guddis, and punist thair bodyis to the deith.



## Chap. Ninth.

*How Ambrose and Uter, the sonnys of King Constantine, fled in Bertanye. How Gwitell, Prince of Walis, was slane be the Scottis, and his army discomfist.*



Hrow feir of thir cruelteis, Ambrose and Uter, sonnes to King Constantine, come out of Walis, quhare thay war kepit under wise preceptouris, and fled in Bertanye.

In the mene time, the Scottis and Pichtis war advertist of the shamefull murdir of thair freindis, maid at London be treason of King Vortigern. Impacient, thairfore, to suffer this injure, thay enterit, haistely, with ane army in the Britonis landis, and invadit the samin with gret cruelte of fire and swerde. The Britonis, opprest with thir afflictionis, disparit of support, and nocht of power to resist, left all thingis behind thaim that micht nocht be tursit, and fled within the cuntre.

Vortigern, herand thir cruelteis done to his pepil, and knawing the gret hatrent that the nobillis of Britonis bure aganis him for his persute aganis the sonnys of Constantine, began, as the nature of ane tyrane is, to have ilk man in dredour: and, becaus he durst nocht jeoperde himself in battall, he send Gwitell, Prince of Walis, with ane army, to revenge the injuris done be Scottis and Pichtis. Gwitell, dreidand the rewine of Britane, gif the Scottis and Pichtis war nocht haistely repressit, went forthwart with his army, and was convoyit in the samin landis of Britane quhare the Scottis and Pichtis war gaderit but array, invading the cuntre with sindry incursionis. Incontinent, with displayit baner, he set sa haistely on thaim, that thay war put to flicht, and v.c of thaim tane, quhame he gart justefy, as thevis. The confiderat kingis, movit with thir injuris, come with ane new army, and maid the Britonis richt astonist: nochtheles, Gwitel exhortit thaim to battal, saying,

The Scottis and Pichtis war ane pepill mair accustomat with reiffis and slauchter of wiffis and barnis, than ony marcial dedis; and gettis na victory, bot only of febil and miserabill creatouris. The Britonis, inflammit to gret curage be thir wordis, went forthwart, and set down thair tentis beside the tentis of thair ennimes. Followit, than, frequent skarmissing, and sumtimes singular battallis betwix vailyeant men. At last, baith the armyis, impatient to sustene athir injuris, ruschit fersly togidder, and faucht lang time with uncertane victory; quhil at last the middilward, quhare Congallus faucht, was neir discomfist. Than Gallanus, King of Pichtis, for he faucht in the richt wing, seand his confiderat brothir in sic dan-geir, come with ane cumpany of chosin men, and maid the Britonis that faucht fornens Congallus richt astonist. The Scottis, thought thay war neir vincust afore, fra thay war supportit on this maner, ruschit with new curage on thair ennimes, and finalie put baith the wingis of Britonis to flicht. Als sone as the Pichtis saw the victory incline to Scottis, thay tuke, haistely, the tentis of Britonis, that the same suld be na rescours to thaim efter. Thus war the Britonis slane, but ony refuge, in all partis quhare thay fled, and war finalie randerit to Scottis and Pichtis. The confiderat kingis gave all the spulyeis and presoneris conquest at this time frelie amang thair army, becaus thay faucht sa vailyeantlie that day. Sic thingis done, the confiderat kingis went forthwart with thair victorious army, to take the remanent strenthis on the bordouris.

In this battal war slane twenty thousand Britonis, with Gwitell, Prince of Walis, and mony othir nobill men of Britane; bot of Scottis and Pichtis war skarsly iv thousand slane.

## Chap. Tenth.

*How Vortigern send ambassatouris in Almany, to fe wageouris in his support. How Hengest and Orsus come in Britane with x thousand Saxonis. And of their crueltis and vassalage done aganis Pichtis.*



HE Britonis, efter this present discomfitour, convent quhare Vortigern wes at London, to advise be quhat craft and ingine this dangerus battal was to be led aganis thair cruel ennimes. Efter lang consultation, becaus na sicker way couth be devisit to deliver the pepil fra extreme dangeir appering, King Vortigern, nakit of counsall, and havand sa mony scharp adversaris, baith at hame and on feild, tuk purpos to depart out of Britane in sum uncouth realme. Nochthel, his freindis thocht unworthy that he suld pas fra hie and soverane dignite, havand as yit na experience of adversite, to be ane mirroure of derision to his ennimes. Best was, thairfore, as thay allegit, to assailye the uter fine of his materis; and mair honest to him to be vincust in his just defence, than to be victorius in his wrangus action. And thought he was vincust be one battall, yit na disperatioun suld follow: for thair was riches and gold sufficient in Britane, nocht only to dant thair ennimes be chance of battall, bot als to ding thaim out of Albion. Quhare nicht thair be sa plesand, or sa commodius sicht for thair common weil, as to se the cruel Saxonis, Scottis, and Pichtis, fechtand and distroyand othir, for the liberte allanerly of Britane: for be this, and be nane othir way, nicht the cruelte of thair ennimes be best dantit. Vortigern apprisit this counsall; and send ambassatouris with money in Almany, to fe wageouris to defend his realme aganis the Scottis and Pichtis. Than was amang the Saxonis two brethir, namit Hengist and Orsus, discending of the anciant blude of that region, richt vailyeant in dedis of armis, and desirus of na thing mair than of glore and honouris. Thir two brethir, herand the desiris of the ambassatouris,


tuke wageis, and come in Britane with x thousand weil exercit and vailyeant men. Thir Saxonis war the mair plesandly ressavit be Vortigern, that baith his self and his realme was approching to sa hie dangeir. At last, quhen he had rewardit thaim with money and riches, he causit the commonis to remane in thair tentis, and the nobillis to remane in the nixt townis, quhill thay war refreschit of thair travell and walking be the seis. Belive, two armyis war providit; ane of Saxonis, and ane othir of Britonis; and come forthwart with sic diligence, that thay war past Humber or ever the Scottis and Pichtis war advertist of ony cuming of Saxonis in Britane. The Scottis and Pichtis that dwelt that time in the Britonis landis, war suddanly affrayit be cuming of the Saxonis: and becaus thay war nocht of power to resist sa huge army, ane certane of thame saiffit thaimself be flicht, and the remanent fel in pray to thair ennimes. The Saxonis, traisting al thingis the better to succeid, gif thay gat the first blude, slew all the prisoneris tane be thaim at this time, but ony miseration of estait or age. And nocht content of the murdir maid on Scottis and Pichtis betwix Humber and Tyne, thay went in the Mers and Pentland, and invadit the pepill thair of with gret cruelteis of fire and slauchter; traisting, fra the Pichtis war brocht to finall exterminioun, the landis pertenant to Scottis micht be the mair esy pray. The Pichtis, affrayit be thir cruelteis, send thair ambassatouris to Congallus, King of Scottis, desiring him to cum, with al his power, in haist, to resist thair ennimes: quhilkis war nocht gadderit of febil Britonis, bot of maist cruel Saxonis. Skarsly was this message maid to Scottis, quhen tithingis come, that Britonis and Saxonis, in arrayit battal, war cumin in Pentland, puttand the pepil in all partis, quhare thay cum, to heirschip and slauchter. The King of Pichtis, impacient to suffir thir injuris, assemblit his pepill with maist diligence, and met his ennimes, but advise of Scottis. Hengist, governour of all the army under Vortigern, arrayit the samin in sic maner, that he invadit the Pichtis with 111 battallis at anis. Thus war the Pichtis sa ouriset with multitude of ennimes, that thay war put to flicht. This day maid the Saxonis mair rejosit than Britonis: for Hengist beheld the Britonis fechtand this day mair febilly than ony othir pepill; and



for that caus, he tuke ferme purpos to conques thair realme. Efter that, Scottis and Pichtis war dounge out of all boundis of Britane.

### Chap. Eleventh.

*Of the second message send be Pichtis to the Scottis. How the Scottis and Pichtis faucht aganis the Saxonis and Britonis, and war discomfist.*

 HE Pichtis, brokin in this maner, send thair secund message to Congallus, desiring haisty support aganis the Saxonis. Quhen thir ambassatouris had schawin to Congallus the cruelteis done be Saxonis and Britonis, thay desirit him and his nobillis to suffer nocht the Pichtis, thair auld confiderat freindis, to be distroyit be thair cruell and unmercifull ennimes; in adventure, thay be brint sone eftir, with the same flammis with quhilk the Pichtis ar now presentlie consumit. Congallus, movit be commiseratioun of the trubil falling to his confiderat freinds, the Pichtis; and seand the same truble, les than it wer the more resistit, approching haistelie to Scottis; commandit all fensabill men within his realme, to meit him in the south part of the wod of Calidon, the xx day eftir, with twa monethis vittallis, under the pane of deith. Be this edict, he gaderit XL.M men, strang and weil armit, at all devise; and come sone eftir in his ennimes sicht, havand with him his confiderat freindis, the Pichtis. Als sone as his army saw thair ennimes of more nowmer and ordinance than evir thay saw afore, thay fled in sindry partis, to eschew the present dangeir. The confiderat kingis send incontinent thair capitanis, to tak the flearis: quhilkis wer apprehendit, and put to deith on je-battis, to be exempill to otheris of thair fleing. Be thir punitionis, all the dredour and fleing of the Scottis army wes set aside.

Als sone as Hengist saw the confiderat kingis in sicht, he exhortit his army to fecht, saying, Be speciall favour of Goddis, wes arrayit fornens thaim, the pepill quhilkis wer sa lang perpetual ennimes of Britane; quhairthrow thay nicht have sufficient occasion to revenge

auld injuris, and conques baith thair riches and landis at thair pleseir. And na peril wes to be dred ; for all materis behuivit to succeid with gret felicite : becaus thay wer to fecht in thair gud actioun aganis ane fals and wrangus peple, famous theiffis, revaris, and invasouris of uncouth realmes. As to the victory, sa far as he had ony cognosance be lang experience of battall, thair fayis suld nocht fail to gif bakkis, als sone as thay feill the preis and violence of Saxonis and Britonis : the victorie, thairfore, mon be quhair the goddis hes ordanit. Hengist, be thir wourdis, inflammit the mindis of Saxonis to gret rage and cruelte aganis thair ennimes. The Britonis, erekit in curage be exemple of Saxonis, desirit battall. On the tothir side, the confiderat kingis ceissit nocht, with mony plesand persuasionis, to exhort thair folkis to battall.

Sone eftir, baith the armyis junit, quhen suddanlie come on thaim, frequent schouris of arrowis, and ganyeis schot on every side : and incontinent thay ruschit togiddir with scharp swerdis, speris, and billis, in maist hatrent, bot yit na party semit to have victorie ; quhill at last, the Britonis, that faucht in the richt wing aganis the Scottis, wer put to flicht. Than suddanlie come ane huge schoure of haill, and obscurit the air with sic terrible cloud of mirknes as it had bene nicht : throw quhilk, baith the armyis wer sa astonist, that thay knew nocht quhedir it wes best to fle or follow. Hengist, astonist be this uncouth wounder, gaderit his folkis, be sound of trumpat, to the standart. Be than the schoure wes ceissit ; quhen the Scottis and Pichtis, traisting thair ennimes vincust, fell to the chace of Britonis, but array, and maid slauchter and spulye in thair maist furie. Hengist, seand the Britonis vincust, and the confiderat pepill gevin to spulye and slauchter but array, come, arrayit, with the Saxonis, and left nane of thaim that micht be ouirtane on live. This day was richt sorrowfull to the Scottis and Pichtis ; and nocht plesand to thair ennimes, for the maist part of al the army of Britonis war slane.

## Chap. Twelfth.

*How Hengist was richely rewardit for his victorius dedis. How  
xv thousand Bretonis war slane be weris of Scottis and Pichtis.  
How Hengestis wif and douchter arrivit in Britane with new army  
of Saxonis.*



ENGIST, havand victory in this maner, maid na forther persecutioun on the confiderat pepill; to that fine, that sum ennimes suld remane ay to Britonis, to caus him to be the mair autorist. And that he micht find the mair occasion to conques the crown of Britane, as he was concludit to do, he left the landis betwix Tweid and Tyne to the Scottis and Pichtis, syne returnit with his victorius army to York. And sone efter, he left his army in thair tentis, becaus the winter was nere approaching, and returnit to King Vortigern at London, quhare he, be lang orison, schew be quhat extreme dangeir and jeoperdy he had vincust the Scottis and Pichtis, quhilkis dantit Britane sa mony yeris afore; and perswadit the king to send ane garison of armit men to the bordoure, to resist the fury of Scottis and Pichtis: quhilkis war deliverit, as he was cleirly informit, to revenge the injuris done be his army. Forthir, he promittit to bring in Britane ane new army of Saxonis, aganis the nixt semer: be quhais cuming, the Britonis may othir destroy the Scottis and Pichtis, or ellis, gif thay thocht it expedient, to ding thaim out of Albioun. Mony of the Britonis thocht the cuming of sa mony Saxonis in thair realme suspitiuis, and dred, the thing that come efter, that the Saxonis suld bring sic ane multitude of pepill in thair land, that othir thay suld destroy thair faith, or conques thair realm: yit, becaus Hengist was sa autorist, thay durst nocht regrait this opinly, for displesoir. Otheris, rasit in vane esperance of better fortoun, apprisit the counsal of Hengist; bot nane sa mekill as Vortigern, quhilk was gretumly rejosit that Hengist began battall, baith with gret felicite to Britonis, and gret dammage to his ennimes. And efter that he had



rewardit him richely for his labouris, he maid him lieutenant under him in Britane, with fouth of money to provide his ordinance in quhat sort he list. Hengist, knowing the mindis of princis be impulsiou of thair familiaris drawin in sindry purpos, determit to remane in continual residence of court, that Vortigern suld nocht change his purpos be counsal of his noblis.

Sone efter, King Vortigern send v.m Britonis to defend the bordoures of his realme: bot, at last, all thir Britonis war discomfist and slane, be frequent scarmussing of Scottis and Pichtis, during the winter seasoun. Than Hengist purchest x thousand Britonis, to be send on the same maner as afore, to defend the bordour of Britane: bot his mind was gevin onely to that fine, that the Britonis beand daily waistit, thair realme micht be the mair facil pray to him quhen he thocht time. Thir Britonis fand na better chance than the first; for thay war distroyit on the samin maner: throw quhilk, mony of the inhabitantis fled within the realme, and left the bordouris, with othir rowmis, waist.

In the mene time, arrivit in Britane v.m Saxonis, with thair wiffis and childrin, be command of Hengist. Amang quhom wes Hengistis wife, and Roxena, his douchter, ane virgine of incredible bewte: and with thaim, ten nobill men of Saxonis blude. Vortigern, be thir novellis, wes rasit with gret curage, traisting, nocht onlie to remane in sicker peace in times cuming, bot als to ouirthraw his ennimes in al partis. Yit, mony of his nobillis wes far different fra his mind, havand na litill suspicioun of sa gret power of Saxonis cumming in thair land, to thair gret terroure and mannassing. Hengist, heiring the cuming of his wife and douchter, went haistely to thaim: and yit he maid litil tary, bot returnit with maist deligence to the king, desiring ane part of landis, quhare his wife and children micht remane to the end of his weris; and said, It wes nocht pertenant to the ordinance of chevalrie, to have wemen followand thair army. Vortigern thocht thir desiris of Hengist nocht to be refusit; and thairfore, gaif him certane landis namit Towquhan Castell, lyand in Yorkschire. Sum auctouris writtis, quhen Hengist had gottin the grant of sa mekill land as he micht circle about with ane bull hide, he schure it in maist crafty and subtell quhaingis, and circuit mekil land with the samin. In witnes heiroyf, thay say, Towquhan,



in the language of Saxonis, is callit, ane quhaing. Nochtheles, quhatsumevir way that castell is callit, treuth is, the Saxonis maid first thair habitatioun in the said place.

### Chap. Thirteenth.

*How Hengist and Vortimer come, with grete armyis, to invade the confiderat pepill. Of sindry quent slichtis, devisit be Scottis, to constraine thair ennimes to battall. And of sindry chancis of victory thairefter following.*



WHEN Hengist had gottin thir landis afore namit, he began to mak his ordinance to invaid the confiderat pepill, aganis the nixt simer. At the cuming thairof, he went forthwart with his folkis ane esy pais, abiding the cuming of Vortimer, sonne to King Vortigern, quhilk wes cuming with ane army of Britonis, to concur with him in all chance of battall. At last, baith thir armyis met togidder, and come beyond Humber and Tyne, quhair thay belevit to find thair ennimes for the time. The Scottis and Pichtis, advertist of this huge ordinance cumming aganis thaim, gaderit ane army of LXXM men, and come forthwart with mony dayis vittallis, to resist thair ennimes. Yit, afore thair cumming to Tyne, thair ennimes wer cumin our the same, and had fillit all the cuntre thairabout with thair tentis. This haisty cuming of Britonis and Saxonis to Tyne, wes na litill impediment to the confiderat pepill, to do thair devore, as thay devisit; for it wes ane provocation to baith the armyis to invaid othir with frequent skarmussingis. Hengist, knawing the mindis of Scottis and Pichtis ful of ire and rage at thair first cuming, and sopit with na thing mair than lang tary, prolongit the battall with al the slichtis he micht. Than happinit betwix the two armyis to be ane vale of sic mos and miris, that nane of thir armyis micht cum togiddir in array. The confiderat kingis, to put remeid to thir impedimentis, and that the curage and spreit of thair army suld not deokay be lang tary, commandit ilk man to win als mony scherettis on the ground

as he nicht beir, to mak ane gait throw the mos, to assailye thair ennimes. Sic thingis done, the confiderat kingis rasis thair tentis, and maid thaim redde for battall aganis the nixt morow. And beleving thay nicht nocht invaid the tentis of ennimes but extreme dangeir, thay come throw the mos be ane quiet gait, to ane hill that stude abone thair ennimes. Sum of thaim stude in the face of this hill, that thay nicht cast doun cragis and stanis amang the oist of futmen. The strenth of this hil gaif gret curage to our folkis to assailye sic thingis as thay belevit nicht brek the array of thair ennimes. At last, seing the Saxonis and Britonis wald nothir ische fra thair tentis, nor yit gif signe of battall, to june; thay devisit, be ane new and uncouth slicht, to astonis thair ennimes. And in the nicht following, thay brocht ane huge multitude of haddir to the face of the hill fornentis thair ennimes. And becaus this haddir is of nature dry, and takis sone fire, thay maid sindry faggottis thair of; and eftir that thay had put thaim in fire, thay slang thaim our the hill. Incontinent, thir faggottis wer drevin, be preis of windis, amang the tentis of ennimes: quhilkis, with gret terroure, wer effrayit; for the stra and stikkis quhare thay lay, tuke fire, and brint infinit pepill in thair army. Than rais ane huge nois and clamour. And sum, dreding the hid watheing of ennimes, ran haistely to defend the trinchis of thair tentis. Otheris maid thame to slokin the flammis, ay more increasing be preis of windis. Finalie, the faggottis fell sa fast out of the hevin, all blesand togiddir in flammis, that na man wist quhat wes to be done, throw reird of men and beistis: of quhilkis ane gret multitude wes in thair tentis. And throw feir of lowe and smouk under nicht, the capitanis wes sa trubillit, that thay concludit, erar to assailye thair ennimes with extreme jeoperdyis of battal, than cowardly to be brint to the deith. And incontinent, thay ischit fra thair tentis, and past, in arrayit battall, to the planis. Hengist, seing his folkis nicht nocht be weil haldin within thair tentis, gaderit the Saxonis, be sound of trumpat, to his standart, and abaid the cuming of the day.

The Scottis and Pichtis, traisting thair ennimes brokin be this effray, left the strenth quhair thay stude, and come, arrayit, to the planis, redde to gif battall. Bot quhen thay fand thair ennimes in gud array, thay supersedit thair purpos quhill the cuming of the

day. On the morow, Congallus exhortit his folkis to consider quhat glore and honour bene conquest be virtew and forcy dedis of thair eldaris; and desirit thaim to obscure not, be thair recent sleuth, the fame of sa nobill campionis: and prayit thaim to keip the honour that thair eldaris wan; and think na thing wes sa schamful as to gif backis to thair ennimes, and be thirllit to yok of servitude: for na thing wes sa honest, as othir to have victorie, as thair eldaris did afore, or ellis to fecht with glore and manheid to the deith. And Hengist, in the same maner, ceissit not to persuade his army to pas forthwart with hie curage, and to distroy thair ennimes: quhilk beand done, thay nicht reiose the residew of thair dayis, but ony dangeir of weris.

Skarsly wer thir wordis said, quhen baith the armyis junit. At the first meting, baith the Saxonis and Britonis had bene discomfist, wer not ane buschement of III.M fresche men come haistely out of ane wod, quhare thay wer hid be Hengist, to thair support. Thir fresche men come with gret noyis and clamour on the bakkis of Scottis. Thus wer the confiderat pepill invadit on every side, to thair gret terrour. And yit the truble arrais the more, that every ane of thame wes impediment to othir in the weilding of thair wap-pinnis. Than followit divers chancis of fortoun: for the Pichtis, be soverane manheid, put the Britonis that faucht fornentis thame to flicht; and perseverit in sic furious rage of chace aganis thame, that mony of Britonis wer drevin, to eschape thair cruelte, in the nixt river, quhair thay perist; otheris, tane be the gait, war slane. Bot the Scottis, quhilkis war invadit thus on aithir side be Saxonis, eftir lang perseverance in battall, wer finalie vincust and slane. Congallus, evil woundit, was brocht out of the feilde be his freindis, to the nixt montanis. The Saxonis, eftir this victory of Scottis, tuk purpos to persew the Pichtis; for thay vincust, as said is, the Britonis. Nochtheles, be cuming of the nicht, thay supersedit thair purpos to the morow. Thir Pichtis, dreidand to be invadit be Saxonis on the morow, gaderit all thair cofferis, cartis, wanis, and othir thingis, quhilk nicht not be weil tursit for the time, and put thame all in fire, that the fume and reik thairof might obscure the aire, quhill thay war past all dangeir. Sic thingis done, the Pichtis

returnit hame with the residew of Scottis, quhilkis wer eschapit out of this feild.

### Chap. Fourteenth.

*How Hengist was maid protectour of Britane; and how he brocht his son Occa, with x.m Saxonis, to resist the armyis of Ambrose and Uter. How Vortigern come to ane banket with Hengist, and maryit Roæna, his douchter.*



ENGIST, efter the sindry chancis of victory, fallin in this last feild, began to nowmer his army; and fand the confiderat pepil fled, and iv.m Saxonis slane: syne returnit with the residew thair of to York, and commandit thame to be redde to resist thair ennimes, gif ony new trubil apperit. Incontinent, he returnit to London, to take consultation with Vortigern and his noblis, quhat was to be done concerning the weris of Scottis and Pichtis in times cuming. Vortigern ressavit him with gret reverence and honoure, and proclamit him protectour of his realme and pepill, with power and auctorite to use al the townis, strenthis, and riches thair of, at his pleseir; syne commandit publict playis to be maid throw all partis of Britane, with general procession, to geif loving to God, for the excellent victory falling to him above his ennimes. And to entrete Hengist with mair pleseir, he gaif him and his pepill licence to make adoratioun to idolis, efter the maner of Gentilis.

In the mene time, was schawin to Vortigern, that Ambrose and Uter, the sonnys of King Constantine, war makand gret purviance in Bartanye, to recover the crown of Britane. Thir tithingis maid Vortigern affrayit; for he had ane prophecy, that he suld be slane be this Ambrose. Nochtheles, he inquirit Hengist, be quhat ingine and power he micht best resist the army of Ambrose. Hengist, glad of his trubil, promittit till resist the army of Ambrose and Uter, gif he wald suffer the Saxonis, quhilkis dwelt in Yorkschire, to cum to the see camp fornens France: and the castellis and strenthis



of that cuntre to be deliverit to him and his folkis, that he nicht the mair esaly resist Ambrose and Uter quhen thay landit. Als sone as thir petitionis war grantit, Hengist, desiring na thing mair than to have the Britonis uterly distroyit, that thair realme nicht fall in pray to him and his Saxonis, instruckit ane man of Almany, as he had bene ane Britone, to cum to Vortigern with dissimilit wordis; saying, He was laitly cumin fra Pentland, quhare he saw na thing bot knichtis schining in armour; the trumpattis sounding, and the goldin stremaris reffixand aganis the sonne: and, schortly, all the pepill of that regioun reddy, in maist weirly sort, to cum haistely on the Britonis. This Almane that was subornat in this wise, said to Hengist, Thair was ane c young and vailyeant men of Scottis sworne, all of ane mind, to distroy him; and had na sicht to thair livis, sa thay nicht bring thair purpos to effect; for thay held him the pillar of Britonis. Sindry of thir personis wer cumin, at the same time, to London, to execute thair mindis; and, thairfore, na place nicht be sovir to him, bot, quhen he belevit leist, sum of thir men, sworne to the effect foresaid, sal wair thair livis on him; and thocht he eschape ane, force was to abide the chance of the residew; becaus the Scottis and Pichtis traistis, quhen he is slane, to be deliverit of all trubill.

Vortigern, astonist be this fenyeit slicht, demandit Hengist, quhat was to be done. Hengist apperit richt effrayit, in the same maner. Nochtheles, sindry of the Saxonis, quhilkis war instruckit be the said Hengist, prayit Vortigern to be of gud comfort; for thought he war invadit on every side with ennimes, he suld be sovir of Saxonis to defend him in al his weris: “ For the confiderat pepill, “ quhilkis hes provin the chance of battall fechtand unhappely “ aganis us, sal nevir attempt ane thing mair to thair dammage, “ than to invaid thy pepill with injuris, and provoke us agane to “ battall. And gif Ambrose and Uter come, as is belevit, with “ huge pepill, on the south partis of the realme, siclike as the confiderat pepill intendis to do on the north partis thair of; than sal “ Occa, the sonne of Hengist, quhilk is ane vailyeant knicht, and “ exercit in chevalry sen his first youth, cum with ane new band of “ Saxonis: throw quhilk, thow sal be sovir fra all invasion that “ may follow to the and thy realme; for Occa sall resist the Scottis

“ and Pichtis in the north, and Orsus the army cuming with Ambrose out of Bertanye; and Hengist sall remane ay with thyself, to keip thy body fra treason of Britonis, gif ony of thame, be favour of Ambrose, wald pretend ony rebellious aganis thy auctorite: be quhilk way thou sall have mery dayis, but ony feir of ennemes.”

Vortigern, knowing na othir way apperand to dant his ennemes in all partis, becaus mony of the noblis of Britane haitit his maneris, maid gret instance to Hengist to send for his sonne Occa, to cum, haistely, in Britane, with ane band of Saxonis, to resist his ennemes. Hengist, wirkand his purpos with dissimilit mind and slicht, maid him to withstand the kingis desire; saying, It was irrecoverabill dammage to have baith himself and his sonne sa far distant fra the governance of his landis and possessionis: nochtheles, be lang instance of the king and othir Britonis, quhilkis war mair set for the kingis folie and plesair than for the common weil, condescendit to his desiris.

Within few dayis efter, Occa arrivit in Britane, with x. m. Saxonis, and sat down in Northumberland, with wiffis and barnis, reddy to fecht aganis all pepill that list invade thaim. Hengist, knowing the cuming of his sonne, and this new army of Saxonis, desirit King Vortigern to cum and se his wife, children, and frendis, quhilkis war reddy to al service and chargis, as he wald command; and said it suld rais his army in gret curage, gif he wald do that honoure to decore thaim with his presence. Vortigern, richt glad of the cuming of this new band of Saxonis, condescendit to his desiris: howbeit, mony of his nobillis war richt hevvy, and tuke na litle suspitioun, that sa huge nowmer of Saxonis war cumin in Britane aganis thair common weil. Finaly, Vortigern come, with ane certane of his nobillis, to Towquhan Castel; quhare he was plesandly ressavit, and feistit with all maner of delitis and plesouris that micht be devised. Than Hengist set him to prolong the banquet within the nicht, that the king micht be takin with the winis. Incontinent, Roxena, the douchter of Hengist, as scho was instruckit, went to the king with ane coupeful of mighty wine, and said, “ I drink to the.” King Vortigern drank michtely of the coupe; and quhen he had embrasit hir in his armis, he set hir down nixt himself in the ban-

ket. Efter lang commoning, he fel in blind raige of lust: quhilk thing was nocht onely occasion to him, efter, to do adultry, bot als to tine his kingdom; for incontinent, throw birnand flame of new lust, he had nothir respect to the law of God, nor yit to the law of matrimony, afore contrackit with his lauchfull wife; and, but mair delay, he tuk the said Roxena to his wife; syne gaif to Hengist all the laudis of Kent, with castellis, townis, and munitionis pertening thairto. Sone efter, the Saxonis sat down in the samin, with thair wiffis and childrin, and put out the auld inhabitantis thair of. Sic thingis done, Vortigern returnit with his new quene to London, and repudiat his lauchfull wife.

### Chap. Fifteenth.

*How Vodine, Bischop of London, with mony preistis, war slane be tyranny of Saxonis. How Hengist maid himself King of Kent. How Vortigern was deprivit, and Vortimer, his sonne, maid King of Britane.*



VDINE, Bischop of London, ane man of singular devotioun and life, be advise of Vortimer, went familiarly to Vortigern, and schew that he had not done as ane Cristin prince, departing fra his lauchfull quene, and takand ane othir woman to his wife, quhais fader, Hengist, Duke of Saxonis, was baith ennime to the Cristin faith, and set, with deliverit mind, to conques the crown of Britane; and said, Sen he had sa done, he suld sone have experience quhat dammage suld follow to his pepill, nocht onely in eversion of the Cristin faith in Britane, bot als in translation of the nobill realm of Britane, (quhilk was brocht, hail and unbrokin, under mony nobil princis, to his days,) in ane uncouth blud. Than said Vortigern, “ I have failyeit, and “ was nocht prudent, quhen I brocht Saxonis first in Britane to “ support me aganis my ennimes; and that was the first beginning “ of my foly. Bot I semit mair imprudent, quhen I was tane be “ immoderat lust of his douchter Roxena; for I know weill the



“ end of my empire sal be terribill, bot gif my offence be the mair  
“ haistely reparit to God ; and thairfore, sa far as I may, I sall put  
“ remeid thairto.”

Hengist heirand the sound of this lamentabill regrait, come in the secret chalmer quhare he was, and reprevit him, quhy he maid sa hevvy cheir in the time of his mariage, be persuasioun of ane prophane man of fenyeit life ; and incontinent, he slew the haly man Vodine, with mony othir preistis and relligious personis, being with him for the time : and, to attempt ane thing of more audacite, he seirchit Vortimer to the deith. Vortimer, knawing his evil mind aganis him, fled quhare he thocht expedient.

In the mene time, Hengist send secrete writingis to his sonne Occa, commanding him to abstene fra ony forther injuris of Scottis and Pichtis, and suffer thaim peciably rejose all the landis beyond Tyne ; providing always, that the strenthis betwix Tyne and Humber be weill garnist with men and vitallis. And forthir, he comandit him to seik sum occasion quharethrow he micht sla al the noblis of the cuntre quhare he was ; and to have sic respect to the common weill of Saxonis, that Britane micht cum, sumtime, under thair empire. Occa, knawing the mind of his fader, tuk first York, with mony othir strenthis and munitionis of the cuntre ; and, as his fader devisit, he slew mony noblis and barons be fenyeit causis. And quhen he was accusit be Vortigern, quhy he did sic cruelteis on his noblis ; he answerit, as he was instruckit be his fader, That thir noblis quhilkis be him war slane, wer ennimes to the king, becaus he had Saxonis in mair reverence than Britonis ; and thir noblis intendit to have randerit York, with mony othir gret strenthis and munitionis of Britane, to Scottis and Pichtis, wer not he put remeid mair haistely thairto : als, the boundis of Britane, gevin to his keping, suld not have bene governit prudently, gif the samin had not bene purgit fra all invasouris of thair common weill ; for sic doingis suld cum efter, baith to the gret proffet of the king, and honour of his realme. The cruelte of Saxonis ilk day mair increasing aganis the Britonis, maid Vortigern na lital commovit ; and the mair, that he considerit thame daily seikand occasion to conquies his realme : and quhen he could find na sicker remeid aganis the said dangeir, he began, with drery contenance, to deplore his misfortoun.



Sum of his familiaris gaif him counsall to dant the cruelte of Saxonis, quhill he nicht but pley; in adventure, the Britonis, brokin be thair injuris, war brocht to sic calamite, that thay nicht nothir have sufficient pissance to distroy thair ennimes, nor yit to defend thair realme. King Vortigern havand the Britonis in na les suspition than the Saxonis, becaus he was odius to thame baith, supersedit to attempt this gret mater, for certane dayis.

In the mene time, the Britonis, brokin with intollerabill injuris, sustenit mair cruelteis of Saxonis than ever thay sufferit afore of ony othir pepil; and above thir skaithis, followit othir sindry outragis, mair odius and importabill to thaim: for Hengist left King Vortigern, and come to the residew of Saxonis at Kent, and, be generall edict, chargit al Britonis to pas out of the samin, within ane schort day, under the pane of deith. The day byrun, he slew baith commonis and nobillis, but ony favoure, mercy, or ransoun, that ganestude his command. Always the Saxonis enragit in sic inhumane cruelteis, that all the kirkis and sanctuaris of Kent war suspendit with Cristin blude; the nunnis and religious weirmen war tane be force out of thair abbayis, and constrainit to mariage, or pollutioun of thair bodyis. The lordis of Britane, commovit be thir sorrowfull injuris, maid ane convention at London, quhare thay reprevit Vortigern, That he put the Saxonis on his secret counsall, knowing thaim bot ane hethin pepill, levand efter the lawis of Gentilis, and nocht brocht in Britane to beir the governance of the realme, bot onely to sustene the weris aganis thair ennimes. Attoure, thay schew that he was unprudent, in sa far as he enrichit the Saxonis with landis, rentis, and auctorite, in distructioun of all his realme and legis; and nocht onely repudiat his wife, bot, aganis the institutionis of Cristin faith, maryit ane woman quhilk was of the rite of Gentilis. Finalie, becaus he deservit the haterent of God for sindry abhominabill cruelteis fallin in the realme be his foly and negligence, exponing baith thair pepill and common weil to extreme danger; thay degradit him of all auctorite, and send him in Walis: quhare he remanit, mony yeris efter, in prisoun. And, that thay suld nocht be without ane heid, thay maid his sonne Vortimer king.

## Chap. Sixteenth.

*How Scottis and Pichtis war confiderat with King Vortimer aganis the Saxonis, and discomfist Occa in Northumberland. How Hengist and Occa war vincust in Kent, and dounge out of Britane. How King Vortimer was slane be poison.*



**V**ORTIMER maid king in this maner, thocht na thing sa honorabill as to invade the Saxonis, ennimes of God, be strang battal: and to do the samin with mair felicitate, he send ambassatouris to the confiderat kingis, quhilkis had the Saxonis in maist hatrent, to schaw that the injuris done to thaim be Saxonis procedit only be King Vortigern, but ony advise of his nobillis: for thocht Saxonis war enrichit with landis and rentis be Vortigern, yit al the noblis of Britane war ennimes to thaim; knawing thair mindis set to uter eversion of thair realme and liberte, as apperis weil be thair cruel dedis, excercit laitly to na les blasphematioun of God than martyrdom of Cristin pepill. And becaus thir, and mony othir importabil cruelteis, wer cumin be negligence of Vortigern, assister to thair opinion; the nobles hes degradit him of auctorite, and maid Vortimer, his son, king. And forthir, thay schew how Vortimer hes maid gret ordinance of battal, to expel the Saxonis out of Albion; and desirit, thairfore, the confiderat kingis to set aside all injuris, and concur with thame to resist the common trubil appering to al the pepil of Albion; and promittit, gif thay wald support the Britonis in this extreme dangeir, to geif the landis beyond Humber, but ony pley, in times cuming, to thair perpetual empire, with consent of all the nobillis and commonis of Britane.

Congallus, King of Scottis, heirand thir offeris, said to thir ambassatouris, He understude weil in quhat dangeir the realme of Britane stude be treason of Saxonis, ennimes to Cristin faith; and was richt sory thair of, knawing na thing better, gif thay war nocht resistit in time, the Catholik faith suld expire in Britane. And

thocht the Britonis hes bene gret ennimes to his pepill, yit, to maik his labour manifest, baith for the common weil of Britane, and heil of Cristin faith, he suld rais his army, and concur with thaim aganis Saxonis to the deith; swa that peace war ratifyit in sic maner amang thair pepill, that all debaitis nicht ceis, and the landis beyond Humber never to be reclamit, in times cuming, be the Britonis. Thir ambassatouris beand depeschit with siclike answeire of Pichtis, returnit to Vortimer. The band of peace was ratifyit, sone efter, amang the Britonis, Pichtis, and Scottis; and incontinent, thay ruschit al togidder to harnes aganis the Saxonis. The Scottis and Pichtis come with maist hatrent aganis the Saxonis dwelling betwix Humber and Tyne; and quhen thay war invading thir Saxonis with maist cruelteis that culd be devisit, thay persavit Occa cummand with displayit baner aganis thaim. Occa, seand his ennimes appeir of sic strenth and multitud that he nicht not weil geif thaim feild, wist not quhat was to be done: nochtheles, that lang tary suld not febil the curage of his folkis, he maid ane signe, be sound of trumpet, to june. The first meting was equalie fochtin on all sidis; bot at last the Saxonis, havand na pissance to resist sa gret preis of ennimes fornens thaim, began to geif bakkis. Occa stoppit thair fleing sa far as he nicht, sumtime be minassing, sumtime be respect of honouris: nochtheles, the feir of deith, mair pissant amang abasit pepill than ony charge of capitane, maid thair discomfitour richt patent. Occa seing nane uthir way to saif his life, fled to the mouth of Humber, quhare he gat ane bait, and come to Thamis, with few nowmer of personis. The Scottis and Pichtis usit this victory with gret cruelte on the Saxonis, and saiffit nane that perseverit fechtand in the battal; and than ilk ane began to exhort othir to follow fast on the chace, that thay nicht revenge the cruelteis sa mony yeris done be thir Saxonis. Always gret nowmer of Saxonis war slane in the battall, bot mair nowmer of thaim in the chace.

In the mene time, Vortimer, richt desirus to recover the liberte of his realme, rasit the baner of the croce, and commandit all Cristin pepill to follow the same. Thus he gaderit ane army of Lxxx thousand men, als weil of preistis and religious men as of temporall estaitis; and be the samin he slew x.m Saxonis, and gat sa huge

victory of thaim, that Kentschire, with mony othir boundis adjacent, war recoverit to the Britonis; and all the landis lyand betwix Tyne and Humber, restorit to the Scottis and Pichtis. Hengist and Occa come out of the feild with the residew of thair vincust army, and fled in Northumbirland; with purpos to remane thair, quhil new power come to thaim out of Alman. Nochtheles, thay war dounge out of thay boundis be Scottis and Pichtis, and chasit to the mouth of Humber; quhare thay fand schippis, and returnit, with certane nobillis of that samin blud, in Saxony.

King Vortimer was sa merciful efter this victory, that he brocht litil cruelte on the remanent Saxonis, bot sufferit thaim to returne in thair awin cuntre; and otheris, quhilkis war bot commonis, war sufferit to remane in Kent, with thair wiffis and childrin, to labour the land, under servitude of Britonis. Roxena, douchter to Hengist, was sufferit, becaus scho was with child, to remane in the Toure of London, with certane keparis to wait on hir. Than Vortimer set him to purge his realme of al heriseis brocht in it be Saxonis, and to repare the kirkis laitly bet down be thaim: for sindry Britonis war constrainit, be cruelte of Saxonis, to make sacrifice to idolis; and mony of thaim fell agane in herisy of Pelagius: and to purge sic arrouris, war send in Britane, out of France, twa haly bishoppis, Germanus and Lupus, be desire of King Vortimer. Finaly, all the Britonis that war found repugnant to gud religioun war othir slane, or banist the realme; and sa mony as wald nocht be abjurat, nor revoik thair arrouris, war brint.

Vortimer, recoverand the realm of Britane, and bringand the samin to the sicker faith, levit certane yeris efter, richt plesand to God and his subdittis; bot at last he was poisonit be Roxena, and otheris, nobillis of Britane, applauding to hir opinion.



## Chap. Seventeenth.

*How the Britonis, efter deith of King Vortimer, fel in gret disputioun, quhay suld be king; and how Vortigern was restorit to the crown of Britane.*



FTER deith of Vortimer, ane convention was maid at London, quhare the nobillis tuke lang consultation, quhiddir Vortigern suld be tane out of prisoun, and restorit to his auctorite and honouris, as he was afore; or gif the sonnys of Constantine suld be brocht out of Bertanye to succeid to the crown, sen thay war maist native thairto. Sum alliegit that Vortigern was penitent of all offencis done be him aganis thair common weill, and knawis, be lang experience, quhat hevvy dammage and injuris hes fallin laityly to his pepill be his negligence and unbridillit lust; and alliegit, sen he was ane prudent prince, unbrokein with travell and weiris, he suld be restorit to the crown: for he had na thing in mair hatrent than treason of Saxonis, and knew weil how the realme suld be governit, specially in sic extreme dangeir as than apperit, baith be Franchmen, Britonis, and Saxonis; and was, thairfore, maist abil to sustene thair chargis, gif he war sworne nevir to admit ony uncouth blude in Britane, to sustene thair weris; and to invade the Saxonis with all maner of violence, gif thay returnit in Albioun. As to the sonnys of Constantine, to be brocht out of Bertanye, to succeid to the crown of Britane, thay semit unganand thairto; for thay war young, but experience of chevalry, and nocht abil to sustene sa gret chargis as apperit than aganis thair ennimes in al partis. For the Frenchmen, quhilkis laityly conquest the realme of Gallis, now callit France, and richt desirus to conques ma realmes, war confiderat with the sonnys of Constantine to cum in Britane, and abiding not bot sufficient occasioun, to invade the samin with siclike injuris and titill of conques as the Saxonis wald: throw quhilk, the cumming of King Constantinis sonnys in Britane was na les suspicious than the cuming of

Saxonis. Otheris thocht it richt suspitiis to restore him to the crown, quhom thay afore degradit be thair auctorite; for it micht happin that all thay quhilkis war of that opinioun suld othir be slane at his returning, or ellis exilit the realme. Bot yit this last opinion was rejeckit, be universal vocis of al the noblis; saying, Vortigern was ane man of peace, but desire of vengeance; and set erar to amend all offencis done aganis the weill of his subdittis, than to revenge ony injuris done to him; nocht unknowing how proffitabil all thay noblis war for the commoun weill, quhilkis deprivit him of auctorite, and gaif it to his sonne Vortimer, as mair abil for the governance thairof. Efter lang consultatioun, Vortigern was tane out of prison, and restorit, with gret triumphe, to the crown: and he nocht onely remittit al offencis and hatrent quhilkis he tuk aganis his nobillis quhen thay degradit him of auctorite, bot als resavit thaim with gret benivolence, and rewardit thaim richely for thair gud mindis.

### Chap. Eighteenth.

*How Hengist and Occa returnit, with new power of Saxonis, in Britane; and slew mony noblis thairof, and tuk Vortigern prisoner. How Vortigern was banist in Walis, and Hengist maid King of Britane.*



ORTIGERN, efter his restitutioun to the crown of Britane, garnist all the strenthis of his realme with gret ordinance, aganis quhatsumever adventuris micht fall, and held strang bandis of weirmen about him, with na les cost than he had bene presently to fecht with ennimes; and be- had him sa prudently, that baith his nobillis and commonis wist nocht quhat honoure and pleasour thay micht do him. Nocht lang efter, he renewit peace with the confiderat kingis, in the samin manner as it was maid afore be King Vortimer, his sonne.

Quhill Vortigern was gevin to sic materis, tithingis come that Hengist was arrivit at Thames, havand with him his sonne Occa,

and his two brethir, with incredibill nowmer of Saxonis; and did na injuris nor offencis to the inhabitantis of the cuntre. Vortigern, astonist of the dammage appering to his pepil be cuming of thir Saxonis, commandit the nobillis of Britane to meit him, haistely, with thair power, at Kent, to withstand Hengist; quhilk was cumin with sa awfull army, that he purposit, othir to subdew the cuntre to his empire, or ellis to put the samin to irrecoverabill heirschip: quhais inhumane cruelteis being nocht haistely repressit, na sicker life micht be to his pepill. The princis of Britane hering thir tithingis, come haistely to Vortigern, with all fensabil pepill under thair boundis.

Hengist, knowing the mindis of Britonis movit with extreme hatrent aganis him, thocht nocht expedient, for that time, to jeopardde him to the chance of battall; for sen thay war deliverit to fecht, for defence of thair realme and liberte, to the deith, he micht nocht have victory but large murdir of his pepill. For thir reasonis, he set him to do the thing be slicht quhilkis he micht nocht do be force of armis; and send ambassatouris to Vortigern, saying, He was nocht cumin in Britane to defraud his gudsonne Vortigern of the crown of Britane, for he was mair dere and precius to him than any othir thing in erd; nor yit was he set to defraud the young infant gottin on Roxena his douchter, bot erar to support thaim baith, and to punis thaim that slew the nobil prince, King Vortimer, be poison. Attoure, he was advertist, afore his cuming out of Almany, that his gudsonne Vortigern was brocht to sic infirmite be lang incarceration, that he micht nocht leif ane yeir; and, thairfore, he was cumming to kepe his young nepote undefraudit of the crown of Britane. And forthir, gif thir materis war not plesand to the Britonis, he suld haistely returne agane in Almany, or ellis to remane quhare thay plesit; sa that thay wald suffer his army to cum in Kent, nocht to reiose the landis thair of, bot allanerly to recover the gudis quhilkis thay left behind thaim at thair departing. And forthir, desirit King Vortigern, gif it war plesand, to assigne ane day and place, to intercommoun of thir and hiear materis, concerning perpetuall amite, kindnes, and peace betwix Saxonis and Britonis: and gif thay list set this day, he suld cum thair, with sa mony as thay thocht neidfull, armit or unarmit, at thair pleseir.

Quhen the nobillis had tane consultation certane dayis, quhethir thir desiris of Hengist suld be repulsit or nocht, thay war devidit in sindry opinionis. Mony of thaim, be lang experience, knew weill his falsit and slichtis, and belevit nocht bot treason hid under dis-saitfull wordis; and, thairfore, thocht the samin to be refusit: Otheris, dreidand the ferocite and manheid of Saxonis, thocht thair realme our brokin with weiris to suffer ony new affliction; and, thairfore, concludit to meit his gile and falsit be siclik slichtis, having na confidence in his wordis; bot to lauboure, maist craftely, to caus him depart out of Britane with amite and freindschip, and to spare nothir labour nor expencis to bring his purpos to gud fine; and gif he wald na way depart with benivolence, to invaid him maist cruelly, and to ding him out of thair boundis perforce: and devisit, for that same effect, ane cumpany of maist forcy and vail-yeant men, to be haldin reddy aganis quhatsumevir adventure nicht fall, quhil thay saw to quhat purpos or fine his mind was deliverit. As to the meting of Vortigern and Hengist, to intercommoun of hie materis, as he devisit; thay thocht the same honest, sa that King Vortigern and Hengist met fra thair armyis, with equale cumpanyis on all sidis, but wappinnis. Mony of the noblis condiscendit to this last opinion, traisting, fra Hengist had ressavit the guddis left behind him in Kent at his last departing, that he suld depart out of Britane with pleseir. Yit sindry othir princis of Britane nicht nocht be satisfyit in thair mind, suspekand, ay, sum hid treason under thir desiris of Hengist, becaus he was cumin in Britane with sa awfull power. Nochtheles, the x day efter was finaly set to Hengist and Vortigern, and baith sworn to cum allanerly with xxx of the maist noblis of baith thair armyis, bu ony swerd or dagere in thair cumpany, to intercommoun on all materis to the effect fore-said. The place quhare thay convenit was not far fra Salisbery, on ane hill callit Ambry; and quhen thay war cumin to the samin, as was devisit be Hengist, ilk Saxon had ane dagare hid under his sleif, to sla the noblis of Britane, quhen thay saw ganand occasion; and quhen thay war at thair maist earnest commoning, Hengist maid ane signe to the Saxonis, and thay, but ony tary, slew all the nobillis of Britane that come to this convention, except ane namit Heldolus, quhilk pullit ane dagger fra ane Saxoun, and with the



samin slew sindry Saxonis, and deliverit himself out of thair handis. Be this treasoun, King Vortigerne wes takin, and brocht schamfully to the army of Saxonis.

Hengist deliverit be this maner of al feir of ennimes, come to Kent. The remanent Britonis, richt astonist of his cuming, eftir petuous lamentation for slauchter of thair nobillis, maid thame, with maist hatrent, to revenge the samin. Nochttheles, seand na man able to tak this charge on hand, thay supersedit thair purpos, and retournit hame, with gret displeseir. Vortigern traisting daily to de be mannassing of Saxonis, to deliver himself of the present dan-geir, randerit to Hengist all the munitionis and strenthis of his realme, with huge treasour of gold and silver, in compositioun of his ransom. And quhen he wes deliverit of bondage be this way, he past, with the residew of Britonis, with thair wiffis and childrin, in Walis; quhair all the pepil descending of the Britonis blude, mony yeris eftir, succedit. All the remanent landis of Britane yeid than under the empire of Saxonis. The vailyeant dedis of Hengist schawin in Almany, causit ane multitude of pepil to cum in Britane, of greter noumer than afore, with commonis, wiffis, and childrin, to inhabit the land: throw quhais cuming, Hengist grew of sic pissance, that the Britonis wer of na power in compair of Saxonis in Britane.

Hengist seand Vortigern put fra the crown and banist in Walis, thocht best to stable the crown to him; and set ane conventioun of Saxonis in London, and maid himself king: syne commandit the cuntre nevir to be callit, in times cuming, the realm of Britonis, bot the realm of Saxonis; and so the realme wes callit Hengistland, and the pepill Hengistmen: bot now, be corruptioun of langage, the realme is callit England, and the pepill Inglishmen. Be this samin decreit, wes commandit, that na Britonis suld be found out of Walis within xx dayis eftir the proclamatioun, under the pane of deith; siclik, that na man suld leif of the faith of Crist, or to do ony cerimoneis efter the rite of Cristin pepill, under the samin pane. The day byrun, gret murdir and punitioun was maid on al thame that war repugnant to this proclamation: the prelatis war slane at the alter, the kirkis brint; and, as Bede sayis, baith the

publict and private housis war bet down to the ground, be tyranny of Saxonis. And yit thair was ane othir thing mair miserabil to thame than al thir calamiteis: sa far enragit the cruelteis of Saxonis, that na men durst bury the Cristin pepil. Mony miserabil Britonis war takin in the montanis seikand thair fude, and, but ransoun, favour, or mercy, slane: otheris fled out of the cuntre; otheris baid still in Britane, amang the desertis and montanis of the samin, ay in feir of thair ennimes.

### Chap. Nineteenth.

*How Vortigern demandit the prophete Merline, of the end of his life; and of Merlinis answer. How Ambrose and Uter come in Walis, and brint Vortigern, with his sonne, and riches.*



As sone as the Saxonis had conquest Britane on this maner, thay garnist the strenthis thair of, in al partis, with men, munition, and vittallis; and usit the cursit ritis of Paganis, aberand fra the Cristin faith, and makand adoratioun to idolis, as thay wer institute in thair first errouris: throw quhilkis, the kirkis sumtime had in reverence amang Cristin pepill, with the blude of thair cursit sacrifice, wer defowlit. And, that thair ennimes suld not invaid thaim unprovisitlie, thay laid ane strang garison of armit men fornens the bordouris, in all partis of thair realme; and brocht, ilk day, new pepil out of Albany, to expel the Scottis and Pichtis out of the landis that lay betwix Humbir and Tyne.

Vortigern, spulyeit of his croun, and seing his ennimes multiplie baith at hame and on feild, and siclik the Saxonis and Franchemen haitit him na les than Britonis; wes sa disparit for his corruppit life, that he belevit na support of God, nor yit of othir mortale creaturis, to recover his realme; and, thairfore, he set his ingine to haif knowledge of thingis to cum, be response of prophettis, as is the use of disparit pepil in extreme dangeir, but refuge. Incontinent, he

brocht afore him ane prophet, namit Merline; and inquirit him, quhat suld be the end of his empire and life. This Merline wes gottin, as the fame wes, be connixtion of ane devill, in forme of man, with ane lady of Britane; and wes lernit, be wichecraft, to rais wekit spretis to his familiar commoning: and, be thir narrationis, knew mony thingis to cum. Als sone as Vortigern had brocht this Merline afore him, he inquirit quhat suld be the end of his weris, or gif he micht recover the crown of Britane; and finalie, quhat suld be the end of his son and himself: gif ony of his blude suld regne behind him in Britane; or gif he micht have ony skaith be weris of Ambrose and Franchemen. Merline answerit pertlie to thir petitionis, That baith Vortigern and his childrin, within schort time, suld be vincust be Ambrose and Uter, sonnys of Constantine; and suld be brint, with all his treasoure and gudis. This prophecy of Merline wes weill provin in the end of his empire; for sone eftir, the said Ambrose and Uter come out of Bertanye to Walis, with ane army, to revenge the slauchter of King Constantius, thair brothir, quhilk wes slane be dissait of the said Vortigern. Als sone as Vortigern hard of thair cuming, he assemblit ane gret power, havand na confidence in this prophecy; and come, with arrayit oist, aganis Ambrose and Uter; and left behind him his son, with all his treasour, in ane castell of Walis; traisting, gif he suld peris, mair honest to de fechtand in battall aganis his ennimes than ony othir wayis. Skarslie wer the armyis junit, quhen mony of thame that faucht in the first wing of Vortigernis army, come to Ambrose. Thus succedit victorie to Ambrose, but ony straik. Vortigern seing his army vincust, raif of his coit armour, and faucht with incredible constance, to that fine, that he micht have deit amang the commonis, and escheuit the fatall necessite of deith, quhilk wes schawin to him afore be prophecy of Merline. Nochtheles, he wes brocht out of the feild be his freindis, in hope of better fortoun, to the samin castell quhair his sonne and treasoure wes left afore the battall. Ambrose havand victorie on this wise, followit on Vortigern, and beltit the castel with strang sege; and howbeit he micht not tak it haistlie, yit, that his army suld nocht be in dangeir throw lang tary, he brocht mony huge sillis and treis out of the nixt wod, syne fillit

the fowsis and trinchis of the said castel with the samin. Eftir this, he kest birnand faggottis, with gret multitude of treis, within the castell: throwe quhilk the fire grew sa bald, that the castell, and all that wes within it, brint, and wes resolvit in powdir; according to the prophecy of Merline.

### Chap. Twentieth.

*Of sindry Illusionis and Dissaitis of the Evill Spretis.*



O declare quhat prophete bene this Merline, gottin, as the fame wes, be the devill; or gif sic generatioun be possible to nature of man; it pertenis litill to the purpos quhilk we take on hand. Nochtheles, becaus we have fallin in commoning of sic detestable conversation of devillis with the nature of man, we will writ sum thingis that happinnit nocht lang afore the making of this Buke; the yeir of God ane M CCCCLXXXVI yeris.

Certane marchandis wer passand betwix Forth and Flanderis, quhen haistelie come sic ane thud of wind, that sail, mast, and taikillis wer blawin in the brim seis: throw quhilk the schip belevit nocht bot sicker deith. The patroun thairof, astonist with sa huge and uncouth tempestis, aganis the season of the yeir, becaus it wes about Sanct Barnabyis Day, quhen the seis apperis more calme than rageand; traistit the samin erar cumin be illusioun of the devil, the ennime of man, than be violence of weddir. In the mene time, the voce wes hard of ane woman, in the how of the schip, wariand herself; for that instant hour scho wes conversit with ane devil in image of ane man: and schew how this devill had usit hir in that maner mony yeris afore; and, thairfore, besocht the pepill to cast hir in the seis, that, be hir deith, the remenant pepill in the schip might be savit. Than, be command of the patroun, ane preist went to hir in that hevy cheir; commanding hir to mak confessioun



of hir abhominable life ; and to have confidence in God, be quhais mercy all sinnis ar purgit, quhen the sinner hes repentance and teris. Quhen this woman wes makand hir confessioun, with gret repentance, to the preist, in sicht of al the pepill ; ane uglie cloud, with ane crak of fire and reik, flew out of the schip, and fell down, with ane venomus stink, in the seis. Incontinent, this tempest ceissit, and the marchandis arrivit at the port quhair thay desirit, but ony forthir trubill.

And about this same time happinit sic ane like exempill, in ane town of Gariach, nocht fourtene milis fra Abirdene. Ane child of gret bewte compleit to the Bischop of Abirdene, that he wes trubillit, lang time, be ane devill in forme of woman, apperandly the fairest creature that evir he saw in his life ; quhilk come to him, quhen durris and windowis bene closit, syne tistit him, be voluptuous brasing, to hir plesoure ; and departit ay in the breking of the day, but ony noyis : and thocht he had assailyeit mony wayis to be deliverit of hir, yit he couth find na remeid. The Bischop, astonist of this illusion, commandit this young child to resort him in sum othir placis, and to be mair fervent in fasting and prayer than he was afore ; quharthrow it micht happin that the devil micht be vincust, and leif him in times cuming. And as the Bischop devisit, sa it come, efter, to this young child ; for he was deliverit of this illusion be the same maner.

Nocht lang fra this time, happinit ane thing nocht unlike to the samin illusioun, in the land of Mar ; as was schawin to us be sindry that saw the samin. Ane madin of nobill blude, and excellent bewte, efter that scho had refusit the mariage of mony nobill men, fell in abhominabill conversation with the devil. Hir freindis seing hir wamb rise, commandit hir to schaw the deflorar of hir chastite. To quhome scho answerit, That ane lusty child, as apperit, usit to cum to hir in the nicht, and sumtime in the day : howbeit scho wist not how he come, nor how he departit. Hir freindis, richt desirus to know the maner, as scho revelit, war advertist, at last, be the madin that lay in hir chalmer, that the deflorar of this madin was cumin. Incontinent, thay come, with huge licht of torchis and candellis, to the bed quhare scho lay, and fand in hir armis ane

maist terribil monstoure. Mony pepil ran to se the sicht: amang quhome was ane preist of gud life and spreit; quhilk, seing the remanent pepil astonist, tuk na feir, bot abaid still, redand the Evangel of Sanct Johne, namit *In Principio*: and quhen he had red to *Verbum caro factum est*, the devill flew away, with horribill cry, and bure the bed and rufe of the hous with him. The thrid day efter, this woman was deliverit of ane monstour, of mair terribill visage than evir was sene be ony pepill afore. The meidwiffes brint the samin, that it suld nocht remane to the dishonour of the hous.

And becaus thir illusionis of devillis war sene in oure dayis, we have collecket thaim in our Buke, that the reidaris may understand sic illusionis of devillis may be. Forthir, tuiching the prophecys of Merlin, howbeit mony of thaim be verifit in our dayis, we will leif thaim to be discussit be theologis, quhidder thay suld be abrogat or have faith; for we wil stand content to obey thair conclusionis: and writ furth the vailyeant deidis of nobil men, as we have begun; and returne to oure history quhare we left.

### Chap. Twenty-first.

*How Ambrose was confiderat with Scottis and Pichtis; and how he slew Hengist, and dang the Saxonis out of Britane. How his two Sisteris war maryit on the confiderat Kingis; and of sindry haly Men.*



FTER deith of Vortigern, ilk day come to Ambrosius mair confluence of pepil: throw quhilk he had sa strang ane army, that he tuke purpos to recover his realme. And to do the samin mair plesandly, he gat Scottis and Pichtis, becaus thay had extreme hatrent aganis Saxonis, confiderat with him. In the mene time, gret nowmer of Britonis come to him, quhilkis war banist afore be Hengist amang the Scottis and Pichtis. Ambrose seing, ilk day, sa gret multitude of pepill

cumand to him, all of ane mind to recover thair realme, went to ane hie mote, quhare he nicht be sene; and complenit the treason-abill deidis of Vortigern aganis the hous of Constantine, in damage of Britonis and thair common weil; and lamentit the huge cruelte of Saxonis done aganis God and man: throw quhilk he enflammit all the pepil in sic desire to recovir thair liberte, and to revenge the injuris done to thaim, that thay, with ane consent, war deliverit to follow his baner aganis Saxonis. And to cause thair purpos to be mair stablit, thay maid him King of Britane: fra the incarnatioun of God, cccxcviii yeris; efter that Vortigern, and Vortimer his son, had rong xvii yeris in Britane.

Ambrose maid king in this maner, began to put his pepil in sic ordour as he was lernit in the weris of France; and come forthwart, with displayit baner, aganis the Saxonis. The vi day efter, met him Loth, King of Pichtis, and Conrannus, Lieutenand to Congallus, King of Scottis, with ane gret army. Ambrose, richt glaid of thair cuming, ressavit thame with gret benivolence, and promittit, quhen he nicht have oportunitie, to recompence thair kindnes. Incontinent, Ambrose rasit his tentis, and come, with thre battallis of Scottis, Pichtis, and Britonis, to ane place namit Mahesbel; for Hengist was cumin thair with ane army of Saxonis, abiding thair cuming. Quhill the tentis of baith the armyis war standing thus in athir sicht, followit frequent preiking, skarmussing, and singular battallis on athir side; quhil, at last, thay junit togidder: and quhen thay had fochtin lang with uncertane victory, the pepill of Bertanye, with Frenchemen, fechtand aganis the mid-dilward of Saxonis, be new ingine and practik of battal, did thame gret trubill. Be than, the Scottis and Pichtis had brokin bath the wingis of thair ennimes, in sic maner, that the standartis of Britonis, Pichtis, and Scottis war cumin out throw the Saxonis, and met togidder: incontinent the Saxonis gaif backis. Hengist seing na way to renew battall, montit on his hors, and was the last man that fled in his army. Ambrose seing the feild discomfist, followit in maist hatrent on Hengist, and ran him throw the body with ane speir. The residew of Saxonis, astonist be his slauchter, fled, with Occa his sonne, to the next montanis.

Efter this victory, Ambrose come, with his victorius army, to London, and maid all the Saxonis and soudjouris quhilkis war left to defend the town, sa affrayit quhen thay hard Hengist slane and his army discomfist, that thay oppinnit the portis, and fell on kneis, petuisly desiring grace. Than Ambrose put ane buschement of armit men to the portis, that na man suld depart, quhill he had tane advisement quhat was to be done; and incontinent he past to the castell. The nobillis quhilkis war left to defend the samin be Hengist, seing him cum with victory on this wise, fell on kneis afore him, and said, "The goddis hes gevin to the; maist invinci-  
 "bill prince! licence to punis us at thy plesour, becaus thy man-  
 "heid and fortoun is invinsibill. Nochtheles, gif it be lefull to  
 "yoldin and miserabill creaturis, dejeckit to extreme rewine, be  
 "hatrent of goddis, to implore mercy and grace afore ane victo-  
 "rius campioun, quhen life and deid is in his handis; we lawly  
 "beseikis the, for the happy victory falling be strang battall to  
 "the, as richtuous prince of this realme, to suffir us, of thy bening  
 "grace, to returne, nakit, wappinles, and scurgit with wandis, gif  
 "it be thy pleasure, in our awin regioun. Gif thow will con-  
 "discend thairto, thow sall be put in memory, not only for maist  
 "honest victory aganis sa pissant ennimes, bot als for thy mercy  
 "gevin to desolate pepil."

Ambrose, movit be thir wordis, wrocht na injuris on Saxonis; bot tuk the castel, and sufferit thame to pas hame, with all thair guddis. Sone efter, be generall edict, al fensabil men of Saxonis wer commandit to pas in Almany; bot the remanent baid stil, as labouraris of the ground, content to pay tribute to Ambrose, and to ressave the Cristin faith. Efter this victory, al Britonis that war exilit in sindry partis of the warld, eschewing the tyranny of Saxonis, returnit in Britane. Than King Ambrose commandit al kirkis to be reparit, the preistis and religious men to be restorit to thair liberte and rowmes: throw quhilk the Cristin faith was in gret veneration throw all partis of Britane; the imageris of idolis put down, and all idolis, quhare thay war apprehendit, brokin; and general procession maid, sindry dayis, be the pepil; the kirkis and housis decorit with flouris, claithis of arres, and tapestreis;



and the stretis resounding with hevinly noyis and melody, in maist delicius musik, to the consolation and rejosing of pepill. Than Ambrose, to schaw his benivolence mair fervent to the confiderat pepill, brocht Loth, King of Pichtis, and Conrannus, Governour of Scottis, within London, levand thair armyis nocht far fra the samin; and feistit thaim, certane dayis, with all maner of danteis that micht be devisit. And quhen he had rewardit thaim with riches and jowellis, as afferit, he commandit thaim, be assent of his nobillis, to be honorit amang his pepill, as defendouris and recoveraris of his realme. Sic thingis done, new peace was maid betwix thaim, under thir conditionis: Al landis lyand beyond Humber suld pas in perpetual dominion of Scottis and Pichtis, but ony clame of Britonis in times cuming; and the Saxonis to be haldin ennimes to thaim baith: and gif the Saxonis returnit in ony part of Albion, the Albanis, with equale mind, suld concur togidder to resist thaim. Thir conditionis of peace wer the better kepit be affinite that followit efter; for Ambrose had two sisteris, of quhilkis the eldest, namit Anna, was maryit on Loth, King of Pichtis, and the youngest, namit Ada, was maryit on Conrannus; to the fine, that the Albanis suld be haldin togidder under ane blud and amite, to withstand the Saxonis. This Ada partit with child within two yeris efter scho come in Scotland, and deceissit; and sa the affinite ceissit betwix Ambrose and Conrannus: bot Anna bure unto Loth, King of Pichtis, thre sonnis, Modreid, Walwane, and Thamete; as we sall efter schaw. The Britonis, Scottis, and Pichtis, stude mony yeris in gud amite and concord, but ony injure of ennimes.

In the mene time, part of Saxonis, quhilkis wer sufferit to remane under tribute, and to tak the Cristin faith, maid private sacrifice to idolis, and war brint, quhen it was knawin. In the samin time, Congallus, King of Scottis, vexit be lang infirmite, deceissit, the xx yeir of his empire, and was buryit in the Abbay of Colmekill.

About this time, war mony haly men in sindry partis of the warld: as, Remigius, Bischop of Remens, quhilk gaif the sacrament of bapteme to Clodovius, King of France. This Clodovius biggit ane kirk of Sanct Genovefa, hallowar of Paris. In thay

days war amang us Colmane, Medane, and Modane, gret precheouris. Sindry Britonis wer martyrit, afore this time, in Albion, be cruelte of Saxonis: throw quhilk mony of thame fled in Scotland; amang quhom was Patriciane, ane man of singular devotion, quhilk was, efter, Bischop of the Ile of Man, and deceissit in the time of Conrannus; of quhilk sal be our nixt history.

And sa endis heir, the Aucht Buke of thir Croniklis.

# The Nint Buke.

---

## HEIR BEGINNIS THE NINT BUKE OF THE CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

### Chap. First.

*Of King Conrannus; and how he maid lawis to punis extorsionis.  
How Occa and Passentius arrivit with new power of Saxonis in  
England; and how thay war vincust be Ambrose,*



ONGALLUS buryit in this maner, his brodir Conrannus wes maid king: for the sonnis of Congallus war of sa tendir age, thay nicht nocht succed, be the lawis afore rehersit. Thair namis wer Eugenius, Conwallus, and Kinnatillus; and wer send to be nurist, undir wise preceptouris, in the Ile of Man. Con-  
anrnus, eftir his coronatioun, that na truble suld rise amang his legis for our lang peace, went throwe all the boundis of his realme, for executioun of justice; and punist mony criminabill personis, according to thair demeritis. And quhen he wes passing throw the cuntre in this wise, he wes advertist that sindry of his commonis wer sa opprest be tyranny of his nobillis, that thay durst nothir

complane, nor yit follow thair actioun afore his justice: and, thairfore, this nobill prince, to punis sic extorsionis done to his pepill, commandit certane exploratouris to pas throw al boundis of his realme, and to serche quhair ony sic suspitiis personis wer, that baith thair namis and thair crimis be writtin in the kingis rollis: and gif ony of thir personis wer found criminabill eftir, quhen thay wer accusit be the kingis advocat, thay wer punist to the deith. Thus wer the commonis, mony yeris eftir, deliverit of all oppressioun of the nobillis. This maner of justice is conterfaitit yit, in our dayis. It is said that Conrannus usit, quhen his counsall sat in ony part of his realme, outhir to be present, or ellis to be in ane wod at his hunting, nocht far fra thame, to mak his officiaris the more auctorist. And quhen he wes at huntis in Athole, not far fra the montanis of Granye bene, he slew ane hart be lang chace; and fand ane huge multitude of serpentis in his wambe, to the gret admiration of pepil; for the hornis of ane hart ar ane singular remede aganis the bit of serpentis, and chasis al uthir venimus beistis.

Quhil sic thingis war done in Scotland, Ambrose, King of Britonis, fell in ane dwinand seiknes, namit the Ethik fevir; be quhilk his body wes pinit sa, but remeid of medicine, that he micht have na rest, and wes disparit of his life. Occa and Passentius, the sonnis of Hengist, advertist of this infirmite falling to Ambrose, belevit, gif he wer deccissit, to recover the realme of Ingland; and, thairfore, gaderit ane huge power, be support of all the princis of Almanay, and returnit in Ingland. At this time, Uter, the Prince of Walis, brodir to Ambrose, wes in gret doloure be malady of fluxe, with vehement thirst and fever: throw quhilk the Britonis wes desolat, as apperit, but ony capitane to sustene the weris aganis the Saxonis. Nocht heles, ane conventioun wes set of the noblis, to avise quhat wes to be don in this maist dangerus mater. Eftir lang consultatioun, thay war devidit in sindry opinionis. Ambrose seing, be thair contrarius vocis, sa hie dangeir apperand to his realme, tuke na solitude of his infirmiteis; bot causit himself to be tursit upon ane litter betwix twa gret hors, syne past forthwart aganis the Saxonis; and send his ambassatouris to solist the Scottis and Pichtis, his confiderat freindis, to cum, with maist deligence, to



that samin effect. Bot afore thair cuming, the injuris and crueltis of Saxonis wer sa importable, that Ambrose wes constrenyeit to fecht with thaim; and thought he wes in maist uneis and maledy, yit he laikit na thing that nicht pertene to ane forcy campiou, or to rais the spreit of his army to maist curage. At thair first joning, the Britonis wer sum part put abak, and gret slauchter maid on thame: nochtheles, Ambrose, traisting na thing mair honest than to de, gif that wer his chance, amang his vailyeant knichtis, went about the army, exhorting thaim to perseveir in ithand battall, and to remembir quhat excellent palme of glore wes abiding thaim, gif thay, be force of armes, dang thair ennimes, or deceissit for defence of thair realme, liberte, and faith. The Britonis rasis be hie spreit and curage be his wourdis, ruschit with maist furie in battall, and finalie put thair ennimes to flicht; on quhome followit the Britonis with lang chace, and maid gret slauchter. Ambrose seing the nicht fast approche, inhibit the chace, and brocht his army, be sound of trumpat, to his standart. The Britonis, during the nicht, stude arrayit in battall, and on the morow thay partit the spulye thair of, be rite of armes: yit, quhen thay began to nowmer thair army, thay fand mair slauchter succeding to thaim than to Saxonis, howbeit thay had the victorie. Ambrose finding his army brokin in this wise, dred, gif he jeoperd thaim ony forthir aganis Saxonis, na felicite to follow; and, thairfore, skalit his army, and tuke four monethis trewis with Saxonis.

Occa, advertist that Scottis and Pichtis wald cum in support of Ambrose, send his brodir Passentius, to bring ane new army out of Almany. Sum auctouris sayis, quhen Passentius wes passand in Almany, be contrarius windis he wes drevin in Ireland, quhair he wagit ane huge multitude of weirmen, and returnit with thaim in Britane. Occa, nochtwithstanding this strang army brocht in Britane be cuming of his brodir, thocht the chance of battall aganis Britonis richt dangerus, during the empire of Ambrose; and, thairfore, he instruckit ane Saxon, quhilk had perfite language of Britonis, to sla Ambrose. This Saxon that wes subornat in his slauchter, wes ane monk, namit Coppa; and fenyait him to be ane medcinare, havand remeid aganis all maner of infirmiteis. At last he wes brocht to the king, quhair he lay, at Gowntoun. Eftir lang com-

moning, he promittit to gif the king certane drinkis, be quhilkis he suld baith recover his heil, and be deliverit of al maladie. Quhen Coppa wes commandit be the king to mak his drinkis, he usit not, the first day, bot delicious seropis, maid of soft spicis, and liquouris plesand to the mouth: throwe quhilk he gat credence to use, eftir, quhat drinkis he list. At last, this Coppa, watand time to poison the king, gadderit sindry herbis inducing men to sleip, and meddillit the jus thairof with vennome: of quhilkis he maid ane serop, and brocht the samin to the king, saying, This drink sall mak the convales, and be deliverit of al dolorus infirmite. Ambrose havand na suspition, tuke the drink, and wes commandit be Coppa to tak rest, to that fine, that the vennom nicht skail throw all the vanis of his body: and quhen he fand the king on sleip, he commandit the chalmer to be kepit but ony noyis; and, in the mene time, he stall away to the nixt wod, quhare he fand part of Saxonis waitand, with swift hors, to take him away. Quhen Ambrose, be unhappy sleip, had skaillit the vennom throw the vanis of his body, he gaif ane litill sobe, and deceissit, the vii yeir of his regne. His body wes buryit in the Abbay of Stenthend, quhilk wes biggit be him afore, in memore of the nobill men that wer slane be treason of Hengist.

### Chap. Second.

*Of gret cruelteis done be Occa to Britonis. How Scottis and Pichtis war frustrat of thair voyage. Of gret mervellis sene in Albion. Of the interpretatioun of thame be Merline.*



AMBROSE deceissit as we have schawin, the Britonis maid sa huge lament for his deith, that the Saxonis wer advertist thairof. Occa, glaid of thair dolorus cheir, and knowing, be deceis of Ambrose, and of the lang infirmite falling to King Uter, na pissance in Britane to resist aganis him; tuk purpos to oppres the Britonis, afore thay wer assemblit, in the maist cruell maner that nicht be devisit. Mony of

the Britonis, abasit be his cruelte, fled in Walis; otheris fled in Scotland; otheris remanit still in Britane, thirllit to servitude, and plesour of Saxonis. In the mene time, the Scottis and Pichtis come, with strang army, in Britane, in support of Ambrose, to expell the Saxonis out of the samin: bot quhen thay wer advertist of Ambrose deith, and wist not gif he wer slane be treasoun of Saxonis, or deviation of Britonis amang thaimself; unknowing quha wes freind or fa, thay returnit hame, the same gait thay come.

At this time wer sene mony uncouth mervellis in Albion, and wer interprete be Merline to the gret terroure of pepill. Ane firy comeit wes sene, with mony terrible bemes; ane crownit dragoun wes sene birnand in the lift; grene treis tuke suddand fire, and brint; auld treis, that wer afore cuttit fra the ground, flurist and bure levis; the reveir of Thamis apperit bludy; ane well sprang up in the middis of Yorke, with sic haboundance of blud, that all the stretis wer repleite thairof; in Kent, ane child leuch in his motheris wambe. Thir mervellis, be interpretatioun of Merline, causit the Britonis cum in battal aganis the Saxonis: for Merline interpret this comeit to King Ambrose; this crownit dragoun, to Uter, his brodir; the blude signifyit his bludy swerd aganis the Saxonis; and the fire signifyit the uter exterminion of Saxonis. Uter gave sic credence to thir interpretationis of Merline, that he tuke the crownit dragon for his armis, and bure it birnand as gold, in ane feild of asure, to the coloure of the lift; and wes callit, thairfore, Uter Pendragon be the pepill.

## Chap. Third.

*How Uter was maid King of Britonis; and how he was discomfist be Saxonis, and chasit in Walis. How Saxonis and Britonis war agreit.*



HE nobillis of Britane tuk sic persuasion be Merline and his prophecy, that thay come to Uter in Walis, and maid him king; syne commandit the pepill to be reddy, at ane schort day, to pas on the Saxonis. King Uter, efter that the Britonis war gaderit at the day prefixit, gaif the charge of battall to Nathaliodus, ane man of vile and obscure linnage, mair for his familiarite than virtew. The nobillis of Britane tuke na litill indignation, that ane man nocht perregall to thaim in linnage nor pissance was preferrit to thaim in honour and dignite; and said, The king was imprudent, his empire not beand stabilit, to decore ane man of small linnage with sa hie chargis, in thair contemptioun; and jugit, thairfore, gif he had sicker peace, but trubil of ennimes, to magnifie men of small linnage with honouris above thame: yit, becaus thair commoun weill was approaching to hie dangeir, thay put silence to sic materis, be counsall of prudent men. Nathaliodus, nochtwithstanding the indignation of thir nobillis aganis him, tuke peirtly the charge, and went forthwart with proud baner aganis Saxonis. Occa, advertist be his exploratouris quhat the Britonis intendit, brocht forthwart his army with diligence. Followit, sone, ane battal richt unplesand to Britonis; for Gothlois, Prince of Cornewal, impacient to suffer Nathaliodus preferrit to him, cum out of the feild, with all his oist, and left the remanent army of Britonis reddy to ressave the injure of ennimes. Thus war the Britonis finaly discomfist. Occa, nochtwithstanding this discomfitour, brocht his army, be-sound of trumpet, to the standert, and inhibit ony ferther chace to be maid on Britonis; traisting Gothlois fled onely be slicht, to invaid the Saxonis quhen he saw occasioun. Gothlois, seand the Britonis put



to flicht, that he suld not be ane pray to his ennimes, fled, within the nicht, the nerrest way he nicht, in Cornawal. Occa, on the morrow, seing the campe desert, understude the Britonis war discomfist, and send ane herald to Uter, chargeing him to pas in Walis, with the Britonis, under pane of deith; and to leif Ingland, quhilk he conquest be the swerd, to be inhibite be him and Saxonis. Uter, revolving how dangerus and doutsum was to renew battall aganis Saxonis, and knowing his realme bot ane facil pray to his ennimes, gif thay feirsly persewit; began to detest the dammage of al weris, and answerit to the herald, He wald leif all hatrent aganis the Saxonis, and have peace; nocht for feir of thaim, bot onely to remove trubil, that his pepil nicht leif in peace: and desirit Occa, sen na gret occasion of weris was betwix him and Britonis, to put fine thairto in time cuming. And forthir, he wald be content that foure prudent men wer chosin, on ilk side, to evin all debatis betwix thame; that Britonis and Saxonis nicht increas togidder under ane perpetuall amite, in times cuming. Occa, knowing thir offeris proceeding mair be febill curage than ony manheid, tuk peace with glaid cheir; and rejosit, sen victory and chance of battall was uncertane, that the realme of Ingland was sa esaly conquest. Efter this, peace was maid in this maner: All the landis of Ingland lyand fornce the Almane seis sall pas, in times cuming, under the empire of Saxonis; the residew of that regioun callit Britane to remane under the empire of Britonis, as it wes afore; and athir pepill to leif under thair awin lawis. Throw this peace, baith the pepill incressit togidder in polecy and riches, but ony injuris of otheris; the Saxonis levand on thair hethin lawis, and the Britonis eftir the Cristin faith: yit mony of thaim wer intricat with Pelagius herisyis, aberrand fra the sicker faith.

## Chap. Fourth.

*How Uter slew the Prince of Cornewall, and gat Arthure on his wife. How Loth, King of Pichtis, clomit the crown of Britane; and how Britonis war purgit of thair herisyis. How Terdia and Kenrik come to Occa, with new power of Saxonis; and how the Saxonis war vincust be mirakill.*



IN this time, Uter, King of Britonis, wes degenerat fra virtew, in maist schamefull lust; for the surfet idelnes, and exces of plesoure regnand than amang the Britonis wes occasioun nocht onlie of his adultry, bot als of slauchter: throw quhilk succedit mony terrible weris, to the gret affliction of his pepill. Schort time following, Uter maid ane riatus banket in Londoun, on Yuill day; on quhilk all the nobillis of Britane, with thair wiffis, wer present: amang quhome wes ane lady of gret bewte, the spous of Gothlois, Prince of Cornewell. Uter, ravist with bewte of this lady, send his cubicularis, with riche jowellis, to solist hir to his plesour. Gothlois, knowing Uter effeminate and desiring to defoule his bed, fled haistelie with hir to Cornewell: on quhome Uter followit with gret power, havand na sicht to his graviteis nor princelie estait; and, finalie, had this lady at his will; and gat on hir ane sonne, namit Arthure, quhilk succedit to him, as eftir we sal schaw. Sic thingis done, Uter segit the castell quhair Gothlois wes, and slew him, eftir that the castell wes tane; alliegeand that he fled fra Nathaliodus quhen Britonis faucht aganis the Saxonis: howbeit, his mind wes to sla this Gothlois, that he micht repose his wife frelie in times cumming. Sum men writtis, that Uter wes transformit, be craft of Merline, in Gothlois similitude, and be that way he gat Arthur: nochtwithstanding, in quhatsumevir way it wes, treuth is, that Uter gat him on ane othir mannis wife. Als sone as Arthure wes cumin to perfite age, Uter gaderit all his nobillis of Britane to ane counsall, and causit thame to be sworne on the Evangell, to suffer nane othir to regne

in Britane behind him, bot Arthure, his sonne: quhilk thing rasis the Pichtis with gret hatrent aganis Uter; for Loth, King of Pichtis, wes impacient and richt commovit, that Arthure, gottin in adultrie, suld be preferrit to his childrin, gottin in lauchfull bed, and just heritouris of the crown of Britane. Nochtheles, quhen this King Loth of Pichtis had assailyeit lang to brek Uter of his mind, and nicht na wayis do the samin, he supersedit all his purpos quhill he saw the seasoun more expedient.

Mony of the Britonis, be frequent conventioun with Saxonis, left the richt faith, and maid adoratioun to idolis; utheris followit the errouris of Pelagius, and set thaim to distroy the Cristin faith in Britane: throw quhilk thair errouris wer sa gret, that baptisme wes inhibit, with mony othir artikillis of the faith. The prelati of Britane, havand gret displeseir that thir errouris wer sprong sa hie amang thair pepill, brocht Sanct Germane and Sanct Seveir in Britane: quhilkis finalie, be haly life and continewall precheing, kithit mony mirakillis; and maid the Britonis to be penitent of thair errouris, and to return to the trewe faith of Crist. Thir haly men also purchest licence at Occa to preche amang the Saxonis.

Sic thingis done in Britane, arrivit in Ingland twa nobill men, namit Terdix and Kenrik, with new armyis of Saxonis; and al thir Saxonis wer plesandlie ressavit be Occa: bot Kenrik wes ane scharp persewar of Cristin men; and wes slane, eftir, be the commonis of Ingland, becaus he gart Sanct Germane ly thairout in ane evill nicht. The cuming of thir Saxonis in Ingland wer richt suspicious to King Uter; and maid him beleve that Occa wes irkit of peace, and seikand new occasioun, contrar the peace afore contrackit, to invaid the Britonis: and, thairfore, he send ane herald till Occa, exhorting him to keip the amite and peace afore contrackit with Britonis, and to abstene fra all thing that nicht gener occasioun of discord betwix the two pepill; and to caus thir Saxonis laityly cumin in Ingland to returne in Almany; utherwayis litill tranquillite apperis betwix the two pepill in times cuming. Occa thocht Uter our proud to desire sic thingis, or to inhibit him to ressave freindis, as him plesit, in Ingland. Nochtheles, he answerit, That he wes als weill set to keip the band betwix the two pepil as Uter; and did nevir, sen the peace wes contrackit, injure to Britonis. Thus nicht

the Britonis have na sufficient causis to lament. Nochtheles, he understude weil that King Uter wes seikand occasioun to move weir betwix Britonis and Saxonis, commanding him to ressave na Saxonis in Ingland, bot to send thame schamfullie agane in Almany, howbeit the Saxonis come nocht in Ingland be command of Britonis, nor yit wer to depart at thair pleseir. It wes thairfore to be eschewit, that Uter and his nobillis, be fuliche chargis, bring nocht thameself fra sicker eis to maist dangerus fall. And sen thay first socht occasioun of battall, thay suld have it, quhil ane of thame wer uterly distroyit. Uter and the nobillis of Britane, richt astonist of this answeire, send thair secund ambassatouris to Occa, with large soumis of gold and riches, to draw his mind fra battall. Occa resavit the gold, and, for contempion, maid the ambassatouris to retorne hame but ony answer. The Britonis, movit with thir injuris, and seing na bandis nor peace nicht hald the Saxonis at freindschip, maid thair ordinance, in thair best maner, for battall; and, belive, the peace wes gevin up on all sidis.

Loth, King of Pichtis, knowing thir weris rising betwix Saxonis and Britonis, offerit him, wilfullie, to cum, with al his pepil, in support of Occa, aganis the Britonis, becaus thay intendit to defraud his sonnys of the crown of Britane, quhilk pertinit to thame be just titil; and send his ambassatouris to Conrannus, King of Scottis, to concur with him to the samin effect: bot Conrannus refusit, saying, He wald nothir violat the peace maid afor with Britonis, nor yit support the ennimes of God aganis Catholik pepil. The Britonis, knowing the ordinance of Pichtis and Saxonis aganis thame, complementit to thair haly bischopis, Germane and Seveir. Thir bischopis commandit tham to assemble thair army, and commit thame to God; and gif thay sa did, thay suld not fail to have victory of thair ennimes. The Britonis, howbeit thay had na litill feir of thir Saxonis, come, with thir haly bischopis, in arrayit battall: and quhen thay wer doing devine service on Pasche day, tithingis come that Saxonis and Pichtis wer cumand in arrayit battall. Incontinent, be command of Uter, ilk man past to his best array; and Sanct Germane promisit to fecht in the first battall, with the preistis. The Saxonis and Pichtis, knowing thair febil ordinance, presumit not bot victory, and war, thairfore, the mair properant in battal.



Sanct Germane bure the baner, and exhortit the pepil, with gret noyis, to pas forthwart. At the first juning, the preistis cryit, with ane hie voce, *Alleluja!* And incontinent, the reflex of the voce resoundit agane the rochis, quhare thay junit, with sic preis, that thair ennimes belevit not bot al the montanis and craggis wer tumbland down on thame attanis; and incontinent thay fled, but ony mair debait, to the nixt river, quhare mony of thaim, be feirnes to fle, perist. The maner of this battal and victory is rehersit at lenth be Sanct Bede, becaus it come be mirakill of Sanct Germane.

### Chap. Fifty.

*How Occa and Nathaliodus, invading othir be battall, war baith slane, with xv.m Britonis. How young Occa wes maid King of Ingland, and of his ordinance aganis the Scottis and Pichtis; and how thay war vincust, and King Uter slane be poisoun.*



THE Britonis, proude of this victory, tuke na sicht to the weil of thameself, nor hatrent of Saxonis; and gaif thame to thair auld corruppit vicis with sic riatus surfet, that thay spendit sumtime twa, sumtime thre dayis, but interruption, in thair bankettis: throw quhilk thay war degenerat, fra vailyeant pepill, in maist schamfull drunkettis. The prelatis and othir kirkmen, richt sorrowfull for thir vicis of thair pepil, ceissit not continewally to preche; sayng, Gif thair viciis livis war not amendit, thair realme sall fall in pray to thair ennimes. And as thir haly bischoppis conjecturit, sa followit; for Occa, within schort time efter, invadit thame be battall, and slew Nathaliodus, Lieutenant to Uter, with xv.m Britonis. Nochttheles, he followit sa feirsly on the chace, that he was slane, and mony vailyeant capitanis with him. The Britonis war sa brokin be this battall, that thay ceissit, in times cuming, to invade the Saxonis. Efter the slauchter of Occa, the Saxonis maid Occa, his brothir sonne, King of Ingland. And becaus Loth, King of Pichtis, supportit the Bri-

tonis in this last battal, as certane prisoneris of Pichtis takin in the feild schew, the Saxonis maid thair ordinance to invade the Pichtis: yit, dredand that Scottis suld cum in thair support, thay brocht ane nobil man, namit Colgern, with ane new power, out of Almany; and promittit, gif he distroyit the Pichtis, to geif him al the landis that the Pichtis rejosit beyond Humber; becaus the said Pichtis war confiderat afore with thame, and, contrar thair bandis, faucht laityly with Britonis in thair contrar.

Sone efter, Colgern arrivit in Northumberland, invading the cuntre with importabill cruelteis. The inhabitantis thairof, impatient to sustene sa hie injuris, faucht aganis him with gret fury: nochtheles, thay war discomfist. Als sone as Occa knew the cuming of Colgern, he tuk peace with Britonis, and come, with gret army, aganis the Pichtis. This last cruelte done be Colgern in Northumberland movit the confiderat kingis to cum, with al pepil under thair empire, to revenge the samin: yit, quhen thair army was cumin in sicht of ennimes, and saw sa gret multitude of pepil aganis thame, thay wer affrayit; specially be rehers of Britonis quhilkis come to thair support, sayng, The Saxonis war of huge bodyis and stature; sa pissant in battall, that oftymes thay put thair ennimes to flicht be thair terribil visage. Thir wordis maid the army sa astonist, that mony of thame had fled but ony tary, war not schame constranit thame to abide. On the morrow, the confiderat kingis, seing thame sa abasit, callit the noblis of baith the armyis, and said to thame in this maner: “ We mervel, gud com-  
 “ panionis, quhy your proud curage bene sa dekeyit, that mony of  
 “ yow that ar in this pissant army apperis, be onely sicht of your  
 “ ennimes, affrayit, and sa degenerat fra manheid, that ye seme  
 “ disparit but ony dangeir appering; for Saxonis ar not of sic vir-  
 “ tew and strenth, bot othir pepil may dant thame be victory. Ye  
 “ have experience that the said Saxonis bene oft vincust in Albion,  
 “ to our gret triumphe and honour. Thay war vincust be King  
 “ Vortimer, and chasit be him out of Britane; and thay war vin-  
 “ cust also be Ambrose; and becaus thay durst not meit him in  
 “ plane battal, as apperit, thay slew him be treason: and the Bri-  
 “ tonis, of quhilkis mony ar now wagiouris to Saxonis, hes bene oft  
 “ discomfist be yow, and mony yeris maid tributar to yow. Na

“ thing restis, thairfore, forey campionis, to mak yow affrayit.  
 “ Attour, sen your action is just, and your adversaris wrangusly  
 “ invading yow, how may ye beleif ony othir thing bot victory?  
 “ Gif ony effrayis yow be gret magnitude and strenth of Saxonis,  
 “ thay ar evil jugeis; for na pepil ar in erd of mair stature, or of  
 “ strangar bodyis, than ar the Scottis and Pichtis. And gif ye be  
 “ of les spreit and curage than Saxonis ar, that may be impute to  
 “ nocht bot to youre awin sleuth; for your bodyis ar of na les sta-  
 “ ture and strenth than thairis. Thus suld nane of yow accuse  
 “ Nature, gif your curage be nocht corespondent to your bodyis.  
 “ And sen Nature hes maid yow strang, lusty, deliver of bodyis,  
 “ and reddy to sustene all labouris, nocht remanis bot to devoid al  
 “ shameful cowardy, following the manheid and virtew of your  
 “ eldaris; and remembring, na thing may succede mair to youre  
 “ schame and dammage, than to be miserably vincust, bringand  
 “ yourself, your wiffis, children, and landis, under servitude of en-  
 “ nimes. And, sa far as pertenis to our devore, beleif not bot we  
 “ sall jeoperd our livis in defence of yow; that our ennimes may  
 “ understand quhidder the noblis of Scottis and Pichtis ar movit  
 “ mair to scham or dredour, to defend thair realme in extreme  
 “ dangeir.”

Be thir wordis, the army was inflammit with birnand desire to  
 fecht. Mony of thir capitanis schew tham nevir of purpos to fle,  
 nor yit to do ony thing contrar the mind of thair prince. Skarsly  
 war thir wordis said, quhen baith the armyis junit, and faucht with  
 incredibill hatrent and doutsum victory; bot at last, the confiderat  
 pepil, ouriset with multitude of ennimes, gaif bakkis: on quhom  
 followit the Saxonis, invading thame with ithand slauchter, quhill  
 the nicht put end thairto. On the morrow, the King of Scottis,  
 with the residew of his army, returnit in Galloway, and the King  
 of Pichtis in Pentland. Efter this victory, Occa slew all the Scottis  
 and Pichtis found betwix Tyne and Tweid, and garnist all the  
 strenthis thairof with strang munitioun and wageouris; and maid  
 Colgern Prince of Northumberland, to defend the samin aganis all  
 invasouris.

Efter this victory of Scottis and Pichtis, King Occa come, with  
 his victorius army, aganis the Britonis, becaus thay supportit the

Scottis and Pichtis, contrar thair band; and schortly dang thaim out of Ingland in Walis, and reparit the strenthis in all partis of Ingland; sumtime makand scarmussing on Britonis, Scottis, and Pichtis, to caus the pepill understand, that thay nicht nocht leif but exercition of weris.

King Uter, about this time, fell in ane fever, and desirit ane of his servandis to bring him ane drink of clere watter fra the nixt fontane, to slokin his vehement thirst; and incontinent, ane Saxone, instruckit to the same effect, gave him ane drink envenomit with poison: and, sone efter, he deceissit, in the xviii yeir of his regne; fra the incarnatioun, dxxi yeris.

### Chap. Sixth.

*Of the Romane Boece, and of his werkis and martyrdome. Of the institutionis of the ordour of Sanct Benedict; and how superflew rentis makis evill religious men. How Loth, King of Pichtis, clamit the crown of Britane.*



IN thir dayis was Boece, the Romane senatoure, richt expert in theology, philosophy, mathematik, and sindry othir science. He wrate excellent werkis of the Trinite; and siclik of logik, rethorik, geomatry, arismetrik, musik, and astronomy, sa profoundly, that his werkis ar yit in gret admiration to all pepill. At last, he was slane at Revenna, be Theodorik, King of Ostrogotis, with mony othir haly men, for thay wald not applaude to the herisy of Arrius. Bot this cruelte was nocht lang unpunist be justice of God; for this Theodorik deceissit sone efter miserably, and the name of Gothis put out of memory; and the said Boece, with his fallowis, eikit to the nowmer of sanctis. In thir dayis was Sanct Benedict, quhilk institute the ordour of monkis, thocht it was begun afore be Basilius in the orient. And, becaus he was irkit with frequent company of pepil, he come to Cassinun, quhare he translatit the tempill of Appollo in ane abbay of his ordour, and dedicat it to Sanct Johne the Baptist.



Sic felicitate succedit to this ordour, that thair of hes bene xxiv Papis, CLXXXVIII cardinalis, and of othir prelati innumerable. Among us, siclik, ar many riche abbays of this ordour, with men of gret devotion: howbeit, thay wald have bene mair religious and devout, gif thay had bene dotat with les magnificence of princes; for the superflew rentis of thir abbays, gevin be magnificence of princis, inducis religious men mair to sleuth and sensuall lustis than to ony fervent devotion. This Benedict deceissit at Cassinum, fra the incarnation DXXVIII yeris; quhare he is buryit, with Scolastica, his sister: in the time of Justine, Empriour. And at this time, Brigida, the haly virgine, havand bot xiv yeris in age, dedicat hir virginite to God; and was confirmit be the Bischop of the Ilis, in the Ile of Man. Scho bure ane leddern belt above ane quhit kirtil, with ane vale our hir schoulderis; and was haldin in gret reverence in Scotland and Ireland, for hir singular halines: of quhome ar many kirkis in this regioun. Scho deceissit in the xviii yeris of Conrannus, and was buryit in Ireland, in ane town namit Dune. Howbeit, sum of the Scottis haldis that scho lye in Abirnethy.

In this time was Sanct Geberine, Scottisman, quhilke fled in France, with his brethir and sisteris, to eschew the cruelte of Saxonis, and was, efter, Bischop of Remens, quhare he kithit sindry mirakillis. And in this time was institut the processoun of the Gangdayis in France, thre dayis afore the Ascension-day, be Mamerius, Bischop of Veen; and it was ressavit in Scotland be Convellanus, Abbot of Colmekill. This Convellanus was ane prophete, and schew many thingis to cum, concerning the exterminion of Pichtis and Britonis. He schew, als, gret felicitie to cum to Scottis; and how Inglismen war to be convertit to sicker faith. He schew, als, gret calamite to fal to the nobillis of Albion, bot gif thay haistely amendit thair corruppit life. This Convellanus was in the time of Arthure, quhilke was King of Britonis efter deith of Uter.

Quhil sic thingis wer done among the Scottis, Loth, King of Pichtis, send his ambassatouris to Britonis, clamand the crowne of Britane, be the lawis usit in Albion, quhen ony man maryit ane virgine, his children suld succed to the heritage that nicht justly pertene to hir: and becaus he maryit Anna, the sister of Ambrose

and Uter, quhilkis war deceissit but lawful airis, he alliegit that Modred and Walwan, his sonnys gottin on Anna, suld succeid, be just titil, to the crown of Britane. Nochtheles, the ambassatouris war depeschit be the Britonis with displesand answer, and gat na thing of thair desiris.

### Chap. Seventh.

*How the Saxonis war sindry times vincust, and maid tributaris to King Arthure. How Occa arrivit with new power in Northumberland, and chasit Arthure in Walis. How the surfet cheir of Yule was evill institute. How Pichtis and Britonis war agreit.*



SHORT time efter, King Arthure gadderit ane army of Britonis, and faucht aganis the Saxonis, nocht x milis fra London; and dantit thame with sa huge victory, that thay war maid tributar, and thirllit to servitude under his empire. The Britonis, proud of this victory, come to London, quhare thay remanit sindry monethis, makand thair ordinance aganis the Saxonis dwelland beyond Humbir; quhilkis war confiderat, that time, with Pichtis, and all injuris redressit on al sidis. King Arthure cumand on this maner to York, arrayit his army, and maid the Prince of Bertanye his lieutenant and to fecht aganis the Pichtis; for he was cumin afore, with ane gret power out of the samin, to his support. The battallis finaly being arrayit with maist awful ordinance, junit togidder, and faucht with uncredibill hatrent, quhil, at last, baith the Pichtis and Saxonis wer discomfist; on quhome followit the Britonis, invading thame with continewall slauchter, quhil thay come to York, quhare mony of thaim wer ressavit. Arthure havand sa frequent victorie on Saxonis, laid ane sege aboute York. And quhen he had bene thre monethis at the samin, and it reddy to be randerit for laik of vittallis, he wes advertist that Occa, quhilk wes chasit afore in Almanay, wes returnit in Northumberland with newe power of Saxonis, and colleckit the Pichtis agane to him, with mair ardent furie of battall than afore.

And becaus he understude sa gret nowmer of fayis reddy to invaid him, he left the sege forsaid, and fled with his army in Walis; levand behind him Hoell, Duke of Bertanye, with ane part of his army, to withstand his ennimes during the winter seasoun. Schort time eftir, he returnit to London, to dant the furie of Saxonis, quhilkis wer cumin in Kent, and otheris regionis thairabout; and usit sic liberalite to win the favoure of his pepill, that sumtime he laikit money to his necessare use. In the nixt simer he rasis his camp, and come forthwart aganis Colgern and Occa, quhilkis wer makand gret heirschippis in sindry partis of his realme; and finalie, he dantit thaim with sindry victoryis: and tuke York, the thrid day eftir his returning, be treason of ane Briton, quhilk wes haldin for ane Saxon in the town: be quhome he brocht gret nowmer of Britonis within the said town, under nicht, sa quietlie, that it wes tane, and all the sodjouris thair of cruellie slane; the remanent pepill wer savit be his mercy. The nixt simer ourpast be frequent skarmussing betwix the Saxonis in Northumbirland and the Britonis in York. This ciete wes richt populus, all the nixt winter, with mony nobillis and commonis of Britane; quhilkis wer gevin to thair lust, sleip, riatus bankettis, and sensualite, confiding more in thair victorie bygane than in thair present strenth. It is said, the surfet cheir that is usit yit amang Inglismen and Scottis, XIII dayis togiddir eftir Cristinmes, wes institute that time be King Arthure. Nochtheles, however that schamfull glutony first began, it has corruppit sa the ingine of Inglismen and Scottis, that, in the dayis of Cristis nativite, thay arre mair gevin to voracite than virtew, and more to thair wambe than to devine service: throw quhilk that solempne feist, sumtime had in sic devotioun and reverence amang oure anciant faderis, is sa corruppit, that it is like unto the feistis of Gentilis maid in honour of Bachus, Flora, and Priapus; quhilkis wer devisit more for the lust and plesouris of men and women, than ony gud religioun.

In the nixt simer, quhen Arthure wes cumin to Humbir to invaid the Saxonis, he fand his army sa effeminat and soft, that thay wer nocht able to sustene laubour nor siclik weirly besines as thay wer afore: throw quhilk, mony yeris eftir, thay did litill displeseir

to thair ennimes; and had na esperance of victorie, quhil Loth, King of Pichtis, wes confiderat with King Arthure in this maner: That Arthure suld reiose the croun of Britane during his life, and eftir his deith the sonnys of Loth sall succeid: the Pichtis to concur with Britonis aganis Saxonis in times cuming; and al landis quhilkis the Pichtis micht conques beyond Humbir, to pas under thair dominion. Attoure, Modred, King Lothis son, sal mary the dochter of Gawolane, gretest prince under the King of Britane; and the childrin gottin betwix thame to be nurist with thair gudschir Gawolane; and that Gawane, brothir to Modred, sall remane in continewall residence with King Arthure, to be tretit according to his estait.

### Chap. Eighth.

*How the Scottis and Pichtis war confiderat with King Arthure aganis the Saxonis. How the Saxonis war vincust be the Albionis, and doun out of Albion.*



HE peace roborat in maner afore rehersit, King Arthur, desiring to banis Cristis ennimes out of Albion, solistit the confiderat kingis to cum at ane prefixt day, to concur with him for defence of Cristin faith; quhilk day the Britonis, Scottis, and Pichtis convenit togidder under ane mind and purpos. King Occa advertist heirof, rasit his campe, and met the Albionis in his maist cruel wise. Quhen the battalles war arrayit on athir side, Colgern, Prince of the Saxonis in Northumberland, come on ane sweift gelding to the Pichtis, reprevand thaim of thair unfaithfull mind, considering thay ressavit the pepill in frendship and kindnes, quhilk war laityly thair deidly ennimes, and bure armour aganis thair anciant freindis, lang afore with thaim confiderat; and yit, gif thay pas forthwart that day to support the Britonis, thay sal have sum experience quhidder thair awin falset or the faith of Saxonis war maist abill to have victory. The Pichtis,



na thing movit with thir wordis, displayit thair baner, and faucht with incredibill hatrent aganis the Saxonis. Followit ane terribil bergane; for the Scottis, that faucht in the richt wing, slew Childirik, cheiftane of Saxonis, fornentis thaim, and put that battal to flicht. Colgern, quhilk faucht in the left wing aganis the Pichtis, richt desirus to conques glore, ruschit sa feirsly aganis Loth, King of Pichtis, that he dang Loth frome his hors. Nochtheles, Loth was reskewit be the Pichtis, and Colgern invadit be thame sa cruelly, that he was brocht with speris to the ground, and slane. The middil ward seing baith thair wingis discomfist, gaif backis; on quhome the Britonis followit with lang chace and murdir. Occa, evil woundit, fled out of the feild amang the horsmen; and quhen he saw na place sicker to his defence, he gat ane schip, and fled in Almany. The remanent Saxonis, brokin with this slauchter, and seing na rescous, randerit thaim to King Arthure, under thir conditionis: Thay sall ressave the faith of Crist, and leve as tributar under him. And geif thir conditionis war not acceppit, to leif thair wappinnis and guddis behind thame, and depart of the cuntre within ane certane day. Sa mony of Saxonis as micht get schippis afore the said day, fled in Almany; and quhen the Almanis saw thame return with sic misery and trubill, thay maid thair solempne aithis to revenge the schamful ejectioun of thaim out of Britane, quhen-evir thay micht have sufficient oportunitie. Part of Saxonis fenyeit thame to take the faith, abiding ane better fortoun; and otheris war slane, becaus thay wald nocht renunce thair idolatrie.

## Chap. Ninth.

*How the Scottis and Pichtis come, with xx thousand men, in support of King Arthure, aganis Saxonis; and how the Saxonis war discomfist.*



UHILL the Saxonis war banist and thirllit to servitude on this maner, King Arthur set him to repare the kirkis and all enormiteis done in York; for the Saxonis wrocht in it gret crueleteis. In the yeir following, he was advertist, that the Saxonis that inhabit the Ile of Wicht, with otheris of Kent, war assemblit togidder, makand grete crueleteis and heirschippis in the Britonis landis. To repres thir attemptatis, Arthure went, with ane gret power, to London: and to bring his purpos to ane better fine, he solistit Eugenius, the sonne of Congallus afore rehersit, and Modred, sonne to Loth, to cum, with xx.M Scottis and Pichtis, to his support. Arthur, knawing the gret dammage that come to his pepill, in time bypast, be riatus and surfet cheir, maid him to withstand thair insolence, that na occasion suld appeir to effeminat his army. Within schort time efter, he tuke the image of the blissit virgine Mary to his ansenye, and went forthwart in hope of victory. Modred and his gudfader Gawolane, richt desirus to win honour, went afore the army of Britonis, with v.M horsmen. The Saxonis, knawing Arthur within foure milis to thair campe, send thair ambassatouris, desiring him to pas na farther, and to geif thaim licence to pas out of Albion, with thair guddis, but injure of Britonis. Als sone as Arthure had condiscendit to thir petitionis, thay desirit III days trewis; bot that was denyit be Arthure: for he traistit, as was provin efter, sum hid treason under thair desiris. Nochttheles, he promittit to pas litill forthir for that day. The Britonis beand advisit quhat suld be done in this mater, and belevand na thing les than treason, the Saxonis set on Modred and Gawolane, becaus thay war certane milis fra King Arthuris campe, and slew ane gret nowmer thairof,

and the remanent chasit to the tentis of Britonis. Arthure, incontinent, callit afore him the ambassatouris of Saxonis, and said, He wald nothir heir thair desiris in times cuming, nor yit have peace with thame during his life; becaus thay treasonabilly invadit his pepil under commoning of peace. Skarsly war thir wordis said, quhen XL of the nobillest men amiang Saxonis come to the king, to excuse the treason recently committit; saying, It was done be young men, but advise of thair nobillis. Arthure, presumand na les treason under this last message than under the first, commandit thaim to remane still in his campe, with the first messingeris; syne rasit his army within the nicht, and come arrayit with thre battallis on the Saxonis, or thay war advertist of his cuming. The Saxonis war gretumly affrayit, knawing nothir quhat was to be done, nor yit quhat was answerit to thair ambassatouris. In the mene time, Modred and Gawolane invadit thame with sa properant diligence, that mony of thaim war discomfist or thay nicht cum to array; on quhom followit Arthure with sic rageand fury, that nane of thame war saiffit, quhare thay nicht be tane: throw quhilk nocht was hard bot rummissing of deand pepill, in all partis thairabout; the campe repleit with deid carionis, and the fludis rinnand with bludy stremes to the seysis. In this battal war slane sa huge nowmer of Saxonis, that apperandly thay nicht nevir recover the dammage thairof, nor yit have pissance to resist the Britonis in times cuming. Thus wer the Saxonis thirlit to more servitude than afore; bot the nobillis wer licent to pas in Almany. The Scottis and Pichtis abaid certane dayis in Londoun, and returnit hame, richely rewardit be King Arthure, but displeseir in thair weris.

## Chap. Tenth.

*How Tonset, Chancellor of Scotland, was slane for his wrangus administratioun of justice. Of King Conrannus Deith. Of Justiniane, Empriour; and of his prudent constitutionis, fame, and chevalry; and of sindry captiviteis of Rome.*



IC thingis done in Britane be Arthure, the realme of Scottis wes governit, in gret felicitye and justice, be King Conrannus; quhil at last, be dammage of his lang age, sindry displesouris followit in his realme. Thair was ane man of pure linnage, namit Tonset, and wes maid chancellor be King Conrannus; bot he was mair set for the kingis proffet than ony justice, gevand his mind and hale industry to punis men be extreme rigoure, to conques money to the king. Conrannus, as the ingine of sindry kingis ar, had thaim in maist favour and reverence, that couth maist craftely escheit the guddis of the pepil to his proffet. Tonset, efter sindry wrangis and oppressionis done be him in the kingis auctorite, callit afore him certane merchandis of Fores, in Murray, and for smal or vane causis put thaim to deith, as misdoaris; syne confiscat thair guddis to the kingis behuffe. The nobillis of Murray, commovit for thair oppressionis done to thair freindis the marchantis foresaid, ruschit haistely to harnes, and slew this Tonset in plane jugement, quhare he was doing mair injure than justice to the pepill. The skry rais efter his slauchter, and maid thir men to be serchit with maist diligence; and thay, as disparit men, fled to the montanis, traisting na grace nor remeid, bot gif thay did sum gretar cruelte to redeme the first, as it is the commoun opinioun yit in our dayis; and thairfore concludit to sla the king, and deliver the pepill of all extorsion done be him; quharethrow thay nicht conques the favour of the commonis, and be restorit to thair peace.

Schort time efter, Donald, capitane of Athole, richt familiar with the king, and knowing this conspiratioun, send his secret servant,



to caus thir limmaris to cum to Inverloch, quhare the king was resident for that time, and promittit thaim support to accomplis thair intent; and, finaly, ressavit thame with gret humanite, and inclusit thame, with thair swerdis and wappinnis, in ane secrete chalmer, quhare the king usit to be solitar; syne departit out of the town, as he had knawin na thing thair of. The king at last enterit in the chalmer quhare thir limmaris war, waitand for his slauchter: als sone as he saw thaim, he fell down on his kneis, and desirit grace; nochtheles, thir limmaris, but ony miseratioun, slew him, in the xxxv yeir of his regne: quhilk was in the xvi yeir of the empire of Arthure; in the twenty yeir of Justiniane, Emprioure; fra the incarnatioun, v hundreth xxxv yeris. His body was brocht to Colmekill, and buryit amang the anciant sepulturis of his forebearis. This Justinian was ane of the nobil Empriouris that was afore his dayis; for he causit the Romane lawis and constitutionis to be colleckit togidder, with sic reason and eloquence, that the same is in gret admiratioun to all pepill. This Justiniane pecifyit mony landis pertening to Romane empire; for he deliverit Affrik fra Vandallis, Italy fra the Gothis, and Dalmasia fra the tyranny of Mundus, be chevalry of ane richt vailyeant capitane, callit Bellisar. He deliverit Rome fra the tyranny of Theodorik, King of Ostrogothis, efter that it was segit mony yeris. This Bellisar faucht mony strang battallis for defence of Rome, aganis Totilla, King of Gothis: bot at last this Bellisar fell in gret infirmite, and sa Rome was finaly tane be the said Totilla, King of Gothis; the wallis and strenthis bet to the ground, with the capitoll, and mony othir housis, privat and publik, on the same maner; and all the cieteyanis thair of slane; to be ane perpetuall memory to all pepill, how litil confidence suld be had in felicite of man.

Rome was distroyit in this maner, fra the incarnatioun, vii yeris. It was tane be the Gawlis, brint and distroyit, quhen it began first to fluris; and not lang efter, it was distroyit be Alarik, King of Gothis; and on the same maner, it was tane be Athalphus, quhilk rang efter Alarik; and sone efter, it was tane agane be Gensiricus, King of Vandalis, and put to na les rewine than Cartage was afore be Romanis. This town, quhilk bene decorit with sa mony vail-

yeant dedis, the dantar of al pepil, sa oft tane be barbar pepill, schawis weill na thing sicker, bot fragill and mortall, in this warld. Bot we will returne to our history, quhare we left.

### Chap. Eleventh.

*Of King Eugenius the Thrid, and his lawis. Of Conrannus Wife. How scho fled with hir sonniss in Ingland. Of King Arthuris fame, chevalry, and round tabill. How the Britonis, contrar thair promiss, maid Constantine Prince of Britane.*



ONRANNUS slane, as said is, Eugenius, the sonne of Congallus, was maid king. Mony freindis of Conrannus gaif him counsall, in the beginning of his empire, to punis the slauchter of his eme; that otheris nicht tak example, in times cuming, to sla ane king. Eugenius, na thing movit of thair counsal, not onely left the slayaris of him unpunist, bot als put thaim on his secrete counsall; and, thairfore, he was suspekkit of his faderis slauchter. Conrannus wife suspeckand him on the samin maner, fled, with hir children Regiman and Aidane, in Ireland, quhare scho remanit certane yeris, and deceissit, with hir first sonne Regiman; bot Aidane remanit with the King of Ireland, weill tretit, mony yeris efter.

King Eugenius, to schaw him plesand in the beginning of his empire, sat oftimes in jugement, to cause him appeir benigne to the pepill; and quhare ony personis war condampnit wranguislie, he gaif thaim licence to appeill to his othir jugis. He supportit the indigent pepill with the commoun gud, quhen thay had na guddis to follow thair action. Be this lawe, he commandit that na man call ane pupill in jugement afore his lauchfull age; and na wedow to be drawin ane mile fra hir dwelling place to jugement. He maid als gret punition on thevis and ressettouris, and keptit gud peace with Pichtis and Britonis, his nichtbouris.

Sum auctouris writtis, that Arthure, in thir dayis, dantit Scotland, Iseland, Orknay, Denmark, Swethrik, Spruse, Zeland, Got-

land, Holland, Braband, Flanderis, Picarde, Normandy, Bertanye, and all France; and maid al the pepil thairof tributar to his empire. And, elikwise, he subdewit all Grece, Peirse, Araby, Egypt, Affrik, and Spanye; and finalie vincust Lucius, Romane Emprioure, be singular battall. This historie sall have faith with thaim that ar auctouris thairof; for we know fermelie, that Arthure deceissit in the time of Justiniane, Emprioure, quhen the Gothis, Burgundianis, Vandalis, and all othir nationis, invadit the Romane empire: and, thairfore, it is not apperand, sen sa mony sindry pepill maid divers weiris amang thaimself that time, that thay might be gaderit under ane mind to fecht aganis Arthure. Attoure, thair wes, at this time, maist horrible weris betwix Gothis and Franchemen, and the historianis that wrait thair weris maid na mentioun of Arthure. Nochtheles, sen we ar set to minnis na mannis honour nor fame, we find that Arthure wes, in glore of marcial dedis, na les vailyeant than ony othir princis of Britane, and eikit his realme equally in polecy and riches. It is writtin that Arthure tuke gret delectatioun in wersling of strang kempis, havand thame in sic familiarite, that quhen he usit to dine, or tak consultatioun in his weris, he gart thaim sit down with him, in maner of ane round crown, that nane of thame suld be preferrit till otheris in dignite; for quhilkis his seit wes callit The Round Tabil. And thought his vailyeant dedis wer worthy to have memorie, yit the vulgare fabillis quhilkis ar fenyeit of the samin hes violat thair fame, and makis thaim to have the les credence.

The Britonis, insolent be lang peace under the empire of Arthure, wer penitent of the contract maid afore with Loth, King of Pichtis, thinkand nocht profitabill for thair weill, that uncouth blud suld regne above thaim; and desirit King Arthure to schaw to thaim quhom he thocht maist abill to succeed. Arthure bad thaim cheis ane, be thair general vocis, that wer wise, and discending of the blude riall of Britane; and thay, but more delay, namit Constantine, the sonne of Cadorus, Prince of Cornewell; quhilk wes admittit be Arthure, and declarit Prince of Britane: nocht that he wes than king, bot just heritoure, to succeed eftir his deith: throw quhilk it come in use, that the eldest son of kingis wer callit Prince of the realme.

Constantine declarit prince in this maner, apperit, be mony evident signes, wise and gracious to the pepill, and conquest ane gud name amang the Britonis.

### Chap. Twelfth.

*Of the Message send be Pichtis to Britonis, and of thair answeere. How King Arthure was slane, with mony of all the nobillis of Britane, be Scottis and Pichtis. How Guanora, his wife, was brocht in Angus. Of hir sepulture; and of the calamite that fel to Albanis be this battal.*



T this time deceissit Loth, King of Pichtis; be quhom the landis that wes afore namit Pentland wer namit Lowthiane. Eftir his deith, Modrede, King of Pichtis, send his ambassatouris to King Arthur, and to the nobillis of Britane, saying, It wes nocht seming to princis to violat thair faith and band, but interventioun of sum leifful cause. The band maid betwix him and King Arthure wes nocht unknawin to thaim; be quhilk it wes ratifyit, that nane suld regne behind Arthure in Britane, bot the sonnis of Loth and Anna his wife, and the heritouris discending of thair successioun. And becaus the fame wes, that Constantine, Prince of Cornewell, wes namit be thaim to succeid to the crown of Britane, contrar thair band and faith afore contrackit; he requirit King Arthure to gif na aduertence to the injust persuasioun of his pepil, quhilk hes na respect to religion nor piete, bot onelie to cause him distroy baith the law of God and man; and thairfore prayit him to perseveir in the band afore contrackit, that na punishment cum on his pepil, be justice of God, for violation of his faith and promis. It wes answerit be the nobillis of Britane, that the band betwix Arthure and Loth wes maid bot during the langar leiffar of thaim twa; and sen Loth wes deceissit, the band wes dissolvit in the self. Attoure, thay violat nocht thair faith, howbeit thay maid Constantine, ane nobill man, of the blud riall of Britane, to be thair prince; becaus na thing semit



kingis mair than to keip thair realme be providence and wisdome, that it come nocht under the empire of uncouth blude. Attour, it was suspitiis that Britonis suld cum under dominion of Pichtis, sen thay bene ay thair auld ennimes.

This answer rehersit to the Pichtis, maid thame to detest the treason of Britonis, and to be penitent that thay supportit thame in subdewing of Saxonis. Nochtheles, thay tuke consultation quhat was best to be done; and finaly, with ane consent, concludit to invade the Britonis, and to bring in thair contrar all pepill that war thair ennimes. Yit, afore thay attempt this mater, thay thoct it ganand to assaile the mind of Scottis and Saxonis, and fand thaim reddy to assist to thame in peace or weir. Eugenius grantit the mair plesandly to thair petitionis, that the Britonis ressavit all the rebellis of his realme.

Arthure seand the peace gevin up betwix him and the Pichtis, garnist all the strenthis of his realme; syne come, with ane huge pepill, aganis the Scottis and Pichtis: traisting, howbeit the Saxonis returnit in Britane, thay suld be esaly vincust, sen thay war sa oft brokin and discomfist with his weris. Nochtheles, ane strang army of Scottis and Pichtis war assemblit, afore his cuming, at Humber, as in that place quhare thay ben ay maist fortunat to win. Quhen the battallis war arrayit in otheris sicht, the bishoppis and prelatiis of Scottis, Pichtis, and Britonis come as mediatouris, desiring thaim to remember how dangerus it war to thair commoun weill, and unnatural, to perseveir in battall, sen thay war ordanit be nature to leif togidder within that ile, and debait thame fra invasion of othir strange pepil. Attoure, thair civill battallis, and contentionis amang thaimself, suld be occasion to Saxonis to returne in Albion; for thay reiose in na thing mair than in subversioun of Albanis. Mordred and Eugenius, movit be devote wordis of thir prelatiis, condescendit to put ane end to all thair weris, gif the Britonis wald stand at the band afore contrackit. The bishoppis, with this answer, went to Arthure, and brocht his mind to peace. Bot the freindis of Constantine war nocht onely repugnant to thair petitionis, bot als gaif unplesand wordis, and said, Becaus the confederat kingis denunciit first weris to Arthure, it was nocht his honour to desist thairfra. Als, it was bot foly to thaim to persuaid peace,

quhen the armyis war arrayit in otheris sicht, bot gif it war to wirk sum prodicion under colour of peace. Skarsly war thir wordis said, quhen huge noyis and clamoure rais on all sidis; and, sone efter, baith the armyis junit, with mair cruelte than evir was hard in ony warld afore. The place quhare thay junit was ful of mos and marces, and sa unplesand to Britonis, that thay nicht nocht weilde thair ordinance and wappinnis as thay desirit: throw quhilk the battall was prolongit, and sa huge multitude of pepill slane, that the river of Humber ran full of bludy stremis to the seyis. Quhill the armyis war fechtand in maist raige on this maner, ane of the Pichtis, instruckit forthenanis, cryit, with schill voce, "Fle, fle! "Arthure is slane, with all the nobilite of Britonis!" This cry rasit the Scottis and Pichtis with mair spreit than afore; and maid the Britonis sa astonist, that na auctorite, nor sound of trumpet, nicht garre thaim tary; bot haistely left thair wappinnis, and fled to thair best refuge. In this sorrowfull battall was slane of Scottis and Pichtis twenty thousand, with Modrede, King of Pichtis, and all the noblis of baith thair realmis slane; of Britonis, and Bertornaris, that come to thair support, thritty thousand. Amang all otheris was slane King Arthure, and Walwane, bruthir to Modrede, King of Pichtis, quhilk faucht that day, for luffe of King Arthure, aganis his naturall bruthir. On the morrow, all the spulye of King Arthuris campe was partit amang the confiderat pepill, be rite of armis. Guanora, the Quene of Britane, and spouse of King Arthure, was tane, with mony ladyis and knichtis depending on hir for the time. The hors, riches, and cofferis gottin with hir fell in pray to the Scottis; bot hirself, hir ladyis and knichtis, fell to the Pichtis, and was brocht in Angus, to ane castell callit Dunbarre, of quhilk na thing remanis now bot the prent of the wallis; quhare thay leiffit the remanent dayis of thair life. In memorie heirof, in Megile, ane towne of Angus, ten mile fra Dundee, ar mony anciant sepulchris, had in gret reverence of pepill; and specially the sepulture of Guanora, as the title writtin thairapon schawis: "All "wemen that strampis on this sepulture sall be ay barrant, but ony "frute of thair wamb, siclike as Guanora was." And quhidder that this be of verite or nocht, latte thaim schawe that hes expe-

rience thair of; bot ane thing we knaw: all wemen abhorris to strampe on that sepulture.

It is said be Galfride, writare of the History of Britane, that Modrede and Arthure faucht nocht at Humbir, bot at the town of Gwintoun, and come out of the feild on live; and Guanora, for displeir, enterit in religioun: quhilkis ar not far discrepant fra the history, as we have writtin. Nochtheles, we follow Veremond, Turgot, and otheris mony autentike authouris, quhilkis writis the trew deidis of nobill men, but ony fictioun. Attoure, quharevir this maist dangerus battal was strikin, sic displesour come, efter, to the Britons, Scottis, and Pichtis, be huge slauchter, that, mony yeris efter, thay nicht nocht recover the dammage thair of.

### Chap. Thirteenth.

*How Constantine, King of Britonis, slew the sonnys of Modrede. Of uncouth mervellis sene in Albion. How Eugenius gaif sindry landis, with armis, to nobill men of his realme. How Constantine, King of Britonis, was maid monk in Ireland; and of Eugenius Deith.*



HE Britonis, efter this discomfitour and slauchter of King Arthure, maid Constantine, quhilk was declarit prince afor, King of Britane. This Constantine, that na succession of Modrede suld clame the crown of Britane, slew the sonnys of Modrede in presence of thair moder, quhilk was douchter of Gawolane: throw quhilk all the successioun of Modrede failyeit. Thir afflictionis fell on the Albanis, fra the incarnation, DXLII yeris; in the XXIII yeir of the empire of Arthure, and the VIII yeir of the regne of Eugenius.

Mony uncouth mervellis war sene afore this last battall in Albion. Herbes war sene in York full of blude; ane calf was found, nocht far fra Camelon, with two heidis, and ane lam, siclik, with dowbill nature; the sonne at midday apperit bludy; the lift schane, two dayis continewally, ful of sternis; the piottis and nicht-crawis

faucht with the ravinnis, and maid uncredibill slauchter on every side. Bot we wil returne to our history.

King Eugenius, efter his returning in Scotland, nowmerit the residew of his army, and rewardit richely the freindis of thaim that war slane in this feild: and to caus thair vailyeant deidis remane in lang memory, he gaif thame landis, with sindry armis, that thair posterite may understand how thay war decorit be nobill kingis, for thair vailyeant and worthy deidis. Eugenius, with sic victorius and virtuous deidis, conquest ane gud name, and was haldin in na litill veneration amang his pepill; and governit thame, in times cuming, mair be benivolence than rigour.

Jurmirik, Duke of Saxonis, advertist of this intollerabill slauchter of Britonis, come, with ane huge navy and pepill, in Inland; quhare he, with smal labour, subdewit King Constantine, and cha-sit him, with the remanent Britonis, in Walis. This Constantine finding na securite of his life in Walis, fled in Ireland; quhare he levit certane yeris, with his wife and children, unknowin, amang the indegent and pure pepill, on almous. Als sone as he was knawin, be persuasion of monkis, he schoif his heid in ane abbay of the samin cuntre; quhare he levit ane devoit life, and was slane, efter, be Scottis, and eikit to the nowmer of martiris. In memory heirof, mony kirkis ar amang us dedicat to him. This Jurmirik, howbeit he was nocht institute in the sicker faith, sufferit the Evangel of Crist to be prechit to Inglismen, and maid ane band of peace betwix him and the Scottis and Pichtis, quhilk endurit to the end of his life.

Eugenius, havand gud peace the residew of his dayis, deceissit, the xxxiv yeir of his regne; and was buryit in Colmekil, fra the incarnation, DLXVIII yeris; in the vi yeir of Tiberius, the second of that name, Emprioure.



## Chap. Fourteenth.

*Of King Conwallus, and his Lawis, and Deith. Of the cuming of Sanct Colme in Scotland; and of Sanct Mungo.*



UGENIUS buryit in Colmekill, his brothir was maid king; ane prince richt Catholike: for he commandit all the principall castellis and townis of his realme to be paintit with the signe of the croce, that the pepill thairthrow micht have remembrance quhat cruell pane and doloure our Salvioire sufferit thairon. He had ane silver crucifix borne ay afore him quhare he past, and kist it afore he montit on his hors. It was writtin with goldin letteris about the crucifix, *The Glore of Cristin Pepill*. He inhibite to paint or graif the signe of the croce on any pament of kirkis, that the pepill suld nocht trampe on the samin. He was nevir sene in the kirke bot with heid discoverit. He maid mony lawis for the liberte of haly kirke: He that dang ane preist suld want his hand; he that slew ane preist suld be brint, and his guddis confiscat; the teindis of every frutis that grew on the ground suld be gevin to the kirke; he that war cursit be auctorite of the kirke suld be banist fra gud company, and nane to do him reverence, na lawis to be patent to him, na faith to be gevin to his dispositioun. He dotate the kirkis with riche jowellis and possessionis, to sustene devine service. He gaif all vicaris and personis certane croftis and landis lyand about the kirkis, to caus thaim to be the mair fervent in thair residence and devotioun. Thus was the Cristin faith honorit in all partis of his realme.

The fame of this Catholike prince causit Sanct Colme, ane man of singulare life, to cum out of Ireland in Albioun, with mony religious pepill; at quhais cuming was gret confluence of Scottis and Pichtis, for the grete felicite and sweitnes thay fand in his preching. He gaderit sindry monkis quhilkis war that time vagabound throw the realme, and put thame in sindry abbayis, quhilkis war foundit afore be Conwallus; and not lang efter, he come in Lowthiane.

quhare he purgit Brudeus, King of Pichtis, and his pepil, fra Pelagius herisyis.

At this time was Sanct Mungo, the haly Bischop of Glasquew, quhilk was gottin on Sanct Thanew, the douchter of Loth, King of Pichtis, opprest, contrar hir will, be Eugenius, last King of Scottis. This Mungo, heirand Sanct Colme preiche afore Brudeus, was ravist in spreit be his devine wourdis, and followit him to Dunkeld, quhare Conwallus beildit ane riche abbay afore; bot now, be magnificence of princis, it is maid ane bishoppis seit, craftely biggit with square and polist stanis. Quhen thir two haly men had remanit vi monethis in Dunkeld, thay departit hame: Sanct Mungo returnit to Glasquew, and Sanct Colme to Ireland; and schew to the princis thair of, how plesandly he was tretit amang the Scottis and Pichtis, quhat fervent desire thay had to his preching; bot ane thing was thair, above all mervellis sene be him afore: Conwallus, King of Scottis, nochtwithstanding his princely estait and riches, quhilkis suld induce him mair to pleseir than virtew, was na les religious than ony othir prelat or kirkman in his realme; and, for his provin virtew, was haldin in sic reverence amang his pepill, that na person durst be injurius to othir, nor yit speik of him ony detraction: throw quhilk al vicis of his pepil, thocht thay war naturally inclinit thairto, war dantit, mair be his virtew than ony rigour. In the yeir following, Sanct Colme returnit in Albion, and brocht with him the son of Conrannus, namit Aidane, quhilk fled afore, as we schew, in Ireland, to eschew the wraith of Eugenius. At his cuming in the Ilis, he was advertist how Conwallus was deceissit, the x yeir of his regne, and his body cumand, with gret lament of pepill, to be buryit in Colmekil; and, thairfore, he went to his abbay, and did his funerall obsequeis in devote maner.

## Chap. Fifteenth.

*Of King Kinnatill, and how he resignit the crown to Aidane. Of the Orison maid be Sanct Colme. How Scottis and Pichtis faucht amang thaimself, and war agreit be Sanct Colme.*



ONWALLUS deceissit in this maner, ane counsall was set in Argyle, fra oure redemption DLXXVIII yeris, in quhilk Kinnatill, brothir to Conwallus afore rehersit, was maid king. Kinnatill, as na man belevit, ressavit Colme and Aidane with gret humanite; and prayit Aidane to be of gud curage, for within schort time he suld reiose the crown of Scotland, and have sic succession, that he suld deliver the realme of mony displesouris: and yit it was uncertane, for the time, be quhat devine revelation or prophecy he nicht schaw sic thingis. Within few dayis eftir, ane immoderat flux of catterre fel in his throte and chaftis, and causit him to resigne the governance of his realm to Aidane. Sanct Colme seand him approche to the extremis of deith, exhortit him to have all thing in contemptioun, saiffing the felicity of hevin, quhare he was haistely to pas. Kinnatill, devoutly obtemperand to Sanct Colme, randerit his saule to God, the feird moneth of his regne. His body was buryit in Colmekill.

Ane convention was maid, sone efter, in Argyle, in quhilk Aidane was maid king. Sanct Colme, becaus he was present at this convention, put the diademe on King Aidanis heid, and said to the nobillis in this wise: “It is nocht neidfull, maist nobill men, to exhort yow to ony gret devotion, sen the samin incessis daily, as apperis amang yow. Yit I think nocht unganand to exhort yow to be obeisant to youre prince Aidane, under ane mind and assent; for he is not only brocht to this solempne auditour be my industry, bot erar be provisioun of God. His office sall be, to governe yow in equale justice and peace, and deliver yow of trubill, quhen it occurris. Your part sal be, thairfore, to leif togidder under him with ane gud mind and benivolence; standing

“sa content with your awin guddis, that ye covat nane otheris;  
 “and remembring the sindry beneficis gevin to yow be the ineffa-  
 “bill gudnes of God, quhilk hes instruckit yow in his blissit lawis,  
 “and maid yow his deir pepil. And fortunat yow to haif ane prince  
 “of singular virtew, be quhais prudence your faith sal be sickir,  
 “and your common weill put to proffet, with sic felicite, gif ye be  
 “obeisant to him, that na ennimes sall appeir aganis yow. Be the  
 “contrar, quhilk God forbaid! gif ye decline the constitutionis of  
 “God, and be rebelland to the ministeris of justice; or gif your  
 “prince, Aidane, be unmindfull of the giftis of God, abusand him  
 “in the administration of his realme; than sal nocht fail to cum  
 “on yow sindry plagis and civill contentionis, quhilkis sal gif oc-  
 “casioun to your ennimes to invaid yow to your uter exterminion,  
 “les than ye amend your demeritis in time. Provide, thairfore,  
 “ye be nocht sa insolent, eftir hie chance of prosperite, that ye in-  
 “cur the hatrent of God, exponand baith your singulare and com-  
 “mon weill to extreme dangeir.”

The pepil being exhortit be thir wourdis, promittit thair faithfull  
 obedience to King Aidane. Sic thingis done, Sanct Colme returnit  
 in the Ilis, and Aidane went in Galloway; quhare he, be justice,  
 dantit part of thevis quhilkis infestit the cuntre. And to repres  
 uthir enormiteis done in his realme, he set ane convention of his  
 nobillis in sindry partis thair of; in quhilk, be prudence of Sanct  
 Colme, wer devisit sindry thingis for the common weill: throw  
 quhilk gret tranquillite succedit, mony dayis eftir. Nochtheles, as  
 the chance of man oft occurris, few pepil hes that prudence to mak  
 thame stand in lang felicite. Certane nobillis, quhilkis nicht nocht  
 lang suffir peace, fell in ane hie contentioun at the huntis, be inter-  
 ventioun of ane caus of nocht: throw quhilk followit, haistly, gret  
 slauchter. The slayaris, knowing thame feirsleie socht be rigour of  
 justice, and havand na refuge to eschewe the kingis lawis, fled to  
 Brudeus, King of Pichtis. Als sone as King Aidane wes advertist  
 thair of, he send his ambassatouris to the King of Pichtis, requiring  
 him, be tennour of his confideratioun, to deliver thir men to his  
 justice. Brudeus, movit be commiseratioun and piete of thir banist  
 men, refusit his desiris, and, be frequent message, excusit thair ini-  
 quite. Thus maid he the injuris of otheris to be occasioun of bat-



tall aganis himself. King Aidane, becaus thir rebellis wer nocht deliverit at his pleseir, send ane cumpany of armit men in Angus, to invaid the cuntre with all displesouris that thay micht. The Scottis, quhilkis wer send to this behalf, brocht ane huge pray of guddis out of Angus, and slew all thaim that maid obstakill. The Pichtis, unpacient to suffir this injure, recompensit the samin with siclik heirschippis and slauchter on the Scottis. The fury and rage of insolence ilk day more inressing, maid this debait to be finalie decidit be the swerd. Sone eftir, thay gaderit on baith the sidis in Striveling, quhair thay faucht togiddir with gret murdir: and thought the victorie succedit to the Scottis, yit it wes unplesand; for Arthurus, eldest sonne to King Aidane, and Prince of Scotland, wes slane in this feild. Thus tuke the Scottis more hevines and dolour be his slauchter, than pleseir be thair victorie.

Sanct Colme, heirand this unhappy battall, come to King Aidane, and reprevit him, that he, for smal occasioun, movit battal on his confiderat freindis; throw quhilk he wes cause, nocht onlie of maist lamentabill slauchter, bot als bringing mony pepill to schamefull and uter poverte: and thairfore declarit, gif the samin wer nocht hastely reparit, he and all his blude, be justice of God, suld be cruelly punist. Aidane, affrayit be thir wourdis, prayit Sanct Colme to schaw be quhat way he micht amend the offence be him committit. This haly man, seing Aidane penitent, be commiseration, went to Brudeus, King of Pichtis, and schew how unprudentialie this unhappy bergane wes begun, and quhat mischeif wes to follow on baith the pepil, gif thay perseverit in battal aganis othir. Be thir wourdis, Brudeus condescendit to have peace. Thus wer baith the kingis content that Sanct Colme be juge in this debait, to evin all materis as he thocht best. Finalie, baith thir kingis wer aggreit, and brocht, be his prudence, to the samin tendernes as thay wer afore. Within schort time, this haly man, Sanct Colme, returnit in the Ilis, and fell in ane gret infirmite, be immoderat flux of catterre, quhilk followit him to the end of his life.

## Chap. Sixteenth.

*How the Saxonis devidit Ingland in sevin sindry kingdomes. How Pichtis and Saxonis war confiderat togidder, and discomfist the Scottis and Britonis. Of the Orisoun maid be King Aidane to his army. How the said Aidane was vincust be Saxonis, and his sonne slane.*



WHEN the Saxonis had dounge the Britonis in Walis, and punist thaim ilk day with new afflictionis, thay devidit the realme of Ingland in sevin sindry kingdomes; to that fine, that the Britonis micht nevir have place to recover thair ald rowmes; and maid sevin sindry kingis: amang quhom wes Ethelfreid, King of Northumberland, quhilk had ane singulare malice aganis al Britonis. And becaus he wes richt desirus to eik his empire, he solistit Brudeus, King of Pichtis, to invaid the Scottis; and promittit, gif he wald invaid thaim be battall, sen the injuris done be his pepill wes nocht redressit, to support him with all the power that he micht. This battall wes nocht persuadit be Ethelfreid for ony affection he had to Pichtis, bot onlie to have thaim brokin with Scottis, that he micht than the more esalie conquies thair realme. Brudeus refusit at the first time to rais ony army aganis his confiderat nichtbouris: nochtheles, be inoportune sollicitatioun of his nobillis, he condiscendit thairto. The motive of this battall was, becaus the guddis reft afore fra his pepill be Scottis war nocht restorit, as the contract proportit. King Aidane, to meit baith the treason of Pichtis and Saxonis, was confiderat with Malgo, King of Britonis, in this maner: Gif the Saxonis and Pichtis invade the Britonis, King Aidane sall cum in thair support: and gif the Pichtis and Saxonis come on the Scottis, the King of Britonis sal support thame in that samin manner.

The Saxonis, weil advertist of this confideration; to draw the Scottis fra thair rowmes, and to mak thaim laik vittallis, enterit with the Pichtis in the Britonis landis. King Aidane sone efter

assemblit all the pissance of his realme, and come with the samin in support of Britonis. The Saxonis and Pichtis, nochtwithstanding his cumming, maid thame to eschew battall be lang tary, abiding the cuming of sindry othir Saxonis to thair support. Than suddenly apperit in sicht, Cenline, King of West Saxonis, with new garison, to support thair army. The Scottis and Britonis, howbeit thay war affrayit of thair cuming, thocht best, sen na help apperit bot in thair handis, to meit this new army of West Saxonis; and finaly put thaim to flicht, and slew Cutha, sonne to Cenline.

Efter this victory, the Scottis and Britonis rejosit with sic excellent mirth, as was usit in thay dayis. In the mene time, the North Saxonis, with the residew of thair folkis, quhilkis wer laityly discomfist, come on the Scottis and Britonis with new battall. Thus war the Scottis and Britonis sa affrayit, that na noyis nor word was in all thair army. King Aidane, knawing this scilence na signe of audacite, bot erar of dejeckit mind, said in this maner: “ Quhare is  
 “ now, gud companionis, your knichtly curage? quhare is now your  
 “ invincibil spreit? Is your glaidnes evanist afore ye be vincust?  
 “ ar ye defate be only sicht of thir our febill ennimes, sen ye, be  
 “ merciall prowes, hes put sa vailyeant pepill afore to flicht? Lat  
 “ nevir this, your strang army, be randerit to ennimes. Lat nevir  
 “ your fais have glore be your cowartry, nor yit have victory but  
 “ debait. Return, heirfore, my hartly freindis, to your anciant vir-  
 “ tew and curage: and understand, your ennimes invadis yow be  
 “ wrang persute, be motioun of the treasonabil Ethelfred; and,  
 “ thairfore, exerce youre wraith and cruelte on him, sen he is first  
 “ rute of al this trubill: and ye sall have quhat plesand reward that  
 “ I may geif yow, gif ye have victory, quhilk now is into your  
 “ handis.” Thir wourdis war skarsly rehersit, quhen the Saxonis  
 fechtand in the richt wing war put abak: and incontinent, Ethelfred come with ane chosin cumpany in thair support, exhorting thaim to tak na affray of thair febill adversaris, quhome thay sa oft vincust afore. Brudeus, fechtand in the richt wing with the Pichtis, and his maist vailyeant capitanis in the left wing, put the Scottis in gret afflictioun. Nochtheles, the Scottis perseverit in ithand battal, quhill thay saw the middil ward, quhare the Britonis faucht,

discomfist; and than thay gaif backis: on quhome followit the Pichtis and Saxonis with lang chace.

In this battall war slane, Brennius, Thane of the Ile of Man; Dongarus, the thrid sonne of Aidane; with mony nobillis and commonis on all sidis. King Ethelfred loist ane of his eine. Brudeus was evill woundit, and mony of his nobillis slane in his defence.

### Chap. Seventeenth.

*How Saxonis and Pichtis war discomfist in Northumberland be Scottis and Britonis. Of the deith of Sanct Colme and Sanct Aidane. Of the vengeance that come on the Saxonis for dinging of Sanct Austine. And of sindry haly men.*



THELFRED, nathing satisfyt of this victory of Scottis and Britonis at Deglaston, come the nixt simer, with the Pichtis, in Galloway, with purpos othir to bring the same to uter heirschip, or ellis bring the samin under thair dominion. Aidane, weill advertist of thair mind, send to the Britonis to cum to his support; syne went with all power that he nicht get, in Galloway; and fand, at his cuming, the Pichtis and Saxonis besy at thair incursionis, but array. And incontinent he set on thaim with arrayit battall, and mony of thaim slew, and the remanent put to flicht. And in the nicht following, he come to the army of Britonis, and mengit baith the armyis togidder. Als sone as the Pichtis and Saxonis wer advertist thair of, thay set thaim with strang buschementis, to keip all the entres and straitis of Anandale. Thus wes na way nor passage to the army of Scottis and Britonis, bot onlie to pas throw the dangerus river and sinkand sandis of Sulloway. The Britonis and Scottis seand thaim inclusit thus on al sidis, parkit thame haistelie amang the strenthis of the cuntre, as thay wer in the samin to remane: syne rasit thair army within the nicht, quhen thair fayis suspeckit na thing les than thair removing, and cum ourir Sulloway, the maist properant way thay nicht, in Northumbirland; and left behind thame ane huge fire,



birnand al nicht, that thair ennimes suld have na presumption of thair departing: and at thair cuming in Northumberland, thay invadit the pepill thair of with maist cruelte of fire and swerd. The Saxonis and Pichtis, knowing thair pepill in Northumberland opprest be this violence, left Galloway, and with huge pine com in thair ennimes sicht. On the morow, baith the armyis, rageand in maist hatrent aganis othir, junit togidder. The Saxonis with sic incredible furie ruschit in battall aganis the Scottis, but ony sicht to deith, that mony of thaim wer doun, be dint of swerdis, to the ground. Yit, becaus fresch men come in all placis quhair thay wer slopit, the victorie wes lang uncertane, and the chance of fortoun newtrale. Quhil at last, Aidane, with othir his vailyeant capitanis, began to rais his folkis in hope of victorie; and spretit thame with sic curage, that thay, be perseverand fechting, put the Saxonis and Pichtis to flicht, and maid mair slauchter on thaim be chace, than wes in the first battall. In the nicht afore this battall, Sanct Colme wes in the abbay of Colmekill, and schew to the brethir thair of, that King Aidane wes to fecht on the morow, and commendit him and his army to thair prayaris. And na dout is, bot the prayer of this haly man wes richt supportable to King Aidane: for, in the samin houre that victore fell to Scottis, he revelit it to his brethir in the said abbay, and gart thaim gif the loving thair of to God.

Eftir this victorie, the king, be sound of trumpat, gaderit his folkis to the standart. And eftir gret apprising of thair manheid, he gave the tent part of the spulye gottin in this feild, to repare the kirkis of Scotland; and send the banaris of Saxonis and Pichtis to Sanct Colme, to remane in his abbay of Colmekill, in memorie of this excellent victorie.

In this battall wes slane, Cenline, King of West Saxonis, with Culine and Quhiteline, his principall capitanis. Schort time following, Sanct Colme, brokin with lang infirmite, deceissit, and wes buryit in the said abbay. Howbeit, otheris auctouris schawis him buryit in ane town of Ireland namit Dune, quhare he is haldin in gret veneration; and on his sepulture ar gravin thir versis:

“ Sanct Colme, Sanct Patrik, and Brigitta pure;  
 “ Thir thre in Dune lyis in ane supulture.”

King Aidane levit schort time behind Sanct Colme, and deceissit the xxvii yeir of his regne, in the time of Mawricius, Emprioure ; fra the incarnation, dcvi yeris.

About this time, wes institute be Sanct Gregoure, the procession callit Latania Major, on Sanct Markis day, to implore the mercy of God aganis ane terrible pest, quhilk rais in Rome be inundatioun of Tibir. This Gregour send in Ingland twa haly men, namit Austine and Millite, to bring the Saxonis to Cristin faith ; for the Saxonis bure sic hatrent aganis the Britonis and Inglismen, that thay wald heir na doctrine nor precheing of thame : and thairfore, it wes necessar that thir two haly men suld cum in Ingland to instruk the Saxonis in the Cristin faith. Finalie, quhen this haly man, Sanct Austine, wes precheand to the Saxonis in Miglinton, thay wer nocht onlie rebelland to his precheing, bot in his contemptioun thay sewit fische talis on his abilyement. Otheris alliegis thay dang him with skait rumpillis. Nochtheles, this derisioun succedit to thair gret displesoure : for God tuke on thaim sic vengeance, that thay and thair posterite had lang talis mony yeris eftir. In memorie heirop, the barnis that ar yit borne in Miglinton hes the samin deformite : bot the wemen havand experience thairof, fleis out of this toun in the time of thair birth, and eschapis this malediction be that way. Nochtheles, thir haly men perseverit with sic fervent precheing, that mony of all the Saxonis ressavit the sacrament of baptime. Ethelfred, King of Northumbirland, heirand sa gret noumer of Saxonis convertit to the Cristin faith, become richt sorrowfull, and votit him to be thair perpetuall ennime.

At this time wes in Scotland, thre haly men of oure natioun : Baldreid, Dunstane, and Connall. The first wes ane excellent doctor, and deceissit in the Basse, ane strang castall within the see. The parochinaris of Auldham, Tynningham, and Prestoun, contendit quhilk of thaim thre suld have his body to decore thair kirk. Finalie, thay wer content to superseid thair debait, quhil the nixt morow, to be consultit be the bischop. On the morow thay fand, be mirakill of God, thre beris, with thre bodyis na thing discrepant fra otheris in quantite, coullour, nor arrayment. Than, be command of the bischop, ilk parochin tuke ane of thir bodyis to thair kirk : and sa the body of this haly man lyis, be mirakill, in all the

thre kirkis. The secound, Dunstane, wes eme to King Aidane; bot he contempnit the warlde, and wes ane religious man. The thrid, Connall, wes the discipill of Sanct Mungo; and is buryit in Inchinnane, nocht far fra Glasquew, quhair he is haldin in gret veneratioun of pepill.

### Chap. Eighteenth.

*Of King Kenneth. Of Eugenius the fourt. How the King of Britonis was doung out of his realme be Saxonis, and recoverit the samin. How Ethelfred, King of Northumberland, was slane. Of sindry haly men.*



NE convention wes maid in Argyle, eftir deith of King Aidane: in the quhilk, Kennethkeir, son to Conwallus, afore rehersit, wes maide king; and deceissit, the fourt moneth eftir his coronation. Eftir his deith, Eugenius, the fourt of that name, and sonne to Aidane, wes maid king. It is said, that Sanct Colme schew, afore his deith, to King Aidane, that howbeit he had mony othir sonnys elder than Eugenius, yit nane of thaim suld reiose the crown of Scotland, bot onlie Eugenius: quhilk wes provin weill eftir; for the residew of his sonnys wer slane be sindry chancis of battal. Eugenius wes sa institute in his youth be doctrine of Sanct Colme, that he wes gevin erar to defend his awin than to invaid otheris. He wes ane just and vertuus prince to his trew subdittis, and richt displesant to misdoaris. He commandit all idill pepil, as juglaris, menstrualis, bardis, and scaffaris, othir to pas out of the realme, or ellis to find sum craft to win thair leiffing. He punist thift with na les cruelte than reif or slauchter. He maid regorus punishment on his nobillis, quhen he fand thame oppressouris of his pure subdittis. Be contrar, he tretit thame with gret reverence and honouris, quhen he fand thaim virtewis. In the tent yeir of his regne, Cingell, King of West Saxonis, and Ethelfred, King of Northumbirland, come with ane gret army aganis Cadwallo, King of Britonis, and chasit him in Scotland. Nochtheles, he abaid schort

time in it, bot past to Bartanye ; quhare he gat sic support be the king thair of, that he returnit in Walis, and nocht onlie recoverit his realme, bot slew gret noumer of Saxonis.

At this time, Reidwald, King of Eist Saxonis, and Ethelbreid, King of South Saxonis, com with gret armyis aganis Ethelfreid, King of Northumbirland : for he put thaim afore to gret affliction, for talking of the Cristin faith. Thir armyis faucht togidder at Wintringham, quhair Ethelfreid wes slane, with the maist part of all his pepill. His last wourdis wer thir : “ I de as I levit, protectour of religioun of goddis, and ennime to Cristin pepil.” And with thir wourdis he randerit his unhappy saule to pine. Succedit in his place, ane Cristin man namit Edwine.

This Ethelfreid had vii sonnys, namit Eufreid, Oswald, Oslaws, Oswan, Offas, Osmond, and Osik. Thir vii brethir detestand the treasoun of Pichtis, because thay come nocht in support of thair fadir, fled to Eugenius ; quhair thay wer plesandlie ressavit, and tuke the Cristin faith. Thair sister Ebba, eschewing the pollutioun of hir body, gat ane bait, be devine mirakill, and come, but helpe of man, to the heid of Humbir : quhair scho wes professit nun, and deit ane haly virgine. Sic thingis done, King Eugenius reparit al the kirkis of his realme, quhilkis wer afore distroyit be cruelte of Saxonis ; and stuffit the strenthis of his bordouris with strang munitionis, men, and vitallis ; and deceissit, the xv yeir of his regne, fra the incarnatioun dcxx yeris, and was buryit in Colmekill.

At this time, Bonifacius, bishop, come with ane company of haly men out of Italy, in the mouth of Tay. Sum authouris sayis he was chosin Pape efter Sanct Gregoure, and wilfully renunsit the paperie, and come to the Scottis. And thocht he be nocht nowmerit amang the legend of papis, yit we find him ane man of singulare life and doctrine. The place quhare he landit first in Scotland, was erekit be him in ane kirk, in honour of Sanct Petir the appostill. Efter this, he went to ane town namit Tulline, thre mile fra Dundee, quhare he rasit ane othir kirk sicklike, in name of Sanct Petir. He foundit the kirk of Restinneth, quhilk is now ane abbay of channownis regular. Efter this, he went throw sindry partis of Scotland, quhare he precheit the evangellis. At last, he come in Ros, quhare he perseverit to the end of his life, and was buryit in



Rosmarkin. And in this time was the haly man and bischop, Sanct Melok, ane gret precheour, and was buryit with Sanct Boniface. And in this time, Gilliam and Columbane, Scottis, discending of the nobill blude thair of; for thair singulare and haly life, war haldin in gret reverence amang Franchemen. This ilk time, Pape Boniface dedicat the temple of goddis, callit Pantheon, in the honoure of the blissit Virgin Mary, the moder of God, and of all sanctis.

### Chap. Nineteenth.

*Of the vicious tyrane King Ferquhart, and how he slew himself; and of the haly man Fiacre.*



UGENIUS deceissit, as we have schawin, had thre sonnys, Ferquhart, Fiacre, and Donevald. The eldest, Ferquhart, was maid king. Thir thre sonnys of Eugenius was gevin, in thair youth, to the haly man, Sanct Conane, Bischop of the Ile of Man. Ferquhart and Donevald proffit na thinge in the said Ile, traisting letteris unproffitabill to thair estait. The thrid bruthir, Fiacre, was gevin to contemplation, and tuk purpos to eschew the company of men, with all warldly digniteis. And to make him unknowin to the pepill, he tuke ane pure habit, and departit out of Scotland in France; quhare he leiffit ane solitar life, and gat ane croft gevin to him be Sanct Pharo, Bischop of Melden, and ane chapell ereckit to him, quhare he leiffit the residew of his dayis. It is said, All wemen that gangis in his chapell wil be othir blind or wod.

In the empire of Ferquhart, throw lang peace, rais gret devision amang the nobillis, to the gret dammage of the realme. This king was sa necligent and sowpit in all maner of vice, that he gaif na labour to meis the seditioun amang his nobillis, traisting, sa lang as trubill and slauchter endurit amang his nobillis, na rebellion suld rise aganis him; throw quhilk the realme was put to gret mischeif. And becaus all this trubil come throw necligence of this unhappy tyrane, he was hatit, and reput maist abhominabill

to his pepill; throw quhilk he come to sic infelicitie, that he had nothir reverence to God, nor sicht to the commoun weil. And as the use of tyrannis is, he dred all men, and no man had him in reverence. The nobillis havand gret displesour that the realme was misgovernit be him in this maner, convenit amang thaimself, and reparit all injuris but his advise. It was belevit be the nobillis, becaus thay saw sa mony enormiteis in him, that he suld fall in Pelagius heresyis; howbeit all othir Scottis kingis afore him war never attentit with sic thingis. Thair suspition was the mair vehement, that he was accompanyit with Britonis of the samin errouris. At last, he was aspyit makand derision that young children war brocht to the font to have baptisme, and that the pepil maid thair confession to preistis. The nobillis, movit with his detestabill werkis, send ane herald to bring him to thair counsal, to knaw gif sic thingis as war divulgat of him had faith. And becaus thay fand him rebelland to thair chargis, thay tuke him be force out of the castell quhare he was, and put him in prison. And incontinent, thay tuke consultatioun, quhidder he suld be degradit, or haldin in perpetual prison. Efter lang advisement, it was concludit to continew him stil in prison, and to send ambassatouris in France, to bring Fiacre, the secound son of Eugenius, in Scotland, to ressave the crown thairof; and, gif thay nicht persuaid him be na reason to the said effect, to desire Clotarius, King of France, to interpone his auctorite to caus Fiacre to be send in Scotland, to ressave the governance thairof. The ambassatouris quhilkis war send to this effect, come finaly quhare this Fiacre was at his contemplatioun. Bot yit, afore thair cuming, he was advertist, be ane visioun, of thair desiris, and besoucht God to suffer him nocht be frustrat of the hevinly plesour that he had in his solitar contemplation. God hard his prayer; and quhen thir ambassatouris was brocht to his presence, he apperit to thair sicht sa ful of lipper, that he was repute be thaim maist horribill creature in erd. The ambassatouris seing him at sic point, demandit him cauldly, gif he covate to return in Scotland, quhare he nicht be purgit of his malady be native fude; and schew thaim send be the nobillis of Scotland, to provide him in all necessaris to the samin finæ. Fiacre, quhilk had na mair respect to honouris than to maist abhominabill pestilence, answerit, "I beleve

“ ye knaw how I have tane me fra cumpany of the warld, to ane  
 “ solitar life ; howbeit the sorrowful malady that I suffer, be erar  
 “ emendatioun of my life induceing me to humillite, than ony vice of  
 “ nature. My suffiencie is, with this pure sell, and sobir herdis,  
 “ quhilkis I prepare with my handis, and standis sa content thair-  
 “ with, that I desire na warldly dignite. Thairfore, retorne hame,  
 “ and bid my brothir and his noblis have sicht to God, religioun,  
 “ and justice, and arme thame with virtew, quhilk may be vincust  
 “ be na irruption nor violence of ennimes. And understand, that I  
 “ am brocht to sic estate be will of God, that ane private life is  
 “ maist ganand for me.” Fiacre had ane sister namit Syra, quhilk,  
 heirand of hir brutheris halines, come to him at Melden, be quhome  
 scho was professit nun, with mony othir virginis of the samin mind ;  
 and perseverit in gud religioun and devotioun, to the end of thair  
 life.

The nobillis of Scotland knawing, be thir ambassatouris, the  
 estate of Fiacre, chesit foure men to be governouris of the realme,  
 quhill thay war mair profoundly resolvit concerning the governance  
 thairof. The samin time, Ferquhart, vexit with malancoly and seik-  
 nes be his prisoning, that he suld nocht remane in pine, slew him-  
 self, the xii yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, DCXXXII yeris.

### Chap. Twentieth.

*Of King Donevald ; and of the deith of Edwine, King of Northum-  
 berland. How Eufred and Osrik, Kingis of Northumberland,  
 war punist for thair tyranny done to Cristin pepil. And how  
 King Oswald convertit the Saxonis to the faith of Crist.*



FERQUHART the tyrane slane, as said is, ane counsall  
 was set in Argyle ; in the quhilk, Donevald, the thrid  
 sonne of Eugenius, was maid king. This Donevald,  
 following the governance of his fader, reparit all placis  
 quhilkis wer dekeyit afore be negligence of Ferquhart. At this  
 time, Cadwallo, King of Britonis, and Penda, King of South Sax-

onis, war confiderat togidder, and slew Edwine, King of Northumberland; and come, with gret cruele, throw Mers and Berwik, and tuke sindry landis fra dominioun of Pichtis. The Pichtis havand na power to resist thair crueleis, send to King Donevald for support: and becaus thay gat na support, thay war opprest with importabill injuris. King Donevald heirand the deith of Edwine, send to his confiderat brothir, Cadwallo, King of Britonis, praying him to admit Eufred, the sonne of King Ethelfred, to the crown of Northumberland. And quhen the samin was grantit, Eufred left his remanent brethir in Scotland, and was admittit to the half of the crown of Northumberland; and that othir half was gevin to ane fals and unhappy man namit Osrik. Thir two Kingis of Northumberland war finaly confiderat togidder be affinite, for Osrikis douchter was gevin to Eufred in mariage; and renuncit the Catholik faith, and become maist odious tyrannis, and persewaris of Goddis servantis, filland the cuntre full of fals errouris of Gentilis: throw quhilk, sindry Pichtis fell in the said errouris; quhill at last, be correctioun of the bishoppis, thay war recounsallit to the faith. Cadwallo, King of Britonis, richt displesit that Eufred and Osrik, quhilkis war promovit be him to the empire of Northumberland, war fallin in sic errouris, that thay desirit erar to be heritikis than Cristin pepill; send preistis to purge thaim of thair errouris; bot thir preistis returnit, evill doun, and na thing sped of thair purpos. The Cristin princis of Albioun, heirand this contemptioun, send othir messingeris to thir two kingis, with scharper writing than afore; bot thir preistis, for the mair contemptioun, war slane. The rage and cruele of thir dispitfull tyrannis grew sa gret, that all Cristin pepill dwelling beside thame war martyrit, except sa mony as wer savit be flicht. The princis of Albioun, movit be thir crueleis, tuke purpos to punis thaim with maist rigoure: and to bring the samin to gud fine, thay maid Cadwallo and Penda generall capitanis of thair weris, and gaderit ane gret multitude of Britonis, Pichtis, and Saxonis, havand na thing at mair hatrent than errouris of Gentilis. Osrik and Eufred, knowing the cumming of sa mony princis aganis thame, rasit all pepill under thair dominion, and faucht aganis the said princis of Britane. Nochtheles, thair army was discomfist, and thairself tane prisoneris; and within few dayis efter, thay slew thaimself be dis-



peratioun. In this battall, nane was found sa cruell aganis Osrik and Eufred as Oswald thair bruthir; and for that cause he was maid King of Northumberland. King Oswald, efter his coronatioun, send to King Dowald, desiring certane precheouris to be send out of Scotland to convert his pepil to the faith. King Dowald send, at his request, ane man of na les gravite than erudition, namit Cormane. And quhen this Cormane had prechit lang time amang the Northumbrianis, he was sa curius in his theology, that his sermon apperit mair for vane ostentatioun and pride, than ony doctrine, to the pepill. And finaly, he returnit in Scotland, and schew to the prelatis thair of, that the Northumbrianis war sa dull, that na doctrine micht proffit thaim; and war nocht onely repugnant to his command, bot contemptit the samin, as contrar to thair lawis and constitutionis. The prelatis, heirand thir wordis, tuke sindry consultationis, quhat was best to bring thair pepil out of thair arrouris. Sum men thocht expedient to send Cormane agane in Northumbirland, with mony otheris doctouris, and to spare na lauboure for the weill of Cristin faith, and plesour of thair freind, King Oswald; traisting, be continewall labour, that the Northumbrianis micht be brocht to the faith, thocht sic thingis micht nocht be haistely done. Otheris said, Gif the Northumbrianis micht ony way have bene recounsell to the faith, thay wald have bene brocht be Cormane erar than ony othir, becaus he was richt resolute in devine letteris, and was ane profound clerk: and sen his doctrine na thing avalu, it was not necessar to send ony othir doctouris to the samin effect. Than Aidane, the haly bischop, said in this maner: “ To bring men fra  
 “ errouris, and to reduce thame to sicker faith, I think it expedient,  
 “ wise faderis, to schaw sic thingis in the beginning, as may persuaid thame in fervent luf of God; and quhen the precheour  
 “ hes maid the pepil desirus to heir his sermon, and tane thair benivolence, to preche first the foundment of the Cristin faith, but  
 “ ony ostentation or arrogance, nocht involving the pepil with sic  
 “ difficil materis as may not be apprehendit with thame; for, as the  
 “ ingine of men ar nocht drawin haistely fra evil accustome, siclik  
 “ thay lerne all science and virtew be proces of time, and lernis the  
 “ maist facil materis first. Be this way, I traist thair science is the  
 “ mair imprentit in thair breist. Heirfore, gif the reverend Bischoep

“ Cormane had observit this rite in the beginning, and obstenit fra  
 “ curious questionis of our faith, I dout nocht bot the pepil suld  
 “ have bene obeidient to his commandementis. Thairfore, sen na  
 “ thing is satisfyit to the desire of King Oswald, I think the samin  
 “ is cumin na les in defalt of the doctoure than the pepill. For  
 “ thir causis, best is, yit to send ane new precheoure in Northum-  
 “ berland, that sal first, in his precheing, geif thaim milk, and efter,  
 “ geif thame mair ferme fude; othirwayis, thay wil nevir be brocht  
 “ to the faith.” The bishoppis apprisit his counsal, and with ane  
 mind send himself to do this charge in Northumberland; and he  
 refusit not the charge, bot come with glaid cheir to King Oswald.  
 At quhais cuming, sic confluence of pepil convenit, that he was con-  
 stranit to preche outwith the kirkis, throw multitude of pepill that  
 come to his preching. Always, becaus this Aidane had nocht the  
 langage of Saxonis, he had gret impediment in his preching;  
 nochtheles, King Oswald had the langage baith of Scottis and Sax-  
 onis, and interprete all his preching to the pepil; throw quhilk,  
 thay war haldin baith in gret veneration, and convertit VII.M Sax-  
 onis, within few dayis, to Cristin faith. The Saxonis than wer callit  
 Inglismen. The Northumbrianis chesit Aidane to be thair bishop:  
 and becaus thay saw ilk day thair devotion incres, and gret nowmer  
 of preistis come in support of Aidane, thay biggit sindry kirkis in  
 Northumbirland, and dedicat thame in the honoure of God and the  
 Virgine Mary; throw quhilk, the said regioun grew na les Catholik  
 than ony othir province of Ingland.

At this time, Penda, King of Marchis, tuke purpos to invade  
 King Oswald, and to conques his realme. Oswald, to withstande  
 his invasioun, assemblit ane large nowmer of pepill, and was slane,  
 and his army discomfist. Oswald, for his haly life and mirakillis,  
 was eikit amang the nowmer of Sanctis. His slauchter was in the  
 XII yeir of the empire of Dowald, quhilk levit nocht lang efter his  
 deith; for, in the XV yeir of his regne, he perist in Loch Tay, quhare  
 he hapnit to be at ane fisching with his servantis, for his solace. His  
 body was found be creparis, and buryit in Colmekill; fra the incar-  
 nation, DCXLV yeris.

## Chap. Twenty-first.

*Of the unhappy prophete Machomete, and his fals lawis. Of sindry haly men. Of King Ferquhart, and his extorsionis done aganis the pepill; and of his miserabill end.*



**A**BOUT this time deceissit the waryit creature Machomete, quhilk was in the tyme of King Ferquhart: he was gottin be ane idolatour, uncertane of Arraby or Persy; and his moder was ane Catholik woman of the Hismaelitis. This Machomete was institute, in his youth, baith in the Hethin and Cristin lawis; and becaus he thocht nane of thaim according to his plesoure, he maid ane fals and superstitious rite, richt waryit to mankind. Quhen he was cumin to mannis age, he conquest his leving on thift and pikary; and maryit ane wedow namit Cadigane, be quhome he conquest gret riches, landis, and possessionis; and come, be sindry chancis, to sa gret estimatioun amang the pepill of Araby, that he maid lawis to govern thaim in justice. He wes instruckit be ane cursit monk namit Sergius, be quhom he colleckit his lawis, fra institutionis of sindry pepill. He ratifyis the sacrament of baptisme, and haldis Crist borne of ane clene virgine. He commendis the psalmis and evangellis, and sayis thay war mendit be his Alcorane. This Alcorane was the maner of ane Bibill, gaderit be him with mony fals institutis and lawis. He ratifyis the circumcision, as Jowis dois. He denyis the Trinite, as the Sabellianis dois. He denyis that the Fader is coequale to the Sonne, as the Ennomianis dois. He sayis, the Haly Spreit is ane creature, as the Macedonis dois. Schortly, his lawis are all maid for the sensualite of man; throw quhilk, he drew sindry pepil to his opinion. This corruppit faith of Machomete is spred in Asia, Affrik, and mekill of Europe. It began, fra the incarnatioun, dcxxxv yeris.

At this time war in France, mony haly men, as Fursius, Stoilanus, and Vulcanus, brethir, gottin of the blude rial of Scotland and

Ireland. Amang us war, in that time, Connane, Columbane, Cromane, and Domiane, with mony otheris. This history, tuiching Sanct Colme, King Aidane, and Sanct Aidane, with mony othir haly men, afore rehersit, is colleckit be Sanct Bede. Bot we wil return to our history. Efter the deith of King Dowald, his brothir sonne, Ferquhard, sonne to King Ferquhard, afore rehersit, was maid king. He was ane man of hie ingine; bot, efter his coronation, he was alterit fra ane liberall and humane prince, in maist insaciabil and bludy tyrane. Quhen he was but auctorite, he was liberal above his power, and gaif his guddis to support madinnis to thair mariage; and had sic commiseration on every persone that was dejeckit fra gud fortoun in povertie, that he conquest gret favour of the pepill, and was jugit, thairfore, to be ane nobill prince. Als sone as he was clothit with publik auctorite, he become ane oppressour of the pepil, full of avarice, like ane bludy fleschour, ennime to religion, comparit justly to ane insaciabil pule; and clamit agane all the guddis quhilkis he gaif afore his auctorite to his nobillis, and said thay war bot lent. And finaly, he slew all thaim that war repugnant to his wayis, or ellis confiscat thair guddis, and held thaim in prisone. He opprest all the riche men of his realme, and confiscat thair guddis be vane causis.

At this time war two haly men, namit Finnane and Colmane, haldin amang Scottis in gret veneration. Thir haly men herand the cruelte done be this bludy tyrane, come for zele of justice, persuaiding him to amend his life. At last, finding him penitent na wayis, thay denuncit him cursit. This unhappy man tuke litill indignatioun thair of; and, be assistance of vicious limmaris, quhilkis war reddy to intertene him in his insolence, he tuke plesoure, thris ilk day, to fars his wambe with all surfettis and delicius cheir, that micht be devisit to make him inebriat and drunken, with othir vices not worthy to be rehersit. His mouth was sa insaciabil, that na foule in the aire, nor fische in the seyis, had rest for his schamefull glotony. And yit na thing maid him sa odious to the pepill, as his rebellious aganis the censuris of haly kirke. Amang mony othir his enormiteis, he fulyeit his two douchteris, and slew his wife, becaus scho detestit his vices. The pepill seing him persevere in sic horribill tyranny, gaderit, with deliverit mind, to put him to deith.



Nochtheles, thay war inhibit be Sanct Colmane; quhilk schew, be devine prophecy, gif he amendit not haistely his life, he suld be punist be the justice of God: and that was weill provin within ane moneth efter; for this king was huntand ane wolf in the fellis, and quhen scho was sarit with the houndis, scho ruschit on the king, and bait him in the side. Finaly, this king fell in ane maist vile and schameful maledy, uncertane quhiddir it come be bit of the wolf, or be ony othir occasioun. Ane vennomus humour eit and consumit the inwart membris of his body, with intollerabill pine. His limmis, feit, and secreit membris, with vile fetoure, wer dissolvit. His wambe, throw immoderat voracite, wes swolin, as he had been edroppit. And quhen he had continewit two yeris in this infirmite, as abhominabill to all creaturis, he become penitent, saying, "Had I bene obedient to the counsall of Colmane, I had nocht bene devorit with this horrible malady, and etin with vile wormes, be just punishment of God. This uncouth and importabill doloure schawis nowe mony gret offencis, baith aganis God and man. Now I am destitute of all remeid, without his mercy be the more. Thir wormes that are bred in my flesh, schawis me maist horrible and unhappy creature." In the mene time, ran to him, his servandis, and inquirt gif he desirit ane preist to heir his confessioun. Than said he, "Bring to me Bischop Colmane." Als sone as this Colmane wes brocht to him, he assoilyeit him first of the cursin; and eftir that he had hard his confession, he persuadit him to be of gud curage, and to have hop in God, quhais mercy wes mair than ony sin that he nicht do; for God said, Turne yow to me, and ye sal be saif. King Ferquhart, rasit in hope be thir wourdis, fell on kneis, askand mercy with pietuus teris, and ressavit the blissit body of Crist. Sone eftir, he wes brocht out of the hous quhare he lay, with vile claithis, to the nixt mote: quhair he gaif the gaist, the xviii yeir of his regue; fra the incarnatioun, dclxiv yeris. And in this samin yeir, Sanct Aidane, Bischop of Northumberland, deceissit. In quhais place succedit Finnane, quhilk deceissit sone eftir, in the samin maner. Eftir his deith, succedit Bischop Colmane; be quhais haly precheing gret multitude of Saxonis wer brocht to Cristin faith. This Colmane past throw al the kirkis among the

Saxonis, precheing the wourd of God, and wes translatit to the cathedrall kirk of Lindefern.

### Chap. Twenty-second.

*Of King Maldwine, and how he was slane be his wife, and his wife brint. Of gret mortalite, be rage of pest, in sindry partis of the world; and how the Scottis war preservit fra the samin.*



FERQUHARD deceissit in this wise, Maldwine, son of Dowald, wes maid king. He wes ane devote prince, and tuk peace with Pichtis and Saxonis. He tuke sic deligence in administratioun of justice, that his pepil levit but injuris. Thus succedit al thing plesandlie in the beginning of his empire. At last, rais ane seditioun betwix the men of Levenax and Argyle; and drew mony of the nobillis in, fortifying of thair debait: and, becaus the Ilis rais with Argyle, and Gallo-way rais with the Levenax, mony heirshippis followit on all sidis. King Maldwine, to punis thir extorsionis, come with ane army aganis the principall movaris thairof; and ceissit nocht quhill thay, be extreme rigour of justice, wer punist to the deith. Thus, trubill that wes so fulischelie begun wes dantit so haistelie, that it maid the name of Maldwine sa feirful to his nobillis that na seditioun followit thaireftir, during his empire. Nocht lang eftir, the king went to Colmekil, to vesity the sepulturis of his eldaris; and reparit the said abbay with new bigginis fra the ground, and dedicat it in honour of God and Sanct Colme.

At this time rang ane terrible pest, to the gret mortalite of the pepill in sindry partis of the warld; and ceissit nocht quhill the pepil, be continewall prayar, fasting, and gud werkis, peacifyit the wraith of God. The Scottis, in thir dayis, knew na maner of hait fever; and wer preservit fra the samin be temperance of thair mouth: for this cruel pestilence rang nevir amang the Scottis, quhill thay left the hailsum temperance of thair eldaris, and maid thaim-

self reddy to resave al infirmiteis. Colmane, Bischop of Lindeferne, seand ane huge multitude of Saxonis peris in the pest, returnit in the Ilis, quhair he biggit ane abbay, and dwelt in it, with his brethir, to the end of his life. Eftir the departing of Colmane, the Northumbrianis, be support of Pichtis, maid heirschippis on the Scottis. King Maldwine ceissit nocht quhill the samin wer recompensit with siclike displesoure, baith to Pichtis and Saxonis; and, for that cause, he incurrit thair extreme hatrent. Followit, be perseverand malice, gret heirschippis and slauchter on all sidis; quhil, at last, King Maldwine wes slane, within the nicht, be his wife, for suspitioun of adultry, in the xx yeir of his regne; fra the incarnation, DCXXXIV yeris. This cruelte wes not lang unpunish; for, on the nixt morow, this unhappy woman wes tane, with all hir complices, and brint cruelly to the deith.

### Chap. Twenty-third.

*Of Eugenius the Fift; and of the Message send to Edfred, King of Northumberland; and of the peace takin thairefter. How King Edfred was slane be Eugenius, with xx.M Saxonis. And of the haly man, Sanct Cuthbert.*



ALDWINE slane as we have writtin, his nepote, Eugenius the Fift, wes maid king. He send his ambassatouris to Edfred, King of Northumberland, desirand peace. Edfred heirand the desiris of Eugenius, fenyeit him ane luffar of peace; howbeit, his mind wes gevin to na thing mair than battal. Nochtheles, he gave trewis for xii monethis; to that fine, that he nicht, during that season, mak provision of al thingis necessar to his weris. The trewis wes gevin under thir conditionis: “The Scottis sal repair al enormiteis done to Saxonis and Pichtis, and redres to be maid on al sidis. Gif Scottis invadit the Pichtis or Saxonis in times cuming, the peace to be dissolvit, and the Saxonis and Pichtis fre to invaid the Scottis, notwithstanding ony contract of peace.” Maldwine suspeckit the dissait of Saxonis,

and maid gret provision for battal; syne garnist al the strenthis of his bordouris with men, munition, and vittallis, aganis al dangeir that nicht fall. At the ische of the tent moneth, Edfred send ane buschement of Saxonis in the Scottis landis; and eftir that thay had slane ane gret nowmer of Scottis, thay returnit, with gret pray of men and guddis, in Northumbirland. Sone efter, ambassatouris wer send be Eugenius to Edfred, desiring redres; be quhom was answerit, That he wald invade the Scottis with mair trubil than afore, but ony redres. Eugenius, seand the peace violat within the trewis, besocht God, the punisar of wrangis, to turne the dammage following be the weris on thame that gaif the first occasion of battal. Finalie, heirand that his ennimes wer to cum in Galloway, he gaderit ane gret power, to prevene thair cuming. Yit, afore his cuming, the Saxonis and Pichtis wer lyand at the seige of Don-skene, the strangest castel of Galloway in thay dayis. Edfred, be haisty cuming of Scottis, wes constranit to leif the seige, and met thame at the river of Lewis, in Galloway; quhillk was that time, be inundation of snawis, boldin above the brayis. The Scottis, seand thair ennimes in sicht, maid aithis nevir to pas out of the feild quhil ane of tham war on live, without thay had victory. The battallis junit haistely, with equale hatrent. Edfred exhortit his men to remembir thair anciant virtew, and to vincus thair ennimes only be violent force. Siclik, Eugenius ceissit not to pas about his folkis, exhorting tham to schaw thair invincibill curage, that thay nicht reiose the palme of victory. Quhill the Saxonis and Scottis war fechtand thus in maist fury, the Pichtis fled to the nixt mote. The fleing of Pichtis dejeckit gretumly the curage of Saxonis; for thay dred that thir Pichtis suld cum on thair backis. Nochtheles, King Edfred exhortit his folkis to perseveir in ithand battal. And quhen he was spekand maist specialy, he rasit up his visour, to be the mair fervent in speche; and incontinent he was doung throw the heid be ane ganye, quhare his face was bair, and fel to the ground. The Saxonis, seand thair king slane, gaif backis; on quhom followit, the Scottis, with lang chace, and drave tham to the river of Lewis, quhare mony of thame perist, and few of thame tane. In this battal wer slane, x.M Saxonis, with Edfred thair king; and of Scottis, vi.M; the residew of thair army was evill woundit. The Saxonis



of Northumberland was not only discomfist in this battal, bot als mony of al othir Saxonis of Ingland, quhilkis come to thair support.

Brudeus, King of Pichtis, knawing himself odius baith to Scottis and Saxonis, and seand ilk ane of thame brokin with otheris weris, come with ane new army on the Northumbrianis; and had subdewit thame, but ony recovir, war not Sanct Cuthbert of Durhame supportit thame be mirakil. This haly man schew to Edfred afore this battal, that he suld not fail eversion of his realm and subdittis, gif he invadit innocent pepil with wrangus weris. The Pichtis ceisist not fra invasion of Northumbrianis; quhil at last, thay fell at contention amang thame self, for the spulye fallin to thame be frequent heirschippis of the said pepil; throw quhilk thay war brokin, and finally content to have the landis of Berwik peceably in times cuming, but invasion of Northumbrianis. King Eugenius, efter this victory, returnit hame. And fra thens, the Saxonis began ilk day to decline in Northumberland, and nicht not recover thair honouris mony yeris efter. Eugenius leiffit not lang efter this victory, and deceisist the ferd yeir of his regne; fra the incarnation, DCLXXXVIII yeris.

### Chap. Twenty-fourth.

*Of gret trubill done be Sarazenis to Cristin pepil. Of King Eugenius the vi.; and his actis. Of uncouth mervellis sene in Albion.*



AT this time, arrivit ane huge nowmer of Sarazenis out of Egypt in Sicil and Affrik, to the gret dammage of Cristin pepil. Efter deith of Eugenius the v., Eugenius the vi. and son to Ferquhart, was maid king. He was sa weill institute in his youth be the reverend bischop namit Adannane, that he held religion in gret reverence. He held peace with the Northumbrianis, bot yit na thing nicht persuade him to be confiderat with Pichtis; for he bure thame in extreme ha-

trent, becaus thay faucht treasonably aganis the Scottis afore, in support of Saxonis, and kepit not thair faith to the Northumbrianis. Nochtheles, he tuk trewis with thame for ane yeir. Als sone as the trewis war outrunning, he send ane herald, and denuncit weir to thame. The haly bischoppis, Sanct Cuthbert and Sanct Adanane, went, as ambassatouris, to draw thir two pepil to concord. And becaus thair labouris war frustrat, thay went to thair prayeris, beseking God to send concord to the II pepil. It is said, thir haly men gat grant at God, to quhom al empire and thoct of man are subjeckit, baith in peace and weir, that Scottis and Pichtis sal not meit aganis othir with hail power of thair realmes, sa lang as Eugenius leiffit. Thus continewit the weris betwix Scottis and Pichtis, but ony gret dammage of baith thair realmes, to the end of Eugenius life ; quhilk wes in the x yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, DCXCVIII yeris. His body wes buryit in Colmekil.

Mony uncouth mervellis wer sene, this time, in Albion. Ane flote of schippis wes sene, with all maner of ordinance, in the river of Humbir, and suddanlie evanist out of sicht. Gret noyis of armor and wappinnis wes herd in the kirk of Camelon. In the last boundis of Scotland, wes ane schoure of blude. In sindry landis of Pichtis, the milk turnit in blude ; and the cheis siclik, in lumpis of blud. The corne wes bludy in hervest. Thir mervellis, quhen thay war divulgat, maid the pepil affrayit.

## Chap. Twenty-fifth.

*Of the vicius tyrane Amberkeleth ; and of his deith. Of King Eugenius the VII. How the Scottis and Pichtis war recounsalit to-gidder be affinite ; and of the slauchter of Eugenius wife. Of vii haly virginis dotat be the King of Pichtis in Abirnethy.*



FTER the deith of Eugenius the VI., Amberkeleth, son, or ellis nepote to Eugenius the First, was maid king. This king alterit his maneris fra he gat auctorite. Afore his electioun, he semit to be defendour of the pure pepil and kirkmen. Nochtheles, fra he was clothit with auctorite, he apperit ane vicius monstour, drownit in lust, avarice, and effeminat life. Garnardus, King of Pichtis, seand this schameful monstoure use na thing semand to ane prince, tuke occasioun to invade the Scottis, traisting to find sufficient time to revenge the injuris done to Pichtis, and maid gret heirschippis and slauchter on the Scottis landis. Amberkeleth, that his febill curage sall nocht move ennimes to hie attemptatis, assemblit his army to resist the Pichtis. And thocht he durst skarsly confide in his noblis, as the use of tyranny is, quhilkis levis ay under feir and dreid, yit he went forthwart with displayit baner. He come, the first nicht, to the watter of Tay ; and efter supper, past furth in the gloming to do his eis, with two servandis. And, in the mene time, he was schot throw the heid with ane arrow ; be quhom, it was uncertane : and deceissit, the secound yeir of his regne, and buryit in Colmekill. The nobillis, litil commovit of his deith, that thair army suld nocht peris for falt of ane heid, maid Eugenius, the VII of that name, king. This Eugenius was bruthir to Amberkeleth, ane man of gret body and gud conditionis. And becaus he understude his army brokin be lang weris, he tuk peace with his nichtbouris the Pichtis, and causit redres to be maid on aithir side. And, in the mene time, the two kingis war confiderat be affinite ; for Spontana, douchter of Garnard, King of Pichtis, was gevin in mariage to King Eugenius.

In the yeir following, two brethir of Athole, quhilkis wer conspirit in the kingis deith, for slauchter of thair fader, slew this lady gret with child, in sted of Eugenius; for scho was lyand in his bed quhen he happenit to be away. Eugenius, be murmour of the pepill, was lang time suspekkit of hir deith; and was constranit, thairfore, to schaw the pietuis maner of hir slauchter. The murdresaris at last war takin, and put cruelly to deith. Eugenius gaif him to religious and civil materis; and causit al the mercial dedis of his antecessouris to be put in cronikillis, to rais the knichtly curage of his posterite in desire of honouris and laude. He causit thir cronikillis to be keipit perpetually in the abbay of Colmekill; and expert historianis to be sustenit thair on the common purs, not only to writ the dedis of Scottis, bot of all othir pepill, as the chance and time occurrit. This Eugenius reparit sindry kirkis of his realme, and did gret reverence to the bishoppis and prelati thair of, and eikit thair patrimony with sindry possessionis, landis, and rentis. He perseverit in gud peace with Pichtis and Saxonis; and deceissit the xviii yeir of his regne; fra the incarnatioun, dccxvi yeris.

In his time was Donevald, the haly man; quhilk levit ane sobir life at Ogilvy, sex milis fra Dundee, haldin amang Pichtis in gret veneratioun. It is said, that he had vii douchteris, quhilk levit with him in gret pennance, on beir breid and wattir. Thay eit nevir bot anis on the day; and the residew thair of occupyit in continewal labour and orison. His eldest douchter, Mayot, maid inhibition to the wild geis, to eit hir faderis corne, and thay obeyit hir haly monitionis; and thairfore, wild geis was nevir sene efter on that ground. Thir haly virginis, efter deceis of thair fader, knawing na securite to leif in desertis but sum defendouris of thair chastite, come to Garnard, King of Pichtis, desiring sum place quhare thay nicht leif ane solitar life, in the honour of God. Garnard condiscendit to thair desiris, and gaif tham ane hous in Abernethy, with certane rentis, to be takin up of the nixt landis, to thair sustentation: quhare thay leiffit ane devote life, and war buryit at the rute of ane aik, quhilk is haldin yit in gret veneration amang the pepil. Abernethy, in that time, was ane ciete of Pichtis, decorit with the first seit of bishoppis of thair realme. Bot it was efter sa distroyit and brint be weris of Scottis, that it come nevir agane to the first



stait. Thir virginis war not in time of Conrannus, with Sanct Briggitta, as the commonis haldis, bot in the time of Eugenius the vii; for he perseverit in gud peace with Garnard, and visyit oftimes thir virginis with his liberalite and guddis; and resignit the crown to Mordak: of quhom sal be our nixt history.

### Chap. Twenty-six.

*Of King Mordak, and his werkis; and of his deith. Of iv sindry pepil in Albion. Of the gret mirakillis of Sanct Niniane. And of Sanct Bede.*



HE noblis, efter the deith of Eugenius, chesit Mordak, son of Amberkeleth, to be king. He was ane humill and liberal prince. He tuk gret labouris to caus al the pepil that was in Albion, to leif togidder in amite and concord. He maid peace betwix the Pichtis, Britonis, and remanent kingis of Ingland. In this time, as Sanct Bede remembris, foure sindry pepil war in Albion, confiderat togidder in peace, richt different in thair manerris, langage, and institutionis; that is to say, the Britonis, Scottis, Pichtis, and Saxonis, quhilkis war callit Inglismen. And becaus the wordis of Bede ar correspondent to this history, I have inserit thame heir, as followis: “ The nation of Pichtis  
 “ was confiderat with the Saxonis that time, rejosing to be participant with the universal kirk in peace and Catholik verite. The  
 “ Scottis, quhilkis inhabit Britane, wer sa content with thair awin boundis, that thay wrocht na injuris nor slichtis contrar Saxonis.  
 “ And suppos the maist part of Britonis had ane natural hatrent aganis Inglismen for sindry superstitionis, yit, be repugnance of  
 “ the law of God and man, thay nicht not optene thair purpos nor desiris; for thocht the Britonis be sum part fre, yit thay are thirllit  
 “ sum part be Inglismen: and thairfore, mony of thame, baith noblis and commonis, be insolence, and felice of lang peace, ar  
 “ mair gevin to contemplation of bukis and religion, than to ony chevalry or dedis of armis; and quhat end sall cum thair of, sall

“ appere sone to oure posterite.” Thir ar the last wordis of the history writtin be Sanct Bede ; fra the incarnation, DCCXXXI yeris. Bot we wil return to our history.

King Mordak reparit mony abbayis and kirkis in his realm, quhilkis war distroyit afore be the weris of his eldaris. He foundit the abbay of Quhittern : quhare the blissit bischop, Sanct Ninian, kithis daily ma miraklis than evir was sene of ony othir sanct in Albion. King Mordak deceissit, the xvi yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, DCCXXXI yeris.

Sanct Bede callis Quhittern, Pithynnica ; and callis the bischop that succedit immediatly efter Sanct Niniane, Octa : bot yit it is necessar to say, Gif ony bischop had thair seit in Quhittern, thay yeid sone out of the use thairof ; for the Ilis obeyit to the Bischop of Galloway and Sodoren, quhilk had his principale seit in the Ile of Man, unto the time of King Malcolme the III ; and in his time the abbay of Quhittern was not first institute, bot restorit to the Bischoppis of Galloway. Sanct Bede deceissit sone efter the completing of the history of Britonis, and was buryit at Durhame ; fra our redemption, DCCXXXIV yeris. Ane contention is yit betwix the Italianis and Albanis, concerning the place quhare Sanct Bede was borne. The Italianis sayis, he was borne in Janis, and buryit in the samin ; and his sepulture is thair yit in gret veneration. In quhat sumevir place he deceissit, or was gottin, treuth is, he maid lang residence, quhen he grew in age, in Northumberland ; and usit oftymes in Melros, quhilk is ane abbay of gud religious men in Scotland : and deceissit in the time of King Ethfine ; of quhom sall be our nixt history.

## Chap. Twenty-sevint.

*Of King Ethfine ; and how he maid foure regentis to govern his realme. Of gret cruelteis done be Donald of the Ilis. And of the deith of King Ethfine.*



ORDAK, buryit in Colmekill, ane convention was maid be the noblis ; and Ethfine, son to Eugenius the VII, maid king. This Ethfine was ane man gevin to justice and peace ; and kepit the band maid afore with Britonis, Inglismen, and Pichtis, be Mordak and Eugenius. He purgit his realm of al misdoaris, and set his labour baith to the defence of his liegis and honoure of religion. Thus grew the Scottis in riches and honest maneris. All thevis, reiffaris, and sawaris of displeour amang the noblis and commonis, put down and punist be his justice. And finaly, he was haldin in sic reverence and dredour for his virtew, that na man durst, nor micht say of reason, ony displeasand wordis of him. Quhil at last, he fel in age. Thay gaif the administratioun of his realm to IV regentis, be decret of counsal : quhais names war Donald, Thesaurer of Argyle ; Collane, Thane of Athole ; Mordak, Thane of Galloway ; and Conraith, Thane of Murray. Thir regentis gidit not the realm with sic justice as it was gidit afore be the king ; for ilk ane of tham labourit sa besaly for thair freindis, that thay had na respect to justice : throw quhilk, the noblis and othir young men returnit to thair ald insolence, to the gret dammage of polecy and common weill of thair realme. Donald of the Ilis, ane man of strang body, with ingine na thing set to virtew, held ane cumpany of vagabund limmaris with him, and maid ithand reiffis and heirschippis on the cuntre, but ony punition. And thocht Mordak was ane of the foure regentis chosin to govern the realme, yit he wald not punis thir cruelteis done be Donald : uncertan quhidder he was junit to him in blude, or participant with him in the proffet of his reiffis. The commonis, brocht to uter heirschippis and poverté, complenit to Mordak in maist la-

mentable wise, and desirit restitution of thair guddis. And becaus the king was that time in extreme malady, nane was to put remeid to thair displesouris. The commonis, opprest with thir sorowis, and seand na remeid, rasit thair handis to the Hevin, and complenit thair miseryis amang thame self. Bot ay the mair thay complenit, the mair cruelte followit be this Donald. Apperit thus na esperance of tranquillite: quhill at last, King Ethfine deceissit, the xxx yeir of his regne; and was buryit in Colmekill, the yeir of God, DCCLXII yeris.

### Chap. Twenty-eight.

*Of King Eugenius the VIII; and how he was slane for his tyranny, and his evill counsalouris hingit on jebatis.*

**E**FTER the deith of Ethfine, Eugenius the VIII, son to Mordak, was maid king. In the beginning, he semit the mair plesand, that he ceissit not quhill this Donald and his complicis war punist to the deith, in presence of the pepill, for thair demeritis. And yit, the king was nocht full sithit with his justice, bot, with mair rigoure, punist Mordak to the deith, becaus he was alliat to the said Donald, and participant with him in his treason. Sic thingis done, King Eugenius accusit the remanent regentis, Dowald, Collan, and Conraith; and becaus thay nicht have savit the pepil fra trubil done to thame, and was found necligent thairintil, during the kingis infirmite. Thay payit gret sowmis to the kingis proffet, in redemption of thair livis. Throw thir punishmentis, the realme was pecifyit in al partis, and the king had in sic dredour to his pepill, that na rebellion apperit to rise amang the commonis during his time. The pepil belevit to have gottin ane gud prince, quhen this Eugenius began to regne above thame; bot, as oft occurris, the ingine of man is mair proclive and reddy to evil werkis than to gud. This Eugenius havand his empire under lang peace and sleuth, fel in maist schamful vices, rage- and in mair lust than semit to ony man. He was ane fulyear of



virginis and nobill matronis, deliting in na thing mair than in bordellis and tavernis. He luffit nane bot thame only that couth bring him moniest concubinis to nuris him in new lust and plesour. Throw quhilk, he inccressit ilk day in mair vice, and become sa avaricius, that he regardit nothir the law of God nor man; and slew sindry trew men of his realm, baith spiritual and temporal, be vane causis, to conques thair landis and riches, to sustene ane cumpany of vicius limmaris about him. Bot his cruelte and vicius dedis war not lang unpunist; for the noblis, seand that he micht not be refrenit fra sic enormiteis and schamfull werkis, and seand that he had nothir the censouris of haly kirk nor God in reverence, conspirit haistely aganis him, and slew him in the tolbut, quhare he was persewand ane trew man to the deith for his awin geir; syne tuk his familiaris, quhilk assistit to his unhappy dedis, and hingit tham on jebatis, to the gret plesour of the pepill. This end maid Eugenius the VIII, the thrid yeir of his regne. His body was ordanit to be cassin in ane closet, or ellis be devorit with hundis and ravennous beistis. Nochtheles, that sic thingis suld not succedd to na les scham of his antecessoris than posterite, his body, be licence of his noblis, wes brocht to Colmekil, and buryit amang the sepulturis of othir kingis.

### Chap. Twenty-ninth.

*Of the vicius King Fergus the thrid; and how he was slane be his Wife. Of hir Orison maid to the counsal; and how scho slew hir self.*



FERGUS, the thrid of that name, and son to King Eth-fine, was maid king, efter deith of Eugenius the VIII: and was nocht far discrepant fra maneris of Eugenius the VIII; for he become ane drunken glotoun, with sic effeminat lustis, that he necleckit the administration of his realme, and tuke plesoure of nane bot of scudlaris, insaciabill drunkettis, and sic vicius and detestabil personis. He was hatit with all virtius pepill; and had ane grete nowmer of huris following on him, and

held thaim in sic familiarite with him, that he lichtlyit and contemptnit his awin wife; and brocht hir to sic penurite, that scho was constraunt to serve othir nobil wemen for hir sustentation. This woman, impacient to suffir sic injuris, come sindry times to the king, and prayit him to amend his life, gif he desirit to have lang empire; and schew, gif he continewit in adultre, he sall nocht eschew divine punitioun, quhen he leist wenit. The king, na thing regarding hir wordis, ceissit nocht ilk day to rage in mair insolence. At last, the quene, seand hir self defraudit of the det of matrimony, thocht bettir was to hir to be wedow, than to leif in daily contemptioun amang thir concubinis. And finaly, scho slew the king sleipand in his bed, the thrid yeir of his regne. His body was brocht, on the morrow, in the counsall hous, to serche, be diligent inquisitioun, quha durst attempt sa gret cruelte. Mony of the kingis freindis and servitouris comperit in jugement with sorowful chere, desiring the werkaris of this cruelte to be serchit with maist diligence. And becaus na man had suspition of the quene to persew hir husband with ony displeasure, mony of the kingis familiaris wer tane, and be scharp questionis demandit, and sindry punist with importabill tormentis. The quene, heirand thir innocent men punist for the crime that scho committit, come haistely to the counsall, and said in this wise, “ I  
 “ knaw nocht, my tender pepil, quhat conscience me accuis, nor  
 “ quhat devine vengeance effrayis me with sindry thochtis; for al  
 “ this day and nicht bygane, my mind and body is affocht, special-  
 “ ly sen I hard thir innocent men sa cruelly tormentit: for gif my  
 “ ire had nocht bene mesit be sum temperance, I had wrocht my  
 “ self maist shameful displeasure. The kingis slauchter is my  
 “ deid: conscience persuadis me, for heil of my saule, to schaw the  
 “ verite, that thir innocent men be nocht punist for the crime that I  
 “ committit. Understand, thairfore, that thir men that ye accuse ar  
 “ innocent of his deith; for I am scho that slew King Fergus with  
 “ my cursit handis, this last nicht, be impacience of ire and lust,  
 “ quhilkis ar two maist sorrowful broddis amang wemen; for he  
 “ defraudit me of my lawfull bed, using his immoderat lust with  
 “ othir wemen: thus, quhen na esperance, nor yit persuasionis,  
 “ apperit to recounsall him to my desiris, sic huge and brime fury  
 “ rais in me, quhil I was tyistit to do this cruelte; thinkand mair

“plesand to remove occasion of adultry, and to be destitute of my husband, than to leif perpetually defraudit of his bed, and injurit be thir spous-brekaris. Assoilye, heirfore, thir men that ye accuse of his deith; and to punis me, quhilk is the onlie werker of this murdir, sal be na gret laubour. I that did this felony, sal tak punishment on myself.” Skarslie wer thir wourdis said, quhen scho, in presence of the pepill, or thay nicht advert, dang hir self with ane dager to the hert, and fell doun deid afore the pepill. Mony of the pepill had gret wonder of hir constance: and lovit hir conscience, becaus scho revelit the hid treason to deliver the innocent men fra thair deith; and slew hirself, to prevene the schame and displesoure that wes apperand to hir. Otheris thocht nane of hir doingis apprisable, bot repugnant to the law of God and nature: saying, it wes nocht leifful to ony person to reveil thair awin, nor yit othir mennis treasoun; and maist detestable of all, innaturally to sla thaimself. Quhill the pepill wes at this disputatioun, the body of Fergus wes commandit, be the nobillis, to be brocht to Cohnkill: quhair it wes buryit; fra the incarnatioun, DCCLXVII yeris. The body of the quene, becaus scho slew hirself, wes inhibit to lie in Cristin beryis.

### Chap. Thirty.

*Of King Solvathius; and how he dantit sundry gret limmaris of his realme. Of his deith. And of mony haly men.*



FERGUS buryit on this wise, Solvathius, sonne of Eugenius the VIII wes maid king; ane noble prince, and abill till have done mony nobill actis in his realme, gif the weirdis had bene propiciant. In the thrid yeir of his regne, he tuk the gout, throw vehement cald that he consavit afore in his hunting. This infirmite fel so sare in his juncturis, and lethis of his body, that he nicht nocht do the chargis pertenant to ane gud king; for it continewit with him to the end of his life. And becaus the king wes vexit with sic infirmite, mony gret trubillis followit in the realme. The first trubill rais be Banus, Capitane of

the Ile of Tyre; for he gaderit ane cumpany of limmaris, and tuke all the strenthis of the Ilis, and callit himself king. And nocht lang efter, he come with mony lang faddis in Kintyre and Lorne, and maid heirschippis and slauchter in al partis quhare he come. The king, commovit at thir attemptatis, send Douchquhall, Capitane of Athole, and Culane, Capitane of Argyle, with certane chosin men in the Ilis; and thay, with small impediment, put this Banus and his cumpany to flicht, and drave thaim, be lang chace, in ane strait coif of Lorne, within ane crag, abone ane river deip, but ony furdis. This coif had na out-passage. Thus behuvit thir men that fled to the coif, returne the samin gait thay come. Banus, with his cumpany, drevin in this cove be adventure, maid him to returne as he come; bot he fand the gait closit with his ennimes. Nochtheles, he socht mony ways to eschew; and quhen he had passit the day in sindry opinionis, and finding na thing profitible, he arrayit ane wache within the nicht, for defence of his cumpany. Finalie, he wes drevin to sic penurite, becaus he had na vittallis to sustene him, that he send messengeris, desiring licence to depart in the Ilis, his life saif. At last, seand nocht ellis bot repuls of his desiris, he arrayit his folkis, and come aganis Douchquhall and Culane in the breking of day, and wes slane, with all his cumpany; to be ane notable exempil, in times cuming, quhat frute followis of rebelloun aganis thair prince. Efter this victorie, Douchquhall and Culane went in the Ilis, and pecifyit the cuntre of all trubill, as thay plesit.

Nocht lang efter, rais ane newe trubill in Galloway, be Gillequham, son of Donald, quhilk was justifyit, as we schew, by Eugenius the VIII. Nochtheles, this trubill was pecifyit with smal labour, fra the heiddismen, be quhom the first occasioun rais, war punist. At this time rais gret seditioun betwix the Saxonis in Ingland, and the Britonis in Walis; for multitude of kingis, sindry lawis, lang peace and riches generit discord; and the Pichtis war not but civil debait amang thaimself. Thus, was sa gret sedition amang the Albianis, that thay nicht not invade thair nichtbouris. King Solvathius, during this time, had his realme in gud tranquillite, be prudent industry of his nobillis; and all boundis thair of weill obeisant to his empire, with na les justice than he had passit in proper persoun



throw his realme. And deceissit, the xx yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnatioun, DCCCLXXXVII yeris.

In thir days war mony clerkis of singulare eruditioun and life ; as Macharius, Bischop of Abirdene, to quhome the cathedrall kirk is dedicat ; Divinicus, archedene ; Congane and Dunstane, abbotis. Thir, and mony othir thair disciplis, war precheouris and lanternis of haly kirk. Sum authouris writis, thir haly men war in othir kingis days : bot we vary na thing fra our first purpos, following Veremond and Campbell, baith in the history and the dait, as we promittit.

And sa endis heir, the Nint Buke of thir Croniklis.

# The Tent Buke.

---

## HEIR BEGINNIS THE TENT BUKE OF THE CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

### Chap. First.

*Of King Achaius ; and how he agreit his nobillis of all contentionis.  
Of his message send to the Princis of Ireland ; and of thair answer.  
How mony Irelandmen perist in the seyis. How the Scottis and Irelandmen war aggreit.*



OLVATHIUS beand deceissit on this wise, Achaius, son of Ethfine, was maid king. This prince, in the beginning of his empire, set him to meis all discord and seditionis amang his nobillis ; for he traistit na thing sa plesand for the felicite of his realm, as to bring his nobillis and commonis to concord. This trubill being mesit, apperit ane othir of greter motioun, betwix Ireland and the Ilis. Ane company of Irelandmen maid certane heirschippis in Kintyre ; and incontinent, all the pepill of the Ilis ruschit haistely to harnes, and slew ane gret nowmer of thir Irelandmen. Than Achaius, to prevene all trubil that nicht follow be this last bergane, send his ambassatouris to the Princis of Ireland, schewing him advertist

that Irelandmen, fra quhome the Scottis tuke thair beginning, was purposit to cum haistely to invade his realme, to the gret damage of the two pepill quhilk hes bene sa lang togiddir confiderat under ane blud and amite. And schew, it wes na sufficient cause of battall to nichtbouris and freindis to invaid othir with battall, howbeit ilk theif reif othir. And thairfore, gif the Irelandmen wer mair desirus of peace than weir, and glaid to keip the auld band hail, the Scottis wald persevere in kindnes with thaim. Be contrar, gif thay desirit battall erar than peace, and nocht resolute quhat wes best to be done, he desirit thaim, with degest counsall, to avise quhat trubill and sorow nicht follow be thair weris. And sen peace wes finalie necessar, to avise quhiddir it wer mair plesand afore the weris or eftir; or mair profitable to have peace, quhen na displeasure wer precedent, or quhen baith thair realmes wer brokin with athiris injuris. The Princis of Ireland, nochtwithstanding thir humil wourdis, answerit, Thay suld sustene all chargis sa vailyeantlie, that na adversite sall follow. And thairfore, thay wald have na peace with Scottis, quhill the injuris done be thaim in Kintyre wer redressit, or revengit, with mair skaith. Thay wer als profundlie avisit quhat proffit or damage nicht follow be thair weris, and had provisioun of all thingis necessar, aganis quhatsumevir chance of fortoun that nicht follow. And thought thir weris wer of litil proffet, yit thay war sa accustomit thairwith, that thay wald use the samin as thair elderis did afore. Quhen thir ambassatouris wer returnand be the Ireland seis in Scotland, and the Scottis traisting na thing les than battall be Ireland, ane flote of Irelandmen arrivit in the Ilis, and ceissit fra na maner of cruelteis on the inhabitantis thair of. At last, quhen thay had heryit the cuntre, and makand thaim to returne hame ladin with infinite guddis, sic ane storme rais, be violence of the hevin, that few of thaim eschapit unperist in the seis. King Achaius heirand this calamite falling to Irelandmen be just punitioun of God, for thay invadit his realme within the treti of peace, concludit to assailye tham na forthir with sic desiris; and belevit thaim sa brokin be this forsaid trubil, that thay suld seik peace at him. And as the king conjecturit, sa followit; for the ambassatouris of Ireland come to him at Inverlochte, confessand the manifest punition falling on thame be justice of God, for the wrangis

be thame done to Scottis; and prayit Achaius to gif peace to thame, quhilk thay refusit afore to gif, be thair insolence. To thir ambassatouris answerit Achaius, Thocht Irelandmen wer obstinat, and nicht not understand thair proffet, quhill thay sufferit affliction, and refusit oftymes sic thingis as bene maist profitabill for tham, yit he wald not be repugnant to reason, sen he sawe thaim that wer his ennemes for that time, be justice of God, punist for thair offence, to be exempil to al pepil, quhat vengeance fallis on thame that invadis thair nichtbouris but just titill of battal. Heirfore, to schaw him servand of Crist, quhilk commendit peace sa gretumlie to the weil of mortal pepill, he wald set aside baith recent and ald injuris, and have peace with thame, thocht thay deservit not. The ambassatouris depeschit on this maner, returnit hame, rejosing of the peace grantit to thame. And the Scottis wer not unglaid thair of, havand experience, be lang use, quhat dammage or pleisir may follow be weris of uncouth realmes.

### Chap. Second.

*How King Charlis send his ambassatouris to be confiderat with Scottis and Pichtis. Of thair orison maid to King Achaius; and of the orisoun maid aganis thaim be Culmane.*

**I**N the mene time, Charlis the Mayne, King of France, and Romane Empriour, set his mind, with uter power, to distroy the ennemes of Cristin faith. Efter that he understude Inglismen, be victorie of Britonis, brocht to sic insolence, that thay trubillit baith the Almane and Franche seis; and sumtime exerceing sic cruelteis and heirschippis on France, that marchandis nicht have na passage, be see or land: to dant this insolence of Inglismen, that thay sall nocht have power to invaid the Franche and Almane seis in times cumming, King Charlis, be decreit of his nobillis, tuke purpos to be confiderat with Scottis and Pichtis, under thir conditionis: Als oft as Inglismen cumis with ane army in France, the Scottis and Pichtis sall invaid Ingland.



Gif Inglismen invaidis Scottis and Pichtis, the Franchemen, on that maner, sall invaid Ingland. o dres this mater, wer send ambassatouris out of France to King Achaius. And quhen thay wer brocht to his presence, ane of thaim said in this maner: " Richt  
 " illuster prince, wer nocht Charlis the Mayne, the glore and pro-  
 " tectoure of Catholik religion aganis Sarazenis, knawis, be experi-  
 " ence, Franchemen favorit to the and thy pepill, he had nocht  
 " send us for sic thingis as we wil desire at this time. The fame of  
 " thy gud name towart the Cristin faith, and eik thy benevolence  
 " schawin to marchandis of our cuntre, quhen thay travel in thir  
 " boundis, movit us, the ambassatouris of King Charlis, to cum to  
 " the with the more confidence. We beleif it is not unknowin to  
 " thy hienes, in quhat extreme dangeir the Catholik pepill hes stand,  
 " thir mony yeris, in Italie, France, and Spanye, be cruelte of Sa-  
 " razenis, the ennimes of God; quhat nowmer of pepill bene slane  
 " thairwith; quhat landis and townis brint, and brocht to uter ever-  
 " sioun; quhat nobill cieteyanis bene brocht to importable servi-  
 " tude. And becaus sa gret trubill risis dailie aganis the Cristin  
 " pepill, the maist Catholik prince, Charlis, hes votit him to the  
 " deith, in defence thairof aganis the ennimes of God; desiring na  
 " thing more ardentlie, than to bring his mind to sic fine, that Cris-  
 " tin pepill may be deliverit fra truble of Sarazenis, and kirkmen  
 " restorit to thair first institutioun: and dredis na thing sa mekill,  
 " as to be empeschit fra his hailsum purpos, be seditioun rising amang  
 " Cristin princis; for now divers pepill, as Saxonis, Frisonis, Nor-  
 " mannis, and Inglismen, quhilkis ar of Saxonis blude, hes, be ma-  
 " nifest tyranny, conquest the realme of Britane, invading the pepill,  
 " baith be see and land, with untellable cruelteis. To dant thair  
 " attemptatis, and to abandoun thaim in times cuming, that thay  
 " sall nocht invaid France, nor this thy realme, with sa bludy in-  
 " cursionis as thay did afore; King Charlis of France, be deliverit  
 " mind of his nobillis, desiris to be confiderat with the and thy pe-  
 " pill, under sic fallowschip, that Franchemen sall support Scottis,  
 " and Scottis Franchemen, gif it happinnis Inglismen to invaid ony  
 " of thaim. Thus may the injure of Inglismen, the maist avaricius  
 " pepill in erd, be best eschewit to baith the pepill. For thir rea-

“sonis, I beleve, ye, maist vailyeant pepill, quhom God hes de-  
 “fendit sa lang unbrokin fra your riche and strang ennimes, will  
 “be favorable to thir honorable desiris of King Charlis, and sup-  
 “port us, als weil aganis Inglismen, as aganis the ennimes of Cris-  
 “tin faith; for the commodite heiroyf sall finalie succaid na les to  
 “your weil, than to ouris.” The ambassatouris, eftir this orison,  
 wes ressavit in the kingis palice with all honour and magnificence  
 that micht be devisit. In the mene time, rais ane strang disputa-  
 tion amang the nobillis, quhidder it wes proffitable or nocht for the  
 commoun weill of Scotland to be confiderat, as the ambassatouris  
 desirit, with France. Mony noblis wer variant in thair opinioun;  
 and thairfore, thir ambassatouris wer send to pas thair time at the  
 huntis with othir nobillis, quhill the counsall wer resolvit in this dif-  
 ficill mater. Than Culmane, Capitane of Mar, said to the counsal  
 on this maner: “I have na admiration, maist nobil prince, howbeit  
 “thy pepill desiris to be confiderat with France, belevand na thing  
 “sa gud, sa honest, nor sa plesand for thair commoun weill, as to  
 “be confiderat with the maist riche pepill this day in Europe; for  
 “throw this societe and alliance, the Scottis sall rise of gret fame  
 “and reverence in all partis of the world. Nochtheles, all this com-  
 “modite and plesour that now cumis, as apperis, be this band, sal  
 “be of litil estimatioun, in respect of the hevvy and irrecoverable  
 “dammage that sal follow thairthrow to us eftir. The mischevus  
 “end, be my opinion, sall schaw to our posterite, how far we, in  
 “our present dayis, wer aberrand fra thair common weil, in ma-  
 “king of this band with France. Quhat othir frute may we have  
 “to be confiderat with France aganis England, our dailie nichtbouris,  
 “quhais freindschip wes maist plesand to us, bot onlie to mak our  
 “nixt nichtbouris our strangest fayis, and our freindis severit fra  
 “us be the braid seis? at quhais plesoure we man move battall con-  
 “trar our nixt nichtbouris, and jeoperd our bodyis, landis, and  
 “gudis, to extreme dangeir, for the weil of thame quhilkis ar far  
 “severit fra our support. Heirfor, I think, sen the mater is sa  
 “hie, and apperand mair to our singular dammage than ony com-  
 “modite, we suld be sa profoundly resolvit, that we seik na sic co-  
 “lourit honour, nor improffitabil gloire, that may provoik our nixt  
 “nichbouris to frequent weris, and caus us to tine shamefully our

“landis and liberteis, quhilkis bene savit sa mony yeris afore be our  
 “nobil antecessouris. Quhat may be devisit mair skaithfull to fre  
 “pepill, than to jeoperd thair realm, quhen thay have it in peace,  
 “apon the chance of battal, or to thirle thame wilfully to servitude  
 “of uncouth pepil? Gif Franchemen brek the band of confidera-  
 “tion within the fury battal movit be us only for thair cause, and  
 “syne be confiderat with our nichtbouris and daily ennimes, levand  
 “the hail preis of batal on us; how sal the gret dammage and in-  
 “juris sustenit in our weris aganis Inglismen be than redressit?  
 “Have we riches and strenth to recover thir displeouris on Franche-  
 “men, efter that we ar brokin be thair weris, and brocht neir to  
 “uter exterminion? Attour, gif we happin to be brocht into sic  
 “calamite, that our gudis ar waistit, and our pissance brokin, and  
 “Franchemen confiderat with Inglismen in our contrar; how sal we  
 “than resist Inglismen? Quhome sall we than accuse for violation  
 “of the band betwix us and France? Siclik, gif we be confiderat,  
 “as is devisit, with France, we sal be in daily bergan of ennimes,  
 “and sendill have consolation of freindis. We sall have frequent  
 “weris with ennimes, and nevir find our confiderat friendis, bot  
 “throw lang passage and dangerus seis. Na marchandice sal be  
 “brocht to us out of France, Spanye, nor Almany, bot be tolle-  
 “rance of Inglismen. Thus sal our marchandis be sa destitut, that  
 “thay sall have na ressait nor port, quhen dangeir or stormis invadis  
 “thame: thus sall thay othir peris, for falt of refuge, in the stormy  
 “seis; or ellis tine thair schippis and guddis, and be randerit in  
 “thair ennimes handis. Be thir reasonis apperis, nobill prince,  
 “quhat skaith and dammage sall follow, to be confiderat with  
 “France. Best is, thairfore, to perseveir in the auld band with  
 “Pichtis, Britonis, and Inglismen, as our eldaris did afore, quhilkis  
 “knew al the frute that nicht cum to thaim be ony band of France.  
 “And sen our vailyeant and nobill eldaris nicht nevir find the band  
 “of France profitabill for thair common weill, I think we suld leve  
 “on the samin maner as thay did; and na confideration to be maid  
 “with new and uncouth pepill, les than we wilfully list jeoperd our  
 “realm, our livis and gudis, but ony respect to our awin weil, for  
 “the luf allanerly of France.”

## Chap. Third.

*Of the answer maid to this last orison be Albiane. How France and Scotland war perpetually confiderat. How Pichtis refusit to be confiderat with France. And of the articles contenand the band betwix Scotland and France.*



INDRY of the noblis tuke gret indignatioun at thir wordis of Culmane; for thay thocht it was baith necessare and honest to thaim to have societe and band with France. Than ane nobill man, namit Albiane, Capitane of the Ilis, said in this wise: “ Gif the foure pepil that dwellis now in “ Albion, namit Britonis, Scottis, Saxonis, and Pichtis, nicht leve “ togider under ane mind and peace, or gif we nicht be sicker to “ leve in peace with Inglismen be tennour of thair band or faith, I “ think the counsal gevin be Culmane war not unprofitabil, nor yit “ suld be refusit; for than we nicht have na occasion nor motive “ to seik confideration of uncouth pepil. Bot, sen thair was never “ found, be na pepil, mair falset and treason than Scottis, Pichtis, “ and Britonis, hes found be Saxonis; I think it necessar, othir to “ have continewal weir aganis na les falset than weir of Inglismen, “ or ellis to be confiderat with the pepill that may support us aganis “ thair perpetuall invasion. Quhidder ar thir doingis faith or de- “ sait? Quhen the Britonis had brocht the Saxonis in thair realme “ to defend thame fra thair ennimes, and efter that thay had tretit “ thame in the maist tender maner thay nicht, and rewardit thame “ with gret honour and riches; thir treasonabil Saxonis turnit thair “ mindis fra amite to feid and hatrent, and schew thamsel maist “ ennimes to Britonis, quhare thay suld have bene thair protec- “ touris; and bure armour and wappinnis aganis the said Britonis; “ and nocht allanerly invadit tham with infinite slauchter, bot “ spulyeit thame of thair realme and honouris. Quhat band or con- “ fideration hes haldin thir Saxonis at peace with ony pepil in times “ byganes. Thay ly ay in wait to tak thair nichtbouris at advantage,



“ but ony respect to faith or band, as the time occurris. Quhat  
 “ misery and trubil is fallin to the Britonis be dissait of Saxonis ?  
 “ How oftimes hes the Saxonis brokin, quhen we belevit leist, the  
 “ peace betwix us and Pichtis ? Thay ar contending now amang  
 “ thameself, mair be treason and falset, than ony honest weris.  
 “ Thay have slane sa mony kingis in Northumberland, that skarsly  
 “ may ane man be found that dar ressave the crown thairof. Was  
 “ not Oswin, King of Northumberland, within thir few yeris slane  
 “ be Oswane, and Oswane by Osrik ? and mony othir kingis of  
 “ Northumberland, in the samin maner, war ay finaly murdris be  
 “ thair successouris. Attour, Inglismen hes na les contention in  
 “ al partis quhare thay haf now thair dominion, than thay have  
 “ in Northumberland ; for, kirkmen and prelatis, for feir of thir  
 “ crueltis done be Saxonis, quhilkis now ar callit Inglismen, hes  
 “ left thair cathedral kirkis and abbayis, and fled in uncouth re-  
 “ gionis. And the caus that thay invadit us not at this time, cumis  
 “ be na reverence that thay have to God, nor to thair faith, bot  
 “ only for devision amang thameself ; and dout not, bot als sone  
 “ as thay ar pecifyit of civil debaitis, thay sall invade us, nochtwith-  
 “ standing ony band maid be thame. Heirfore, to dant thir at-  
 “ temptatis of Inglismen, I find na thing sa expedient, as to be con-  
 “ fiderat with the pepil that may chaistefie thame maist esaly. Now  
 “ hes fortun gevin baith heft and blaid of this mater to us ; for  
 “ now ar cumin the oratouris of France, offering it wilfully, that is  
 “ maist proffitabil to us. Lat us heirfore be confiderat with thame  
 “ that hes France, Spanye, and mekil of Almany, under thair em-  
 “ pire. May sic commoditeis be refusit to wise men ? May the  
 “ band of France, offerit frely, be denyit be us, the last pepil of  
 “ the world, sen thay, for thair faith to God and man, has sa braid  
 “ empire and landis in the world ? Na thing may be sa hailsum nor  
 “ proffitabil, thairfore, to us, as the band of France, gif we ressave  
 “ it plesandly ; for we sal have sa mony freindis thairthrow, that  
 “ the passage of marchandis, with al kind of marchandeis, sal be  
 “ sicker and frequent to us, but ony danger of seis or ennimes.  
 “ Heirfore, nane is, I beleif, that wil consider this mater degestly,  
 “ bot sall think the band of Franchemen, quhilk is ane faithful pe-  
 “ pil, riche and potent, baith be see and land ; mair proffitabil to us,

“ than ony band of Inglismen. Nane is sa mischant, I trow, amang  
 “ yow, bot he knawis the Inglismen na les set to uter perdition of  
 “ Scottis, than of Britonis, with equale desire to conquere our realm.  
 “ Heirfore, gif we intend to eschew the hatrent of our maist feirfull  
 “ ennimes; gif we intend to honour the faith of Crist, for quhais  
 “ defence the Franchemen beris now thair armour and wappinnis;  
 “ gif we have mair respect to verite than falset; gif we labour for  
 “ the fame and honour of our nation; gif we wil defend our realme,  
 “ and bring it to tranquillite and peace; and, finaly, gif we wil mak  
 “ defence for our liberte and livis, quhilkis ar maist dere to man;  
 “ lat us plesandly be confiderat with France, and persevere thairin-  
 “ til: havand confidence, that the said band sal not only be defence  
 “ to us in times cuming, to defend our realme; bot als, to resist the  
 “ injure of Inglismen, richt commodius and proffitabill.” Albiane,  
 be this orison, drew mony of the pepil to his opinion.

Achaius, seand his noblis plesandly resolvit to be confiderat with  
 France, commandit the ambassatouris, on the morow, to heir his  
 answer. Incontinent, thir ambassatouris war brocht within the  
 kingis palice, and feistit with maist triumphant cheir that micht be  
 devisit. Than the noblis convenit to ane counsal: in the quhilk  
 was concludit, to send Guillian, brothir to King Achaius, with  
 mony othir noble and prudent men, to mak the said band; and to  
 thank the King of France, that he desirit the band of Scottis, above  
 al othir pepil of Albion. Attour, it was concludit to send iv.m  
 men, furnist with al necessaris, in support of King Charlis aganis the  
 Sarazenis. Incontinent, Achaius callit afore him thir ambassatouris,  
 and said in this maner: “ Sic thingis as ye desirit, in name of  
 “ Charlis, the maist Catholik King, ar sa plesand to me and my pe-  
 “ pil, that nane is in al this cumpany nocht condescending to your  
 “ desiris, or not traisting gret felicite to succede to thame amang  
 “ uncouth pepill, gif thay be decorit with societe of sa nobil ane  
 “ realme and pepil: and thairfore, we decerne us and our pepil to  
 “ be perpetuall confiderat with the maist Cristin King, Charlis, and  
 “ his pepil; quhais weil is maist dere to us, above all othir creaturis  
 “ in this erd: praying God, that the said band may succede to  
 “ the perpetuall felicite of baith the pepill. And that the said band  
 “ may be the mair strenthly roborat, we have ordanit oure brothir,

“Guilliam, with iv men of singulare erudition and prudence, to pas with you in France, to make the said band : and hes send iv.m armit men, to pas with King Charlis in quhat region he plesis, aganis the ennimes of Cristin faith.” The ambassatouris, richt reposit of this answer, gaif thankis to King Achaius and his nobillis ; syne went to Hungus, King of Pichtis, and desirit to be confiderat on the samin maner with him and his pepil, as thay desirit afore Achaius. The King of Pichtis thankit King Charlis of his benivolence, and said, The mater was sa hie, that it micht not be discussit but degēist advisement : and presently, sa far as reasoun movit his intelligence, he thocht thair band not proffitabil, sen thay war sa far severit fra his support ; thairfore, thair band was to be refusit, in adventure his pepill cum to sic dammage, throw the said band, that the samin micht nevir be recoverit. Thus returnit the ambassatouris, but expedition of thair erandis, to Achaius. Within ane moneth efter, Guilliam, with thir ambassatouris of France, togidder with iv clerkis of maist erudition and prudence, namit Clement, Johne, Alcuine, and Rabane, come in France, with the ordinance of weirmen, afore rehersit ; and thay war al plesandly ressavit be King Charlis, and put in ordinance to leif on his wagis amang the remanent army of France.

Sone eftir, be the oratouris of Scotland, war schewin, Achaius writingis, desiring the Franchemen and Scottis to be confiderat for thame and thair posterite, with articlis as followis : “The amite and cnsideration of Franchemen and Scottis to be maid for evir, baith for the pepil present and to cum. The injure of Inglismen done to ony of thir pepill, sal be haldin as commoun to thaim baith. Quhen Franchemen ar invadit be Inglismen, the Scottis sal send thair army in defence of France, sa that thay be supportit with money and vittallis of France. Quhen Scottis ar invadit be Inglismen, the Franchemen sal cum, apon thair awin expens, to thair support. Gif ony private or publik person of thir confiderat pepil supportis Inglismen aganis ony ane of thame with counsal, money, or vittallis ; or remane amang thame during the time of battal ; the doar thairof sal be haldin tratour and ennime to thaim baith. Nane of thir ii pepil sal tak peace or truis with Inglismen but avice of otheris.” Thir conditionis of peace, ro-

borat in maner foresaid, sal be writtin in parchement, with interchangit selis of king and king ; to remane in Scotland and France, in perpetual memory of this lyig, to thame and thair posterite. And that the noblis of Scotland sal be mair mindful of this present lyig, to the King of Scotlandis armes, quhilkis was that time ane reid lion rampand in ane feild of gold, was eikit, ane double tressour, with contrar lillyis, including the lion on all partis : to signify that the said lion was than armit with the lilly and riches of France, and confiderat with the samin perpetually : and to signify, that al the kingis of Scotland sall fecht vailyeantly for thair realme and liberte, thair religion and innocence, perpetually ; and support Franchemen aganis all ennimes.

### Chap. Fourth.

*How Pape Leo the thrid, and the Florentinis, was restorit to thair honour and liberte be King Charlis. Of sindry abbayis foundit be Scottis Guilliam. How the universite of Paris began be Scottis. Of the loving of the samin.*



**E**FTER that the band was roborat, in maner foresaid, betwix Scotland and France, Scottis Guilliam remanit, with mony othir Scottis, in continewal residence with King Charlis in al his weris ; and conquest, be his manheid and prowes, sic fame, that he was callit The Knicht but Reproche in al his weris ; and gat sic riches and landis, that he was gretumly renownit among the princis of France. He prosperit in al his weris ; and dantit mony sindry pepil, as Saxonis, Hungarianis, and Normannis, efter that thay wer rebelland to King Charlis, and wald not ressave his lawis. This Guilliam wan excellent honouris, the time that King Charlis restorit Pape Leo the Thrid to his seit, efter that he was dounge out of Rome be injure of Romanis. He wan also gret fame, quhen the said Charlis, passand throw Tuskany, restorit the town of Florance to thair anciant honouris, efter that it was distroyit be Gothis. He brocht the Florentinis agane to the said toun, and re-



parit it with new wallis, kirkis, and institutionis, that the cieteyanis thairof micht leif in liberte. Thir, and mony othir honorable actis, war done, that time, in Italy and othir partis of the warld, be Scottis Guilliam: howbeit, thay war ay done under the name of King Charlis; for King Charlis remanit not lang in Italy, bot left the charge to Guilliam, to do al materis as he thocht expedient; and he, with sic providence, did all chargis commandit be the said King Charlis, that he eikit the senyory of Florence, with sindry townis, to thair dominion. The Florentinis, for thir humaniteis done to thame be Scottis Guilliam, tuk the reid lille, na thing different fra the lille of France, bot in cullour, for thair armis; to be ane memorial, that thair town, sum time distroyit be Gothis, was restorit be Frenchemen. Thay ordanit eik, publik playis to be maid in thair town of Florence, in quhilk ane lion is crownit with mony solempne cerimonyis. Thay commandit als, quik lionis to be nurist yeirly in thair said town on the common purs, becaus the samin was the armis of Scottis Guilliam. It is said, the Florentinis hes ane prophecy, Sa lang as lionis levis in Florence, and sa lang as the lion of Florence beris this crown, thair ciete sall nevir be subdewit to uncouth empire. Thir and mony othir cerimonyis war institute be Guilliam afore his returning out of Italy in France. Yit, quhatsumever way thir playis war institute in Florence, thay ar yit in yeirly use, efter the samin rite as thay war first devisit. Guilliam, efter infinite labour tane with King Charlis for the weil of Cristin faith, grew in age. And becaus he had na succession of his body, for he was gevin al his days to chevalry, and nevir to frute of mariage, he maid Crist his aire; and foundit mony abbayis, baith in Italy and Almany, and dotat thaim with riche landis and rentis, to be hospitalis for Cristin pepill, and to nuris thaim in virtew and letterature; and nane to be abbottis of the said abbayis, bot Scottismen allanerly. In witnes heiroyf, ar yit mony abbayis in Almany, na thing changit fra the institutionis as thay war first devisit. King Charlis, schort time afore that Guilliam was cumin in age, held with him the two Scottis clerkis, Johne and Clement, in gret familiarite; for thay war send with Scottis Guilliam, as said is, to mak the band of France. Thir clerkis wer of sa singular erudition in all science, that thay gat ane

place gevin to thame be the king in Paris, with certane landis to sustene thair estait, and to instruct the nobil childrin of France in sindry science. Be thir men, come sa frequent confluence of pepil out of al partis, desirus to have letteris, that in schort time, be thair exact diligence in erudition of young childrin, the ciete of Paris was maid ane solempnit universite of resolute men in al science. King Charlis, havand gret delectation that letteris began to fluris in his realme be industry of thir two Scottismen, commandit, that Clement suld remane as principall regent of Paris; and Johnne, his colleig, to pas to Pavy, ane town of Lumberdy, for spreiding of letteris in the samin. Throw this smal beginning rais the scule of Paris: quhilk hes at this time sic fouth of erudition, that it has na compair in erd: for out of it ar procedit, sic nowmer of doctouris in theology, canon law, medicine; sa gret nowmer of philosophouris and oratouris; that al pepil, quhare men travellis, hes experience thair of. Thair, is continual exercition, contending quha sal be maist resolute in every science; thair, is the floure of theology; thair, is al maner of philosophy, with eloquence, at fouth; thair, ar provin oratouris, and ane multitude of young childrin weill institute in letteris, be diligence of thair preceptouris; and the place sa commodius, that nocht laikis thair, quhilk nature hes productit for the weil of man. This nobil universite, that is sa worthy to be lovit in every warld, suld be honorit be us; for, thought we studyit sum part in Aberden, we tuk our first erudition in this foresaid universite of Paris; and, thairfore, we wil haif na les reverence and luf to it, than the barn hes to his native moder. Bot we wil return to the remanent geistis of Achaius.

## Chap. Fifth.

*How Scottis and Pichtis war considerat be mariage; and slew Athelstane, King of England, and put his army to flicht. Of King Hungus lawis, and liberte to kirkmen. Of the deith of King Charlis and King Achaius. And of sindry nobill clerkis.*



HE Scottis, irkit with frequent injuris of Pichtis, as the fine of all weris is, set ane convention with Pichtis to redres all skaithis, sa far as micht be, on every side; in the quhilk, thay war finaly agreit on al debaitis: and that the samin suld perpetually endure, Hungus, King of Pichtis, gaif his sister, Fergusiane, in mariage to King Achaius; quhilk had ane sonne to him, namit Alpine.

Athelstane, King of England, richt desirus to eik the boundis of his realme, come with ane army in the landis of Mers and Berwik, pertenant to Pichtis: and alliegit the samin to pertene to his empire, and reft afore fra Northumbrianis be injure of Pichtis. And quhen he had ceissit fra na maner of cruelte and heirschippis in the said landis, he returnit, with gret pray of guddis, in Northumberland, to dant the rebellion of certane Inglismen quhilkis war laitylly conspirit aganis him. Hungus, King of Pichtis, impacient to suffer thir injuris, send ambassatouris to Achaius, desiring support to resist his ennimes. Achaius, sone efter, send x.m chosin men to King Hungus, to the said effect. Than Hungus rasit his army in Northumberland, and invadit it with sindry cruelteis; and returnit, with gret pray of guddis, in Lowthiane. King Athelstane, to dant thir attemptatis, come in Louthiane with mair diligence than was belevit, and followit, hait-fute, on the Pichtis. In the mene time, the Pichtis had set down thair tentis beside ane burne, nocht two milis fra Haddingtoun; and war advisand amang thaimself how the spulye laitylly gottin be thaim out of Northumberland suld be partit be richt of armes, and traisting na thing les than the cuming of Inglismen. Athelstane, weill advertist of the counsall of Pichtis, come forthwart

with arrayit oistis, and commandit, be opin proclamation, na Pichtis to be saiffit. The Pichtis, astonist be this cry, and seand sic multitude of pepil aganis thame, began to muse quhat chance of fortoun suld thairefter follow. Nochtheles, be command of Hungus, ilk man yeid to array, traisting the curage and pray, quhilkis war laityt reft be this last jornay, suld be occasioun to breke the array of thair ennimes: and tuke advisement al the day, how thay micht best eschew the dangeir appering. And thocht the armyis on every side stude maist awfully arrayit in otheris sicht, yit nane of thame durst invade othir for that day. In the nicht following, the Pichtis concludit to assailye the chance of battall, and othir to have victory, or ellis all at anis to de. On the morow, efter thair first sleip, thay went to thair confession and prayaris; and askit help of Crist, and Sanct Andro, thair patron, to support thame, his speciall pepill, aganis thair ennimes. King Hungus beand on sleip, apperit the appostil, Sanct Andro, and bad him be of gud comfort, havand gud hope in God; for he suld have, on the morow, ane glorius victory of Inglismen. It is said, that ane schinand croce was sene in the lift, straucht above the army of Pichtis, not onlik to the samin croce that the appostil deit on. This croce vanist nevir out of the lift quhil the victory succedit to Pichtis. King Hungus, awalkinnit out of his sleip, fand his army behalding this croce with gret admiration: and incontinent, he callit thame to his standart, and schew his visioun to thame, with al circumstance afore rehersit. Incontinent, rais ane huge noyis and clamour throw al the army of Scottis and Pichtis. The Inglismen war richt affrayit for this noyis: and mair affrayit, seand the croce schinand with awfull bemis in the lift; for it apperit to thame for ane evil signe. At the brek of the day, King Hungus arrayit his folkis; and, be sound of trumpat, gaif the signe of juning, cryand, with schill voce, " Sanct Andro, our "patron, be our help." The Scottis and Pichtis, rasit be thir wordis, come on thair ennimes with sic fury, that thay war finaly vineust, and gaif backis: on quhome followit, the Scottis and Pichtis, with lang chace, and maid mair slauchter than was maid afore in the battal. The prisoneris, quhilkis wer tane afore be Inglismen, seand the Scottis and Pichtis victorius, invadit thair ennimes with mair cruelteis than did thair maisteris that wan the victory. Sa far en-



ragit this slauchter, that skarsly, of al this army of Ingland, war left n men on live. King Athelstane, at the first juning, wes schot throw the body with ane spere, and slane, with sindry noblis of Ingland. The place, quhare he was slane, is callit yit Athelstane-furd. King Hungus, efter this victory, be sound of trumpat callit his men to the standart, and stud al that nicht arrayit quhill the morow, and than partit the spulye of the feild be rite of armis. King Athelstane was buryit, with funerall triumphe, in the nixt kirk.

Sic thingis done, King Hungus, with al his victorius army, went bair-fute to the kirk of Sanct Andro, to thank God and his appostill, of this glorious victory ; and maid solempnit vote, that he and his posterite sall use na ansenye in times cuming, quhen time of battal occurrit, bot the croce of Sanct Andro. This custome remanit not only to the Pichtis, bot als with Scottis, efter the exterminion of Pichtis. Be this victory, the Scottis gat not only riche spulyeis of ennimes, bot als gret rewardis be Hungus, and returnit hame with gret honouris. Hungus, for his excellent victory, beildit the kirk of Sanct Andro maist richely be his magnificence, and eikit it with mair nowmer of preistis for devine service ; and gaif to it mony riche jowellis of gold and silver. He maid the image of Crist and his XII appostellis, of fine gold and silver, to remane in the said kirk in perpetual memory of this victory. He gaif the teindis of all maner of frutis growand within his realm, to sustene kirkmen ; and commandit, that nane of thame be summond in jugement before ony prophane or temporall juge, nor yit to be punist to the deith, nochtwithstanding quhatsumevir crime be thame committit. Thir privilegis war nocht lang observit amang the Pichtis ; for thay war abrogat be King Feredeth, quhilk was the feird king of Pichtis, immediatly succeding efter Hungus. Attour, this Feredeth take all the riches and jowellis gevin afore to the kirk, to his proper use ; and commandit the kirkmen to leif content of sic sobir frutis as thay had afore the empire of Hungus. Thus, war the kirkmen reft fra all thair liberteis and possessionis gevin to thame afore be Hungus, and thair landis gevin to his familiaris. The noblis condescendit weil thairto ; traisting all thing gevin to the kirk, na les tint, than thay war fallin in pray to thair ennimes. Thir extorsionis done

aganis kirkmen, succedit to the grete infelicate of Pichtis; for it was the caus that thay war brocht, within few yeris efter, to uter exterminion, as we sal sone heir. King Achaius had his realme in gud peace; and deceissit, the xxxii yeir of his regne, fra our redemption, dcccix yeris; and was buryit in Colmekill.

In thir dayis, was the nobil historiciane, Paulus Diaconus, quhilk eikit viii bukis of Romane Empriouris to the history of Eutropius. This Paulus maid the hymne of Sanct Johne, *Ut queant laxis*. And in this time, Isward wrat the buk callit The Martyrdome and Legend of Sanctis. Amang us war, in thay days, Gervadius, Glaciane, Modane, and Medane; gret doctouris, and men of singulare erudition.

In the time of King Achaius, the Romane empire wes devidit in two senyoryis; for King Charlis wes Empriour of the west part of the world, and Constantine, Empriour of the eist: be quhais auctorite was ane convention at Nece, of ccc. bischoppis, to decerne gif the imageris of Sanctis suld be honorit in kirkis or not. Finaly, be generall decreit, was statute, that the imageris of Sanctis, as the kirk of Rome usis, sall be honorit and had in reverence in al partis, not as ony devinite war hid in thame, bot to represent the figoure of God and his Sanctis. At this time, King Charlis, Empriour, na les pre-eminent in glore of mercial than civil dedis, deceissit at Aquisgrany, the xlvii yeir of his regne of France, and the xvii yeir of his empire above the Romanis; fra the incarnation, dccc. x. yeris.

## Chap. Sixth.

*Of King Conwallus; and his deith.*



FTIR deith of Achaius, succedit his brothir sonne, Conwallus; for Alpine, the sonne of Achaius, wes of so tendir age, that he micht not succed to the crown. This Conwallus wes richt tenderlie belovit with Hungus, King of Pichtis; for he set his laubour to hald the Scottis and Pichtis in amite and concord, eftir the auld band: and thairfore, sa lang as thir two kingis leiffit, na thing wes done, othir be weir or peace, but avise of othir: throw quhilk, baith thair realmes wes in gret tranquillite and rest during thair time. At last, King Hungus, worn be lang age, deceissit. Eftir quhom, succedit to the crown of Pichtis, Dorstorgus. And Conwallus leiffit nocht lang eftir King Hungus; for he deceissit the v yeir eftir, and wes buryit in Colmekill.

## Chap. Seventh.

*Of King Dongallus; and how he punist certane Conspiratouris. How Alpine, Prince of Scotland, clomit the crown of Pichtis, as nerest heritour thairto. Of the Pichtis answer. How the Scottis concludit to move weir on the Pichtis, for denying of the crown.*



ONWALLUS deceissit on this maner, succedit, his cousing, Dongallus, sonne of Solvathius, afor reheirsit. Sindry Scottis, seand this prince inclinit to justice, maid hortation to Alpine, sonne of Achaius, to tak the crown; traisting the extorsionis done be thaim to the commonis suld be unpunist be that way. And becaus he wes nocht sa deligent, as thay desirit, thay come on him with awful mannassing; and swore, gif

he tuke nocht haistely the crown, thay suld slay him. Alpine, astonist of his life, come, with ane gret nowmer of pepill in Argyle, to take the crown. Nochtheles, dredand gret trubill to appeir in the realme be his rebelloun, he fled, with two tendir servitouris, to King Dongallus; and wes sa plesandlie ressavit, that Dongallus promittit, gif the pepill wer content, to exoner him of the crown, in favour of the said Alpine; for he desirit na thing sa mekill as the felicite of Achaius hous. Alpine gaif him thankis, and said, He wald not ressave the crown sa lang as Conwallus was on live: and schew, the gadering of pepill, and trubill appering in the cun- tre, wes nocht movit be him, bot only be treason of certane conspiratouris, quhilk wald have slane him, gif he had nocht assistit to thaim for the time. And on the thrid day eftir, come messengeris fra thir conspiratouris to Dongallus, excusing thaim, and putting al the treason on Alpine. Nochtheles, the king gave litil faith thair- to, and maid sic deligence, that he come on thir conspiratouris, quhen thay belevit na thing les than his cuming, and punist thaim with sic rigoure, that the realme wes brocht, mony yeris eftir, in gret tranquillite. Quhill sic thingis wer done amang the Scottis, Eganus, secound sonne to Hungus, King of Pichtis, slew his bru- thir, Dorstorlogus, to mak himself king. This Eganus, to stable the crown of Pichtis to him, convenit his nobillis, and, with gret liberalite, delt his faderis treasoure and guddis amang thaim, to have thair favoure and benevolence; syne maryit Brenna, his bro- theris wife, douchter to the King of Marchis; to that fine, that Brenna suld not be degradit of hir estait rial, nor hir fader commo- vit for the slauchter of his gud-sonne. This Eganus had sic feir of his life, as the use of tyrannis is, that he come nevir to licht but ane gard of armit men; and wald nothir suffir his wife nor tendir freindis cum to his presence, quhill his gard ripit thaim, to se gif thay had ony wappinnis hid in sum quiet place; traisting, as it wes eftir provin, sum quiet personis lyand ay in wait to invaid him, for the slauchter of his bruthir. And as he conjecturit, sa followit; for he wes slane be Brenna, his wife, slepand in his bed, amang his armit gard, to revenge the slauchter of hir husband. Alpine, heir- and the slauchter of his two emis, but ony succession of thair bodyis on live, send his ambassatouris to the Princis of Pichtis, clamand



the crown of Pichtis, as just and nerest heritour to his eme, King Hungus, gottin on his sister Fergusiane; al othir childrin of Hungus beand deceissit, but ony successioun: quhilk, as semit, wes cummin be devine purviance, that the two pepil sa lang invading othir be continewall weris, nicht finalie cum, be inseverable commixtioun of blude, undir the empire of ane king. The Pichtis, knawing weil the desiris of thir ambassatouris, chesit ane man of gret prudence and auctorite amang thaim, namit Feredech, to be king, that Alpine suld have na place to clame the crown. Als sone as thir ambassatouris wer cumin to Camelon, quhair Feredech and his nobillis wer assemblit for the time, and began to propone thair message, desiring the crown of Pichtis to be deliverit to Alpine; sic gild and noyis rais in the counsall, that silence wes put to thir ambassatouris, and answer gevin to tham be Feredech, That the Pichtis wald suffir na prince of uncouth blude to regne abone thaim; and wer accustomed to transfer the crown of thair realme fra ane hous to ane othir, as thay thocht expedient. It wes inhibit be the samin lawis, to deprive thair king during his life. And thought Alpine wes nepot to Hungus, gottin on his sistir Fergusiane, yit, sen he wes gottin of uncouth blude, he nicht na wayis succeid to the crown be lawis of thair realme. Dongallus, heirand this answer, send the secound message to Pichtis, with certification, gif thay refusit, he wald invaid thaim be battal. Als sone as the Pichtis wer advertist of the cuming of this secound message, thay send certane armit men to stop thair cuming, and to inhibit thame to pas ony forthir, under pane of deid. The ambassatouris, affrayit be thir wourdis, denuncit battal to the Pichtis, in name of Dongallus and Alpine; and incontinent, thay returnit the samin gait thay come. Eftir thair returning, the nobillis of Scotland convenit at Carrik with King Dongal, to avise how this battal suld be led aganis the Pichtis. And in this convention the nobillis concludit, with ane mind, to jeopard thair landis, livis, and guddis, in persute of Albinis richt; and othir to have him King of Pichtis, or ellis al attanis to de. Incontinent, ilk ane of thir two pepil maid thair ordinance to invaid othir, with divers mindis and intentionis: the Pichtis desiring to suffer na uncouth blude to regne abone thame; and the Scottis,

not to be defraudit of thair just heritage. Dongallus, making gret deligence to assemblil his pepil aganis the Pichtis, come to the watter of Spey, and gat ane cobill to pas our the samin; bot at last, be force of streme, he wes borne downe the watter, and perist, the vi yeir of his regne, fra the incarnation, DCCCXXX yeris; and wes buryit in Colmekill.

### Chap. Eighth.

*Of King Alpine; and how he slew Feredech, King of Pichtis. How Brudus and Kenneth, Kingis of Pichtis, war baith slane, and Brudus, the Feirs, maid king. How King Alpine was slane, and the Scottis discomfist.*



ONGALLUS, perist in this maner, Alpine, son to Achaius, wes maid king. Als sone as he was crownit, he set his deligence to provide al thingis necessar for his army aganis the Pichtis. Feredech, King of Pichtis, ceissit not, in the samin maner, to mak his provision for ordinance of battal; traisting, be deith of Dongallus, sum better chance to follow to his weris: and, but more tary, he tuke purpos, with ane cumpany of chosin men, to pas in Angus, quhare the remanent army of Pichtis wes commandit be him to convene. Yit, afore his cuming, the Scottis wer campit in the same place quhare his convention wes set, and began to sege the castel of Forfair. On the thrid day eftir, King Feredech come, with ane army weil arrayit, to Restennoth. Incontinent, baith the armyis junit. At the first juning, the richt wing of Scottis wes neir vincust. And in the mene time, Fidenoth, Thane of Athol, com with cccc fresche men in thair support. Thus wes the battal renewit with huge slauchter, but ony signe of fleing. Howbeit, the chance wes richt doutsum; for, sum time the ansenyeis wer left be tham that suld have past afore in defence thair of, and sum time saiffit agane be the wageouris. At last, King Feredech seand the middil ward of Pichtis approcheand to discomfitoure, ruschit with sic farde amang his ennimes, that he wes excludit fra

his awin folkis. And quhen he saw na way to eschew, he faucht with perseverand manheid to the deith, and wes slane, with mony othir nobill men fechtand on the same maner, to the deith. The residew of Pichtis, nathing astonist of this slauchter, perseverit in continewal battal, quhil the nicht bereft thaim the sicht. Thus wer baith the armyis brokin; and constranit, as discomfist pepil, to return to thair tentis. The Pichtis, knawing thair king and nobils, with the maist part of thair army, slane; left the woundit men behind thame with thair cariage, and fled hame the nerest way thay micht. The Scottis wer sa brokin, that thay had fled in the same maner, wer nocht it wes schawin to Alpine, that the Pichtis wer fled, and left thair cariage behind tham. Thir novellis causit the Scottis to abide in array quhil the nicht wes gone. On the morowe, certane spyis wer send furth to serche the wodis and montanis, and fand thair ennimes fled. The Scottis, rejosing of this victorie, partit the spulye fallin to thaim, be rite of armes. The body of Feredeche wes buryit with solempne cerimonyis in Forfair.

The Scottis, eftir this victorie, fand the thrid part of thair army slane; and wes constranit, thairfore, to invaid the Pichtis erar be frequent skarmussing, than ony plane battall. Nochtheles, thay come sone eftir in Angus, and brocht out of the samin ane huge pray of cornis and guddis to Athole, and the remanent put in fire. Be thir, and othir frequent heirschippis, Angus wes left waist. The Pichtis, to resist thir injuris, chesit Brudus, son of Feredeche, to be king: quhilk, for his febill and soft administration, wes haldin in more derision than honour to his pepil; and wes slane, the first yeir of his regne, be ane fenyeit sedition amang the Pichtis. Eftir the slauchter of Brudus, his brodir, Kenneth, wes maid king: and had litill better chance than Brudus had; for efter that he wes cumin in Angus with ane army of Pichtis, he tuk sic feir, seand his ennimes fornentis him, that he raif of his cote-armour, and fled fra his army to the nixt montanis: quhare he was shamefully slane be ane landwart man, not knawing quhat he was. The remanent Pichtis, knawing gret difficulte to meit thair ennimes but ane heid, chesit Brudus, ane feirs and vailyeant prince, to be thair king. This Brudus, eftir his coronation, send ambassatouris to King Alpine, desiring all injuris to be redressit on athir side, and peace

to be renewit, efter the auld band, betwix the two pepil. It was answerit be Alpine, He wald have na peace, quhil the crown of Pichtis wer gevin to him, as just heritour thair of. Brudus, seing that the Scottis war set to perseveir in battall aganis him, send his oratouris with gret sowmes of money, to be confiderate with Edwine, King of Ingland, and to have certane wageouris of Ingland, to resist the Scottis. King Edwine ressavit this money, and promittit, quhat day Brudus list assigne, to cum to his support. Sindry of the Pichtis rejosit of this answeire; traisting, be support of Inglismen, to vincus the Scottis. Otheris thocht litill confidence to be gevin to thame; becaus the said Pichtis slew Athelstane, King of Ingland, with mony of his noblis, afore in Lowthiane. In the mene time, the Scottis heryit al Angus, fra the fute of Granye-bene to the watter of Tay. Brudus, to revenge thir cruelteis, send ane herald to King Edwine, desiring his army to be send haistely to resist the Scottis. It was answerit be King Edwine, That he was sa impeschit with civil weris amang his awin pepil, that he nicht mak na support to him at that time: and als he was requestit be Lowis, King of France, to do na injure to Scottis, and to support na pepil in thair contrar; nochtheles, wald the said Brudus super-seid his battal quhil the nixt yeir, he suld gladly cum to his support. Brudus, mokit on this wise, began to detest the treason of Inglismen: and notwithstanding his repuls, he commandit al fensabil men of his realme to meit him, the viii day efter following, with vittallis necessar for thair sustentation, at the fute of the Calidon wod. The Pichtis war enragit with sic hatrent, that few of thame wer absent at the day and place assignit. Brudus, seing thame assemblit with sic hatrent, come ouir the brig of Dunkeld to Angus: and in the nicht afore the battal, be wise counsal of agit knichtis, he causit al the cariage-men and wemen that come with his army, to stand in arrayit battall, with linnin claithis above thair bodyis, with siclik wappinnis and armour as thay nicht 'get for the time. Sic thingis done, he put ane c horsmen to governe thame, but ony noyis, in the nixt wod; and commandit, that nane of thame cum in sicht, quhil the battallis war junit. King Alpine was at this time in ane castell, quhilk stude on ane mote not far fra Dundee; beside quhilk, is ane plane land lyand to the North, quhare the army of



Scottis lay for the tyme. Alpine beheld the Pichtis on the castell heid, quhare he was, cumand forthwart in array : and incontinent he arrayit the Scottis, and exhortit thame, be lang orison, to schew thame vailyeand in battall ; and not only for feir of schame, bot for luf of thair cuntre, to do sum notabill vassalage, and to rusche feirsly on thair ennimes ; and to traist fermely, but ony dredour of deith, to have victory in reward of thar labouris, sen thair quarell was just. The Pichtis war sa desirus of battal, that afore that sound of trumpat thay junit, and faucht with sic incredibil fury, that the richt wing of Scottis was vehemently trublit. Alpine, seand thame abasit, come with ane cumpany of chosin men to thair support ; throw quhilk, sindry Scottis returnit fra thair fleing, and set on thair ennimes with mair cruelte than afore. In the mene time, the cariagemen and wemen, quhilkis war hid afore in the wod, began to schaw thame as thay war movand forthwart, to cum on thair backis ; be quhais sicht the Scottis war sa affrayit, that but ony forthir debait, thay gaif backis : on quhom followit, the Pichtis, with lang chace, and slew al Scottis, quhare thay nicht be apprehendit, but ony mercy or ransoun. This policy and slicht of cariage-men and wemen hid under covert, as we have schawin, was mair discomfitour to the Scottis, than all the feirsnes and strenth of Pichtis. The horsmen of Pichtis followit sa fast, that thay saiffit na Scottis that nicht be ouirtakin. In this battall was tane, King Alpine ; and brocht, with his handis bound, to the nixt village, quhare he was heidit, with ane hewing ax, the iv yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, dcccxxxiv yeris. The place, quhare King Alpine was heidit, is callit yit Pasalpine, that is to say, the heid of Alpine.

After this huge victory of Scottis, King Brudus returnit to Camelon with King Alpinis heid, and put it on ane staik on the hieast part of all thair wallis, to be ane signe of his victory.

## Chap. Ninth.

*How Kenneth the Secound was maid King of Scottis. Of the deith of Brudus, King of Pichtis; and how Donskene was maid king. How the heid of King Alpine was brocht in Scotland; and how the Pichtis war discomfist.*



HE Scottis, efter this unhappy battall, fled out of Angus in Argyle, and maid Kenneth, sonne of Alpine, king. The Pichtis, richt insolent and proud efter this huge victory of Scottis, convenit at Camelon, and gaif loving to God, with mony solempne cerimonyis and prayer. Als sone as the suffrage was done, thay maid thair aithis on the haly evangellis, nevir to ceis fra battal, quhil the Scottis wer alluterly distroyit: and maid ane statute, quhatevir he war that labourit to have peace or trewis with the wickit Scottis, he sall be heidit. Sindry of the Pichtis thocht thir votis unplesand; and said, Best was to use victory with mesoure: nochtheles, sa mony as war of this opinioun war chasit, with gret displesour, out of the tempil, quhare thay convenit. The Scottis, be this manassing of Pichtis, war not dejeckit, bot erar inflammit to hie curage; traisting na litil felicite to follow to tham in plane eversion of Pichtis, as weil apperit, be thair proud insultation efter this prosperite.

In the nixt simer, the Pichtis cumand with ane army aganis the Scottis, fel at debait amang thameself for ane thing of nocht. Thus was thair army devidit in sindry factionis, and fel, be injurius wordis, in sic slauchter, that the samin nicht not be stanchit quhil the nicht severit thame. Than Brudus tuk lang consultation how this discord nicht be best pecifyit: nochtheles, quhen he had tane gret labour to bring his noblis to concord, and seand tham not counsala-bil to the common weil, he was constranit to return hame with the residew of his army; and fell in sic malancoly, that within few dayis efter, he deceissit. The Pichtis, that thair common weil suld

nocht peris for falt of ane heid, chesit Donskene, brothir to King Brudus, afore rehersit, to be thair king. This Donskene maid concord amang his pepil, and redressit al injuris quhare he micht. In the mene time, certane vailyeant Scottis thinkand richt unworthy that King Alpinis heid suld stand on ane staik, fenyeit thame to be Pichtis, for thay had the langage, and come to Camelon as marchandis, quhare thay remanit certane dayis. Als sone as thay saw thair time, thay tuk down the heid, and come away with it in thair cuntre. King Kenneth ressavit his faderis heid with solempne procession, and send it to Colmekil, to be buryit with the remanent body; syne rewardit thir men, that did jeoperd thame to sic honest vassalege, with riche landis. Efter this, settand his ingine to defence of his realme, he put strang soudjouris in al strenthis fornentis the bordouris of Pichtis; and commandit his folkis to be daily exercit in chevalry, and to be reddy aganis every trubil that micht occur. Yit, mony of the noblis war mair set to defend thair awin, than to persew the Pichtis; for the gret calamite that fel to thame be this last battall. Otheris thocht best to dissimill for ane time, and ceis fra all invasion of Pichtis, quhill the Scottis war convalescit, and thair pissance recoverit; and than to persew the crown of Pichtis, and revenge the slauchter of King Alpine, with uter power. The Scottis of this last opinion, howbeit thay war of no small nowmer, war apprisit with Kenneth. And becaus he saw sa hie dangeir appering to his realme, he pecifyit all sedition amang his noblis, and intertenit thame with mervalus affection and kindnes. Followit, thre yeris with frequent incursionis, but ony gret slauchter. In the fourt yeir, Kenneth maid ane convention of his noblis, and tuk lang consultation how he micht optene the crown of Pichtis, and revenge his faderis slauchter: and schew, be mony reasonis, it was na time as than to dul in sleuth, sen thay war born to chevalry; for the season was expedient to rais thair army on the Pichtis, and to obtene the crown thair of, quhillk hes bene sa mony yeris injustly haladin fra thame. Yit, quhen Kenneth had maid al the instance he micht to persuade his noblis to battall, thay micht be persuadit na mair to his purpos, than the samin had bene to thair uter confusion; for the recent slauchter of King Alpine, and othir noblis slane

with him afore be the Pichtis, drew al thair mind fra battall. Kenneth, seing that his noblis, be na persuasion, war abill to be solistit to battall, devisit for thame ane uncouth slicht, nevir hard afore in ony mannis age : and convenit all his noblis to ane counsall, to advise on certane othir hiear materis ; and feistit thame within his palice be solempne banket, quhil it was far run within the nicht. Sone efter, thay went to thair chalmeris within his palice : and quhen thay war fallin on profound sleip, Kenneth causit sindry men, clad with fische skinnis, to pas to the beddis quhare thir lordis lay. Than to ilk lordis bed, past ane of thir men, al at ane set hour. Ilk ane of thame had in thair hand ane club of muscane tre, quhilk kest ane uncouth glance, with the fische scalis, in the mirk. In thair othir hand, ilk ane of thame had ane bugil horn ; and spake with sa how voce throw the samin, that thair voce apperit not like to be the voce of ane man. The noblis, quhare thay lay in thair beddis, war richt astonist be this uncouth sicht ; and not knowing quhiddir the same was visionis or dremis, thay kepit silence. Than thir men spak throw the bugil horn with hevy basse voce, nocht semand, as it war, of mortall creaturis ; and schew thaim angellis send, be command of God, to the noblis of Scotland, to caus thaim obey the desiris of thair prince ; for his desiris war sa just, that the Pichtis, for the repuls thairto, sall cum to sic uter rewine, that na engine nor pissance of man suld resist thairto. Als sone as thay had said thir wordis, ilk ane of thame hid thair staffe under thair claithis, and involvit thair fische skinnis togidder ; to the fine, that thay and thair licht nicht evanis baith at anis. The nobillis, seand this uncouth visioun, war astonist, and tuke litill rest for the residew of that nicht. On the morow, efter thair conventioun, ilk ane schew to othir all thair visionis ; and seand the samin appering under ane time and maner, thay concludit it to be na fantasy, bot ane hevinly visioun, send to thaim be singular favour of God, to advertis thaim, gif thay war respondent thairto, of thair sickir felicite, that was haistely to follow. Incontinent, thay schew to the king how thay war monist be the angellis, to obtemper his wil in al chargis ; and, thairfore, with ferme constance, thay wald perseveir in battal aganis the Pichtis. The king answerit, Siclik visioun of angellis apperit to



him, howbeit, he durst not schaw the samin, in adventure the pepill suld deme him glorius; as he war sa familiar with God, that his angelis suld advertis him of thingis to cum: nochttheles, sen thay war admonist in the samin maner, he wald reveill his vision; for it apperit to have ane gud fine. The noblis condiscendit to his mind; and, be generall edict, commandit al fensable personis of the realme to cum, at ane certane day and place affixit, with vittallis, wappinnis, and al thingis necessare, aganis the Pichtis. Be this edict was assembled, at Striveling, ane army of Scottis, with mair multitud of pepil than evir was sene afore in thay boundis. Than King Donskene, to meit this battall of Scottis, gaderit ane army, baith of Inglismen and Pichtis, and come, within the nicht, betwix the Scottis and thair awin landis. Skarsly was the day brokin, quhen baith the armyis, inflammit with birnand hatrent, junit, but ony sound of trumpat. The Pichtis gat gret skaith be thair haistie and unavisit rinning on thair ennimes: nochttheles, thay gat mair skaith be Inglismen; for thay left the army of Pichtis, in this extreme jeoperde, and fled to the nixt montanis. The reird and noyis rising be fleing of Inglismen, maid the Pichtis affrayit. King Donskene, nochtwithstanding this disceite of Inglismen, exhortit thame to return. Thay answerit, It was not thair custome nor use, to geif battall, but capitane, or but array: The Pichtis, as apperit, offerit thame wilfully to be slane with thair ennimes: It pertenet als, to the craft of weirfair, quhen na esperance of victory apperit, to eschew battal. The Scottis, seand the mid battal nakit of the wing, quhare thir Inglismen suld have fochtin, and reddy to ressave injure of ennimes; ruschit forthwart with sic preis, that the Pichtis war constranit to geif backis. Than Kennethis army followit on thame, baith with futmen and horsmen, and commandit nane to be saiffit; to revenge the slauchter of King Alpine and his noblis, quhilkis war slane efter that thay war yoldin. The chace perseverit quhil the Pichtis war drevin to the watter of Forth: quhare mony of thame perist, and the remanent wer slane by thame that followit. King Donskene, efter that the battal was discomfist, was born away be ane swift hors. Kenneth, dreidand sum hid treason to follow be slicht of thir Inglismen, quhilkis war nocht far fra thair army; brocht all his

folkis, be sound of trumpat, to the standart, and stude all that nicht in arrayit battal. On the morow, he partit the spulye of the feild be rite of armis, and returnit hame.

### Chap. Tenth.

*Of the Message send be Donskene to Kenneth; and of his Answer.*

*Of the Orison maid be Donskene to Kenneth; and of his Answer.*

*How the Pichtis war discomfist, and King Donskene slane.*



ING Donskene, eftir this battall, send his oratouris to Kenneth, desiring peace. Kenneth answerit, He wald gladly geif peace, sa that the crown of Pichtis, quhilk pertenit to him be just title, war gevin to him. Nochtheles, the Pichtis refusit to geif peace in that sort; and, be repulse thair of, gaif occasion to Scottis to invade thaim with mair cruelte than afore. In the nixt yeir, Kenneth come, with ane army, in Fiffe and Angus, and maid the inhabitantis thair of sa astonish, that thay war sworn to leif under his empire and lawis. Sone efter, Kenneth tuke all thair strenthis, and garnist thaim in his maner; syne rasit his camp, and come to Striveling, to tak it in the samin maner. And quhen he had brocht the Pichtis thair of to his dominion, tithingis come, that all the Scottis quhilkis war left behind him in Fiffe and Angus, war slane be treason. Kenneth incontinent left the sege of Striveling, and returnit in Fiffe: quhare he, be fire and swerd, left na Pichtis that might be tane, on live; to be exempill, in times cuming, quhat frute succedis to mortall pepill, be violation of thair faith to kingis. Quhil thir and siclik inhumane cruelteis war done amang the Scottis and Pichtis, King Donskene convenit all fensabill personis of his realme, but ony difference of kind, with proude baner; othir to revenge the cruelteis done be Scottis, or all at anis to de. The Pichtis, in this jurnay, come to Scone, quhare now is ane riche abbay of channonis regular, and fand King Kenneth, with al his army, afore thair cuming. On the morow, quhen baith the armyis war arrayit in othir sicht, King Don-

skene, desiring erar to seik peace quhill he stude in prosperite, than to seik it efter that he was vincust, send ane herald to King Kenneth, desiring licence to common with him, afore the battallis junit, of certane matteris, concerning na les the weill of Scottis than of Pichtis. Kenneth refusit nocht the commoning. Belive, the two kingis, accompanyit with ane few nowmer of noblis, come fra thair army to ane place, as was devisit. Than the King of Pichtis said in this maner: “ It cummis not, invincible Prince Kenneth, but  
 “ propiciant favouris of God, that I, the King of Pichtis, quhais  
 “ pissance hes ay bene equale to Scottis, humilly is cumin, efter sa  
 “ mony chancis of battall, desiring peace at the. We, that hes bene  
 “ als oft victorius on Scottis as we bene vincust be thaim, ar cumin  
 “ finaly to this point, that othir man we have peace, under quhat  
 “ conditionis thow list, or ellis, force is, to us to perseveir in bat-  
 “ tall, baith in perdition of us and yow. Yit, thair bene sindry  
 “ thingis that suld persuade us to put ane end to all thir weris but  
 “ ony ferthir invasion: as, baith the new and auld affinite of our  
 “ pepill, sa lang continewing togidder under ane blude and amite  
 “ of our antecessouris; and als, the frequent chevalry of baith oure  
 “ pepill, sa oft jeoperd to extreme dangeir aganis our ennimes; and  
 “ finaly, the uter eversion of us baith, quhilk sall nocht fail, gif we  
 “ continew in battall, to cum on us; for our ennimes, seand us bro-  
 “ kin with athir injuris, sal expel us out of Albion with gret disho-  
 “ nour and schame. Thair is now na occasion of battal; for ye  
 “ have not only all the riches and treasour of Pichtis, in recompen-  
 “ sation of the slauchter of King Alpine and his nobillis, bot als,  
 “ ye have now all the treasour and riches of Scottis, quhilkis thay  
 “ tint afore be industry of King Feredech. For thir reasonis, best  
 “ wer, that we Scottis and Pichtis leiffit content of our awin landis  
 “ and rowmis, as oure eldaris did afore; and treit of peace: for the  
 “ chance of battall is doutsum, and oftimis fortoun gevis victorie to  
 “ thaim that ar maist approchant to perell. Na thing is thairfore  
 “ sa gud nor sa sickar as peace; and that is now in thy handis: bot  
 “ victorie is in the power of fortoun: of quhais instable favoure we  
 “ have sufficient documentis, that scho convertis oftimes hie glore  
 “ in miserable estait; for ye may se us now desolate, and seikand  
 “ peace, quhilkis, within thir few yeris, vincust al the army of

“ Scottis. Quhat is he, that will beleif fortoun more propiciant to  
 “ Scottis, than scho has bene to Pichtis? Hes scho promittit yow  
 “ sickir victore, quhilk scho did nevir to ony pepill afore? Quhat  
 “ pepil hes scho [not] dissavit with smiland visage? Quhen scho semis  
 “ maist favourable, scho is maist to be dred. Heirfore, understand,  
 “ peace, to thy gret honoure, is better afore the battall, than espe-  
 “ rance of victorie during the battall: in aventure, gif adversite fol-  
 “ lowe, thy pre-eminent glore, and magnitud of merciall dedis, be  
 “ chance of fortoun, sall dekey in irrecoverable dammage. Attoure,  
 “ that we may have peace, na les necessar to us than proffitable to  
 “ thy pepill, we ar content, that Fiffe and Angus pas under perpe-  
 “ tuall dominion of Scottis; to that fine, that we may reiose the  
 “ remanent landis of our realme, in times cuming, with thy favour  
 “ and peace: be quhilk waye, thow may conquies interminable ho-  
 “ noure, but ony dammage eftir following; and be namit, be thy  
 “ posterite, maist vailyeant prince that evir rang abone the Scottis.”  
 To thir wourdis, answerit Kenneth: “ Howbeit fortoun be na les  
 “ unstable, than the stait of man unsicker; and thoct our werkis  
 “ and exercitionis be subjeckit to variant chance of fortoun, as may  
 “ be provin be mony exemplis of oure eldaris; yit, in thir present  
 “ besines, fortoun apperis to be more sorowfull to Pichtis than to  
 “ Scottis; becaus thay ar to cum, as in ane wrangus action, to de-  
 “ fraude the Scottis of the crown of Pichtis, pertenant to thaim be  
 “ just title. Thus, hes the Scottis just cause to persew thair richt  
 “ be battal, sen thay may optene it na othir ways. Attoure, baith  
 “ the recent and auld affinite, sa lang continewing betwix the two  
 “ pepill, suld move the Pichtis, gif thay had respect to thair reve-  
 “ rence and faith, to suffir me succed to the crown thairof, sen it  
 “ pertenis to me be just heritage; be quhilk way, baith the pepill  
 “ may have perpetuall peace under ane king and lawis, but ony pro-  
 “ mis of Fiffe or Angus, quhilkis ar now my landis, and inhabit  
 “ with my pepill. Forthir, I wer richt unmercifull, gif I wald  
 “ nocht gif peace to Pichtis, on the samin maner as the Pichtis gaif  
 “ peace afore to Scottis, quhen thay wer brokin with weris. Bot  
 “ now the mater is at ane uter point: for the Pichtis ar sworn, be  
 “ solempne aithis, nevir to gif peace to us; and the Scottis, on the  
 “ same maner, sworn nevir to gif, nor yit to tak peace with Pichtis,



“ quhil the crown of Pichtis be gevin to me, the just heritour thair-  
 “ of. Gif thow desiris peace, exoner ye of the crown of Pichtis,  
 “ and deliver in my handis al the strenthis thairof, that I, be gene-  
 “ rall consent of al the Pichtis, may be declarit king. Gif thir de-  
 “ siris semis importable to Pichtis, force is, to thaim to perseveir in  
 “ battall aganis us : quhilkis ar preparit in maist weirly ordinance,  
 “ to invaid thame ; traisting, be esperance of our just persute, to  
 “ have victorie.” The two kingis, severing in this maner, but ony  
 expedition of thair desiris, returnit to thair tentis. Incontinent,  
 rais ane hidous clamour and reird in baith the armyis, desiring the  
 richt to be decidit be the swerd, with sic chance as fortoun list gif.  
 Kenneth exhortit his folkis to assailye feirslye thair ennimes, and to  
 perseveir in fervent battal, that it may be discussit be that day,  
 quhiddir the Scottis sall abandoun the Pichtis, or the Pichtis the  
 Scottis. The reward of victorie wes, the realme of Pichtis, perpe-  
 tual honour and dominion abone thair ennimes. Be contrar, be  
 thair fleing, sal follow, the rewine of thair realme, gret murdir, with  
 schamfull exterminion, baith of thameself and thair posterite. Thir  
 wourdis beand said, Kenneth arrayit his battall with doubill wingis :  
 in every ane of thaim he put his archearis and corsbowis ; nixt  
 thame stude, the speris and pikkis ; and behind thame stude, swerdis,  
 billis, and axis. To the richt wing, wes maid ane nobil capitane,  
 namit Bar ; to the left wing, Dongallus ; and to the middillward,  
 wes Donald, the kingis brodir : and behind thame all, stude Ken-  
 neth, with ane gret buschement of horsmen, redly to support thame  
 at al dangeir. Incontinent, be thonderand preis of trumpat, baith  
 the armyis junit. Than rais, ane huge reird and clamour ; and  
 maid mony of the Pichtis so affrayit, that thay apperit, afore thay  
 assailyeit the chance of battall, to fle : nochtheles, Donskene ex-  
 hortit thame to assailye thair ennimes with gret spreit ; and sum-  
 time reprochit thame of thair febilnes ; and sumtime rasis thair  
 spretis to new curage, promitting gret riches and landis in reward  
 of thair laubouris. Followit sone, ane terrible bergane. The we-  
 men, seing thair husbandis wondit, gaif sic horrible spraichis, that  
 thay wer more impediment than support to the fechtaris. Be than  
 wes the richt wing of Pichtis, quhare gretest multitud of women  
 faucht, dejectit, and put to flicht : than Kenneth send ane busche-

ment of fresche men on the bakkis of thame that wer fechtand in the middilward. Thus wer the Pichtis sloppit with huge slauchter : and becaus thay had na hope of victorie, nor yit power to resist, thay flang thair wappinnis fra tham, and tuk the flicht. Sa huge pepil wer slane in the place quhare thay first junit, and sa huge noumer of armour and wappinnis, that the Scottis, in thair chace, wer constranit to pas our innoumerable carionis, and wappinnis of deid pepil : throw quhilk, sindry Scottis wer brokin fra array of thair fallowis, and drevin amang gret buschementis of Pichtis, quhair thay wer cruelly slane. Kenneth, knawing this dammage, be sound of trumpat callit his folkis to the standart : and eftir that he had arrayit sindry buschementis of maist ganand men for the chace, he gaif to thame capitanis ; commandit thame to follow on thair ennimes with gud armour, and to saif nane that micht be apprehendit. Than Kenneth passit the residew of that day and nicht following, with ane cumpany of chosin men. The capitanis glaidly obeyit the empire of Kenneth ; and slew, be lang chace, all the Pichtis that thay micht ouirtak. King Donskene, with ane cumpany of Picht is, fled to the watter of Tay, and abaid thair sa lang on ane bait, that he was slane, with al his cumpany. It is said, the Pichtis renewit battall, that day, vii times, aganis the Scottis, and war ay discomfist.

## Chap. Eleventh.

*How the swerd and cote-armour of King Donskene war send to Colmekil. Of the Orison made be King Kenneth to his noblis. How the Pichtis war slane, and banist out of Scotland. And how the Dunbarris tuk thair beginning.*



FTER this victory, the Scottis partit the spulye of this battal be rite of armis, and send the swerd and cote-armour of King Donskene to Sanct Colme, to remane in Colmekill in perpetuall signe of thair victory. On the morow, al the noblis of Scottis come to Kenneth, rejosand of this victory ; and desirit him to tak rest efter sa gret labour, and suffer his army to return hame. Bot Kenneth thocht not profitabil to ceis quhil he had put ane end to his weris. Incontinent, he callit al his noblis afore him, and said in this maner : “ It is the devore  
 “ of ane forey campion, gif he intendis to use victory to the weil of  
 “ his army, to ceis not fra battal quhil he have maid amite with his  
 “ vincust ennimes, or ellis brocht tham to sic ruine that thay micht  
 “ nevir recover : for, gif ony man wald suffer his ennime, quhen  
 “ he is brokin and neir vincust, to rest quhil he may recovir his  
 “ strenth ; be my jugement, he suld do ane thing richt dammagius  
 “ to himself. As to the dangeir presently appering, the Pichtis ar  
 “ now brokin with our weris, and brocht to sic state, that thay may  
 “ be distroyit be us allutterly ; and yit it war ane thing richt abho-  
 “ minable to invade thaim with sic cruelte, gif we micht ony maner  
 “ of way bring tham to sicker amite and freindschip, considering  
 “ thay ar now enragit aganis us for displesouris to thame done.  
 “ Nochtheles, thir Pichtis, as ye know, ar subtil, and desiris na  
 “ thing mair than vengeance on us and our posterite ; and for that  
 “ caus thay sall nevir devoid thair hartis, sa lang as thay leve, of  
 “ thir importable cruelteis done be us. Thus, may na amite nor  
 “ freindschip be drawin, in times cuming, betwix us and Pichtis ;  
 “ for sic cruelteis ar now exercit on every side, that thay cannot be

“ redressit. Gif ye have sicht, thairfore, to our singulare weill, na  
“ thing is sa gud, as to leif nothir man, wif, nor barne, of Pichtis  
“ blude, on live ; in adventure, that sic posterite rise of thaim sone  
“ efter, that sall baith revenge thair faderis slauchter, and bring  
“ our realme in greit danger.” This opinion of the king, thocht it  
was cruel, was found, for sindry reasons, richt proffitable to the  
weil of Scottis. Incontinent, sic cruelte and bludy rage was maid  
on Pichtis in all partis, that nane of thame was left on live, out of  
Camelon and othir strenthis, except II.M personis quhilk fled to the  
Inglisten. Than Kenneth partit the landis of Pichtis amang his  
noblis, be sicht of thair meritis and prowes ; and namit all the landis,  
montanis, and rivaris of this region, with new names. Ilk land tuk  
the name efter the possessour for the time ; to the fine, that the  
auld names of thir landis suld peris with memory of Pichtis. Bar,  
an noble man, gat, for his singular vassalage provin in this last  
feild, ane strang castel in Lowthiane, namit Dunbar : fra this name  
rais the hous and surname of Dunbaris, quhilkis ar of gret renoun  
and honour, to thir dayis. Of this hous, come the erlis of Marche,  
continewing with lang progression of thair sonnis and nevois, heri-  
touris of the said hous. Siclike, ar of this hous, mony nobill clerkis  
and doctouris, clothit, for thair notabil virtew, with prelacyis and  
honouris, to thir dayis.

Sic thingis done, Kenneth went, with mony armit men, to sege  
the town of Camelon ; for sindry Pichtis fled to it with thair wiffis  
and children, traisting, becaus the town wes strenthe, to haif ane  
sickir refuge in it. First, ane herald past to Camelon, to assailye  
gif the Pichtis wald randir the town : and becaus thay refusit, ane  
strait sege wes laid thairto, quhilk mony monethis eftir continewit.  
The Scottis war sa irkit with the sege, that thay serchit mony in-  
ginis to win the town ; and finalie, thay brocht ane gret multitude  
of treis to fill the trenchis and fowsyis thairof. In the mene time,  
the cieteyanis began to laik vittallis ; and send thair oratouris to  
Kenneth, desiring thre dayis trewis, that thay nicht tak avisement  
amang thaimself concerning the randering of the town. Kenneth,  
havand na suspicion of dissait, consentit to thair desiris ; and com-  
mandit his army to ceis fra seging of the town, during the thre  
dayis eftir following. In the mene time, ane certane of Pichtis ischit



at the thrid vigill, out at ane auld port, quhilk wes not oppinnit mony yeris afore : and first, slew the wache of Scottis ; syne come, with gret affray, to the kingis tentis, and maid ithand slauchter, sa lang as the nicht endurit, and fled incontinent to the town. Nochtheles, the Scottis followit on thaim with sic slauchter, that thay had won the town, wer nocht thay wer stoppit be ganyeis, arowis, and stanis, schot out of the touris of Camelon. In this skarmussing wer slane, ma than ȝc Scottis. Nochtheles, Kenneth maid ane new wache, in the same ordour as afore : and becaus the Pichtis had violat thair faith to him, he maid ane solempne aith, nevir to sever fra this town, quhill the wallis thairof wer equate to the ground. And thought he assailyeit to tak this town be sindry inginis, yit na thing thairof come til effect ; for the Pichtis sa vailyeantly resistit, that the sege continewit still foure monethis, but ony interruption : throw quhilk, sic miserable hunger rais amang the cieteyanis thairof, that thay abhorrit not to eit maist vile and abhominable metis. And thocht thay wer in sic extreme rage of hunger, yit thay slew all thame that gaif counsall to rander the town. At last, this town being ouirset and wery, be ithand persute of Scottis, thair fowsyis fillit with wod and othir sindry stuf to the wallis, Kenneth send ȝc men to the nixt wod to mak ledderis. Thir men returnit with the same on the morow, and went, with unfrayit curage, to the wallis ; and finalie, entrit at sindry partis thairof, with sindry abuschementis. The cieteyanis, astonist with this suddane irruptioun of Scottis, and nocht of power to resist, left the wallis, and faucht, sa lang as thay nicht, with perseverant hátrent, to the deith ; and finalie, wer all slane, but ony mercy or ransoun. The nobillis commandit to cast down the town, and to leif na Pichtis on live within the samin. The priestis, matronis, virginis, and childrin, come afore Kenneth with pietuous cheir, desiring grace ; bot the fury of Scottis wes sa gret, that thay, but ony miseration, wer al slane. Eftir this, the wallis, housis, castellis, and kirkis, wer brint, and brocht to the ground. Of all this town, sum time sa honest, remanit nocht hais-tely, bot the powder, wall, and calsay : of quhilkis, sum thing re-manis yit in thir dayis. The samin time, the madin castell of Edin-burgh wes garnist with strang soudjouris and Pichtis : nochtheles,

the Pichtis, within the same, dredand siclik subversioun of thaim as wes laitlie in Camelon, left the castell desert, and fled in Northumbirland. Thus failyeit the realme of Pichtis in Albioun, and all thair pepill brocht to nocht, eftir that thay had rounigin in the samin MCLI yeris. The yeir of thair exterminioun out of Albioun wes, fra the incarnation, DCCCXXXIX yeris; fra the first cuming of Scottis in Albion, MCCCXXI yeris; fra the beginning of the warld, VI.M XXXVIII yeris.

### Chap. Twelfth.

*Of uncouth mervellis sene in Albion. How the chiar of marbill was brocht out of Argyle to Scone. Of the lawis maid be Kenneth for the common weill of Scottis; and of his deith.*



IN the samin yeir apperit twa cometis, richt horribill to the sicht of man. That ane apperit before the sonne rising in hervest. This othir schane, ay eftir the sonne gangin to, in weir. Oftimes wes sene in the nicht, twa battellis of armit men, fechtand togidder with birnand speris in the aire; and als sone as ane of thame wes vincust, the tothir sone evanist. Quhen the Bischop of Camelon wes doand divine service in his pontifical, his staf tuk neid-fire, and micht nocht be slokinnit quhil it wes resolvit to nocht. On fair daylight, beside Camelon, sic noyis and reird of armit men wes hard, that the pepill wer astonist, and durst not remane thairabout. Thir mervellis wer interpret, sum time to the gud, and sum time to the evill of the pepil, as the devinouris plesit.

Quhen Kenneth had distroyit the Pichtis, and conquest thair realme in this maner, he brocht the fatall chiar of merbill out of Argyle to Gowry: quhilk chiar, as said is afore, wes brocht out of Spanye in Ireland be Symon Brek; and out of Ireland, be Fergus the first king, in Argyle, quhare it remanit ay quhill thir dayis. And becaus this last victorie of Pichtis happinnit nocht far fra Scone, he ordanit the said chiar to remane perpetuallie in the said abbay,

and all Scottis kingis to resave thair diademe in the samin. The Pichtis, banist out of Scotland in this maner, and seing the Inglismicht na wayis be persuadit, for the civill weris amang thaim, to invaid the Scottis, went in Denmark. Otheris, serching gif thay nicht ony way get support to recover thair realme, fled in Norro-way. Otheris remanit in Ingland, seikand thair leving be chevalrie, or frute of thair handis. Kenneth kept his subditis, eftir the exterminioun of Pichtis, in sicker peace during his life, as ane nobill prince, worthy to have indifficient glore; and wes gevin na les to police and civil maneris, than to chevalrie. He drew all the confusit lawis of Scotland in ane compendius volumen, and abrogat al thaim that wer unprofitable, and maid new lawis mair expedient: of quhilkis sindry remanis yit, as followis: “ In ilk schire of this  
 “ realme sal be ane man of law, to decide doutsum materis quhen  
 “ thay occur: and thair sonnis sal lern the lawis in thair tendir age.  
 “ The lawis and constitutionis of this realme sal be kept onlie be  
 “ thaim: and gif ony of thaim be convickit of falset, or ony othir  
 “ crime of lese majeste, thay sall be hingit on ane jebat. He that  
 “ is convickit of theft, sal be hangit. He that makis slauchter, sal be  
 “ heidit. Ane woman convickit of ony capitall crime, sal be drownit,  
 “ or buryit quik. He that blasphemis God or his sanctis, or blas-  
 “ phlemis the king or his capitane, sall want his tounge. He that  
 “ makis ane lesing in dammage of his nichtbour, sall tine his swerd,  
 “ and be exilit fra gud company. Al personis suspekkit of ony  
 “ crime, sal suffir the inquest of VII wise men, of IX, XI, XIII, XV, and  
 “ sa furth, in od noumer. All revaris, oppressouris, and invasouris  
 “ of othir mennis landis, sal be heidit. All vagaboundis, fulis,  
 “ bardis, scudlaris, and all siclik idill pepill, sal be brint on the  
 “ cheik, and scurgit with wandis, bot gif thay find sum craft to win  
 “ thair leving. The wife sal nocht be punist for hir husbandis ini-  
 “ quite: bot the man sal be punist for the crime of his wife, gif he  
 “ knew the crime: and gif scho be nocht his wife, bot his concu-  
 “ bine, scho sal be punist with the samin punitioun as the man de-  
 “ servis for his crime. He that revisis ane virgine, bot gif scho de-  
 “ sire him in mariage, sal be heidit. He that fulyeis ane othir  
 “ mannis bed, sal be put to deith; with the woman, les than scho be  
 “ deforsit. He that deforsis ane woman, sal be heidit; and the

“ woman sall suffir na skaith, bot declarit innocent. Gif the sonne  
 “ be injurius to the fader in wourd or deid, the membir that failyeit,  
 “ quhiddir it be fut, toung, or hand, sal be cuttit fra him : and eftir  
 “ this punitioun, he sal be hingit on ane jebat, and his body sall re-  
 “ mane unburyit above the erd. He that is ane manslayar, or born  
 “ dum, or unthankful to his fader, sall succeid to na heritage. Jou-  
 “ glaris, wichis, and makaris of privat patronis with devillis, sal be  
 “ brint to the deid. Na seid sal be sawin, quhill it be purifyit fra  
 “ all noisum granis. He that sufferis his land to be fild with guld,  
 “ or siclik unprofitabil wedis, sall pay, for the first falt, ane ox, to  
 “ the commoun gud ; for the secound falt, x oxin ; and, the thrid  
 “ time, he sal be forfeit of his landis. Gif thy companyeon or  
 “ freind be slane in the feild, he sal be buryit, and thy ennime left  
 “ but sepulture. Ane beist found gangand wil, sal be gevin to the  
 “ awnar, or to the serchoure of thevis, or ellis to the preist of the  
 “ parochine : quha withhaldis it thre dayis, sal be accusit of theft.  
 “ He that findis his nichtbouris geir, sall inquire, be opin proclama-  
 “ tion, the awnar thairof ; othirwayis, he sal be punist as ane theif.  
 “ He that strikis his colligitant in jugement, sall tine his action ; and  
 “ gif he be actor, his party sal be absolvit fra his petition. Quhen  
 “ uncouth ky fechtis amang thaimself, gif ane of thaim happenis to  
 “ be slane, and uncertane quhat kow maid the slauchter ; the kow  
 “ that is homill sall beir the wyte ; and the awnar thairof sal recom-  
 “ pens the dammage of the kow that is slane, to his nichtboure.  
 “ Ane swine that eitis hir grisis, sal be stanit to deid, and hir flesche  
 “ forbodin. Ane swine that eitis corne, or wortis othir mennes  
 “ landis, sal be slane, but ony redres to the awnar. Al othir beistis  
 “ that eitis mennis corne or gres, sal be poindit, quhil the awnar  
 “ thairof redres the skaithis be thaim done. Altaris, kirkis, imagis  
 “ of sanctis, oratouris, chapellis, preistis, and all ecclesiastik per-  
 “ sonis, sal be haldin in reverence. Festuall and solempne days,  
 “ fasting, vigillis, and all othir cerimonyis of the kirk, sal be obser-  
 “ vit, siclik as the kirk hes institute. He that hurtis ane kirk-man,  
 “ in word or in deid, sal be punist to the deith. All sepulturis sal  
 “ be haldin in reverence, and ane croce set on thame, that na man  
 “ stramp thairon. The place, quhare ane man is slane or buryit,  
 “ sal be vii yeris unteild. The corps of ane deid man sal be buryit



“ effering to his gudis : Gif he was ane noble man, and did gret  
 “ actis for the commoun weill, his body sal be buryit with funeral  
 “ triumphe, in this maner : Two horsmen sall pas afore him to the  
 “ kirk ; that ane arrayit in his best claithing, berand his armour  
 “ and wappinnis, on ane quhite hors ; this othir sall pas in dolorus  
 “ weid, on ane blak hors : and quhen the corps is enterit in the kirk,  
 “ the man with the blak hors sal turn his bak to the altar, and la-  
 “ mentably deplore the deith of his maister, and sal depart the samin  
 “ gait he come ; this othir sal offir his hors, armour, and wappinnis,  
 “ to the preist, and bury him in magnificent sepulture.” This cus-  
 tome of burying of nobill men was abrogat efter be the pepil ; and,  
 in redemption thair of, thay payit v pund to the preist of the kirk.

This nobill king, Kenneth, with thir, and mony othir institu-  
 tionis, governit his pepill, to the end of his life, in gud peace, fel-  
 cite, and justice. He translatit the bishoppis sete of Abirnethy to  
 the kirk of Sanct Reule : quhilk was namit efter, the kirk of Sanct  
 Andros. The bishop that succedit efter in this ciete, was callit the  
 gret Bishop of Scotland ; for the realme of Scotland wes nocht de-  
 vidit than as now, in diocises, bot ilk bishop, gif he was found of  
 gud life, resavit his oblatioun in quhatsumevir place he come : and  
 this custome indurit in the kirk of Scotland unto the time of King  
 Malcolme the Thrid ; quhilk was monist, as we sall efter rehers, be  
 vision, to institute the sete of Murthak, now callit Abirden. This  
 seit of Sanct Andros hes bene haldin in gret reverence, fra the first  
 institution thair of, to thir dayis : of quhome hes bene mony nobill  
 bishoppis of singular erudition and life, to the nowmer of xxxvi.  
 Bot I will return to my history.

Kenneth eikit the boundis of his realme, fra the Almane seyis,  
 beside Northumbirland, to the Ireland seyis, beyond the Ilis ; and  
 deceissit at Fortiviot, be flux of cater, the xx yeir of his regne ; fra  
 the incarnatioun, DCCCLV yeris. His body was buryit in Colmekil,  
 amang the anciant sepulturis of othir kingis.

## Chap. Thirteenth.

*Of the vicius King Donald. How Osbret and Ella, with gret nowmer of Inglismen, was discomfist. How xx.m Scottis war slane; and King Donald tane be Inglismen and Britonis. Of the mes-suge send be Scottis to Osbret; and of his answer.*



ENNETH, the nobil prince, deceissit on this wise, his brothir, Donald, the fift of that name, was maid king; richt different fra his brothir; for skarsly had he rounge two yeris, quhen his abhominabill lust, be multitude of huris and riatus surfet, maid all the pepil effeminat; and gevin mair to his sensual plesouris than ony defence of his realme, as na dammage war appering be his ennimes. Thus was the temperance of our auld faderis set aside, and new vicis brocht amang the pepill. Mony of the noblis, sic as war luffaris of virtew, detesting, with gret indignation, thir schamful maneris of the king and his pepill, ay rising mair in dammage of the common weil; went to the king, exhorting him to remembir quhat miserable and mischevous end followis on vile and sensuall lustis; quhat publik and privat personis bene tint be the samin; quhat pestilence and dangeris succedis thairthrow; and in quhat crimes and schamful dedis men ar drevin, be occasion of thair lustis: and thairfore, prayit him, gif he had respect to his singulare or common weill, to remove suspect and vicius personis out of his cumpany; and to schaw him, erar ane wise prince, like his brothir Kenneth, than effeminat monstoure like Sardanapalus, quhilk tint his life with the empire of Assyrianis, becaus he was ay accompanyit with wemen, and our mekill gevin to his lust. Quhen the noblis of Scotland had schawin thir and siclike wordis to thair prince, and seand na emendation of his life, bot his hatrent daily rising aganis tham, thay left thair purpos. Thus was the pepill, be vicius leving of thair prince, degenerat in every vice: all reason turnit in dissait, and justice rang for iniquite.

In this mene time, the residew of Pichtis, quhilkis fled amang Inglismen, heirand the insolence of Scottis, tuk desire to recovir thair realme in Albion: and solistit Osbret and Ella, two gret princes of England, to move weir aganis the Scottis; and promittit to obey to thaim and thair posterite, gif the said princes wald restore thaim to thair landis in Albion. Osbret and Ella, men of hie ingine and prudence, and knowing be quhat detestabill vicis the Scottis war effeminat, refusit nocht thir desiris of Pichtis. And yit thay wald not schaw thame ennimes to Scottis, quhill all contentionis war pecifyit amang thair nobillis. And quhen the samin war dressit maist prudently, thir foresaid capitanis, Osbret and Ella, come with ane army of Inglismen and Britonis. And efter that thay had set down thair tentis in Mers and Berwik, thay send ane herald to King Donald, chargeand him to restore the landis laity tane fra Pichtis; othirwayis, Inglismen and Britonis suld be na les ennimes to him, than Pichtis was afore. Donald, astonist be this message, and knowing nocht quhat was to be done, began to serche quhare he micht best hide him, to eschew the fury of ennimes: yit, finaly, be hortatioun of his nobillis, that he suld nocht, be his cowardy, expone the realme to extreme dangeir, he commandit all pepill under his dominioun, to convene, certane day and place, with all ordinance necessare to resist thair ennimes. King Donald, accompanyit with his nobillis and commonis in this sort, gaif Osbret and Ella battall at Jedburgh. In this battall, the Danis war discomfist with gret slauchter, and chasit to the montanis. Donald, richt insolent efter this victory, and beleving himself fermelie deliverit of all truble, come to the mouth of Tweid with his victorius army; and fand thair, two schippis ladin with winis, vittallis, and all othir thingis necessar to sustene the army of Inglismen. King Donald tuk, finaly, thir schippis, with smal labour, and partit the spulye and riches thair of amang his weirmen. The spulye of thir schippis was mair noisum to the Scottis, than war thair ennimes; for Donald was gevin to sic voracite and lust of his wambe, that he corruppit all his army in detestable maneris. The young men, following the maneris of King Donald, fillit the army full of bordellis, tavernis, and huris. Followit, dising and carting; and of thame come contention and slauchter. Thus war the army maid ane gadering of licherus pepil, but

ony ordour of chevalry. Osbret, heirand the Scottis gevin to sic immoderat plesour and lustis, come on thame with ane new army, quhen thay belevit nathing les than his cuming, and slew thaim, nakit of armour, full of wine, and sleip in thair beddis. The skry suddanly up-raises, throw terrible rummissing of deand pepil, and awalkinnit the army with miserabil affray. Followit sone, ane lamentabil murdir of Scottis; sum contending, bot in vane, to evaid thair ennimes; otheris slane, but debait; otheris fled quhare thay nicht best. In this unhappy bergane war slane, xx.M Scottis. King Donald was tane full of wine and sleip, and led throw the cuntre, to be ane derision to al pepil: and with him was tane, all the remanent noblis that wer left unslane, and put in prison; thair tentis spulyeit, and maid pray to Inglismen and Britonis. The fame of this unhappy battall maid the remanent Scottis na les dolorus, than thair realm had fallin in pray to thair ennimes: sum began to vary fortoun; otheris traistit al thir mischevis fallin only be vengeance of thair unhappy king and his cursit counsal; otheris ran throw stretis, inquiring thame that thay met, quha was tane or slane, and quhat the Inglismen intendit to do efter this victory: at last, heirand that Inglismen war cumin in Lowthiane, and the Britonis in Galloway, ceissing fra na maner of cruelte that nicht be devisit; thay war mair affrayit than evir was ony pepil afore. The spraichis and lamentabil cryis of wemen heirand the miserabill slauchter of thair freindis and husbandis, affrayit all the cuntre. The yammering was sa huge, that few apperit othir to revenge the injuris of ennimes, or yit to defend thair realme: throw quhilk, al the boundis of Scotland, fra Humbir to Striveling, was our-riddin; and nothir man, wife, nor page, left on live, that nicht be ouirtakin be Inglismen or Britonis: and belive, thay maid thame reddy to cum in Fiffe and Angus. Than the capitanis of ilk region mesit all trubil, sa far as thay nicht, amang the pepil; and, with al fensabil men that thay culd gaddir, thay stoppit certane dayis the cuming of ennimes our Forth. Osbret, incontinent, stuffit certane schippis with x.M chosin men, to cum our Forth. In the mene time, rais sa vehement storme, that v.M of thaim perist, and the residew, but mast or taikill, returnit to land. Osbret, seand his army, but greit dangeir, nicht noch be tursit be see; come to the brig of Striveling, to convoy his army,



land-gait, in Fiffe. Than the Scottis send thair oratouris to Osbret, desiring peace; and said, It pertenit not to vailyeant campionis, having victory but debait, to invaid vincust pepill with new injuris; thair king captive, and thair noblis beand sa miserable slane: and remembring thame, that Scottis war vincust mair be thair awin sleuth and necligence, than be ony manheid of Inglismen; als, fortoun was sa unstabil, that oftymes scho takis fra mortall pepil the victory that scho gevis to thaim, les than thay use it with mair measure; als, na glore nicht succed to him, howbeit he vincust febil pepil, quhilk was set to tak peace under quhat condition he plesit; nochttheles, gif he wald na wayis condescend to peace, thay suld prefer honest deith to schamefull life. Osbret, degeistly avisit on thir petitionis, was content to have peace with Scottis, under thir conditionis, That al landis conquest fra Scottis at this time, sall remane under perpetual dominion of Inglismen and Britonis, and na forthir conques to be maid on Scottis. The remanent land reft fra Pichtis, sal remane, as afore, under the empire of Scottis. The watter of Forth sall be marche betwix Scottis and Inglismen in the eist partis; and it sal be namit, ay fra thinefurth, The Scottis see. The watter of Clyde, to Dumbartane, sal be marche in the west partis, betwix the Scottis and Britonis. This castel, afore this day, was callit Alcluch, and than namit Dumbritane; that is to say, the Castell of Britonis. It sal be imput for treason, gif ony Scottismen pas our Forth, and be found in ony landis pertenant to Inglismen or Britonis. Gif ony Scottis be drevin in the said landis, thay sall depart within thre dayis efter, without thay have impediment. Thay sall by nor turs nathing out of the realme, bot vittallis and watter. Thay sall big na strenthis fornens Britonis nor Inglismen. And thay sall pay, ilk yeir, ane m pund to Britonis, quhill xx yeir war out-running: and for observation thairof, sall geif lx of thair noblis sonnys to remane in place. Osbret commandit thair oratouris, gif peace under thir conditionis war thocht hevy, to cum not agane with new message.

## Chap. Fourteenth.

*Of the orison maid be Calenus. How Scottis tuk peace with Inglis-  
men and Britonis. How King Donald was put in prison for his  
viciis, and slew himself. Of sindry mervellis sene in Albioun.*



ONY of the Scottis thoct the peace sorrowfull under  
thir conditionis ; otheris thoct the realme in sic dan-  
geir, that peace wes necessare, in quhatsumevir sort it  
micht be had. Thus, thay had bene devidit in sindry  
factionis, war nocht ane agit man, namit Calenus, Thane of Angus,  
quhilk had VII sonnys slane with King Donald at this last battall,  
pecifyit thame in this maner : “ I find, in the Croniklis, how the  
“ vailyeant Galdus, our soverane, for quhais singulare pre-eminence  
“ in glore of armes, the landis of Brigance war callit Galloway,  
“ brocht the Romanis, quhilkis war dantouris of all pepill, to sic  
“ extreme calamite, that thay socht his peace, under quhat condi-  
“ tionis he plesit, that thay micht eschew the irrecoverabill dangeir  
“ than appering to thair army. And thought he had slane thame  
“ but ony mercy or ransoun, he had done bot smal outrage or dis-  
“ honour to the residew of Romane pepill. Heirfore, gif the Ro-  
“ mane army, deprest with evil fortoun, and havand ma nobil men  
“ of singular prudence and counsal than ar now amang us, sub-  
“ mittit thaim to have peace, at the will of thair ennimes, becaus  
“ thay micht na othir wayis aschew the dangeir occurring ; I think,  
“ thairfore, we suld not eschame, sen we ar vincust, our realme  
“ standing in extreme dangeir, our king and noblis tane, to have  
“ peace with ennimes, in quhatsumevir sort it may be had. And  
“ yit, nicht our common weil, quhilk hes bene sa vailyeantly de-  
“ baittit to our days, have defence ony othir way, I think, we suld  
“ erar jeopard us to extreme dangeir of battall, than to seik sa sor-  
“ rowfull condition of peace. Forthir, nicht our livis, wilfully  
“ offerit to the deid, deliver our realme and pepil fra the schame  
“ and trubill now appering, I suld be the first that suld wilfully

“ offer himself in sacrifice in that behalf. Bot, sen we ar cumin to sic calamite and affliction, that force is, to have peace under quhatsumevir conditionis it may be had, for this time, or ellis to tine our realme, fechtand fulichely with ennimes, to the deith ; best is, thairfore, to have peace, and to saif our realm, quhilk hes bene with sindry chancis of fortoun sa vailyeantly defendit, to esperance of greter prosperite, that ye may sum time recover the landis reft fra yow be injure of ennimes. And gif ye othir wayis do, ye sall tyne yourself, your wiffis, childrin, and realme, but ony recover.”

The noblis, for this counsal, send ambassatouris to have peace with Britonis and Inglismen, in the maner afore rehersit. The peace beand ratifyit, Donald was send in Scotland, ransont with gret sowmes of money. Than the Britonis and Inglismen sat down peaciabily in sindry braid boundis of Scotland. The Britonis gat al the landis fra Striveling to the Ireland seis, and fra the watter of Forth and Clide to Cumbir, with all strenthis thair of. The Inglismen gat all the landis betwix Striveling and Northumberland. Thus was Clyde marche betwix Scottis and Britonis on that ane side, and the watter of Forth, namit the Scottis see, marche betwix thame and Inglismen on the tothir side ; and Striveling, common marche to thre pepil, Scottis, Britonis, and Inglismen. The castel was in keping of King Osbret, quhilk reparit it with new munitionis, nochtwithstanding the rewine thair of maid afore be Scottis, quhen thay spulyeit the Pichtis of thair realm. This Osbret had his cunyeouris within this castel, be quhom the Striveling money tuk beginning. The Inglismen beildit ane brig of stane ouir the watter of Forth : in the middis thair of stude ane image of the crucifix ; and under the samin was thir versis ingravin :

“ I am fre marche, as passingeris may ken,  
 “ To Scottis, to Britonis, and to Inglismen.”

The Pichtis, seand thir thre pepill brocht to concord, dred, be suspition, that Inglismen and Britonis, quhilkis war afore thair freindis, suld becum thair ennimes, be desire of thair landis ; and, thairfore, to saif thair livis, thay fled to thair freindis in Norroway and Denmark : otheris, quhilkis had na refuge, war slane be Ing-

lismen. This was the end of Pichtis quhilkis fled in Ingland efter the expulsion of thame fra thair realm.

In the same time, King Donald, quhilk was brocht hame, thocht he was unworthy, with gret triumphe; removit all virtuous and nobil men out of his cumpany, and fell to all vicis, as afore. And thought importable adversite fel to him, ilk ane above othir, yit nane of thaim, nor yit gud counsal, micht draw him fra his corruptit life. And quhen he had tint the tane half of his realme be his sleuth, and the tothir half misgidit for falt of justice; and na thing appering mair cleirly than exterminion of his realme, be continewall seditionis daily rising in the samin; he was tane be the nobillis, that the realme suld not be tint be his folly, and put in ward: quhare he, within few days efter, slew himself, be disperation, in the vi yeir of his regne; fra the incarnation, dccclx yeris.

Mony mervellis wer sene, about this time, in Albion. Thair was ane child in Lowthian, of vi monethis auld, and schew to his moder, within schort time the ennimes sall have empire and dominion of Lowthiane; and counsallit hir, thairfore, to fle thairfra. The oxin, at thair pasture, take an uncouth rowting, and schot haistely to deith. Fische was found deid on the see-side at Forth, litill different fra the image of man. In Galloway; ane huge multitude of serpentis fell out of the aire, and suddandly war resolvit in corruption, to the gret mortalite of men and beistis. The spaymen conjecturit, be thir mervellis, the empire of King Donald to end with mischeif.



## Chap. Fifteenth.

*Of King Constantine the Secound ; and of his lawis. Of the hery regrait maid be Evanus of the Ilis to his folkis ; and how the said Evanus was punist for his rebellion.*



ONALD the tyrane slane, as we have writin, Constantine, the secound of that name, and sonne of Kenneth, was maid king. In the beginning of his regne, he tuke labour to recover the landis quhilkis war tane afore fra Scottis, be sleuth of his eme, Donald. The nobillis, knawing thaim brokin be dammage of the weris afore past, wald not assist to him, quhil the corruppet maneris quhilkis war brocht amang the pepill be insolence of King Donald, war first put down, and all thingis brocht to the same estait as thay war afore, in the time of Kenneth. King Constantine, to dres thir materis, convenit his nobillis to ane counsall at Scone : quhare he, be publik auctorite, maid thir lawis under writin. In the first, he commandit kirkmen to wait diligently on divine service. Thay sall abstene fra all prophane labouris, and leve content of the patrimony pertenant to thair kirkis. Thay sall preche the worde of God to the pepill. Thay sall leve on the samin maner as thay teche the pepill. And to that fine, that thay may the mair esaly serve God, thay sal be fre, in times cumming, of al chargis pertenant to the weris. Thay sall nothir nuris hors nor houndis for thair pleseir. Thay sall beir na wappinnis, nor decide prophane actionis. And gif thir kirkmen failye, and do nocht thair devore, as Cristin pepill thinkis reasonable ; thay sal pay, for the first falt, gret sowmes of money ; and for the secound falt, gif thay amend nocht thair life, thay sal be degradit of thair preistheid. Young childrin sal be refrenit fra all lustis, and nurist with rude meit ; and sall eit bot anis in the day ; and abstene fra al thingis that may mak thaim drunken. Ane child, or ane madin, that is fundin drunken, sal be punist to the deith. Young men sal be exercit in swift rinning, wersling ; with corsbow, handbow, and

casting of dartis; to hald thame fra sic thingis as makis thame effeminat: and thay sal sleip on burdis, and hard beddis, to mak thaim abill to suffir distres in the kingis weris. Nane of thir thingis wer inhibit to agit men; bot allanerlie, to eschew superflew and mony coursis. It wes commandit be the same decreit, All taverneris, drunkattis, bordallaris, and provocaris of the pepil to intemperat diet or lustis, sall pas out of the cuntre within ane certane day, under pane of deth. Be thir lawis, the pepill wer maid, within schort time, of lichorus gluttonis, temperat men; of soft bodyis, redly to suffir laubouris; and, of effeminat creatouris, maid wise and manly campionis. Followit, sone eftir, gret felicity to the realme, throw wise and prudent administratioun of King Constantine. The first trubill that rais in his time, wes be Evanus, Capitane of the Ilis; for our pepill hes bene ay of sa perverst and insolent ingine, sen thair first beginning, that thay may nothir sustene lang peace nor weir. Quhen thay ar waistit be lang weris, thay think na thing sa displesand to thaim as battall: and laubouris than, to have peace, with uter diligence. Eftir lang peace, thay flow in riches, and incressis ilk day sa insolent, that thay may nocht suffir equale administration of justice: and than seikis, be frequent occasion, othir to have weir with ennimes, or ellis to have weir amang thameself. On the same maner, Evanus of the Ilis, irkit of lang peace, gaderit ane cumpany of siclik limmaris as himself, in the castell of Dunstafage, for it wes in his keping: and, be lang orisoun, complenit afore thaim, that continuatioun of lang peace with uncouth pepill, hes brocht the nobillis to servitude. Constantine, thair king, wes ane dum, severe, and unmercifull prince, more proffitable to commonis than to noblis: and hes maid certane lawis, to be execute equale on pure and riche, but ony reverence of estait: and hes richit his familiaris, be vane coulour of justice, putting his nobillis to gret punishment. Thus wes na place left to gentill men and nobillis, to sustene thair life with sic honour as thair eldaris did afore. Be contrar, men of vile and obscure linnage ar dailie promovit to riches and honouris. Na man nicht leif for his strait lawis, bot gif thay pas thair time with innocence as churlis dois, quhilk na gentill hart nicht suffir. Heirfore, that nobil men sal nocht be haldin under sic perpetual servitude, and that churlis sall nocht, in times cuning, have occasioun to

be insolent and proud; best is, to conspire aganis Constantine, and othir to tak him, or ellis invaid him with al the power thay micht: quhilk beand done, all thingis micht succeid as thay plesit. The Ilismen, richt desirus to have thair renyeis fre, that thay micht injure the pepill, as afore, but ony punitioun; assistit to his opinioun, and solistit all the pepill of Murray, Ros, and Cathnes, to rebell aganis thair prince. Nochtheles, the treason wes sone discoverit to the king; and causit him, with ane cumpany of chosin men, to cum haistely to Dunstafage, quhare this Evanus hapnit to be for the time; and tuke him, with sindry his compliceis, and hingit thaim on jebaitis. And becaus sindry gret princis of the cuntre wer participant of his treasoun, thay wer all tane on the samin maner, and put in strang presonnis, quhil the king micht have degeist consultation quhat punishment wes effering to thair offence.

### Chap. Sixteenth.

*How Gadanus, King of Danis, send his two brethir, Hungar und Hubba, with gret armyis, to invaid the Scottis; and how the said Hubba was vincust, and his army put to flicht.*



As sone as this trubil wes peacifyit on this wise, followit, ane othir of gretar motioun; for the stait of man hes nevir experience of more adversite, than quhen the samin leist apperis. Gadanus, King of Denmark, come with ane army, first aganis Scottis, and syne aganis Inglismen. The motive of his weris wes, becaus the residew of Pichtis, quhilk fled in Denmark quhen thay war doung out of Albion be the weris of Scottis, resignit to him al richt that thay micht have to thair realme in Albion: and for that caus, he send his 11 brethir, Hungar and Hubba, with ane flote of Danis, in Albion: and finalie, arrivit in Fiffe, or evir the brute of thair weris come to the eris of Scottis. And eftir thair arriving, thay invadit the pepill with sic cruelteis, that thay wer constrainit, for saifte of thair livis, to seik new habitatioun. In the mene time; wes in thay regionis, ane huge noumer of

haly men, quhilk prechit, dailie, the scripture and evangellis to the pepill; bot thay wer invadit with sic slauchter and cruelte be the Danis, that the maist part of thame fled with Adriane, Bischop of Scotland, to the Ile of May, to eschew the dangeir appering. This May is ane ile betwix Fiffe and Lowthiane; and in it was ane abbay of monkis: bot, nothir the reverence of this religious place, nor yit the innocence of thir haly men, nicht saif thaim; for thay war al slane, with uncouth punition and torment. Thir haly martyris, Sanct Adriane and his fallowis, ar haldin yit in gret veneration be Inglismen and Scottis, and daily miraculis kithit be thame. King Constantine, seand the furius cruelte of Danis ilk day mair incresing, thocht mair expedient to assailye the chance of fortun quhil his pissance was haill, than quhen it was attenuat be frequent displesouris; and, thairfore, commandit all his pepill to mete him, in thair best maner, agane ane certane day and place. The day byrun, he come, with ane army, aganis the Danis; and fand thame campit in Fiffe, and lyand two milis sindry, devidit be the watter of Levin. This watter was boldin, at thair cuming, be sic violent schouris, that it nicht not be riddin. And efter the inundatioun thair of, followit, sa mervellus serenite, that it gaif occasion to Constantine to invaid the Danis with battall. And becaus nane of thir two armyis of Danis nicht support othir, Constantine come, with arrayit battall, aganis Hubba, quhilk was Capitane of Danis on the southe side of Levin. The Danis had sa fervent desire to fecht, that thay nicht na wayis be haldin within thair tentis. Hubba maid hortation to superseid thair fury quhil thay nicht have rescours of freindis: nochtheles, thay war sa fers, that thay come to array without advise of Hubba, thair capitane; and had above thair harnes, cote-armouris bordourit with reid silke, schinand with mervellus brichtnes, and stok swerdis, quhom na armour nicht resist. Thir Danis apperit richt terrible be thair huge bodyis: nochtwithstanding, baith the armyis junit, and faucht with incredible fury. At last, the Danis, ouirset with multitude of pepil, war sa invadit on ilk side, that thay nicht not resist; and flang, haistely, thair wappinnis fra thame, and fled. Mony of thame, fleand to thair tentis, war slane; otheris war cassin in fowseis, and, with thair deid carionis, maid ane gait to the Scottis to cum to thair tentis. Sum of thaim perist in the river;



otheris, be craft of swoming, wer savit. Hubba swame throw the river but ony perel. Than wes Humber richt rejosit, that his brodir, Hubba, had eschapit baith the dangeir of ennimes and the river. And incontinent, he armit him with gret ire, to revenge the slauchter of his folkis.

### Chap. Seventeenth.

*How King Constantine was slane, and his army discomfist be the Danis.*



THE Scottis wer sa insolent eftir this victorie, that thay tuke litill sollicitude or thocht to the residew of thair battall that wes to be led aganis the Danis: bot, as na adversite nicht follow, and as every thing wer dantit be thair onlie virtew, thay had thair ennimes in contemptioun; and spendit two dayis in dansing, revelling, and singing, but ony sicht to chevalrie. Sa far procedit thair foly, that thay kest cavillis, quhay suld have the maist riche prèsoneris amang the Danis, na otherwayis than victorie had bene present in thair handis. And above this insolence, the young and agit nobillis fell in contentioun, with maist outragius wourdis aganis othir; the agit men desiring to be preferrit, be reason of thair lang experience and age; the young men, be reason of thair manheid and youth, reddy to assailye all perellis: bot thair wes na sermone amang thaim how thair army suld be arrayit, nor yit be quhat wayis thair ennimes suld be vincust. At last, quhen the watter of Levin wes fallin, King Constantine brocht our his army to fecht with the residew of Danis. The Danis, havand more sicht to the governance of thair battal, than to ony spulye, arrayit thair army in this sort: In the richt wing wes Hubba, with vi.M Danis: In the left wing wes Buernus, Inglisman, quhilk wes banist out of England for pollucion of Osbret the King of Inglandis wife; and he come to this battal aganis Scottis, with the residew of Pichtis, quhilkis war banist afore out of Albion: In the middilward, was Hungar, with the remanent Danis, exhort-

ing tham to pas to battal with gud curage ; and schew, how the Ile of Albion, with the riches and frut thairof, suld be reward of thair victory : be contrar, gif thay war vincust, nocht nicht follow bo deid and slauchter of thame all, with perpetual schame : and, to inflam thame with mair fury, he swore nevir to return to his tentis without he had victory ; and causit thame to be al sworn in that samin wise. On the tothir side, King Constantine put Ethus, his brothir, in the richt wing ; and Duncane, Thane of Athole, in the left wing, with x.m men in ilk ane of thair battallis : and arrayit himself in the middilward, with the residew of Scottis ; syne began to mak his orisoun to his army : and first, he gaif thankis to God for this victory recently fallin to his pepil ; and exhortit thame to file not, with schamfull fleing, the glore that thay conquest afore be thair manheid and virtew : and prayit thame to have na feir of thair ennimes ; for thay wer bot corpolent bodyis, but ony virtew ; and nicht, thairfore, be sone vincust, gif thay war invadit on the samin maner as thay war afore : and finaly, requirit thame to rin not our feirsly in battal, bot erar to suffir thair ennimes to cum on thame ; for he belevit the said ennimes, be rage of ire, to rin sa fast forthwart, that thay suld be very and brokin, or evir thay come to straikis. Bot this command of Constantine wes richt noisum till our folkis ; for the bald spreit and feirsnes that suld have bene ekit be hortatioun of thair capitane, wes gretumlie menist be this command of Constantine. Our folkis usis, quhen thay ar to fecht, to cum with sic faird and noys, that thay rais na les thaimself with hie curage, than astonisis thair ennimes with dredour. The Danis, be sound of trumpat, went forthwart ; nochttheles, thay wer so expert in chevalrie, fra thay saw thair ennimes nocht meit thaim, that thay sum time abaid, and sum time went forthwart with esy pais, schowtand thair ganyeis and dartis. On the tothir side, the Scottis schot at thir Danis, arowis, and sloung stanis. Belive, baith the armyis junit, and faucht with incredibill fury ; quhill at last, the Scottis wer put to flicht : on quhom followit, the Danis, with lang slauchter and chace. In this unhappy battall wer slane, x.m Scottis. Amang mony othir presoneris, King Constantine wes tane, and brocht to anc cove beside the see : quhare he was heidit, the xiii<sup>th</sup> yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnatioun, dcccclxxiv yeris. The

place, quhair he wes slane, is yit callit The blak cove, to be ane memorie of that wickit deid.

### Chap. Eighteenth.

*Of King Ethus and his actis. How Osbret, King of Ingland, with mony othir pepil, was slane, be cruelte of Danis. Of sindry mervellis sene in Albion; and of the deith of Ethus.*



E this unhappy battal, sic miserabil skaith followit to Scottis, that, had not bene Ethus, brothir to King Constantine, happinnit to be saiffit be his fleing, the name and memory of Scottis had bene endit this day in Albion. The residew of Scottis, quhilkis eschapid fra this unhappy battall, convenit at Scone, and maid Ethus king. Mony uncouth and strange mervellis war sene at this time in Albion. Ane multitude of fische was sene in Forth, the tane half of thame above the watter, na thing different fra the figour of man; callit, be the pepil, Bassinatis. Thir fische hes blak skinnis hingand on thair bodyis, with quhilk, sum time, thay covir thair heid and thair cragis, evin to thair schulderis. Quhen thir fische fletis in our seysis, thay signify gret infortuniteis to mortall pepill. The lochis and rivaris stude frosin, fra the beginning of November to the end of Aprille; efter quhilk, followit, ane thow, with sa continual and ithand rainis of sleit and snawis, that al the planis stude ful of watter. Than followit, sa infinite nowmer of padokis, that the aire was infeckit, to the gret dammage of pepill. Ane comite was sene, with frie bemis, rising afore none, and schane, all the moneth of Aprile. The pepill, astonist with sic uncouth mervellis, belevit gret affliction to cum on thame.

The Danis, efter this victory, come in Louthiane, and chasit the inhabitantis thairof in Northumbirland; and faucht thair, aganis Osbret, King of Ingland, be support of Bruernus, quhilk was banist, as we schew afore; and finaly, thay slew the said Osbret, be plane battall, and put all his folkis to flicht. And efter his slauchter, thay

went, with bludy swordis, throw all the boundis of Ingland, ceissing fra na maner of cruelteis on Cristin pepil: throw quhilk, mony haly men sufferit matyrdome; amang quhom, was ane haly man, Sanct Edmond, King of Northfolk and Southfolk, quhilk was slane be thair tyranny. The remanent kingis of Ingland faucht, certane yeris efter, be sindry chance of fortoun, aganis the Danis. Finaly, al the Inglismen that dwelt fornens the Almane seyis, war outhir slane, or thirllit to servitude of Danis. And yit, thair cruelteis war not lang unpunist; for thay war dantit be the vailyeant Alarude, quhilk succedit, efter King Eldrede, to the realm of Northfolk and Southfolk. This Eldrede vincust the Danis be frequent battal, and slew baith Hungar and Hubba, and restorit Ingland to the auld liberte. Bot we wil return to the remanent geistis of King Ethus.

It is said, this prince was sa swift, that he nicht tak ane hert or ane hound be force of speid: nochtheles, quhatsumevir giftis of nature followit him, he apperit richt unabil to govern the realm; for, quhen he nicht have recoverit, with sober besines, Fif and Louthiane, with othir landis tane fra Scottis be injure of Inglismen and Britonis, he tuk na regard thair of, havand mair sicht to his lust, than ony common weil of the realm, as the samin suld not have bene reformit to ane better chance. He servit his unbridillit lust but ony respect to civil or religiis maneris: and thocht he was richt agil, and deliver of body, with mony othir giftis of God and nature, he abusit thame sa, that na thing semit him in his governance. The noblis, knawing his corruppit maneris noisum to the common weill, and abill to gener displeseir amang the pepil; that the realm suld not cum to mair affliction be his misgovernance, thay maid ane quiet convention amang thameself, to take the king: and to that fine, that thair intention suld not be divulgat afore it come to effect, thay come haistely on him, quhen he was at the huntis, in the wod of Calidon; and tuk him, be force of armit men, to prison, quhare he deceissit, the thrid day efter, for malancoly, in the secound yeir of his regne; fra the incarnation, DCCCLXXVI yeris.



## Chap. Nineteenth.

*Of King Gregoure and his lawis. How he recoverit sindry landis of his realm, and discomfist Herdeut, with al the army of Danis. How Rasine, gret Capitane of Danis, was slane be Inglismen.*



THUS beand thus miserably deceissit in prison, Gregoure, sonne to Congallus, that rang afore King Alpine, was crownit at Scone. He had bot two monethis in age, quhen his fader perist at Spay. This Gregoure, efter his coronation, knowing weill that devine helpe is the only targe and sicker munition of kingis and realmes, but quhilk na kingdomes may stand ony time permanent; thairfore, that he micht begin his empire with mair felicite, he set ane convention of his nobillis at Forfair, for agmentation of devine service. And that kirkmen micht the mair frely geif thair attendance to ordoure thaim in gud religion, he statuit, be publik parliament, that kirkmen sal be perpetually exonerat of all weris, tributis, and publik exactionis, that ar to be put on the pepil be him or his successouris, in times cuming; and thay sall not be drawin afore prophane jugis; bot, allanerly, to be submittit to thair ordinar jugis. He gaif power to all bischoppis of his realm to decide, afore thame, al actionis pertenant to faith of body; with power, baith to caus the pepil keip thair faith promittit to thair nichtbour, and to punis thame for violation thair-of. He gaif als, power to the said kirkmen to make lawis and constitutionis for the weill of Cristin faith; and to discus al debaitis concerning oblationis, or teindis, testamentis, obligationis, or legasyis; to interprete the lawis, and to punis manesworn pepil, blasphemaris of God or his sanctis; to curs al pepil rebelland to thair constitutionis, and to inhibit thame to cum quhare devine service was done; and that al personis, quhilkis war cursit be thame, suld brouk na heritage, nor be hard in jugement, bot exilit gud company, and na faith to be gevin to his deposition and witnes. He commandit, that all princes succeding efter him, sall mak thair aith,

efter thair coronation, to defend the honour and liberte of haly kirk and kirkmen, and sall mak na derogation to the constitutionis of the kirk. This Gregoure had ane naturall inclination to the service of God; with sa grave and sententious langage, that al his wordis and dedis apperit as thay had ben pasit in just balance. He was sa institute in his youth, that he levit, al his days, ane hevinly life; of skars fude and sleip, but ony lust, or conversation of wemen; and had ingine na les gevin to polecy and administration of justice, than to chevalry. The first jorney that he maid, was in Fiffe, to recovir it fra tyranny of Danis and Pichtis: at quhais cuming, the Pichtis, quhilkis war left be Danis to inhabit the said land, war sa astonist, knawing the huge hatrent that Scottis bure aganis thame, that thay fled in Louthiane. Gregoure, findand Fiffe desert in this maner, brocht Scottis out of sindry partis of his realme, to inhabit the samin. Efter this, he come in Louthiane, and brocht it, in the samin maner, to his dominion; syne went to the Mers, quhare sindry cumpanyis of Pichtis and Danis war assemblit to geif him battal: nochthelis, the Danis, seand sa gret multitude of Scottis in thair sicht, fled to Berwik, quhare sindry othir Danis wer of thair opinion. Efter this, thay went in Northumbirland, and fand sindry Danis laitly cumin to thair support. The Inglismen, quhilkis war that time in Berwik, havand na thing in mair hatrent than the empire of Danis, randerit the town of Berwik to Scottis. Gregoure resavit the town, and gaif licence to Inglismen to depart or remane, at thair pleseir; and slew all Danis, quhom he fand in it, but ony mercy or ransoun. And quhen he had garnist this town with all necessaris for keping thair-  
 of, he come, with his army, in Northumberland, to eik the samin to the empire of Scottis. In the mene time, war two armyis lyand in Northumbirland; the tane, of Danis, not far fra York; this othir, of Inglismen, not xx milis fra the campe of Scottis. Herdeut, Prince of Danis, heirand that sa mony Danis war slane at Berwik, maid his aith, to revenge thair slauchter with sic cruelte, that na Scottis sal be left on live in Albion; and, to bring his purpos to effect, he come, with displayit baner, not far fra the samin place quhare the Scottis war lyand in thair tentis. Gregoure, seand his ennimes arrayit afore him, tuk purpos to have maid ane orisoun to his army afore the juning; quhen suddanly rais, sic noyis and clamour

amang thame, be desire of battall, that it was mair necessar to array thame, than to exhort thaim to battall: nochtheles, he besocht thame to revenge the shamfull slauchter of King Constantine, slane treasonably efter that he was tane. Incontinent, the Scottis ruschit forthwart with na les manheid than preis; and come sa fersly with thair lang speris, that thair ennimes had na laseir to schote thair dartis. Efter the speris, come the residew of Scottis, with lang swerdis, billis, and axes, in sic ire, that thay nedit na hortation. Thus war the Danis vincust, and chasit to the nixt montanis. The Scottis followit, with na les cruelte in the chace, than thay faucht afore in the battall; and, be maist violent irruption, thay braik the trinschis, and come, perforce, within the tentis of ennimes, quhare ane huge slauchter was maid. On the morrow, Herdeut colleckit the residew of his army; and, seand ma of thame slane than was on live, he tuk purpos to pas to Rasine, the gret master of Danis, in Ingland. Bot skarsly was his army gane xl milis, quhen sicker tithingis come, that Rasine was slane, and all his army discomfist, be Inglismen: and, to his mair derisioun, his heid borne on ane staik, throw sindry townis and cieteis of Ingland. Apperit, be thir novellis, the proude empire of Danis was fast tending to rewine. Herdeut, richt astonist, and not knawing quhat was to be done, becaus his ennimes war lyand about him on every side, parkit his army in ane strate place, with purpos to remane quhill he war finaly advertist quhat the remanent Danis intendit to do.

### Chap. Twentieth.

*How Gregoure recoverit sindry landis of his realme, and slew Constantine, King of Britonis. How Scottis, Britonis, and Inglis-men, war confiderat aganis the Danis.*



**E**FTER this victory of Danis, Northumbirland come under the dominion of King Gregoure ; and al the inhabitantis thair of maid tributar to his empire. Sone efter, he skalit his army, and come to Berwik, quhare he tuk advisement be quhat ingine he micht bring maist felicite to his realme. At the beginning of the nixt simer, he rasit his campe aganis the Britonis, quhilkis had, that time, gret boundis of Scotland : quhilk jorney succedit to him with na les felicite than this othir, done afore aganis the Danis ; for the Britonis, attenuat and brokin be frequent weris of Danis, to be deliverit of al dangeir appering, gaif ane huge sowme of money to the said Danis, and tuk trewis with thame for xx yeris. Nochtheles, the Danis abaid schort time at this peace, bot invadit the Britonis with mair cruel injuris than afore. The Britonis, seand na band of amite nor faith micht continew the Danis but ithand injuris, send thair ambassatouris to King Gregoure, promitting to renunce al the landis that pertenit to the empire of Scottis, sa that he wald support thame aganis the Danis. Gregoure knawing, gif the thre pepill of Albion, Scottis, Britonis, and Inglismen, war confiderat under ane mind and pissance, na uncouth pepill war to be dred ; condescendit to thair desiris. Thus, war Scottis, Inglismen, and Britonis, finally agreit on al debaitis ; al landis, tane afore fra Scottis be thair weris, randerit plesandly to Gregoure ; and the realme of Scottis delatit to the auld marchis. The peace, tretit in this maner, apperit na les terribil to the Danis, than plesand to the Albanis : bot it indurit schort time ; for the proude felicite fallin to Inglismen, be victory of Danis, and slauchter of Allarudus, thair capitane, gaif occasion to Britonis to brek this band laitly maid with Scottis. Sone efter, Constantine,



King of Britonis, began to be penitent of this band maid with Scottis; and, to recover the saidis landis to his empire, he come with ane army in Annandale. Thus was the peace desolvit betwix Scottis and Britonis. The Britonis send til Inglismen for support; and, becaus thay war frustrat thair of, thay tuk ane huge pray of gudis out of Annandale, with purpos to pas with the samin in Walis. King Gregour, advertist of thir extorsionis, met King Constantine at Louchmaben: quhare it was cruelly fochtin on al sidis. At last, Constantine, seand his ansenye not ereckit with sa pert curage as he desirit, ruschit, with maist fervent curage, to the defence thair of: quhare he, fechtand with mair respect to his honour than to his life, was slane: efter quhais deith, followit, sa huge slauchter of his strangest campionis, that the Britonis gaif bakkis; and war sa brokin with this affliction, that thay come in maist hatrent baith to Danis and Scottis, and na thing luffit with Inglismen. Nochtheles, that thair realme suld nocht faill, thay chesit Herbart, quhilkis was brothir to Constantine, afore slane, to be thair king; and send thair oratouris to King Gregour, desiring peace, saying, The violation of the band betwix thaim and Scottis, was only be insolence of Constantine, quhilk was punist justly for his offence, to gret dammage of Britonis; and, sen he was justly punist for his offence, na occasion apperit to dissolve the band afore contrackit betwix Scottis and Britonis. Attoure, thay schew, that thair king, Herbart, was ane luffar of peace; and desiris na thing sa mekill, as to leve in amite with his nichtbouris, the Scottis. To this message was answerit, be King Gregoure, on this wise: “Nothir the luffe of faith, nor of  
“peace, nor yit the reverence of band, nor of aith, hes movit the  
“Britonis now to seik peace at us; sen thay, but ony respect to thair  
“faith or band, come in Annandale, wirkand importabill injuris,  
“but ony occasion, on Scottis; bot only, becaus thay ar sa brokin  
“in thair pissance, that thay may not be party at this time to us;  
“knewand na thing better than uter exterminion of thair realme, gif  
“thay perseveir ony forthir with weris aganis us. Thairfor, schaw  
“your king, Herbart, we will have na peace with him, nor his trea-  
“sonabil pepil, quhil the strenthis and munitionis of Cumbir and  
“Westmurland be randerit in our handis; and the said Herbart

“ sworn nevir to reclame the saidis landis in times cuming ; and  
 “ lx of nobill men to be gevin in plege for the observatioun thair of.”  
 King Herbart, seand hie dammage approcheand to his realme, and  
 dreidand, gif he perseverit in battall, the final eversion of his realme  
 and his subdittis ; condiscendit, be advise of his nobillis, to fulfill all  
 thingis, as thay war desirit be Gregoure. Als sone as plegis war  
 gevin in this maner, the Britonis left Cumbir and Westmureland,  
 and past in Walis. Than Gregoure went to Carlill, quhare he as-  
 semblit his nobillis to ane counsall, and said, in this maner : “ It is  
 “ patent ineuch quhat felicite is cumin to our realme, be propiciant  
 “ favour of God, sen we began to honour him with trew religion  
 “ and faith : in sa far as he hes nocht onely restorit to us, but ony  
 “ gret slauchter or perill, the landis tane sum time fra our eldaris,  
 “ be injure of Danis, Inglismen, and Britonis ; bot als, in punising  
 “ of thair iniquiteis, hes brocht thair nobil landis, as Northumbir-  
 “ land, Cumbir, and Westmureland, be just conquest, in our handis.  
 “ We have optenit, be grace and favour of God, mair than we be-  
 “ levit : our landis recoverit, and divers boundis of Inglismen and  
 “ Britonis falling in pray to us, be rite of battal. We have honest  
 “ victory, triumpe of ennimes, with laud and glore to our poste-  
 “ rite. Be contrar, our fais hes not only tint schamefully the landis  
 “ that thay wrangusly conquest, bot ar vincust in battall, chasit  
 “ and dounge fra thair rowmes, and invadit with uncouth and do-  
 “ mistik weris ; and thay dar nocht assailye the chance of fortun  
 “ ony forthir with us, in aventure thay bring thaimself to irrecover-  
 “ abil dammage and schame. Now ar the Britonis, be favour of  
 “ God, and our awin manheid, sa vincust, that thay wilfullie hes  
 “ exilit thaimself. And na better chance hes succedit to Danis,  
 “ bot dounge out of thair boundis schamefully, with condigne slauch-  
 “ ter maid on thaim, for the injuris wrocht afore on us : Cumbir,  
 “ Westmureland, and Northumbirland, with all munitionis thair of,  
 “ maid pray to us, as we desirit. Heirfore, forcey campionis, sen  
 “ youre provin virtew and manheid, to quhom God standis sa pro-  
 “ piciant, persuadis yow nocht to rest with this victorie, nor yit to  
 “ stand content with this pray ; we beseik yow, follow vehementlie  
 “ the thing that is offerit to yow be providence of God : for now,  
 “ na villagis nor rude pepil ar to be assailyeit ; and sen ennimes

“ apperis in na partis, maist strenthy wallis and townis ar to be tai-  
 “ kin be our weris. The Danis ar vincust, and fled in Kent ; and  
 “ the Inglismen sa astonist, that thay have left all chargis of bat-  
 “ tallis in our landis, to resist thair ennimes. Lat us, heirfore, pas  
 “ with recent victorie to York, quhare na greter laubour than afore,  
 “ howbeit mair riche pray of guddis, abidis us. And above thir  
 “ proffettis, gif we do al chargis wislie, we sall conquies infinite glore  
 “ and honour to oure posterite. Thir ar the materis that I wald  
 “ persuade yow, to that fine, ye may so revenge the injuris done to  
 “ ennimes, that indifficient honouris, and hie felicite, may succeid  
 “ to yow.” Be thir wourdis, ilk man maid provisioun of sic thingis  
 as wer maist according to his weris.

In the mene time, come to Gregour, the ambassatouris of Alla-  
 rud, King of Ingland, rejosand, that he, with invincible curage,  
 had dantit his ennimes ; and sa vailyeantlie revengit the slauchter  
 of Constantine, King of Scottis, that the Danis, be his support, wer  
 drevin out of Albioun : desiring him, thairfore, to renew the auld  
 band of peace, that Inglismen and Scottis, beand confiderat togidder  
 undir ane mind, may resist, the better, all invasion of Danis, gif  
 thay return sum time in Albioun. King Gregour assentit to thir  
 petitionis. Followit, sickir peace, ratifyit under this maner : “ The  
 “ Scottis sal perpetuallie reiose al boundis of Northumbirland, but  
 “ ony infestatioun of Inglismen, in times cuming. Gif Danis move  
 “ weir aganis ony ane of thir two pepil, the injure sal be reput  
 “ commoun to thaim baith ; and baith the pepill to concur equalie  
 “ to the defence thair of. Attour, nothir Inglismen nor Scottis sall  
 “ invaid otheris. Gif ony thevis of Ingland mak thift or reif within  
 “ the landis of Scottis, the peace sall not be dissolvit thairfore ; bot  
 “ baith the theif and resettoure sal be deliverit quhair the crime is  
 “ committit.”

### Chap. Twenty-first.

*How King Gregoure come in Ireland, to revenge certane injuris done in Galloway; and how he dantit the samin with sindry victoris, and was governour thair of mony yeris. Of his loving and deith.*



HE peace ratifyit in maner forsaide, Gregoure, beleving to have put fine to al his weris, wes constrainit, be new trubill of Ireland, to renew the samin; for Irelandmen come, with ane gret flete, in Galloway, and tuke ane gret pray of men and gudis, out of the boundis thair of. The motive of thair weris, as thay allegit, was, that men of Galloway spulyeit two schippis of Dubline, efter that the samin wer arrivit in thair watteris. Als sone as Gregour was advertist thair of, he followit, with gret deligence, on thir Irelandmen; and thay, herand his cuming, war sa affrayit, that thay sped thame, with gret deligence, in thair cuntre. Incontinent, Gregour follwit on thame, with ane army, in Ireland, and maid al the princes thair of astonist be his cuming. Schort time afore his cuming, the King of Ireland wes deceissit; and had left behind him, ane young child, namit Duncane, to succed to the crown: and throw his deith, the princis of Ireland war contending amang thaim for governance of the realme, and war devidit in two opinionis: Brennus was prince of the ta faction, and Cornelius of the tothir. Now war the Scottis rinnand throw all the cuntre with sa awfull incursion of fire and slauchter, that apperit, without thair fury war the mair haistely repressit, that ane gret part of Ireland suld be distroyit. In the mene time, sindry nobil men of Ireland labourit to mak concord amang the foresaid princis, that the realme, be thair dissention, suld not be jeoperd to extreme danger. And becaus sic thingis culd nocht be dressit, thay tuke trewis betwix thame, for certane monethis, to resist thir cruelteis.



Thir two princis foresaid, come with huge army to the river of Bane, and set down thair tentis in two sindry companyis, nocht far severit fra othir. The hill, quhare thair tentis lay, was sa strenthy, that na army micht cum on thame be industry nor ingine of man, keipand gud array. This was done be Irelandmen, to that fine, that King Gregouris army, be production of lang time, suld laik vittallis : nochtheles, thair slichtis war vincust be wisdom of Gregour ; for the Scottis brocht sufficient vittallis of breid and cheis, to sustene tham for L days, and understud weil, quhare evir thay com, thay micht haif fouth of watter for thair drink. Gregour, seing that he micht not weil invaid his ennimes, tuk consultation, certane dayis, quhat was to be done. And, in the mene time, he send MM men to the bak of Mont Fut within the nicht ; to that fine, that als sone as thay saw Gregour invading the tentis of Irelandmen, thay suld cast doun cragis and stanis on thair bakis : be quhilk way, the Irelandmen suld othir suffir intollerabil dammage, or ellis constranit to geif batal. And quhen he had socht, be lang avisement, quha suld tak this charge on hand, he fand nane sa abil thairto as Kenneth, Thane of Carrik. This Kenneth come our the river of Bane, within the nicht, to the bak of this montane foresaid, be ane difficile and strait gait. On the morow, als sone as the Irelandmen maid tham, with al thair power, to resist the invasion of Gregour ; thair fel down sa huge cragis and stanis on thair bakis, unprovisitly behind thame, that thay war constranit to leif thair tentis and fle, efter that M of tham war slane but ony straik : incontinent, the Scottis followit with lang chais, and brocht ane huge nowmer of prisoneris to King Gregour. In the mene time, the tentis of Brennus war tane, and himself found slane be straik of ane stane. Cornelius, the tothir capitane, heirand sic displeseir fallin to his cumpanion, fled, with al his folkis, to Dubline. Gregoure, seand his beginning succaid with sic felicite, commandit his folkis, be scharp incursionis, to bring all the bestial and gudis that thay micht get, to thair sustentation ; and to abstene fra fire and slauchter : and commandit thaim to do na injure to agit men, wiffis, nor barnis ; and to bring all rank men, quhom thay fand in thair gait, presoneris to him. Mony of thir Ireland pepill, seand the king so mercifull, randerit thaim, with thair munition and guddis, and wer plesandlie ressavit. Gregoure, seand his

army weil stuffit with vittallis, and na injure of ennimes apperand, laid ane strait sege to the town of Dongard; and eftir that he had lyne certane days at the sege thairof, it wes randerit to him: nochtheles, he tuk bot ane sobir money fra the cieteyanis, in redemption of thair livis and guddis. Quhen Gregour had lyne 111 days at Dongard, he left ane buschement of men to keip the said toun; and past, with his remanent army, to sege the toun of Pontus: and becaus it wes randerit to him but ony straik, he commandit na pray of guddis to be tane fra thaim. Now wes Gregour reddy to pas to sege the town of Dubline, quhen tithingis come to him, that Cornelius, the tothir capitane, wes cumand, with infinit noumer of pepill, nocht ten milis fra his army. Gregour, heirand thir novellis, left his purpos, and arrayit his folkis on the nixt planis. On the morow, apperit thre battallis of Irelandmen in sicht: the first wes of licht bodin men, archearis, castaris of dartis and slongis; the secound wes of stout men, armit with coitis of mailye and lang swerdis; in the thrid battall, wes Cornelius, with all the nobillis of Ireland, sworne to fecht with manheid and curage to the deith; and armit with lang swerdis, billis, axis, and ledin mellis. Gregour, seand this ordour of ennimes aganis him, commandit ane buschement of lang speris, to sette on the archearis: be quhome, mony of the Irelandmen wer borne, with dint thairof, to the ground. Cornelius, seand his folkis put abak be this way, commandit, with gret clamour, to cut the speris. And quhen he wes rasing the visare of his heumont, to exhort his folkis more eirnistlie to fecht, he wes hurt in the face with ane speir, and constranit to pas out of the feild: throw quhilk, the remanent army gaif bakkis. Followit, more slauchter in the chace, than wes afore in the battall; and continewit still on thaim, quhill thay wer chasit within the wallis of Dubline. The Irelandmen wer sa brokin be this battall, that thay nicht assembl na army, in times cuming, aganis the Scottis.

On the morow, Gregoure beltit the town of Dubline with strang sege. In this town, wes sa gret noumer of pepill, that it wes constranit to seik peace. Sum of thaim alliegit, more honest wes, to ische, and to jeoperd thaim to extreme chance of fortoun, than to be subdewit to the empire of Scottis: Otheris, seand the gret trubill and slauchter that wes cumand on thame be this last battall, dred,

gif thair nobillis wer presentlie distroyit, to se the uter eversion of thair realm : and, thairfore, send Bischop Cormach, ane man of singulare prudence, to King Gregour, desiring him to have miseration on thaim and thair town ; and to saif thair young prince, Duncane, to quhome the crown of Ireland justlie pertenit : and schew, that vailyeant campionis suld have respect, as weill to thair honour as proffet ; als, it wes na honour to him to mak conques on ane young knight ; as to the town, it wes at his command, with all the cuntre about it : and thairfore, prayit him to avise, quhiddir it wes erar the office of ane king to defend the richt of princis and townis, or to se thaim brocht to uter eversioun. King Gregoure answerit, He come nocht in Ireland to conques it, nor yit to defraude his cosing, Duncane, of the crown, bot onlie to revenge the injuris done to his pepil ; for the Scottis movit na weir, quhil Ireland began it first on thaim : and yit, he suld avise how ane end nicht be put to al his weris, and saif the crown hail, quhil his cosing, Duncane, wer reddy to succaid. The cieteyanis of Dubline, heirand this answer, oppinnit the portis, and ressavit Gregoure, with all his army. Than Gregour enterit, with gret triumphe, in the towne. The pepill ischit furth of al partis of the town to meit him. Than come the religius men, in processioun : amang quhome wes Bischop Cormach, in solempnit habit, beirand the croce : eftir quhom, come the nobillis of Ireland, falling all at anis on thair kneis, and desiring grace. Gregour incontinent demontit of his hors, and, with gret veneration, kist the croce. Than Cormach said to him : “ We have “ na litill caus to thank God, sen he hes ordanit ye to have aucto- “ rite above our livis and guddis, that hes put in the sic compas- “ sioun and mercy, that na cruelteis ar exercit on us be fire and “ swerd, howbeit the samin, be rite of armes, nicht be esaly done.” Gregoure, enterand in the town on this maner, left ane buschement of armit men, to keip the stretis aganis al adventuris that nicht fal. And als sone as he had done his devotion in the kirkis of our Lady and Sanct Patrik, he went to the castell, quhair he remanit al that nicht. On the morow, sindry Scottis quhilkis fulyeit virginnis and matronis in the nicht afore, wer tane, and, be justice of this wise prince, put to deith : quhilk thing causit him to be had in gret fa-

vour and benevolence with the pepill. Eftir this, ane counsall wes set betwix Gregour and the noblis of Ireland : in the quhilk, peace wes roborat, under thir conditionis : “ Young Duncane, King of Ireland, sal be gevin in keping of wise preceptouris, within the castell of Dubline, to teche him letteris : and King Gregour sal be governour of Ireland during his tendir age ; and sal ressave al the strenthis and proffettis of the cuntre, to gide the samin in justice. Attour, na Inglismen, Britonis, nor Danis, without his conduct, sal be ressavit in Ireland.” The Irelandmen swore, with glaid cheir, to fulfill all thir pointis ; and the more plesandlie, becaus Gregour wald nocht usurp the crown of Ireland, in damage of thair native prince, howbeit he micht have done the samin with litill dammage.

All hatrent and weris peacifyit in this sort in Ireland, Gregour returnit with his victorius army in Albion, with LX plegis, of the noblis sonnys of that region, quhilkis wer gevin to him, for observation of al articlis afore devisit. Eftir this, the Scottis had gud peace, but ony trubil, during al the time of Gregour : quhil at last, this nobil prince, protectour of the kirk, and halдар of his pepil in equite, na les pissant in polecy, religioun, and justice, than in mercial glore and dedis of armes ; fell, be lang age, in gret maledy ; and deceissit in Dumdore, ane castel of Gareach, the XVIII yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, DCCCXCIII yeris ; and wes buryit in Colmekil.



## Chap. Twenty-second.

*Of King Donald the Sext. How the realm of Normanis, and duchery of Flanderis, tuk beginning. Of the gret chevalry of Danis in sindry partis of the world. And of his deith.*



REGOURE buryit, as said is, Donald, the sext of that name, and sonne to Constantine the Secound, wes maid king; ane prince of na les manheid and curage than Gregour, howbeit he wes not fortunat. In the time of Gregoure, wes ane nobill clerke, Johne Scot, of singulare erudition in theologie; and wes mony yeris in the sculis of Athenes, quhare he proffet mekil in Greik letteris: and wes brocht efter, out of Athenis in France, be Lewis, Romane Empriour, quhare he maid mony excellent werkis: amang quhom, he translatit the Iherarchy of Sanct Denis in Latine, ane buke haldin in gret veneration amang clerkis, and moralie new commentit be ane doctour of Paris, namit Victor. This Johne Scot wes send efter, be command of Charlis the Thrid, King of Romanis, as ambassatour, to Alarud, King of Ingland, to thank him, that eftir victorie of Danis, the said Alarude had maid amite with his confiderat freindis, the Scottis: to quhome he wes maid sa tendir, that he wes chosin preceptour to his sonnis. And quhen he had techit baith moral and natural philosophie, with theologie, in ane abbay of Ingland namit Malvisbery, spreidand letteris amang young men of that cuntre, and gevand his laubouris to chaistifie thair corruppit maneris; thir young men, quhen he wes reidand maist curioslie, slew him, for repreving of thair vices: and was ekit to the noumer of Sanctis.

Schort time afore thir materis, began the realme of Normannis in France, on this maner: Rolland, King of Denmark, gaderit ane cumpany of Danis, out of Ingland, Norroway, Suedrik, and Denmark; and yeid throw sindry partis of France, ceissing fra na maner of cruelte on the pepill thairof. And becaus Charlis the Gros, than

Empriour, wes implicat with frequent weris in Italie aganis the Sarazenis, thir Danis ragit with sa oppin renyeis, that gret boundis of France apperit to cum under thair dominion, les than thair fury wer the more haistely dantit. King Charlis, eftir his returning out of Italie, gaderit ane gret army to resist thir Danis; and thay, na thing effrayit, went forwart to meit him, in thair awfull maner. The princis of France, knawing the gret ferocite of Danis provin afore in all partis quhair thay war assailyeit, and seand thaim, be frequent victorie, sa insolent, that, but gret slauchter, thay nicht not be vincust; perswadit King Charlis to mak peace with the said Rolland, that thair realme suld nocht be jeopardit to extreme danger, throw the weris baith in Italie and France. At last, be assent of the king, peace wes roborat with the Danis, in this sort: King Charlis douchter sal be gevin in mariage to Rolland; and Rolland, with all the Danis, sall ressave the Cristin faith; and, in the name of Touchquhare, sall have al thay landis, quhilkis wer namit afore, Newstria, lyand betwix Deip, Picardy, Paris, and Bertanye. Thir landis wer callit, be him, Normandy; that is to say, the realme of Normannis. Rolland, maid King of Normandy be this peace, wes namit Robert, be ressait of baptisme: and commandit, be the said Charlis, to pay ane yeirly tribut to him and his posterite, to signify, that the said landis wer not conquest be force of armes, bot onlie gevin fra the crown of France in mariage. The yeir that Normannis began to regne in Normandy, wes, fra the incarnatioun, DCCCLXXXVI yeris.

The vailyeant dedis done be Danis in sindry partis of the warld, was in gret admiration to al pepil. Afore this time, thay maid weir on Lotharnis the First, King of France: and becaus his sonnis war devidit in sindry factionis, the Danis enterit in France, and invadit the cuntre with gret heirschippis and cruelte, beside the river of Liger. And thocht King Charlis, quhilk succedit efter Lotharnis, come with huge armyis aganis thame, yit he nicht not meis thair cruelte, bot dang tham to Normandy, and othir boundis of the marchis of France: and not only thay war not content of thir rowmes, bot yeid in Italy, and our-raid al Cicil, Calabre, and Naplis, be Gustard, thair capitane. This Gustard was the fift man that rang efter Rolland in Normandy; for Rolland gat, on King Charlis douchter,

William : to William, succedit Richard : to Richard, succedit Richard the Secound, quhilk had 11 sonnys, Robert and Gustard. This Robert gat William, the bastard of Normandy, quhilk com efter in Ingland, and dantit baith the Danis and Inglismen ; syne tuk the crown thairof : quhais blud regnis yit, with gret felicite, in Ingland. The samin time, Baldwin, ane richt nobil knicht, maryit Judicha, douchter to Clotarius, King of France ; and, be that allia, began the duchery of Flanderis : quhilk was, afore that time, inhabit mair be wild beistis than ony pepill. Bot we will return to our history.

King Donald, seand ennimes appeir in na partis, gaif his ingine mair to polecy and justice, than chevalry : and governit the realme in sic tranquillite and justice, that his pepill grew daily in gret riches ; for Crist, the Lord of all virtew, gaif to him sic grace, that he baith honorit and defendit all servandis of God. He made ane edict, that al pepill that blasphemis God or his sanetis, or maneswore thameself, or spake of the devil, sal be brint, with ane hait irne, on thair lippis. This abhominabil and unhappy blasphemation is rising now amang us, be insolence of gret men, mair than evir it rais in ony time afore amang our eldaris ; and hes sa far infeckit the ingine of our pepil, that few ar foundin, at this time, havand sic reverence to God, or sicht to thair awin weil, that abhorris thir detestabill aithis and blasphemation : bot, as thay war leifful, and sum honeste in the samin to decore the doaris thairof, ilk day risis new blasphemation ;—" God geif thay be suddin or roistit in " hell," with othir mair abhominabil aithis than my spreit for dreid of God dare rehers. Bot, alace, thay ar procedit sa far, that na preching, na monition nor reason, may reforme the samin. Bot we will return to our history.

King Donald, in this time, was advertist, that Gormond, King of Danis, was cuming, with ane army, in Northumbirland, uncertane to quhat purpos, howbeit the fame was, that he come to invaid Inglismen, and not Scottis ; nochtheles, he send v.m futmen, and m.m horsmen, to support Alarude, King of Ingland, aganis thir Danis. Not lang eftir, King Alarude faucht with Danis at Abington ; and, howbeit he gat victory, the samin was not gottin but gret slauchter on al sidis. Thus, war baith the armyis constrainit to have peace,

under thir conditionis : “ The Danis sal leif, in times cuming, under  
 “ ane mind and freindschip with Inglismen, and sall ressave the  
 “ sacrament of baptisme ; and ilk ane of thame sal geif plegis to  
 “ othir, for observation of al pointis contenit in the said peace.”  
 Followit, gud tranquillite and peace, mony yeris efter, betwix Ing-  
 lismen and Danis. The peace, ratifyit in this maner in Ingland,  
 ane trubil happinnit in Scotland betwix the Murrayis and the Rossis;  
 ilk ane of thame invading othir with sic slauchter, that MM men of  
 thame war slane, within two monethis, on ilk side. King Donald,  
 impacient to suffir sic displeseris, come on thame with ane army,  
 and ceissit not quhil the principal movaris of this troubil war tane,  
 and punist, for thair demeritis, to the deith. The cuntre beand  
 dantit in this maner, King Donald began to have the concord of  
 Danis and Inglismen at suspition, and maid his habitation in North-  
 umberland ; havand with him, ane cumpany of chosin men, reddy  
 to resist al invasion that nicht occur : and finaly, he deceissit in  
 the same, efter that he had rounge XI yeris ; and was buryit in  
 Colmekill, fra the incarnation, DCCCCIII yeris.

And sa endis heir, the X Buke of thir Cronikles.



# The Levint Buke.

---

## HEIR BEGINNIS THE LEVINT BUKE OF THE CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

### Chap. First.

*Of King Constantine the Thrid. How Danis and Inglismen war confiderat be mariage; and how the peace was dissolvit. How the Scottis war discomfist be the Danis. And of the deith of King Constantine.*



FTIR deith of King Donald, succedit, Constantine the III, son to King Ethus. He was gevin mair to domestik and religious maneris, than to chevalry. At this time, Edward, King of Ingland, son to Alarude, last king thairof, to have occasion of battall aganis the Scottis, send ane herald to King Constantine, charge- and him to restore to Inglismen the landis of Northumberland, Cumber, and Westmureland, quhilkis Gregour reft fra thame afore; with certification, gif the same war not done, he suld, within xl days efter, be invadit with battal. King Constantine said to this herald: “Return hame, and say to King Edward, Howbeit

“ he have na occasion of battal aganis us, intending, be wrangus  
 “ titil, to reif our landis fra us ; yit we sal defend the same, sa far  
 “ as God wil gif us grace, to the uter end of our life : praying God  
 “ to turn the dammage that is to fal be the weris, on than that gaif  
 “ the first occasion thair of.” Followit, sone efter, frequent incur-  
 sionis on athir side ; yit, for feir of Danis, thay durst not meit with  
 set battal, that the Danis suld not haif sufficient oportunitie to con-  
 ques baith thair realmes. At last, quhen thay war brokin with athir  
 injuris, the noblis of Ingland seand sa hie dammage appering to  
 thair realm, persuadit King Edward to convert his hatrent on Danis,  
 and to have peace with Scottis. Edward, not refusing this counsal,  
 send his oratouris to King Constantine, and, with smal labour, pur-  
 chest peace, redres beand maid on ilk side.

Short time efter, happinit, that certane pure men of Ingland  
 war tane be Danis, and hingit on jebatis, as thevis ; and the Inglis-  
 men, sekand occasion of battal, slew certane of Danis, quhilkis war  
 doing thair erandis in London, in recompence of thir Inglismen that  
 war afore slane. Followit than, slaughter betwix Inglismen and  
 Danis, in al placis qubare thay met ; and gaif occasion to baith thir  
 pepill to cum with set battal aganis othir. Nochtheles, quhen thay  
 war arrayit in othereis sicht, reddy to fecht, thay war severit, be in-  
 tervention of prelati, and brocht agane to anite and allia, under  
 thir conditionis : “ Beatrice, douchter of King Edward, sal be gevin  
 “ in mariage to Citrik, King of Danis ; and the airis-male, gottin  
 “ betwix thaim, failyeing succession of King Edward, to succedd to  
 “ the crown of Ingland.” King Edward had ane nobil man to his  
 brothir, namit Edwine, quhilk was send, be persuasion of Citrik, to  
 Flanderis, in ane waik schip, that he suld not contend for the crown.  
 Finaly, this Edwine perist be the gait, betwix Ingland and Flan-  
 deris. Athelstane, bastard son to King Edward, heirand his bro-  
 thir distroyit, fled out of Ingland to saif his life. Thus, war the  
 Danis gretumly rejosit ; traisting, becaus al succession of Edwart  
 was failyeit, except his douchter, Beatrice, to brouk, sum time, the  
 crown of Ingland. Quhil the Inglismen and Danis war gevin to  
 sic besines, Beatrice, quhilk was gevin to Citrik in mariage, send  
 hir secret familiaris, to advertis hir fader, King Edward, to eschew  
 the cumpany of hir husband, quhilk was set for his slaughter. Ed-

ward, astonist be thir tithingis, repentit baith the deith of his brothir, and the mariage maid with Danis; and tuk sic displeseir, that he had slane himself, war nocht he was stoppit be his freindis. At last, he set him, be extreme hatrent, to meit the treason of his gudson; and finaly, be industry of his douchter, he slew him be poison. This Citrik, that was put down in this maner, had two sonnis, namit Avalassus and Godfrede, richt expert in chevalry. Thir ii brethir succedit to thair faderis landis, with equale auctorite and purpos to revenge thair faderis slauchter: and, becaus thay fand thair gudmoder participant thairwith, thay gart hir sit nakit on ane cauld study, with hate eggis bound under hir oxstaris, quhil scho was deid. And, becaus na esperance of peace apperit betwix Inglismen and Danis, followit, divers battallis, be sindry chancis of fortoun; quhill at last, the Danis war put to flicht at the river of Owse. And thocht the victory fell to Inglismen, yit it was not gottin but incredible slauchter; for King Edward was slane in the said battall. The Danis, heirand the deith of King Edward, thocht thay war discomfist, belevit gret felicite to succed to thaim, becaus the heid of thair ennimes was tane away; and incontinent, thay colleckit the residew of thair army with greter curage than afore, and tuk lang avisement amang thameself quhat was to be done. At last, Avalassus, son to this last King of Danis, left his brothir, Godefred, in Ingland, and went to Constantine, King of Scottis; and finaly, seducit him with large sowmes of money, to fecht contrar his band, in support of Danis aganis Inglismen. Sone efter, the Danis and Scottis maid provision of all thingis necessar to battall; beleving, with small laubour, to bring the Inglischmen to uter distruction: bot, as oft occuris, the stait of man is sa unsicker, that, quhen thay have maist confidence in thair pissance, all thair weirly ordinance and proude dominion ar fundin vane and fragill, be sum unhappy fine. King Constantine send Malcolme, the Prince of Scotland and Lord of Cumbir, with xx.M men in support of Danis. Malcolme, assemblit on this maner with the Danis, come within sindry landis of Ingland, invading the samin with all cruelteis that micht be devisit: mony innocent men slane, and mony haly placis brint and distroyit. Nochtheles, the mair that thay enragit in sic cruelteis, followit the mair haistely on thaim, the vengeance and punishment of

God, as we sall heir. The Inglismen, efter the slaughter of King Edward, chesit Athelstane, his bastard sonne, afore rehersit, for his souveraine manheid and virtew, to be king. This Athelstane, seand gret displesouris done to his subdittis be injure of Scottis and Danis, gaderit ane haisty army ;• traisting, be favour of God, and his just action, to have victory : and finaly, met the Scottis and Danis at Broningfeild, quhare it was cruelly fochtin at the first juning. Incontinent, the Inglismen sum part went abak, apperandly as thay had bene discomfist : than the Danis and Scottis, as thay had bene victoris, fell to the spulye but ony array. Incontinent, the Inglismen, as thay war commandit be thair capitane, returnit with arrayit battallis, and put baith the Scottis and Danis to flicht. This unhappy day previt weil the Scottis and Danis mair manly than prudent ; for, thocht thay war of sic pissance and multitud, that thay nicht have tane al the Inglismen prisoneris but ony straik, yit, becaus thay war mair mindful of the spulye than thair awin weil, thay tint schamfully the victory, quhilk was in thair handis, to the gret dammage of thair common weil. In this unhappy battal war slane, mair incredibil nowmer of Danis and Scottis than evir was hard in ony aige afore ; and with thame, mony of al the noblis of Scotland, perseverand in ithand bergane to the deith.

King Athelstane, efter his victory, come in Northumberland, Cumber, and Westmureland ; and becaus the pepil was unarmit, he gat al the strenthis and townis thair of randerit at his pleseir. Malcolme, evil woundit, was brocht hame on ane hors litter. Als sone as King Constantine was advertist of thir calamiteis falling to the Scottis at Broningfeild, he convenit his noblis at Abirnethy, to avise, on gret materis, quhat was to be done. And becaus he saw tham bot young, and unabil to sustene gret chargis ; for al the wise aigit noblis war slane at this last feild ; he tuk sic displeseir, that he past to the abbay 'of Sanct Andros, and schuif him thair ane chanoun, and levit the residew of his dayis under that habit ; quhil at last he deceissit, the XL yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, DCCCXLIII yeris. His body wes buryit in the said abbay ; bot it was tane up the first yeir efter, and buryit in Colmekil, amang the sepulturis of othir kingis.



In the time of Constantine, was sene in Albion, 11 monstouris : the tane was amang the Danis ; ane man, with doubil membris, side wambit, heidit like ane sow, futtit like ane ganer, with body ful of birs. The tothir monstour was in Northumbirland : of mannis figure, with ane wambe, fra the navil, down ; 11 heidis, 1v armis, 11 bodyis, 11 wittis, ilk ane repugnant to othir : The tane deit lang afore the tothir : this othir, impacient to suffer the corruppit flevour of the deid carioun, deceissit. In this time, blud sprang out of ane hil of Galloway, vii dayis contenewally, and maid al the revaris and burnis of purpour colour. The spaymen conjecturit gret effusion of blude to cum on the Scottis : quhilk apperit weill at Bro-ningsfeild.

### Chap. Second.

*Of King Malcolme the First. How Cumbir and Westmureland was annexit to the Prince of Scotland. Of the slaughter of King Malcolme ; and punition tane for the samin. Of the deith of King Athelstane.*



As sone as Constantine was maid ane channoun on this wise, Malcolme, the first of that name, and son to Donald the Fift, was maid king. He was gevin, in the beginning of his empire, becaus his pepil was brokin be sindry weris, erar to defend his realme, than to invade otheris. At last, quhen he had send his ambassatouris to King Athelstane for peace, he was advertist, that King Athelstane had gevin Northumbirland to Avalassus, King of Danis, to assist to his weris aganis the Scottis. Thir novellis maid Malcolme richt astonist, not knaw-and quhat was to be done in sa gret mater ; for his noblis war young, and not of power to resist sa gret preis of ennimes at this time. Nochtheles, quhen ne was maist disparit, and finding leist support of freindis, tithingis come, that Inglismen and Danis war discordit, and fouchtin amang thameself with gret slaughter ; and efter that the victory was fallin to Inglismen, thay ceissit not fra continual

slaughter on the chace of Danis, quhil the nicht put end to thair laubour : als, Avalassus, with ane certane of Danis quhilkis war eschapit fra this battal, wes fled in Ireland ; and Athelstane sa bro-kin be thir weris, that the maist part of his army was lost, and abaid in Northumbirland, uncertane quhidder he wald follow on the chace of Danis, or cum forthwart, with new army, to invade the Scottis. Malcolme, rejosing of thir novellis, commandit his prelati, be general procession, to gif thankis to God for delivering of his pepil fra extreme danger of ennimes. And not lang efter, come the ambassatouris of King Athelstane, desiring to have peace with Scottis, for the weil of baith thair realmis. Sone efter, peace was roborat betwix Inglismen and Scottis, undir thir conditionis : “ Northum-berland sall pas under perpetual dominion of Inglismen, and “ Cumbir and Westmureland sal be perpetually annixit to the “ Prince of Scotland that regnis for the time.” Be tennour of this peace, Indulphe, son to Constantine the III, tuk possession, as Prince of Scotland, baith of Cumbir and Westmureland. King Malcolme past the residew of his days in polecy and justice ; quhill at last, be conspiracy of limmaris, for his extreme punition and severite of justice, he wes slane at Ulrine, ane toun of Murray, the xv yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, DCCCCLIX yeris. The slayaris of this nobill prince war revin sindry with wild hors, and thair quarteris affixit on sindry townis ; and thay quhilkis war devisouris of this cruelte, or gaif counsall thairto, war preikit throw the body with ane staik. The III yeir efter the deith of Malcolme, deceissit, King Athelstane of England ; efter quhom, succedit, Edmond, his son. Otheris writis, that this Edmond was Athelstanis brothir ; bot I wil follow Veremond, quhilk sayis that King Edward had na children bot Athelstane, and Beatrice, that was gevin in mariage to Citrik, Prince of Danis : nochtheles, quhaevir was Edmondis fader, trewth is, that Edmond succedit immediatly to King Athelstane.

## Chap. Third.

*Of King Indulphe. How Avalassus, King of Danis, was discomfist be King Edmond, be support of Scottis. How sindry Danis war discomfist in Buchquhan, and King Indulphe slane.*



ALCOLME slane, as we haif schawin, Indulphe was crownit at Scone. In the v yeir of his regne, come to him, the ambassatouris of Avalassus, King of Danis and Norroway, desiring him to rais his army to revenge the injuris done be Inglismen in the battall of Broningfeild; and alleigit, the samin nicht be esaly done, sen King Athelstane was deceissit, and Edmond, ane man of febill curage, regnand in his place: Attour, the peace maid betwix Malcolme and Athelstane was dissolvit be the deith of thaim baith. It was answerit be Indulphe, That Malcolme maid peace with Athelstane with sic degeist counsall and strait aithis, sworn on athir side, that the samin nicht na wayis be dissolvit. Avalassus conjecturit be this answer, that Indulphe had na sicht to his nobillis slane at Broningfeild; and, thairfore, the said Avalassus set him to revenge the slauchter of his freindis, the Danis, in his best maner: and, to bring his purpos mair haistely to effect, he brocht ane vailyeant capitane, namit Renate, with ane army of Danis, in Northumbirland. Elgarine, governour for the time in Northumbirland, plesandly ressavit Avalassus with his army. And becaus this Elgarine was of the Danis blude, he randerit al the strenthis of Northumbirland to Avalassus, and promittit to support him aganis King Edmond with all the pissance he micht. King Edmond, knawing the cuming of Danis in Northumbirland, send to King Indulphe; and, be tenour of the band afore contrackit, he gat x.m Scottis to his support, and come with thame in Northumbirland. Avalassus, heiring the cuming of King Edmond, send ane herald, requiring him to suffir Northumbirland to be peaciably rejosit be the said Avalassus, becaus the samin was gevin to him afore be King Athelstane, and lay as marche betwix

Inglismen and Scottis: and gif King Edmond wald suffir him re-jose the said landis, he suld stand perpetual freind, baith to Scottis and Inglismen, in times cuming; and debait thame, gif it hapnit thame to be invadit, aganis al ennimes. At last, seand not bot repuls of his desiris, he arrayit his folkis, and faucht with gret manheid, baith aganis Inglismen and Scottis. At the first juning, viii. men of Northumbirland, quhilkis come under his baner, tuk the flicht, and maid the army of King Edmond mair bald. Nochtheles, the battal perseverit richt feirsly on all sidis; quhill at last, the Danis war put to flicht: on quhom followit, Inglismen, with sic cruelte, that nane was saiffit that nicht be apprehendit. Amang otheris, Elgarine of Northumbirland was tane and brocht to York. On the thrid day efter, he was accusit for his rebellion aganis King Edmond, and drawin sindry be wild hors. The remanent nobillis of Northumbirland, quhilkis war takin in this feild, war brocht to Edmond, and hingit on jebatis. Followit, sicker peace, mony yeris efter, amang the Albianis.

Indulphe, havand his realm in sicker peace, left na thing undone that nicht pertene to the office of ane nobil prince. Nochtheles, quhen maist tranquillite apperit, he was invadit with new trubil; for Hagon, Prince of Norroway, and Helrik, Prince of Denmark, come with ane flote of Danis in Albion, to revenge the slauchter of thair freindis in Northumbirland. Thir Danis war mony days stoppit, be Scottis, to land: at last, thay dissimilit, and fenyeit tham to return hame; and landit, the iv day efter, in Buchquhan. The landwart pepil gaderit hastily to resist: nochtheles, thay war vincust, and chast to the montanis. King Indulphe, herand thir displeciris, rasit his army with sic deligence, that he come within the boundis quhare thir Danis war, afore thay war advertist. Als sone as he saw the Danis arrayit, he exhortit his folkis to batal, sayng, It wes na litil signe of victory, that thay war to fecht aganis the residew of that pepil quhilk wes laityl vincust be thame. Thay had als, the same capitane, the same spreit and pissance, that thay had afore; and thay sall not only haif riches, gif thay had victory, in reward of thair labour, bot thair realm defendit fra thair ennimes, and reiose the same with gret tranquillite, in times cuming. Skarsly war thir wordis said, quhen baith the armyis junit, and faucht lang



time, with uncertane victory : at last, the array was brokin on all sidis, ilk ane fechtand throw othir, reddy to fle. In the mene time, two Louthiane men, namit Dunbar and Grame, maid tham to mows-  
ture, as thay war cuming on the backis of Danis ; and incontinent the Danis fled : nochtheles, mony of thame perseverit in battall quhill thay war slane : Otheris, nocht knawand to quhat place thay suld fle, fell amang mossis, and war slane be the pepel. Indulphe, havand victory on this wise, went throw the campe with ane sobir cumpany, as na dangeir war occurring, and happinnit to cum on ane band of Danis hid under covert in ane vale : quhare he was slane, fechtand to the deith, to the uter distruction of his fais ; and was buryit in Colmekil, the ix yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, DCCCCLXVIII yeris. And in this ilk yeir deceissit, Edmond, King of England : efter quhom, succedit, Eldrede.

### Chap. Fourth.

*Of King Duffus ; and how he was trublit with gret infirmite, be wichecraft. How he punist certane conspiratouris, and was slane.*



**E**FTER deith of King Indulphe, ane conventioun was maid at Scone : in the quhilk, Duffus, the sonne of Malcolm the First, wes mad king ; and Culine, son of Indulphe, maid Prince of Scotland, and Lord of Cum-  
bir. Duffus, efter his coronation, went in the Ilis, and callit afore him all the Thanis thair of ; and maid his aith, gif thay dantit not the thevis within thair boundis, to punis thaim na les than the principall misdoaris. The Thanis of the Ilis, dreidand the severite of the king, tuk mony sornaris and vagabundis limmaris of the cuntre, and put thame to deith. Thus, war the remanent of thir schamfull pepill constranit to fle in Ireland, or ellis to seik sum craft to win thair leiffing. Yit, sindry of the nobillis tuk indignation, that thair freindis, quhilkis war cumin of nobill blude, suld be constranit to seik thair leiffing on vile craftis ; and the commonis, quhilkis war borne to servitude, war preservit to thame in honouris and dignite :

and thoct, thairfore, the king unworthy to regne above thame. This murmuration was not only in the Ilis, bot in sindry partis of the realme. In the mene time, King Duffus fell in ane hevy maledy, unknowin to medcinaris in thay days. He was not onely trublit ilk day with new dolour, bot was resolvit in ane continewal sweit, and nicht get na rest nor sleip. Attour, his maledy was the mair in admiration, that the aind proceeding fra his vitale spreitis, schew his blude in dew proportioun, with soft pulsis; and nochtwithstanding, he grew sa leine, that his body semit haistely to evanis. The medcinaris disparit of his life; and, knowing na remeid aganis his infirmite, began, be plesand wordis, to mak him consolation: sayng, He suld revert at the spring of the yeir, quhen every thing, be natural influence, convalescis. The king, disparit finaly of his heil, send for al the capitanis of the tribis, and prayit thame to have sic sicht to thair honor and commoun weill, that, nochtwithstanding his infirmite, the realme nicht be governit in peace and justice. The capitanis promittit to do al thingis as he desirit: nochtheles, thair rais, ilk day, continewal slauchter and reif in all partis of the realme, with mair trubil than may be rehersit. The medcinaris inhibit thir displesouris to be schawin to the king, in aventure he tuk sic malancoly thairthrow, that it nicht haisty him to his deith. In the mene time, rais ane murmour amang the commonis, that the king wes nocht trubillit with natural infirmite, bot onlie be devilry and craft of wichis: of quhilkis, gret noumer wes in Fores, ane town of Murray. Als sone as the king wes informit heirof, he send sindry wise and craftie men to serche the verite thairof. Thir men, quhilkis wer send to this effect, schew thaim send to treit concord betwix the king and the Murrayis. At evin, thay entrit in the castell of Fores, and schew to Donevald, capitane thairof, the cause of thair cuming; and prayit him to serche deligently, gif sic thingis as the fame schew, wes of verite. The capitane gat, finalie, experience of all this treason, be ane of his soudjouris, quhilk had the douchter of the principall wiche to his lamen; and gart hir reveil in quhat hous of the town this wichecraft wes usit. Than the kingis servandis, with ane cumpany of soudjouris, enterit in the samin hous quhare thir wichis wer, and fand ane image of wax, maid to the similitude of Duffus, drepend on ane treine speit afore the fire; and fand the wichis in-

funding certane liquor on the image, with othir charmes usit to the same effect. The soudjouris tuke thir wichis incontinent, and brocht thaim, with the image, to the castell : quhair thay confessit, sa lang as the walx meltit afore the fire, King Duffus wes resolvit in perpetual sweit ; and sa lang as thay yet the said liquor on his image, he suld nevir sleip ; and fra the walx wes meltit away, the king suld de. The wichis wer demandit, Quha lernit thaim sic craft, and quha solistit thaim to the samin ? Thay answerit, Thay had the craft be the devil ; bot the Murrayis solistit thaim to sla the king be that ingine. The capitane brak the imagis, and brint thir wichis. It is said, the samin nicht that thir wichis wer tane, on this wise, in the town of Fores, King Duffus was deliverit of all his maledy ; and nocht onlie tuk gud rest all that nicht, bot wes restorit to his heil, as he had nevir bene vexit with ony infirmiteis. And, on the morrow, he come to Murray, to punis certane rebellis that conspirit aganis his majeste : and maid sic diligent persute on thaim in Ros, Caithnes, and othir partis quhair thay fled, that thay wer finalie brocht to Fores, and justifyit. Amangis quhom wer slane, sindry kinnismen and freindis of Donevald, capitane of the said castell of Fores ; howbeit thay conspirit mair be otheris than be thair awin persuasioun. This executioun of justice movit Donevald in sic hatrent, for the slauchter of his freindis, that he determit, gif he nicht find sufficient oportunitie, to sla the king : nochtheles, he dissimilit his ire for ane time. His wife, seand him ilk day more melancolius, demandit the cause of his displeseir : at last, be lang franing of his wife, he schew quhat schame the king had done to him for his faithful service : putting his freindis to maist vile deith. This wife wes ane woman of unmercifull cruelte, havand na les hatrent than hir husband had, aganis the king ; for sindry of hir freindis wer justifyit in that samin maner : throw quhilk, hir venomus ire wes boldin every day with mair indignation, not knawing to quhom scho nicht opin the samin. Bot, quhen scho understude hir husband of the samin intioun, scho exhortit him to be of gud cheir ; and promittit to find the way how thir injuris nicht best be revengit : saying, The king wes oftymes familiarly lugit with thame, and nicht be esaly punist. Donevald wes inflammit, be thir wourdis, abone his hatrent ; abiding na thing bot sufficient oportunitie to sla the

king: and becaus the king wes to depart on the morow, this Donevald set him, with more deligence, to bring his cursit purpos to effect. In the nicht following, als sone as the king had done his devotion, he went to his chalmer, and fel on sleip. Than wes this Donevald sa enragit with cruelte, that he nicht get na eis quhil his cursit mind wes fulfillit. Incontinent, he callit the kingis cubicularis to ane banket, and feistit thame continewallie, quhil thay wer tane with the winis; and sa sopit, that thay wer constranit to tak rest; havand na suspitioun of this treason devisit in the kingis deith. Donevald, seing the cubicularis on sleip, send four servandis, quhilkis wer corruppit afore with his money, in the kingis chalmer, and finally slew him; and brocht his body, but ony noyis, out at ane postrain, twa milis fra the place quhair he wes slane, to ane burn, and buryit it in the middis thairof, quhair the streme usit to pas; syne put ane gret stane abone his body, that na thing suld appeir hid in the said place. Thir tratouris, that slew the king, fled in Orknay, that the deed corps suld not schaw the slayaris; for it is haldin amang us, that the body of ane slane man bledis afore the slaar: and, quhiddir the same be trew or not, lat thame testifie that hes experience thairof. Donevald, eftir the slauchter of the king, to cause him appeir innocent thairof, past the residew of the nicht with the kingis gard; schawing the gret humaniteis done to him, sindry times, be the king. On the morow, the skry rais amang the familiaris, sayng, The king wes slane, his bed bullerand in blud, and the body tane away quhair na man wist. Donevald, heirand the noyis, come in the chalmer with the remanent cubicularis, as he had knawin nathing of this treason: and becaus he saw the bed bludy, he slew the cubicularis, as thay had bene gilty thairof; and ran up and down the castel like ane furius man, to se gif he nicht se ony taikin of the kingis slauchter. At last, he fand the postrain opin; and jugit than, sickirlye, that the cubicularis had slane the king; for thay had the keyis of the castel in thair keping. The noblis, richt astonist, come haistely to se this terribil deid; havand more admiration, that the body wes tane away, than of his slauchter: nochtheles, sindry of thame tuk suspitioun that this cruelte wes done be Donevald; becaus he maid deligence in serching the auctoris of this treason, above the mesoure of just affection: and sone efter, thay returnit hame. Sex monethis



eftir, nothir son, mone, nor stern, wer sene in the hevin ; bot the lift ourcoverit with perpetual cloud, to the gret terrour of the pepil.

### Chap. Fifth.

*How Culine, Prince of Scotland, punist the slauchter of King Duffus. Of sindry mervellis sene in Albion.*



ULINE, Prince of Scotland, and Lord of Cumbir, richt astonist of this perpetuall dirknnes continewing sa lang, to the gret terrour of the pepill ; demandit his noblis, quhat nicht be the cause thair of. Be quhom was answerit, As thay belevit, God wes sa commovit at the slauchter of the nobill King Duffus, that, gif the samin wer nocht punist haistelie, maist terrible vengeance wes to follow on thair realme. Incontinent, Culine commandit general prayaris and fasting to be done throw all partis of the realme ; and maid his solempne aith, nevir to ceis, quhill he punist the tresonable slauchter of Duffus. Nocht lang efter, he come in Murray ; and, be his cuming, he maid the Mur- rayis richt effrayit. Donevald, knawing himself guilty of this treason, fled to the mouth of Tay, quhair he pullit up salis, to pas in Norroway ; and had with him, the slayaris of King Duffus : for the mind of al cursit tyrannis, be natural inclination, dreidis every creature, and schawis thameself criminabil, othir in vult or continance ; and hes ay sic feir of thair life, that thay gif na man credence ; bot eschewis al famus company, and confidis in na thing sa mekil as in mirknnes and fleing. On the samin maner, this Donevald schew, be his fleing, the hid treason that na man suspekkit, gif he had abidin the kingis cuming. Thus, wes he brocht to sic miserie, that quhair he wes repute sum time familiar to the king, and luffer of his common weil, he wes haldin maist odius and treasonabil cowart. The pepil, seing him fle for suspicion of the said treason, prayt God to send vengeance on him and his company : quhilk followit sone efter ;

for Culine, heirand his departing, tuke the castel of Fores, and fand in it, Donevaldis wife, with his thre douchteris. Eftir lang inquisition, scho confessit al the maner of his deith, and how his body wes hid in the middis of ane streme, with all circumstance, as said is. On the morow, quhen the pepil wes passand to tak up the body of Duffus, tithingis come, that Donevald, with his complicis, wes schipbrokin, and tane be the pepill, to be punist for his offence. Sone efter, be command of Culine, he wes brocht to jugement, with his wife, and iv servandis, and put cruellie to deid; thair bodys quarterit, and hungin in sindry townis of this realm, to be exampil to al pepil, quhat iniquite is to sla ane king. The takaris of Donevald and his complicis wer not onlie rewardit richely, bot exemit fra al publik exaction in times cuming. Sic thingis done, the body of King Duffus wes tane up, and brocht, with gret solempnite, to Colmekil, quhair it wes buryit. It is said, thocht King Duffus lay vi monethis under erd, his body wes als fresche of cullour and hide, as the first hour it wes hid; and, fra his body come abone the erd, the wedder changit to maist serenite. Ane brig is now in the samin place quhair his body wes hid: beside quhilk now, is ane abbay of Cestius ordour, namit Killos, dedicat to the Virgine Mary. Mony uncouth mervellis wer sene at this time in Albion: Hors eit thair awin flesche; ane woman wes deliver of hir birth, quhilk had nothir eyne, nose, nor fute; ane sparhalk wes strangulat be ane howlat. And, maist wounder of all, nothir son, mone, nor sterne, apperit in sicht, vi monethis; bot the lift ouircoverit with perpetual dirknes, as we have schawin.

## Chap. Sixth.

*Of King Culine, and his vicius life. Of the trubil that fel in the realme be his evill ministration.*



ONEVALD slane in this maner, Culine wes maid king, in the ferd yeir of King Duffus ; fra the incarnation, DCCCCCLXXII yeris. The pepil belevit that he suld haif bene ane nobil prince, seand him begin with sa soverane justice : howbeit, litill virtew wes sene in him efter ; for he governit not the realm be advise of his noblis, bot gevin, be rage of youth, to maist insolent and corruppit life ; and throw his vice, he gaif occasion to his pepill to grow wildar under his empire, than evir thay war under ony othir prince afore. Finalie, the realme wes brocht to sic point, that thevis, revaris, and siclik pepil, wer not onlie unpunist, bot had in greit estimation. Sa gret truble rais, ilk day more and more, in the cuntre, that, gif the samin wer not haistelic punist, the realme apperit to cum to uter rewine. Quhen Culine wes reprovit, that thir and mony othir enormiteis com only throw his misgovernance, he maid litill excuse, bot said, Yong men wer not lik in conditionis to agit personis : thairfor, his youth behuffit to have ane cours, quhill it wer stabillit be proces of time ; and suld not be dantit be our gret severite, bot to be moderat according to the season thairof. Attour, his antecessouris, Indulphe and Duffus, wer our seveir in administration of justice, as apperit in the end of thair empire ; for, quhen thay intendit, under culloure of justice, to oppres thair noblis, to conqueir thair landis or guddis, thay movit thair noblis to rebellion, in finall distruction of thameself. Better wes, thairfore, to regne with favoure and benevclence above his noblis, than to regne with mannassing and terrour ; for be that, and be na othir way, micht his nobillis be haldin at his opinion. Thocht this answer of King Culine wes unprofitable to the commoun weil, yit na man durst oppinly reprove the same ; for every man commendit his governance, speciallic thay that haitit just or prudent men. The

noblis, seand the kingis familiaris ilk day more insolent, and na thing done to the utilite of the realme, drew thaim fra the court : Otheris, as vane flatteraris and nurisaris of vennom in young personis, set thame to continew the king in his voluptuous life, inducing him to al thingis that micht affeminat his mind in maist shameful vices : quhil at last, this unhappy prince wes brocht to sic miserie, that he had sicht to na thing bot onlie to his sensual plesouris ; and cherist nane bot maist vicius and vile limmaris : and nocht onlie he deflorit sindry uncouth virginis and matronis, bot als fulyeit his awin sisteris, his douchteris, and religious wemen. He had also, ane cumpany of vicius herlottis, that did na othir thing, bot espyit quhair thay micht se ony plesand virginis or matronis, that thay micht advertis him thair of ; and finalie, thay wer ay brocht to him, othir be weir or peace. Yit, ane thing followit more miserable : Als sone as the king had tane his lust and pleseir of thir virginis, he causit his unhappy servitouris to deflore tham efter him, in the same maner. Gif ony complanit of thir odius cruelteis, thay gat na othir amendis, bot thair leggis or armis brokin. And thocht this effeminat monstour had waistit his body with ouir frequent cumpany of wemen, yit he tuke pleseir to se his familiaris convers with thame opinlie in his sicht ; and wes abusit, in this maner, thre yeris continually : throwe quhilk, he grew not onlie ane defamit creature, bot, throw his misgovernance, rais al maner of truble and displeseir to his subdittis. Thevis, revaris, sornaris, and oppressouris, rais with sic pissance, that na man durst punis thame. Gif ony man maid him to resist thame, or complene, he wes sone efter slane, or ellis his guddis confiscat, and his bigingis brint. And nocht onlie temporal men, bot als, spretual, wer heryit in the same maner ; thair guddis and ornamentis tane be force : throw quhilk, the commonis and landwart pepill leiffit mony yeris in gret oppression and miserie. King Culine at last, throw his surfet and unbridillit lust, fel in ane maist vile and schamful infirmite ; his nature sliding, but ony pleseir or persaving. And throw this maledy, his body and visage grew ilk day so attenuat and leine, that he past the residew of his dayis with gret dishonour and schame. The noblis, nochtwithstanding his hevines, maid ane convention at Scone, to deprive him of auctorite, and to cheis ane new king. Als sone as Culine knew quhat wes



devisit aganis him, he past with ane quiet cumpany to Scone. In the mene time, Cadardus, Thane of Meffen, met him unhappely be the gait, and slew him, becaus he deflorit his douchter afore. This end maid the vicius tyrane, Culine, according to his cursit life, in the v yeir of his regne; fra the incarnation, DCCCLXXVI yeris; and wes buryit in Colmekill.

### Chap. Seventh.

*Of King Kenneth the III, and his governance. Of his Orison maid to the noblis; and how he constranit thame to bring sindry thevis to his justice.*



U LINE slane, as said is, Kenneth, bruthir to King Dufus, wes maid king. In the beginning of his empire, he had gret laubour to bring the pepil, quhilk wes growin wild be necligence of Culine, to virtews leving; for it is ane thing dailie practicac amang us, first the noblis, and syne the commonis, followis the maneris of the king. Gif the king be virtews, the pepil, be his imitation, inclinis to virtew. Quhen he is vicius, the pepil, on the samin maner, followis his vicis. King Kenneth, that he suld not detest the schamefull deformiteis in othis quhilkis wer apperand in himself, schew him to the pepill as ane chaist prince, of skairs fude, liberal and meik in al his doingis, hating al scurrilite. He banist all tavernaris, drunkartis, scaffaris, and vane flecheouris, out of his hous; and nurist concord, baith with uncouth and domistik pepill. So far he haitit al sedition, that he punist the movaris thairof to the deith: and had sic affection to the common weil, that na man wes sufferit to abid in his court, bot sa mony as had sufficient virtew and craftis to win thair leving. Thus wer his subdittis nothir effeminat be lang sleuth, nor yit irkit with exercition of gud werkis. This prince, for his virtews governance, wes reput maist worthy to regne abone his pepil; and tuk purpos to pas throw all boundis of his realme, for punishment of thevis. At his cuming to Lanerk, come sindry of his subdittis to him, and

complanit of mony importabil injuris and wrangis done to thame be sindry limmaris of the cuntre. Als sone as thir limmaris wer advertist that the king wes to sit in jugement for execution of justice, thay fled, be assistance of the noblis, in the Ilis.

The king, richt commovit that he wes stoppit on this maner be his nobillis to do justice, supersedit his displeseir for ane time; and in the yeir nixt following, he maid ane general convention of his noblis at Scone. In the nicht afore his convention, he hid ane noumer of armit men in ane quiet chalmer, nocht far fra the place quhare the counsal wes set, commanding thame to be secreit quhil thay wer warnit, and than to execute the chargis committit to thame. On the morow, all his noblis wer ordourit at thair convention in thair awin placis; ay nerest the king, as thay wer of blud and auctorite. In the mene time, thir armit men ischit out of the chalmer quhair thay wer hid, and stude about the counsall. Kenneth, seand thame astonist, said in this maner: "Howbeit ye dreid  
 " that this new gise of jugement, abone the auld custome of oure  
 " eldaris, wise freindis, succeid to your displeseir, for feir of thir  
 " armit men that standis about yow; yit gif our mind, quhilk is  
 " set to na thing mair than to the common proffet of your realme  
 " and yow, [wer patent to yow, ye suld knaw that thir armit men]  
 " ar not ordanit to do ony dammage to yow, or to the nobilite of  
 " Scotland, bot onlie to be the sickir targe of our common weil.  
 " Beleve not, wise freindis, that we, with ony treasonable slichtis,  
 " hes brocht this gard to youre distruction; sen ye ar the onlie es-  
 " perance of our realme: thairfore, understand thir armit men  
 " schawis na mannassing, bot defence of your singulare and com-  
 " mon proffet. Thair is sindry evil-disposit personis in this realme,  
 " ay repugnant to the weil thairof, and gevin to thift, reif, slauch-  
 " ter, birning, and siclik importable extorsionis on the pepil. Ye  
 " knaw quhat enormiteis hes bene done, baith in the time of Culine,  
 " and in the beginning of our empire, in perpetuall eversion of our  
 " commonis: and yit, ye knaw, our commonis, with thair conti-  
 " newall laubour, sustenis us. We ar richelie cloithit, and hes al  
 " kind of costlie meitis; thay ar purelie arrayit, and levis of skars  
 " fude. And sen we haif al the frute of thair labouris, I think,  
 " quhen thair guddis ar saif, we ar saif; quhen thay ar heryit and

“ put to poverté, nane of us ar at eis. Thay wirk thought we be  
 “ idill, and with continewal laubour winnis us riches ; the frute of  
 “ thair laubouris cumis to us, and nocht to thameself. Thairfore,  
 “ quha revis thame, revis us ; quha nurisis thevis in thair dam-  
 “ mage, ar ennimes to us and our common weil. For thir reasonis,  
 “ al sic importable injuris on innocent pepil suld be inhibit ; and  
 “ not onlie suld I desire sic thingis to be done, bot ye suld desire  
 “ thame on the same maner, gif ye be affeekit othir to the weil of  
 “ this realm, or to yourself, your wiffis or children. We devisit,  
 “ as ye remembir, at Lanerk, to purge this realme of al misdoaris,  
 “ that the commonis and noblis may be nurist, in times cuming, in  
 “ peace and tranquillite : yit thir misdoaris, in contempton of our  
 “ auctorite, comperit not in jugement. And thought I know na  
 “ thing better than thair conveying away be assistance of gret men,  
 “ yit I supersedit this offence quhil more oportunité occurrit. How-  
 “ beit, mony of yow, as we wer sickerlie informit, wer participant  
 “ thairwith, and convoyit thame fra our justice. Attour, the fre-  
 “ quent message send betwix yow and thir thevis, makand na deli-  
 “ gence til bring thame to our justice, hes maid the mater more  
 “ credible. Nottheles, in quhatsumevir way the mater standis, we  
 “ have removit all suspitioun, gif we have had ony aganis yow ;  
 “ and haldis yow, at this time, not as favoraris of limmaris, bot  
 “ erar defendouris of our realm : praying yow, gif ye haif in times  
 “ bygane bene more sleuthfull than neid wes, to repair all errouris,  
 “ that ye may appeir as luffaris of your singulare and common  
 “ weil. And first, I will that ye bring thir thevis and rebellis to  
 “ our justice, that thay may be punist according to thair demeritis ;  
 “ for I promit yow, ye sall not be deliverit of this gard, quhill I  
 “ se thame put to deith ; and the more haistelie that ye put thir  
 “ chargis to execution, the more haistelie sal ye be deliverit of  
 “ boundage, and richelie rewardit for your laubouris.”

The noblis heirand thir wourdis, fell on kneis, praying him to  
 remit all offence done aganis his majeste ; and promittit not onlie to  
 do al chargis as he desirit, bot to remane quhair he plesit, quhill  
 thair freindis had brocht thir misdoaris and rebellis to his justice.  
 Sic thingis done, the king brocht all the nobillis, with strang gard,  
 to the castell of Bertha. This castell stude apoun the Watter of Tay,

and wes sa straitlie keippit, in thay dayis, within wach and out wache, that na man gat ische nor entres but speciall licence of the king. Al vagabound and idil pepil, quhilkis wer fund in the gait, wer brocht for suspition to the castel. The noblis, in the mene time, wer occupyit with reding of historyis; for than wes not usit sic hant of dise and cartis as ar now usit. Finalie, thay maid sic ways, be extreme deligence of thair freindis, that v of thir maist notable thevis wer brocht to the castell of Bertha, and hingit on jebaitis, and thair bodyis inhibit to be tane down; to gif exampill to otheris, quhat frute followis of sic crimes.

Sic thingis done, the noblis wer deliverit, and exhortit be the king to suffer nocht the pepill to be injurit with sic oppressouris in times cuming. The Scottis remanit, mony yeris efter, in sicker peace.

### Chap. Eighth.

*How the Danis, invading the Scottis with gret cruelteis, war discomfist be King Kenneth; and how the Hayis tuk thair first beginning and armes.*



HE Danis, ilk day rageand in more hatrent, becaus thay had nevir sufficientlie revengit the frequent murdir maid on thair freindis be the weris of Scottis; arrivit with ane gret flot in Albion; and wer determit, as it wes weil provin in the end of thair weris, in quhatsumevir part of Albion thay arrivit, to remane thair with continewall residence; and othir, be force of armes, to subdew the realme to thair empire, or ellis, al atanis, to de. This flote of Danis arrivit at the Reid Brayis, in Angus; quhare now standis the Abbay of Abirbrothok, dedicat to the honour of Sanct Thomas of Canterbery, eftir the ordour of Sanct Benedict. Part of the Danis gaif counsall to land not in thir partis, bot erar to pas in Ingland; for the Scottis of that regioun wer richt vailyeant, and with frequent battallis did oftimes gret dammage afore to the Danis. And sen thir landis, quhair thay wer new arrivit, wer more plenteus of treis than of cornis, it



wes not proffitable to jeoperde thame for sa smal regionis. Be contrar, the landis of England, lyand to the south, wer more riche, and the pepill thair of gevin to na thing les than to chevalry, and micht thairfor the more esaly be subdewit. Forthir, gif thay covat ony riche landis in Albion, but ony extreme dangeir eftir following, best wes to pas in Kent. Otheris said, Thay wer not arrivit in Albion onlie to conques landis, bot to revenge the injuris done be Scottis, quhilkis wer ane bludy pepill, mair curius in defence of othir mennis guddis than thair awin; as wes provin in the last battal fouchtin in Northumbirland, quhen thay come in support of Inglismen: and thairfore, als sone as thay ar cumin in Kent, thay sal be constrainit to fecht, not only aganis Inglismen, bot aganis Scottis: be contrar, gif thay abaid in Scotland, thay suld fecht allanerlie with Scottis. Thus wes it best to invaid the Scottis first; and quhen the Scottis wer distroyit, to pas than, with recent victorie, on England, and commit the remanent chargis to the chance of fortun. The Danis, wery be lang truble of seis, applaudit to this last opinion, and landit, finalie, beside Montros; and not onlie tuk the toun, bot slew al pepil tane in it, and brak down the wallis thair of to the ground: and sone eftir, thay come throw the remanent boundis of Angus to the Firth of Tay, ceissing fra na maner of cruelte that micht be devisit.

The peple, effrayit be thir displeseiris, com to King Kenneth; for he wes than in Striveling, occupyit in ministration of justice, and beleving na thing les than sic irruption of ennimes to invaid his realme. Eftir schort advisement, that his realme suld not be patent to more extorsionis, he commandit, be general edict, al fensable personis to meit him at ane schort day; and finalie, at the day affixit, he come with ane army to the mouth of Erne. On the morow, wes schawin to him, that the Danis wes cumin our Tay, lyand, with ane strang sege, about the castel of Bertha, with sic insufferable cruelte, that na kind of pepil, townis, nor kirkis, quhair thay wer maisteris, wer savit. The king, movit with thir injuris, rasit his army, with maist deligence, to meit his ennimes. In the nicht following, he come to Loncarte, quhilk is ane town not far fra Tay. The Danis, nathing affrayit of his cuming, arrayit thame to

battal. Than Kenneth arrayit his folkis in ane ganand place : and, to move his noblis with hie curage and spreit aganis thair ennimes, he dischargit thame of all malis and dewiteis aucht to him for vyeris to cum ; syne promittit, be oppin proclamation, to gif to ilk man that brocht to him the heid of ane Dane, x pundis, or ellis land perpetually respondent thairto. Eftir this, he maid his orison to God, to send his army gud forton, and to cheis erar with manheid and honour to perseveir in battall to the deith, than to be tane fleand, with schame and displeseir. The Scottis, rasit be thir wourdis in esperance of victorie, arrayit thaim in gud ordour. Malcolm Duf, Prince of Scotland, and Lord of Cumbir, wes arrayit in the richt wing ; and Duncane, Thane of Athole, in the left wing : in the mid battall wes King Kenneth. On the tothir side, the Danis wer arrayit at the fut of the hill, not far distant fra the Scottis. The armyis stude lang arrayit in otheris sicht : quhill at last the Scottis, our feirs and desirus of battall, come, with incredible schoure of dartis, arowis, and ganyeis, on the Danis ; and thay, impatient to sustene this invasion of Scottis, come forwart with gret noyis. Incontinent, baith the armyis junit, but ony signe of trumpet ; and faucht sa feirslie, that nane of thame nicht sustene the preis of othir. And thought lang bargane followit, with uncertane victorie, yit na thing wes more impediment to Scottis than thair desire to have the heidis of Danis erar than victory. Quhen this was knawin to Danis, thay cryit, with schil voce, othir to have victory, or al atanis to de ; and incontinent, thay ruschit with sic properant fard, that baith the wingis of Scottis wer put to flicht. Nocht theles, the mid battall resistit vailyeantlie the hail preis of ennimes. Now stude our army in extreme dangeir ; for mony of the Scottis fled, and wer cruellie slane be Danis. This day, had bene the uter exterminion of Scottis, wer not ane landwart man, namit Hay, with his two sonnys, of strang and rude bodyis, howbeit thay wer of maist nobill curage, come haistelie in support of Kenneth and his nobillis, eftir thay wer neir vincust with thair ennimes. This Hay havand na wapinnis bot the yok of ane pleuch, and seand the mid-dilward, quhair Kenneth wes fechtand aganis the Danis, nakit of baith the wingis ; thocht nathing sa honorable as to de vailyeantlie

amang sa mony nobill men. Than, wes ane strait passage, nocht far fra the battall, quhare gret noumer of Scottis wer slane, miserabillie fleing. This Hay, traisting na thing sa gud as to stop the fleing of the Scottis, abaid in this strait passage, with his two sonnys; and slew baith Danis, and Scottis quhom he fand fleand, with his yok. In the mene time, ane certane of Scottis, quhilkis wer richt forcy and vailyeant, cryit with schill voce, "All gud Scottismen, "return, and renew battal for defence of your king and realm; "and avise, now, quhiddir it is more honest to jeoperd yow with "gud chance in defence of your prince, than to be schamfullie "murdrest in your fleing." This Hay, with his two sonnys, armit, as said is, with yokis of a pleuch, abaid in this strait passage, and constranit the Scottis quhilkis wer fleand, to return with him to battal aganis thair ennimes. The Danis, astonist be thair returning, and traisting sum new army cuming on thair bakkis, left the chase of Scottis, and maid thame to return to thair folkis. Than the Scottis, quhilkis war vincust afore, war rasit with new spreit and curage, ruschit feirsly on thair ennimes, and put thame to flicht. Gret slachter was maid in the battal, bot mair in the chace. The Scottis gat, this day, ane gloriuis victory of Danis, be perseverant fechting of the noblis of Scotland, in the mid battal, to the deith. Yit maist honor succedit to Hay and his sonnys; for he helpit to win the feild, efter that it was discomfist. The Scottis past the nicht efter this victory with singing, dansing, and incredible blithnes. On the morow, Kenneth gaif the maist part of al the spulye of this battal to Hay and his sonnys. The remanent thairof war devidit, be rite of armes, amang Scottis.

Sic thingis done, Kenneth returnit to the castel of Bertha, and commandit this Hay and his sonnys to be clothit with riche clathis, and to follow him to the said castel. Bot Hay, nathing desiring thairof, come with his 11 sonnys, in thair auld and rusty habit, strinklit with dust and sweit of battal, in the samin maner as thay faucht; reddy to do quhat chargis he nicht, at the kingis pleseir. The pepil, richt desirus to se Hay and his sonnys, quhilkis, be thair singular manheid, had saiffit the king and the realme, standing in maist danger of ennimeis; come with gret multitude, and

convoyit tham, as uphaldaris of the realm, to the kingis palice. Hay, accompanit with huge pepill in this wise, enterit in the kingis palice, berand the yok on his schulderis, in the same maner as he faucht aganis the Danis. Sone efter, ane counsal was set at Scone, in the quhilk Hay and his sonnis war maid nobil, and dotat, for thair singular virtew provin in this feild, with sindry landis, to sustene thair estait. It is said that he askit fra the king certane landis, quhilkis he knew richt plentuous afore, lyand betwix Tay and Arole; and gat als mekil thairof as ane falcon flew of ane mannis hand, or scho lichtit. The falcon flew to ane toun, iv milis fra Dundee, callit Rosse, and lichtit on ane stane, quhilk is yit callit The Falcon Stane; and sa he gat al the landis betwix Tay and Arole, vi milis of lenth, and iv of breid; quhilk landis ar yit inhabit be his posterite. Attour, that nane of his vailyeant dedis suld peris, bot ay remane in recent and perpetuall memory, King Kenneth gaif him thre reid scheildis, in ane feild of silver, to beir in maner of armis, in place of the yok; to signify that he was promovit fra smal and obscure linnage, to gret honouris, riches, and landis. Attour, thair was eikit to his armes the figour of the yok with quhilk he helpit the Scottis in thair maist neid. Of this Hay, ar descendit mony nobill and vailyeant men, ay defendouris of this realme; quhais hous is decorit with sic auctorite, that it is Constabill of Scotland.



## Chap. Ninthy.

*How King Kenneth slew the Prince of Scotland, that his son might succede to the crown. Of the message send be Sanct Edward to King Kenneth; and of Kennethis orisoun maid to his noblis.*



FTER thir discomfitouris of Danis, followit, sindry contentionis in this realm. The men of Ilis tuk ane huge pray of gudis out of Ros; nochtheles, thay war al tane and slane be pepil of the cuntre. Als sone as this trubill was pecifyit, followit, ane othir, in Angus and Mernis, of greter motion. Thair was ane man namit Cruthneth, quhilk gaderit the kingis malis of all the landis of Angus lyand betwix South Esk and North Esk. He had ane douchter, namit Fenel, quhilk had ane feirs and undantit man to hir son, namit Cruthlint. This Cruthlint come to the castel of Delbogin, quhare his gud schir was, and, be his insolence, fel at sic debait for ane caus of nocht, that 11 of his servandis war slane, himself narrowly eschaping with his life. Sone efter, he com to Fethircarn, quhare he met his moder, and schew to hir, this injure laitlie done to him; and scho nathing mesit his ire, bot inflammit him sa far, that he gaderit ane gret cumpany of pepil out of the Mernis, and returnit, within the nicht, to the said castel; and not onlie slew his gudschir, bot left nane on live within the said castel: and, on the morow, he brocht ane gret pray of guddis out of Angus. The men of Angus, impacient to suffer thir heirschippis, rais with gret cumpanyis, and maid heirschippis and slauchter in the Mernis on the samin maner. King Kenneth, knowing how facill the ingine of his pepill wes to rebellion, quhen na punitioun wes maid thairefter; belevit, gif thir attemptatis wer nocht haistelie dantit, more seditioun suld rise haistelie, in dammage of his realme: and, thairfore, he summond all thame that wer suspicius of this cruelte, baith of the Mernis and Angus, to compeir at Scone, the xv day eftir following, to underly the law, under panis of rebellion. And becaus thay comperit not, the king followit on

thame with sic diligence, that thay war al tane, and brocht to Dunsinnane. Cruthlint, and the principall movaris of this trubil, war put to deith. This execution of justice brocht King Kenneth in new favour to his pepil; with sic affection, that nane of thame wald heir nor suffir ony detraction of him. Followit, gret tranquillite; quhil at last, the xxii yeir of his regne, this prince, sa lang decorit with justice, committit ane maist schamfull slauchter: quhilk apperit the mair sichty, that his life was reput afore maist innocent, and gevin for the common weill. The blind and immoderat affection that he had to his son, was occasion that he slew, be poison, Malcolm Duf, Prince of Scotland and Lord of Cumbir; that Malcoline, his son, nicht succede to the crown of Scotland: and yit na man belevit that sic cruelteis was committit be him; becaus, al othir ways, he apperit ane just prince. King Kenneth, efter the deith of Malcolme, the prince, send in sindry kirkis to do funerall obsequies for his saule; and he nicht not refrene fra teris quhen he herd his name spokin. Nochtheles, sindry of the noblis suspeckit him of the princis deid, persaving him dissimulat, and his dolour exceding the just affection of his mind; yit, becaus al thingis ar uncertane, the pepill left thair suspicion.

In the mene time, Sanct Edward, quhilkis was efter martyrit be his step-moder, Esculda, send his ambassatouris to Kenneth, schawing him richt commovit for the deith of Malcolme, Prince of Scotland. Nochtheles, sen all pepil ar mortal, he desirit, that the two realmes nicht perseveir in athir frendschip, efter the tennour of the auld peace; and to cheis ane othir Prince of Cumbir, that war wise, and nurisar of peace betwix the two pepil. Kenneth answerit, He was na thing penitent of the band maid betwix him and Inglismen, and wald ratify and appreif the samin, in times cuming; as to the election of the prince. He schew, that he wald convene his noblis on the morow, to cheis the said prince; and prayit, thairfore, thir ambassatouris to return agane on the said morow, that thay nicht heir quha war declarit Prince of Scotland and Lord of Cumbir. Than Kenneth callit his noblis to ane counsall at Scone, and said in this wise: "Gif ye have sicht to the weil of this realme, and to the "tranquillite of the pepil thairof, with lang perseverance, in times "cuming, discreit and wise faderis; it is necessar to have not alla-

“ nerly respect to the administration and governance of this realme  
 “ in times bygane, bot als, in times cuming; specially concerning  
 “ the institution of your prince. Ye man consider quhat maneris,  
 “ quhat governance, and auctorite, concernis ane prince. The in-  
 “ gine and maneris of al pepil ar mutabil, and corespondent to the  
 “ season, as it occurris; oftymes succeding to the worst. New ma-  
 “ neris requiris new lawis. It is thairfore not discrepant to justice,  
 “ concerning the reparation of our errouris, to use the thing amang  
 “ us, quhilkis are institute be reason and lawis, and usit in al othir  
 “ realmes. And thocht auld ritis war sum time plesand to oure  
 “ eldaris, yit thay ar found now unprofitabill. Ane law was maid  
 “ efter Fergus the First, that becaus his sonnys, Mainus and Ferle-  
 “ gus, war not abil to governe the realme for thair tender age, that  
 “ the nerrest of thair blud, abill to do justice for the time, suld be  
 “ king: quhilk beand deceissit, the son of the king afore deceissit,  
 “ gif he war abil, suld succeid but ony pley. It was defendit be  
 “ the samin law, to eschew inconvenientis, that na children of ten-  
 “ dir age sal succeid. And thocht this law was found proffitabil to  
 “ sindry for the time, it apperis, be my jugement, contrarious and  
 “ noisum to the common weil, nurisand extreme hatrent amang no-  
 “ bilmen. Was not Ferithais, the secound king that rang efter  
 “ Fergus, slane be Ferlegus? howbeit, the said Ferlegus was banist  
 “ for the samin caus, and endit his dayis in misery. Thus, succe-  
 “ dit doubil skaith: Ferlegus banist, and Ferithais slane. Siclik,  
 “ be this cursit law, followit, displeseir to the realme, quhen Reu-  
 “ ther was maid king, to the gret murdir, baith of Scottis and  
 “ Pichtis, and everson of thair common weil: quhilk was brocht to  
 “ sic calamite, that, efter the murdir of maist forcy championis, all  
 “ the nobillite of Scottis and Pichtis war othir banist or put to ser-  
 “ vitude. And thought the realme was restorit to the auld stait,  
 “ yit followit, frequent slauchter of the maist nobil and vailyeant  
 “ men of this realme: throw quhilk, not onely the realme was haldin  
 “ in perpetual trubil, bot maist tender cosingis constraunit, be suspi-  
 “ tion, to fecht amang thamsel for the empire: oftymes the just  
 “ heritour of the crown slane; and not only men of obscure linnage  
 “ brocht to gret riches, bot mony nobill men put down and mur-

“drist. Forthir, throw this cursit law, al vailyeant men war dege-  
 “nerat in cowardis ; humil men, in bludy monstouris ; just men,  
 “in avaricius tyrannis ; liberall men, in gredy revaris ; chaist men,  
 “in lichorus velanis ; invading the pepil with maist odious cruelteis.  
 “Amang all othir skaithis, quhilkis may nocht be rehersit but dis-  
 “pleseir, young children quhilkis had just titill to the crown, war  
 “murderit be thaim that had the realme in governance, quhen thay  
 “desirit mercy in thair faderis armes. Quhat cruelte, quhat detes-  
 “tabil fellonyis bene hard in ony realme, in comparisoun of sic  
 “thingis as bene done be motioun of this cursit constitution ?  
 “Thairfore, maist prudent faderis, provide, above all thingis, that  
 “this cursit law, be quhilkis the kingis son is disherist of his just  
 “heritage, be abrogat : becaus the samin is sa injurius, that it hes  
 “nurist amang yow mony unthankfull displeseiris, contrar to the  
 “law of God and man ; and, be irrecoverabil dammage, hes brocht  
 “your common weil neir to uter eversioun. Suffer, heirfore, nane  
 “othir bot the kingis sonne to regne above yow in times to cum, sa  
 “lange as he hes ane on live ; that, efter the use of othir landis, the  
 “son of the king may immediatly succede, nochtwithstanding quhat-  
 “sumevir age he be of : quharethrow, your common weil may ap-  
 “peir governit, nocht be auctorite of ane man, bot be the haille pe-  
 “pil : to that fine, that the kingis son may be haldin, in times cum-  
 “ing, in mair veneration, and the mair luffit and deir to him.”



## Chap. Tenth.

*How the auld lawis war abrogat be Kenneth, concerning the election of kingis, and new lawis contrar to thame institute. Of the vision that come to him in his bed; and of his deith.*



WHEN Kenneth had endit this orison, certane of his familiaris come amang the noblis, desiring thame to cheis Malcolme, the son of Kenneth, to be Lord of Cumbir, that he micht, be that way, the better cum to the crown efter his faderis deid. And quhen the noblis wer advising degestly on this mater, Kenneth inquirit thame, quhom thay desirit to be Lord of Cumbir, and regent on the bordouris betwix Inglisemen and Scottis. In the samin time, war ii nobil men, of gret auctorite in the counsal; that ane was namit Constantine, son to King Culine, and this othir, namit Grime, nevo to King Duffus: quhilkis war just heritouris to the crown efter Kenneth, be the auld lawis; nochthelis, for feir of thair liffis, thay said, It was at his will to mak not only quhom he list, Prince of Cumbir, bot als, to abrogat the auld lawis, and to creat new institutionis, conforme to his purpos, as he plesit. The residew of the noblis, following the vocis of thaim, declarit Malcolme, the son of Kenneth, Lord of Cumbir, howbeit he was young, and unabil to beir ony auctorite. On the morow, thir ambassatouris of Ingland war depeschit; and ressavit young Malcolme, to mak his obedience to King Edward, for the landis of Cumbir.

Sic thingis done, King Kenneth, be advise of his noblis, abrogat the auld lawis concerning the creation of thair king, and maid new lawis, in maner as followis: “ The king, beand deceissit, his eldest son, or his eldest nepot, notwithstanding quhatsumevir age he be of, and thought he war born efter his faderis deith, sal succede the crown. The nepote gottin on the kingis son, sal be preferrit to the nepote gottin on the kingis douchter. On the samin maner, the nepote gottin on the kingis bruthir, sal be preferrit to the ne-

“ pot gottin on his sister. The samin lawis sal be observit amang  
 “ al otheris noblis of this realm, in succession to thair heritage.  
 “ Quhen the king is young, ane nobil man of gret prudence and  
 “ auctorite sal be chosin governour of the realme, quhil the king be  
 “ cumin to the age of xiv yeris : quhilk yeris beand outrun, the  
 “ king sal be fre to governe his realme be his awin auctorite. All  
 “ othir heritouris sal succede to thair faderis heritage, efter the ische  
 “ of xxi yeris ; and within that time, thay sal be governit be thair  
 “ curatouris ; and quhil that yeir be outrun, thay sal not be ad-  
 “ mittit to clame thair heritage.”

Kenneth, traisting the realm stabilit to him and his posterite be  
 thir lawis, governit the commonis in gret justice, and drew the noblis,  
 be donatioun of landis and guddis, in favour. And thought he was  
 reput richt happy be sindry opinionis, yit he was maist unhappy to  
 himself ; evir dredand in his mind, that the innocent slauchter of  
 Malcolme Duf, quhom he afore poisonit, suld cum sum time to  
 licht ; and wes sa ful of suspition, that he belevit, quhen ony man  
 roundit to his fallow, that thay spake evill of him ; for it is gevin  
 be nature to ilk creature, that quhen he is guilty of ony horribill  
 crime, be impulsion of his conscience, to interpret every thing that  
 he seis, to sum terrour of himself. In the samin maner, thocht  
 Kenneth had his realme in gud tranquillite, but ony invasion of  
 ennimes, yit he had gret trubill in his mind. At last, quhen he was  
 lyand in his bed, he hard ane voce, as apperit be sum vision, say-  
 and to him in this maner : “ O Kenneth, beleif not that the cursit  
 “ slauchter of Malcolme Duffe is hid to God ! O thow unhappy  
 “ tyrane ! quhilk, for desire of the crown, hes slane ane innocent,  
 “ invading thy nichtbour with treasonabill murdir : quhilk thow  
 “ wald have punist with maist rigour, gif it had bene done be ony  
 “ othir person than thyself. And thairfor, thow hes incurrit sic  
 “ hatrent of God, that baith thow and thy son sal be haistely slane ;  
 “ for now sindry of thy noblis ar conspirit in thy deith, traisting,  
 “ quhen thow and thy son ar slane, to reiose the crown at thair ple-  
 “ seir.” The king was sa affrayit be this voce, that he past the re-  
 manent nicht with gret noy and displeseir. On the morow, he maid  
 his confession, with gud repentance, to ane haly bischop, namit  
 Moveane, and confessit the crime in the samin maner as it was one.

Moveane, heirand him penitent, persuadit him to do pennance ; and said, Thocht his offence was odious, God was merciful. Finaly, King Kenneth, be counsal of this haly man, began to do sindry werkis of piete, and left nocht undone that pertenit to ane Cristin prince. At last, he went to Fordoun, quhilk is ane town of Mernis, quhare Palladius, the blissit appostill of Scottis, lyis, haldin in gret veneration. And quhen he had done his pilgrimage, he come to the castell of Fethircarn, and was lugit with Fenella, lady thairof. This Fenella was ane tender cosingnace to Malcolme Duf, afore slane be Kenneth ; and als, to Constantine and Grime, quhilkis had sum titil to the crown. Attour, scho had extreme hatrent aganis Kenneth, for the slauchter of hir son Cruthlint, quhilk was slane afore be his justice. This woman, rageant in ire aganis Kenneth, for causis aforesaid, couth not rest, bot devisand alwayis how scho micht maist esaly sla the king. And becaus scho knew the mind of Kenneth gevin to magnificent biging and polesy, scho brocht him in ane toure of the said castel, quhilk was thekit with copper, and hewin with maist subtill muldry of sindry flouris and imageryis : the werk sa curius, that it excedit al the stuf thairof. This toure was apparalit inwith with riche tapestreis of gold and silk ; and behind thaim war crosbowis, bendit with ganyeis reddy to schute. In the middes of this hous, was ane image of bras, maid to the similitude of Kenneth, with ane goldin apill in his hand, with sic ingine, that als sone as ony man maid him to throw this apill out of the hand of the image, the wrying of the samin drew all the tituppis of the crosbowis up at anis, and schot at him that threw the apill. Als sone as Kenneth was brocht in this toure, in maner foresaid, nathing knawing the treason devisit be this subtel woman, the duris beand closit, and nane with him bot this lady, he began, efter that he had visyit sindry mervellis within this toure, to inquire quhat this image and apil signifyit. “ This image,” said scho, “ is maid “ in similitude of the, that the pepill may understand quhat reverence and affection I beir thairto. This goldin apill, with sa “ mony precious stanis, is ordanit to be gevin to the, in the signe of “ lufe ; and, thairfore, ressave it, with maist hartly benivolence.” The king threw the apill, to have tane it ; and, with the thraving thairof, he drew up the tituppis of the crosbowis, and incontinent

ane of thame schot him throw the body. Fenella, seand the king slane, lokit the dure, and ran to the yet, quhare scho gat hors and fled away. The kingis servandis abaid lang on his out-cuming; quhil at last thay brak the dure, and fand him bullerand in his blud. King Kenneth was slane on this wise, the xxv yeir of his regne; fra the incarnation, M yeris.

### Chap. Eleventh.

*Of King Constantine the iv; and of sindry mèrvellis sene in Albion. How Constantine and Malcolme contendit for the crown. How Inglismen and Danis war aggreit be Malcolme, Lord of Cumbir. How Constantine and Kenneth, recountering othir be set battal, war baith slane.*



KENNETH, slane be this uncouth and wonderful slicht, Constantine, son to King Culine, com, with ane gret power of his freindis, to Scone, and tuke the crown. About this time war sene, mony mèrvellis in Albion. Stanis ranit, baith in France and Albion. Ane infinit nowmer of fische was found deid on the sandis in Buchquhane; and, with thair corruppit and pestilentius odour, infeckit the aire, to the gret mortalite of pepill. The mone was sene terribill and bludy. The frute and cornis, throw insufferabil heitis of the simer, failyeit in al partis of the realme. Sone efter, followit, sic derth, that war not the fische swame with mair habundance that yeir than thay war wont, the pepil had bene alluterly perist. The Scottis, astonist be thir and othir uncouth plagis, dred gret calamiteis to cum on thame, gif thair livis war not the mair haistely amendit. And thocht the nobil precheouris, Moveane, Medane, Blaane, and mony othir excellent doctouris, exhortit daily our pepill to penance for thair iniquiteis, yit na preching, nor feir of terribil plagis, nicht caus thame to detest thair cursit livis, bot ilk day offending God with mair offence: throw quhilk, intollerabil affliction, ilk day above othir, come in Scotland, as was sene efter; for Malcolme, son



of Kenneth, and Prince of Cumbir, heirand that Constantine was maid king aganis the lawis laitly maid be his fader, gaderit his freindis to ane counsall, to advise be quhat way he micht best recover the crown. Sum of thame thocht best to feil the mindis of the noblis or thay procedit ony forthir, in adventure, quhen he belevit erast to deliver him of al dangeir, he bring himself in gret trubil, to hevvy dammage, baith of his privat and common weill: Otheris counsalit him to invaid Constantine or he war maid strang in his auctorite; for Constantine had sindry with him at that time, quhilkis wald not only leif him, bot bring him bound to his ennimes, quhen thay saw time. Malcolme, following this last counsal, come with x.m men in Louthiane. On the tothir side, King Constantine gaderit ane army of sic pissance, that he chasit Malcolme in Cumbir. Thus had Malcolme comin to maist schamful confusion, war not Kenneth, his bastard bruthir, come with ane gret power to Striveling, and stoppit the army of Constantine, to pas our Forth. Thus, rais gret derth and hunger in baith the armyis. King Constantine, for laik of vitallis, micht not follow fortoun, bot was constranit, with gret indignation, to skail his army. Thus, was the realme devidit in sindry factionis. Followit, sa ithand incursionis, heirschippis, and slauchter, in al partis thair of, that it micht have bene sufficient document to al pepil of vengeance and sorow that fallis be civill weris. The landwart pepill, be thir weris, war brocht to sic poverté and heirschip, that thair land was left unsawin and unlaubourit. Finaly, ilk trubil rais sa fast on othir, that infinite slauchter, reif, and extorsionis, war done, with al maner of cruelte that micht be devisit, but ony esperance of better fortoun. Quhil the Scottis war at sic trubil, Sanct Edward, King of Ingland, neir uterly opprest be weris of Danis, was constranit to redeme the liberte of his pepil with infinite money. And becaus thair tyranny ceissit not be that way, he tuke purpos to invaid tham be battal; and solistit Malcolme, Prince of Cumber, to cum with ane army to his support. Be cuming of his army, the Danis war sa astonist, that thay condescendit to have peace in this maner: King Edward sal pay ane m pundis Striveling to the Danis; and the Danis sal stand content with the landis conquest afore that time fra Inglismen, and sall invaid na forthir, bot stand gud freindis in times cuming, and debait tham aganis thair ennimes. Quhil the Danis

and Inglismen war at this appointment, King Constantine, traisting to find sufficient oportunitie to bring the boundis of Scotland under his empire, becaus the Prince of Cumber was implicat with sic weris of Danis, come with xx.M men in Louthiane, quhilk stude at that time under the dominion of the said Prince and Lord of Cumbir. Kenneth, the bastard foresaid, quhilk was left be his bruthir, the Prince of Cumbir, to resist the weris of King Constantine; come haistely, with ane army, to Crawmond. And skarsly war baith the armyis junit togidder, quhen suddanly rais, ane vehement wind in the eist, and blew the sand with sic preis on the face of King Constantinis army, that nane of tham micht hald up thair heidis aganis thair ennimes; and sa his army was finaly discomfist. Efter maist lamentabill murdir maid on athir side, Constantine and Kenneth met togidder be singular battall, and war baith slane. King Constantine was slane in this maner, the III yeir of his regne, and buryit in Colmekil; fra the incarnation, ane M.II yeris.

### Chap. Twelfth.

*Of King Grime; and of gret trubill that fell betwix him and Malcolme, Prince of Cumbir, for contentioun of the crown. And how thay war finaly aggreit.*



RIME, nepot to King Duf, heirand how unhappely King Constantine and Kenneth war slane at Crawmond, gaderit the residew of King Constantinis army, and come to Scone; quhare he was crownit, be tennour of the auld lawis. Als sone as Grime had tane the crown in this maner, he intertenit the freindis of Constantine with maist liberalite and pleseir he micht, and conquest the favour and benevolence of the pepill in mony sindry wayis. And finaly, to stabill the crown to him with mair sicker firmance, he rewardit sindry freindis of Malcolme with landis and riches: and of otheris, quhilkis war to him repugnant, confiscat thair guddis, halding thaim as ennimes to the commoun weill. Malcolme, Prince of Cumbir, richt sorowfull

that Grime had tane the crown on this wise, callit all his freindis to ane counsal, to advise in this mater ; and dissimilit his mind, as he regardit not the power of Grime. Yit, mony of his freindis persuadit him to contempne not his ennime ; for sindry of the noblis assistit to his opinion : and thairfore, counsalit him to contend aganis Grime, erar with wisdome than pissance ; gevand his labour, gif he nicht, to draw the noblis fra his mind. Malcolme, be thair counsall, send his secret servandis to the noblis that war with Grime ; and prayit tham to kepe thair faith and promes maid to his fader, Kenneth, and to assist sa to him in his gud mater, that the lawis laity maid concerning the election of princes, be not abrogat be ambition of the tyrane Grime ; and promittit, gif thay abaid at his opinion, to govern the realm in sic felicity, that al occasion of debaitis suld be mesit at thair plesoir. Mony of the noblis, be this message, left King Grime, and solistit thair freindis to the same effect : Otheris tuk thir servandis of Malcolme, and send thame bound, as tratouris, to Grime ; quhom he put in prison. Malcolme, movit with thir injuris, come with ane army aganis Grime. Yit, becaus he was advertist that Grime was cumand aganis him with mair nowmer of pepil than he was, he commandit, under pane of deith, that na man common nor be ressavit within his army, quhil thay war first brocht to his presence. This wes done, be wisdom of Malcolme, that his army suld not be advertist of the huge ordinance aganis thame : nochtheles, fame and rumour, quhilkis inccressis ay mair and mair be frequent passage, maid the thing maist patent to his army, quhilk he desirit maist hid. And forthir, it was schawin, that sic treason was in his army, that, gif he yeid forthwart, he suld fecht na les aganis thame that war in his army, than aganis his ennimes. This rumour rais be marchandis, quhilkis had mair knowledge in changing of thair gudis, than in ony craft of chevalry. Thir marchandis, becaus gret nowmer of tham was in this army, nakit of armour and wappinnis, desirit licence to pas to Malcolme. And becaus thair desire was denyit, thay fillit al the army ful of murning and dolour. Be thir wordis and dredour of marchandis, al the capitanis quhilkis war in Malcolmis army, war affrayit. Than Malcolme, seand his capitanis astonist, thocht not proffitabil to jeopard thame, under sic dredour, to the chance of battal ; and thair-

fore, be counsal of his familiaris, to eschew the present dangeir, he sufferit the marchand to pas hame; and abaid at the watter of Forth, with certane houshold and gentilmen, to stop his ennines to cum ouir the watter. Quhil sic infinite trubil was in Scotland, Fothadus, bischop thairof, ane man of provin virtew and clemence, seand the pepil infestit thus be civil weris of Grime and Malcolme, and drawand the body of the realm in sindry opinionis; went with ane cumpany of prelatis, in solempne procession, under thair habitis, to King Grime: quhom he ressavit with reverence, and inquirit quhat erandis movit him to cum in sic gise. To quhom he answerit, "I am cumin, as servand of Crist, the gevar and lord of peace, to make intercession to the, til have miseration and piete of the gret trubil fallin in thy realm, sen God hes maid the prince thairof; for now sa mony sindry motivis of debait sproutis in it, that it sal not fail, bot gif thow provide mair haistely remeid, to have ane miserabil rewine. The civil weris ar sa frequent in this realm, that thay have brocht the samin to sic calamite, that nocht haboundis in it bot continewal reif and slauchter, baith of noblis and commonis; apperandly as the weirdis war determit to bring this realm to nocht. For, not allanerly mischevous personis and limmaris ar unpunist, bot autorist for thair iniquite. Nane may remane in his awin hous, bot or thay slane or heryt of all his gudis and insicht. And understand surely, sa lang as thir odius contentionis regnis betwix the and Malcolme, na justice nor polecy sal appeir in this realm. Na tranquillite sal follow; na end sal be put to sic mischevis, quhill thow be finaly agreit with Malcolme: yit, wil thow be plesand, and stand to my counsal, I dout not to bring al materis to gud fine. For thir reasonis, nobil prince, have miseration of the gret trubil falling to thy pepil, quhilkis ar brokin now with mair calamite than micht move maist cruel tyrannis to pietuous teris. And gif na affliction of thy realm and pepil may move the to reuth, yet have compassion of thyself, quhilk may have na sicker life quhen thy pepil ar perist." King Grime, movit be thir wordis, answerit, That he wald condescend to have peace, sa it war not degrading to his honour: for he was king, be the auld lawis usit sa mony hundreth yeris in this realme; and thairfore, he wald not sever with the croun, bot fecht for the samin,



aganis Malcolme, and al that war of his opinion, to the end of his life. Nochtheles, gif Malcolme wald skaile his army, and stand content with the landis of Cumbir, with purpos to invaid him with na langer battal, he wald heir peace: othirwayis, he suld perseveir in battal aganis him, quhil the richt war decernit be the swerd. Fothadus prayt the king to ceis ane lital fra al malice, quhil he had sene the mind of Malcolme; for it nicht happin, that he nicht bring al materis to gud purpos, gif ony of thame had sicht to the common weill. Efter this, Fothadus went to Malcolme at Striveling: quhare he, be lang orison, lamentit the gret trubil falling to the pepil be sedition of thir ii princes: and quhen he had schawin quhat miserabil end nicht follow thairapon, he brocht Malcolme to sic point, that he was content to pas in Cumbir, sa that King Grime wald skaile his army. King Grime refusit not this appointment; traisting to perseveir in the empire quhilk he had socht afore with sa huge danger. Incontinent, he skailit his folkis, and come to Forfar, to advise with his freindis, quhat was to be done in this mater. In the mene time, Fothadus, the bischop, maid concord betwix thame in this maner: King Grime sal reiose the crown during his life; and, efter his deith, the crown to remane with Malcolme, and the nerest of his blude, perpetually, but ony pley. He that was found efter, repugnant to the pointis of this peace, sal be haldin as ennime to the common weil. Attour, al the landis lyand betwix Louthiane and Northumbirland, and betwix Clyd and Westmureland, sal cum presently under the dominion of Malcolme; and he sall stand gud freind to King Grime in al materis. And gif he abaid not at this appointment, or do ony thing in prejudice thairof, he sall baith tine the landis gevin to him be this appointment, and the crown fra him and his posterite. Quhen thir ii princes war sworne, in straitest forme that nicht be devisit, to observe al pointis in this contract, thay scalit thair cumpanyis, and set thair mindis to repare the trubill falling to the pepill be thair deviation. Followit than, gud peace, mony yeris efter.

### Chap. Thirteenth.

*How gret nowmer of Danis war slane be slicht of Inglismen. Of the Orison maid to King Grime be the noblis; and how he was slane be Malcolme, Prince of Cumbir.*



UHILL sic thingis war in Scotland, Eldred was maid King of Ingland, be deceis of his brothir, Sanct Edward. This Eldred sufferit gret oppressionis of Danis; quhilkis, be thair weris, intendit to sit down, with thair wiffis, children, and freindis, in his realm; and finaly, thay wrocht sic heirschippis and cruelteis in al partis quhare thay come, that nothir peace, nor yit thair faith afore contrackit be virtew of sacrament, nicht caus thame to leif in peace. Thus apperit na thing mair sicker, than plane eversion of the realm of Ingland. King Eldred, to ceis this cruelte, set ane counsal of his noblis: in the quhilk, was devisit, secretly to sla al the Danis that war in Ingland, on ane day. This subtell slicht had cumin finaly to hand, war not the Danis war advertist thair of, and eschewit the murdir devisit aganis thame. Nochtheles, mony of thame wer slane be the samin way. The residew of Danis, quhilkis war eschapit fra this murdir, movit be the slauchter of thair freindis, garnist al strenthis and castellis quhare thay had ony boundis within Ingland, and send to Sueno, King of Denmark, for support, to revenge the treason done to thaim be gile of Inglismen.

Quhil sic thingis war done in Ingland, King Grime, be affluence of riches and lang peace, was degenerat fra his liberalite and chaist life, in maist corruppit and avaricius living. And quhen he had slane sindry noblis of Scotland, as oftymes occurris, to conquess thair landis and gudis, he opprest the pepil, ilk day, be mair tyranny. The pepil, knowing na mortal juge above him to punis his cruelte, efter lang regrait of insufferabil injuris sustenit be thame, fel on kneis, makand invocation to God, the punisar of sin, to have piety of thair affliction, and to change the realme in sum better gover-

nance. The noblis, havand gret indignation, in lik wise, of the trubil falling baith to tham and thair commonis; send ane certane of gentilmen as ambassatouris to King Grime, persuading him, in thair name, to devoid him of unhappy and mischevous limmaris, in quhom he had our gret confidence, as apperit, to the dammage of his common weill. Ane of thir ambassatouris, to quhom the charge was gevin, said in this maner: “ We, quhilkis ar ane part of thy noblis, and our trew to thy crown, ar cumin to persuad the, gif we may, to the weil of thyself and thy realme. It is not unknawin to the, richt nobil prince, quhat infinite calamite and trubil hes bene done, thir sindry yeris, to thy legis, be insaciabil avarice of thir unhappy and mischevous limmaris thy servandis. The schame and displeseir heirop may not be weill excusit, bot redoundis ay to thy maist dishonour and sleuth. Heirfore, sen it is at thy pleseir to distribute al officis and auctoriteis within the realm, yow man respond for the crimis and iniquiteis done be thy servandis aganis thy legis and subdittis. The swerd is gevin to the, not to enriche and magnify thevis and tratouris, nor yit to invaid trew and innocent pepill, bot only to punis gilty and mischevous limmaris. It war better, thy pepil to be deid, as the common voce is, than to leif in sic daily trubill as thay leif, be injure of thame that suld be thair defendouris. Heirfore, we exhort the to remove al thir unhappy tyrannis thy counsalouris, and to govern the realm and common weill with sic felicity as thy eldaris hes done afore; for we think it unganand, sa lang as we ar on live, gif thow wil be rewlit be us, that thy subdittis suld be oppressed, othir in time of weir or peace; sen we have bene evir reddy to defend the with our bodyis and gudis, bot ony regard to our livis: and, thairfor, schaw thyself ane just prince, and cast the to be luffit with thame quhom thow desiris to be thy freindis; and understand that ane just king makis his cieteyanis obeisant, but ony rebellion or debait.”

Quhen King Grime had answerit with dissimilit and fenyet wordis to thir ambassatouris, he callit tham to ane banket, with purpos to have put thame in prison. Nochtheles, thay war advertist thairfor, and fled with swift hors to Bertha, quhare the remanent noblis war assemblit for the time. King Grime, not movit be thir wordis, bot

traisting ilk thing to succeid with sic felicity as afore, gaif him to his lust and insolence, not ceissing fra frequent exactionis and scourge of his legis; quhil, at last, he was advertist that his noblis war rebellit aganis him: and incontinent he rasit his baner, and come, with gret nowmer of pepil, to invaid thame that war repugnant to him. Than followit mair trubill than evir was sene in Albion; for the castellis war cassin down, the townis brint, the cornis distroyit, and the pepil slane in kirkis at thair devotion. Sic cruelteis and trubil causit Malcolme, Prince of Cumbir, to cum out of Ingland, fra the weris of Danis, in Scotland. At his cuming, al pepill, specially that hatit Grime, come to him, to be releiffit of the cruel tyrannyis done to thaim; and said, He was not borne only for the weil of himself, bot sum part for the weil of his freindes and cuntre; and descendit of nobil blude, havand riches and manheid to support his cuntre, quhen time occurrit; and to deliver thaim of the odious tyrane Grime: quhilk beand done, all thing micht succede to him as he plesit. Malcolme, movit be thir persuasionis, come, with gret nowmer of pepill, aganis King Grime. Als sone as Grime was advertist thair of, he gaderit all the folkis that he micht get for the time. Finaly, baith the armyis set down thair tentis fornens othir, at the town of Auchnabart, on the Ascension-day. King Grime, traisting that Malcolme micht be esaly vincust, as he that was gevin mair to devotion than ony chevalry, be solempnite of the day; come forthwart, with al his power, in the brek of the day. Nochtheles, Malcolme was weil informit of his purpos: and efter that he had requestit him, howbeit it was in vane, to desist fra battall, be reverence of the blissit day, baith the armyis ruschit togidder. At the first meting, was gret slauchter; bot at last King Grime's army was vincust and put to flicht. It is said that King Grime was tane, fechtand with gret ferocite and manheid; and efter that he was strikin with mony bludy woundis in his heid, baith his eyen war put out: and quhen he had leiffit certane dayis on this wise, in mesirie and dolour, he deceissit, the ix yeir of his regne, and was buryit in Colmekil, fra the incarnation, mx yeris.



## Chap. Fourteenth.

*Of King Malcolme the Secound. How Sueno, King of Norroway, with doubil victory, chasit King Eldred of Ingland in Normandy; and opprest Inglismen with gret cruelteis.*



ALCOLME, efter this victory, callit sindry of his noblis, quhilkis war takin prisoneris at this time, to his presence; and efter that he had tretit tham with gret humanite, he schew to thame that he was just heretour to the crown of Scotland, and faucht not aganis the weil thairof, bot allanerly to releif the pepil of the tyranny of Grime. The xv day efter, ane convention was maid at Scone, quhare al the nobilite of Scotland beand present, Malcolme declarit that he wald not ressave the crown of Scotland, quhil the lawis maid afore be his fader Kenneth, war approbat, and the noblis sworn nevir to cum in the contrar thairof. Sic thingis beand grantit, Malcolme was crownit in the fatal chier of marbil; and maid sic concord with his noblis, that al occasion of hatrent and sedition was set aside. Efter his coronation, he delt his offices concerning civil actionis, to tham that war maist resolvit in the lawis: Othir offices, pertening to chevalry, war gevin to maist vailyeant capitanis: throw quhilk, followit, better justice than was sene mony yeris afor.

Quhil the empire of Scottis was governit in this maner, Sueno, King of Danis, arivit in Britane with gret navy, to revenge the injuris done afore be Inglismen. This Sueno, efter his coronation, as is writtin in the history of Danis, wrocht sic punishment and cruelte on Cristin pepill, that his subdittis war constrainit to renunce the Cristin faith, and returnit to thair auld superstitionis. Nochtheles, his cruelte was not lang unpunist: for he was efter, be just punishment of God, thris tane prisoner with his ennimes, and thris ransont with infinite money; and finaly, brokin with sa frequent incursionis, that he was doung out of his realme be Alanus, King of Norroway. Als sone as Sueno was banist in this wise, he come to the Scottis,

desiring support to recover his realme. The Scottis, havand compassion of his calamite, brocht him first to the sacrament of baptism; and finally, supportit him in sic maner, that he was restorit to his kingdome. Sueno, sone efter that he was restorit to his realme, come with ane army of Danis, Norowanis, Suessis, Gothis, Vandalis, and Frisonis, in Ingland, and chasit King Eldrede in Northumbirland. This Eldrede, be band of confideratioun, drew the Scottis to his support; and tuk purpos, with new curage, to assaile the chance of fortoun aganis the Danis. Proceeding, heirfore, straucht aganis his ennimes, he set down his tentis not far fra York upon the river of Owse.

In the mene time, Sueno, havand na memory of the gret humanteis done to him be Scottis, chargit thame to returne hame, and leif the opinion of Inglismen; uthirwayis, he wald invade thame be battal. King Eldrede tuk the herald quhilk come to this effect, and kest him in fetteris. King Sueno went haistely forthwart with weil arrayit battall. Incontinent, baith the armyis junit sa haistely, that nane of thame had power to schote thair dartis. The battal was lang fochtin with uncertane victory, quhil at last the Inglismen war put to flicht. King Eldrede, efter this discomfitour, fled our the river of Owse in ane bait: the residew of his army war othir tane or slane. Eldrede, seing ilk day mair trubill rising in his realme, and disparit of releif, fled in Normandy: quhare he was sa tenderly ressavit be Richard, duk thairof, that he maryit his douchter Emma; and gat on hir, two sonnys, Alarud and Edward. He had als, ane othir sonne, namit Edmond, ane man of hie curage and strenth of body. This Edmond was gottin be Eldrede on his first wife, afore the Danis invadit his realme; and was callit Irneside, becaus he was exercit in chevalry; and rang xvi yeris above Inglismen, as we sal efter schaw. Sueno, proude of thir feliciteis, tuk avisement with the remanent Danis, how the Inglismen micht be maist esaly destroyit; that he micht stabill the realme to him and his posterite, but ony impediment of Inglismen, in times cuming. The nobillis of Ingland, advertist of this extreme hatrent of Danis aganis thame, fell on kneis afore Sueno, exhorting him to have mercy on thame, sen thay war ane anciant pepil, sum time maist pissant, baith be see and land: and prayit him to suffir thame remane on live,

under quhat servitude he pleasit ; for thay desirit na castellis, townis, nor riches, bot only to leif with thair wiffis and children under servitude. Howbeit Sueno was be nature maist cruel, yit he usit his victory with les indignation on Inglismen than he purposit ; and commandit thame, mony yeris efter, to beir na wappinnis, bot to use husbandry, or othir labouris, under servitude of Danis, honoring him as thair just prince. And, in the mene time, he commandit thame to bring al thair gold, silver, jowellis, wappinnis, and armour, to him, aganis ane prefixit day ; and to rander thair townis, castellis, and munitionis, to him, that thay micht be keipit, in times cuming, be Danis. Gif ony of the Inglismen war repugnant to thir materis, to be punist to the deith. The Inglismen war, finaly, sa brokin with ilk trubil rising above othir, that thay fulfillit thir chargis in all pointis. Thus, was the crown of Ingland conquest be Danis ; eftir the first conques maid on it be Saxonis, fra the time of Vortigern, DXXIX yeris.

Sueno rang, efter this, with gret tyranny abone Inglismen ; and reft fra thaim, thair liberte, in sic maner, that he wald suffer nane of thair blude beir auctorite nor honouris within Ingland. The preistis and prelatis nocht onlie wer degradit of thair benefices, bot cassin in presoun, and Danis put in thair roumes. The Inglismen, opprest with sic miserabil calamiteis, began to lament thair unhappy chance ; wareand thameself, that thay chesit not erar to have deit quhen thay micht, than to leif with sic dailie oppressioun be tyranny of unmercifull ennimes : yit Sueno wes na thing movit with thair lamentable regrait, bot thirllit thaim, the more thay lamentit, to new and importable servitude : for the ingine of tyrannis is ay of sic condition ; the more thay se thair subdittis and liegis dejeckit in supreme miserie and truble, the more thair unmercifull tyranny ragis on thaim with new injure. Finalie, the Inglismen wer brocht to so gret calamite and miserie be Danis, that ilk hous in Ingland wes constrainit to sustene ane Dane, that the samin micht be ane spy to the king, and advertis him quhat wes done or said in that hous : be quhilk way, the king micht knaw sone, quhare ony rebellion wes aganis him. This spy wes callit Lord Dane : quhilk is now tane for ane idill limmer, that seikis his leving on othir mennis laubouris.

## Chap. Fifteenth.

*How Olavus and Onetus come in Scotland with gret army of Danis ;  
and how King Malcolme was discomfist.*



INGLISMEN, opprest in this maner, and spulyeit of thair crown and riches ; Sueno, to stable his realm, thocht expedient to tak peace with his nichtbouris, the Normannis, Britonis, and Scottis, under thir conditionis, That nane of tham support Inglismen aganis Danis. And above thir conditionis, he send his herald to the Normannis, chargeand thaim to send King Eldred, with his two sonnys, to him in Ingland, or ellis to distroy thame ; that na succession of tham sal remane on life, to be impediment to him or his airis in times cuming. And becaus nane of thir conditionis wer observit, he garnist al the strenthis of his realme fornens Normandy with strang munition and vittallis, and maid his provision to invaid the Scottis ; and to that fine he micht bring his purpos more esaly to effect, he commandit Olavus and Onetus, his lieutenantis, to cum haistely in Scotland, with all the pepil that thay micht get, to invaid the Scottis. Sone eftir, thir forsaid capitannis arrivit, with ane gret army, in the mouth of Spay ; and landit with sic awfull ordinance, that the inhabitantis fled, with thair bestiall, wiffis, and children, to thair best refuge. The Danis, efter thair cuming, brint the kirkis, templis, and townis in Murray, and slew al personis quhom thay micht apprehend ; and tuk al the strenthis of Murray, except thre castellis allanerlie ; that is to say, Elgen, Fores, and Narne. At last, the Danis laid ane sege to the castell of Narne ; and traistit, quhen it wes tane perforce, the tothir two castellis to be randrit but ony straik. In the mene time, thir Danis wer advertist, that King Malcolme wes cumand forthwart, with al the army of Scotland, to gif thame battall : and incontinent thay left the sege of the castell, and went with na les curage aganis the Scottis, than victory had bene present in thair handis. Sone eftir come ambassatouris of



Malcolme to thir Danis, inquiring quhy thay invadit his landis but  
 ony occasioun. Skarslie had thir ambassatouris done thair mes-  
 sage, quhen thay wer slane be cruelte of Danis. King Malcolme,  
 movit with this cruelte, and complening the law of pepill brokin be  
 slauchter of his ambassatouris; come, that same nicht, with gret  
 malancolie, to ane medow beside Killos. Gret noyis and clamour  
 wes all that nicht amang his army, desiring battal, to revenge the  
 cruelteis done be Danis. Nochtheles, fra thay saw the Danis, on  
 the morow, with more noumer of pepill and better ordour than  
 thay had sene afore, thay began to decay of thair curage, and tuk  
 more solicitude to saif thair livis than to invaid thair ennimes.  
 Malcolme, seing thame astonist, dred, gif he desirit thaim to fecht,  
 that thay suld othir fle, or ellis be repugnant to his chargis; and  
 thairfore yeid to ane mote, quhare he callit his nobillis to ane coun-  
 sall, and detestit thair cowarddris; thay beand sa vailyeand at hame,  
 quhen na danger occurrit, and at the first sicht of thair ennimes  
 astonist. “Quhat thing,” said he, “hes movit yow, my gude  
 “freindis, to pas sa suddanlie fra the office of vailyeant campionis,  
 “devoiding your anciant fortitude, but ony experience of battal?  
 “For gif ye dreid thir bludy and furius pepil, and ar disparit to  
 “have victorie be your manheid and curage, than ar ye nocht wor-  
 “thy to be sonnis of tha vailyeant campionis that vincust thir  
 “Danis at Loncarte, be chevalry of Kenneth, my fader. We find  
 “gret multitude of Danis vincust in Albion, to the interminable  
 “glore of our eldaris. Quhat schame and displeseir hes succedit  
 “to Danis for thair weris movit aganis us! Sa infinite noumer of  
 “thaim ar buryit in Albion, that it may be callit justlie, the sepul-  
 “ture of Danis. Sum of thame ar slane in your days; othiris in  
 “your eldaris. Bot thir Danis that ar now to fecht aganis yow,  
 “ar nocht of sic manheid and strenth as thay that wer vincust afore  
 “at Loncarte. Heirfore, your curage suld nocht decay, bot in-  
 “cres the more, that ye ar to fecht nocht onlie aganis the residew  
 “of vincust Danis, bot aganis the brekaris of the law of God and  
 “man. Your virtew and perseverant constance sall schaw sone,  
 “gif ye fecht as your eldaris did afore, quhat folie wes in Danis to  
 “invaid us but ony occasion of injuris. Quhy sonye ye, maist

“vailyeant campionis? quhy pas ye nocht forthwart with gret  
 “spreit? Na place is nowe to tary nor avise, bot gif ye have more  
 “sicht to your fragill bodyis, quhilk sal sone peris with more  
 “schame, than to your singulare and common weil.”

The noblis, movit be thir wourdis; that thay suld nocht appeir  
 cowardis, began to exhort thair folkis to battall. Incontinent, rais  
 sic nois and rageand fury in thair army, that thay, but ony sicht  
 to the pissance of thaimself or thair ennimes, ruschit, but ordour,  
 on the Danis. Olavus and Onetus, seing thaim cum sa furiouslye,  
 met thame in arrayit battall. Followit sone, ane terrible battall,  
 fochtin with incredibil manheid, to the gret murdir of baith the  
 sidis; and na thing pretermittit that nicht pertene, on athir side, to  
 forcy campionis: the Scottis contending to defend thair landis and  
 liberteis; the Danis, to saif thair livis: bot at last the Scottis war put  
 to flicht. King Malcolme was evil woundit, and his hewmond dounge  
 sa fast to his heid, that it nicht na way part thairfra. Nochtheles,  
 he was brocht out of the feild for deid, and hid in ane wod, quhil  
 he was sum part convalescit; and, sone efter, he returnit hame.

### Chap. Sixteenth.

*How the Castell of Narne was tane, and the soudjouris thair of trea-  
 sonably slane be Danis; and how the Danis war discomfist at  
 Murthlak.*



HE Danis, efter this victory, thinkand not proffitabill  
 to leif Murray quhill it war pecifyit to thair dominion,  
 gaderit the spulyeis of the feild, and returnit to sege  
 the castell of Narne, with mair pissance than afore.  
 This castel stude, that time, al within the see; beildit with strang  
 touris and wallis, with na les crafty than curius lauboure. Ane  
 strait passage was to it, maid be ingine of man, in maner of ane  
 brig, throw quhilk men nicht pas out of the samin to land. The  
 soudjouris quhilkis war left in the said castel, heirand how King  
 Malcolme wes discomfist, randerit the castel in the handis of Danis,

under this condition: "Thay sal leif thair armour and wappinnis  
"behind thame, and depart; thair life and remanent gudis saif."  
Notwithstanding, the Danis, contrar thair faith and promis, hangit  
treasonably al personis quhom thay fand within the said castel.  
Thus was Narne, the strangest castel of Murray, tane be the Danis,  
and sa garnist be thair industry, that it semit unwinnabil. The  
soudjouris in Elgin and Fores, heirand this treason done be Danis,  
left the castellis desert, and fled to King Malcolme. The Danis,  
rejosing of thir feliciteis, and traisting to have sicker dwelling in  
Murray, send for thair wiffis and children in Norroway and Den-  
mark, to cum haistely in Scotland. And in the mene time, thay  
seurgit sindry of the Scottis, sic as war waik and febil bodyis, and  
constranit thame to scheir thair corn.

King Malcolme, dredand the Danis, be new cuming of pepill, to  
be mair pissant; come, in beginning of the nixt simer, with gret  
multitud of pepil, to Murthlak, ane towne of Mar, quhare the first  
fundament was of the kirk of Abirden; and was nocht far, that  
time, fra the sicht of Danis, quhen suddanly baith the armyis war  
astonist be sicht of othir. The Scottis, havand experience of the  
cruelte done afore be Danis, war affrayit: and the Danis on the  
same maner; for thay war severit fra thair schippis; and becaus  
thay knew not the ground, thay dred mair the hid waching than  
the opin violence of thair ennimes. At last, baith the armyis, be  
hortation of thair capitanis, junit, with birnand hatrent, on al sidis.  
In the first bront, thre vailyeant championis, Kenneth of Ilis, Grime  
of Strathern, and Patrik Dunbar of that ilk, ruschand ouir feirsly  
on thair ennimes, war slane, and gaif occasion to sindry Scottis to  
fle: and yit the place quhare thay fled was sa strait, that na pepil  
micht fle esaly throw the samin. And thocht Malcolme withstud  
his ennimes in perseverant manheid, yit he was drevin abak, as he  
had bene fleand; and the place quhare he faucht semit ay mair  
strait and diffcil, throw sindry fowseis of watter and fail, quhilk  
was maid afore for nighbore weir: attoure, mony treis war hewin  
down, lyand thortwart the land, and stoppit baith the entres and  
outpassage of this gait; in middis of quhilk was ane chapel, dedicat  
in the honour of Sanct Molok. Malcolme, drevin on this maner  
abak, rasit his handis to the hevin, and said, "Gret God of virtew,

“rewardar of piete, and punisar of sinne; we, thy Cristin pepil,  
 “defendouris of our native rowmes, grantit be thy benivolence,  
 “quhilkis ar now nakit of mortal help, and invadit be treasonabil  
 “injure of Danis, recurris to the in this our extreme necessite,  
 “praying the to have compassion on our miserable chance. Re-  
 “move, O merciful Lord! this schameful terroure fra our pepil.  
 “And O, thow Modir of God, the sicker refuge of mortall pepil in  
 “thair distres! and O, thow Sanct Molok, to quhom this chapell  
 “is dedicat! be our help, and we sall big ane cathedral kirk in  
 “your honour, to be ane memorial that our realme wes saiffit be  
 “your support.”

Skarslie wes this orison endit be Malcolme, quhen ane part of  
 the noblis said, “O companyeonis, God wil that we return and re-  
 “new battall on our ennimes!” The skry and noyis of the army,  
 be thir wourdis, rais with curage ay more inccessing, sayand,  
 “Schaw now pertlie your visage; debait youre land and livis,  
 “quhilkis ar maist deir to every creature in erd.” Incontinent al  
 the Scottis returnit, as it had bene be miracle, and maid incredible  
 slauchter on thair ennimes, but ony sicht to thair livis or bleidand  
 wondis. In the mene time, King Malcolm come with ane busche-  
 ment apoun Onetus, quhilkis wes than pransand throw the feild, as  
 he had bene sicker of victory, with heid nakit of heumond; and  
 finalie, he straik Onetus fra his hors amang the futmen, quhare he  
 wes slane. The residew of Danis, seand thair capitane slane, ceis-  
 sit fra ony forthir persecutioun on the Scottis. Thus succedit gret  
 blithnes to Scottis, and extreme desolatioun to Danis; and yit the  
 battall continewit lang on athir side, quhil at last the Danis wer put  
 to flicht, and mony of thame slane, and few tane. Olavus heirand  
 his colleig slane, fled with ane few cumpany of Danis in Murray.  
 King Malcolme, knowing the maist vailyeant campionis of his army  
 slane, ceissit fra ony forthir persute of Danis, and devidit the spul-  
 yeis of the feild amang his men; syne went in Angus, quhare he  
 remanit the residew of that yeir, takand consultation of sic materis  
 as pertinit to the common weil, and recovering of Murray fra  
 Danis.



## Chap. Seventeenth.

*How Camus, Prince of Norroway, cumand with ane flote of Danis in Angus, was slane, and his army discomfist be King Malcolme at Barre; and how the surname of Keithis tuke thair beginning.*



UENO, King of Danis and Inglismen, heirand how unhappely the Danis faucht at Murthlak; that this present adversite suld nocht deject the glore of Danis, nor mak the name of Scottis our glorius, devisit two navyis, with gret noumer of Danis, to cum in Scotland. The first wes devisit to cum furth of Thamis in England; and this othir, to cum out of Denmark: with ane vailyeant knight namit Camus, to be admiral of baith the flotis. The nixt yeir, Camus come with this navy in the mouth of Forth, beside Sanct Eb, quhare he wes stoppit mony dayis to land. At last, be prosper windis, he pullit up salis, and arrivit at the Reid Brais in Angus, and landit his men or the cuntre micht be gaderit to resist him. Camus, eftir that he wes landit in this maner, went to the nixt mote; and rejosit that he wes landit in the place quhare Danis had wrocht afore sindry injuris, and cassin doun the town of Montros; and traistit, thairfore, the more felicite to succeid in his remanent viage.

Sone eftir, he rasis his campe, and went throw Angus, ceissing fra na maner of cruelte that micht be devisit; and kest doun kirkis, templis, cieteis, and townis, but ony miseratioun, quhare he come. Sic thingis done, he went to Brechin: quhare, sum time, wes ane strang castell, with ane kirk, dedicat in the honour of the Trinite. And becaus the castell micht not be haistely tane, thay enterit baith in the town and kirk with sic cruelte, that thay left not ane stane thairof uncassin downe. Camus, rageand with thir and siclik cruelteis, baith aganis God and man, was finally advertist, that Malcolme was cum to Dundee, with all the power of Scotland; and incontinent, he fled to the see, not far fra Balbridd: quhare he usit na les cruelte than afore, on the pepill. King Malcolme, desiring to deli-

ver his realm fra tyranny of Danis, come, with arrayit oist, to the town of Barre, two milis fra Balbrid : and tuk litill rest that nicht ; for his army was to fecht on the morow for defence of thair realm and liberte. On the morow, he callit his noblis to his standert, and prayit tham to consider how thay war to fecht aganis ane pepill blindit with avarice, not seikand thair leving be just battal, bot only be reif and pikery ; and not onely ennimes to Cristin faith, bot invading innocent pepil, but ony occasion of battall ; and set to destroy the trew faith in Albion : als, to remembir how thay war only defendouris of thair awne realme, and ordanit be God to punis the cruelte of Danis ; and thairfore, prayit thaim to pas forthwart with sic manheid and curage, that thay may othir de honorably, or ellis have victory maist vailyeantly. On the tothir side, Camus exhortit the Danis to battal, with sicker hope of victory ; and to remembir, thay behuiffit outhir to de miserably in ane uncouth realme, or ellis to have victory, with immortall honour. Sone eftir, Malcolme come with arrayit battal aganis the Danis, with the mair audacite and curage, that he had afore experience of thair cruelte ; for the ingine of nobill men ar of sic faculte, the mair thay have experience in honest materis, the mair risis thair curage to do sum notabill vassalage. The two armyis, birnand in athir hatrent, ruschit finaly togidder, with maist cruelte : throw quhilk, followit, sic slauchter, that the burn of Lochte ran with bludy stremis to the Almane seis ; and yit nane of thame semit to geif place to othir. Sindry war sene, that day, strikin throw the body, and fechtand with sic cruelte, that thay fell at erd with sic grip of thair ennimes, that thay severit not quhil thay deceissit baith togidder : throw quhilk, apperit, thay faucht with na les ire than gud will. Quhil at last, the Danis war vincust, and Camus chasit to the montanis. The Scottis followit on him with sic fury, that he was finaly slane. In signe heirop, the place, quhare he was slane, is callit yit, Camustane. The principal slaar of this Camus, was ane young man, namit Keith : quhilk, for his singulare vassalage provin in this feild, gat certane landis in Louthiane, callit Keith ; quhais hous is now decorit with gret honoure, and callit Marschellis of Scotland : of quhom ar descendit, mony nobil and vailyeant men, ay defendouris of this realm, sen thair first beginning. Ane othir cumpany of Danis, fleand in the samin ma-

ner, war slane at Abirlennon, not iv milis fra Brechin: quhare ane gret stane is ingravin with crafty letteris, to advertis the passingeris of the anciant and illuster dedis done be our eldaris aganis the Danis. The residew of Danis, quhilkis eschapit this feild, fled to thair schippis; and schew the gret infelicite and harmes, with al circumstance afore rehersit, to thair companyeonis.

### Chap. Eighteenth.

*How D Danis war slane be the Thane of Buchquhane. How Canute come, with new army of Danis, in Scotland, and was discomfist. How Scottis and Danis war finaly agreit on al debaitis.*



**E**FTER this discomfitour of Danis maid at Barre, King Malcolm gart devide the spulyeis of this feild, be rite of armes; and causit the bodyis of thir Danis to be buryit with funerall obsequies, in sindry kirkis of the cuntre. In memory heirof, mony bonis ar sene yit; unhid, quhen the sand is blawin fra tham. The Danis, quhilkis eschapit fra this feild, pullit up salis, to have past in Murray to Olavus. And quhen thay had remanit iv dayis on the seis, ane vehement tempest rais, be violent windis out of the eist, and drave thame in Buchquhan, quhare na port was to thair refuge: throw quhilk, thay had bene all perist, war nocht thay had strang takillis, and raid in the firth quhil the tempest ceissit. At last, quhen thay had lvin lang in the said firth, and finding na prosper windis till depart; thair vittallis beand failyeit, thay send D men to the nixt land, to bring sum pray of guddis to thair sustentation. And quhen thay had gaderit ane gret nowmer of bestial, and war returning with the samin to thair schippis, thay war sa sharply invadit be Marnachus, Thane of Buchquhane, and the inhabitantis thairof, that thay war chasit to the nixt montanis. Finaly, thay war sa cruelly invadit, that nane of thame war left on live, to bere tithingis to thair fallowis. This bat-tal was fouchtin at Gemmar, ane town of Buchquhan. In memory heirof, mony gret bonis of Danis lyis yit, not far fra the samin.

The residew of Danis, quhilkis war in thair schippis, seing na returning of thair freindis, pullit up salis with prosper windis, and come in Murray. Sueno, heirand thir injuris done to his freindis, send ane vailyeant knight, his bruthir, namit Canute, with ane new army, to revenge the cruelte done be Scottis. Canute, impatient of lang tary, arrivit in the firth of Buchquhane; and efter his landing, he ceissit fra na maner of cruelte on the inhabitantis thair of. King Malcolme, thocht he was brokin afore with this last battall, yit, to revenge thir injuris, gaderit haistely, ane cumpany of pepil, with purpos erar to brek the Danis with frequent scarmussing, than to jeopard the realm apone the chance of battal; for he knew na rescours nor pissance to renew battal, gif he war discomfist. Mony dayis efter, nocht was bot frequent scarmussing betwix the Scottis and Danis; quhil at last, the Scottis, seand sa huge murdir of thair freindis, thair landis waistit, and thair vittallis failyeing, desirit licence at King Malcolme to fecht; with certification, gif he refusit, thay wald fecht bot his command. King Malcolme, seing the battal micht be na langer supersedit, besocht his army to remembir thair honour and manheid. Incontinent, baith the armyis ruschit togidder, and perseverit with sic furios hatrent, that the noblis war neir slane on athir side. The Scottis gat small proffet be this battal, howbeit thay had the name of victory; for thay war sa brokin, that few of thame micht follow on the chace of Danis. On the morrow, baith the armyis seing thameself brokin, and not of pissance to renew battal, war content to have peace with othir. Thus, was peace finaly maid, under thir conditionis: “The Danis sall pas out of Murray, Buchquhan, and al the boundis of Scotland; and na weris to be maid betwix Danis and Scottis, during the empire of Malcolme and Sueno; and nane of tham to support the ennimes of othiris. The place, quhare this last battal was strikin, sal be halowit, and maid ane common sepulture of Cristin pepil. Ane kirk sall be erekit in it, to do devine service for thair saulis.” The peace ratifyit in this maner, Canute returnit, with the residew of Danis, to his schippis, and went hame. King Malcolme, havand his realm in sicker peace, thocht nathing sa gud as to keip the promes maid to Danis; and, thairfore, he biggit ane kirk in Buchquhane, dedicat in honour of Olavus, patron of Norroway and Denmark, to



be ane memoriall, that sindry noblis of Danis wer sumtime buryit in the said kirk. In memory heirof, the landis, that ar gevin to this kirk, ar callit yit, Croivdan : quhilk signifyis als mekil as the slauchter of Danis. The kirk that was biggit to this effect, as oftymes occuris in thay partis, was ouircassin be violent blast of sandis. Nochtwithstanding, ane kirk was biggit efter, with mair magnificence, in ane othir place, mair ganand. Sindry of thair bonis war sene be us, schort time afore the making of this buke, mair like giandis than common stature of men : throw quhilk, apperis, that men, in auld times, hes bene of mair stature and quantite, than ony men ar presently in our days.

### Chap. Nineteenth.

*How King Malcolme devidit his realme in baronyis. How the noblis gaif to him the Wardis, Releiffis, and Mariage of thair airis, quhen thay waikit. How the sait of Abirdene first began. Of the deith of King Malcolme. And of sindry mervellis sene in Albion.*



ALCOLME, havand ennimes in na partis, commandit generall processionis to be maid throw all partis of his realme, to geif thankis to God for delivering of thame fra bondage of thair ennimes ; and causit the kirkis quhilkis war distroyit be cruelte of Danis, to be reparit, and mair reverence to be gevin to gud sanctis : and commandit his lawis to be observit, quhilkis mony yeris afore nicht have na place for weris. He maid ane convention of his noblis at Bertha, quhilk was ane castell, standing, that time, not far fra the place quhare the town of Perth standis now. And quhen he had done sic thingis in the said convention, for the honour of God and common weil, he thoct na thing sa gud as to reward the freindis of thame quhilkis war slane afore be weris of Danis. And to do the samin with maist consideration, he devidit the realm in sindry baronyis ; and gaif al his landis, riches, and gudis, with sic liberalite amang his nobillis, efter

the reason of thair vassalage, that he left litill thing to sustene the crown. Als sone as the lordis war maid baronis in this maner, that the crown of Scotland sall not be pure nor indegent, thay gaif to King Malcolme and his airis, for his liberalite schawin to thame at this time, al the wardis and releiffis of thair landis, with the mariage of thair heritouris perpetually, in times cuming; and he to repose the commoditeis and proffettis of thair said landis, quhil the heritour thairof war **xxi** yeir of aige. Malcolme, remembring of his vote maid in his extreme neid, beildit ane kirk, with na les cost than magnificence, in the honour of Sanct Molok; and gaif al the landis of Murthlak, Cleometh, and Dunmeth, with the teindis thairof, to sustene the Bischop of Murthlak. This sait was callit ay, The sait of Murthlak, to the time of King David the First: be quhome, it was callit Abirdene; and was than dotat mair richely than afore.

In this sait hes bene mony gud bishoppis: amang quhom, was ane William Elphinstoun, richt prudent and afald for the commoun weill: gevand extreme besines all his dayis, that the king suld regne above his leigis, mair with benivolence and favour, than ony extreme or rigour; that his baronis nicht luf and dreid him, ay rising under him in amite and concord; and that kirkmen nicht leif under thair institution; and finaly, that every thing suld be done, na les to the pleseir of God, than to the common weil. Efter him, succedit, ane nobill man, Gawine Dounbar, ane of the gud prelati that evir was in this realm; for he biggit ane brig our Dee, with gret magnificence, quhare nevir brig, for violence of watter, nicht stand afore; and foundit ane yeirly leving, to sustene the same: with mony othir notabil dedis, quhilkis war our prolixity to schaw at this time. Bot we wil return to our history.

King Malcolme, efter sa mony cruel battallis led aganis the Danis, governit the realme mony yeris in gud justice: and maid ane buke, callit *Regiam Majestatem*, contenand the lawis how his realm suld be governit; and quhat commoditeis sal be gevin in feis to his chancellor, secretar, constabill, marschell, chalmerlane, justice, thesaurer, register, comptrollar, and othir officis in his hous. This Malcolme had bene, in fame and loving, nocht behind ony othir prince that evir was in this realme, gif sic virtew had bene in his latter age as was in his first youth, or mannis age. Nochtheles, all his excellent

glore was fulyeit with immoderate avarice ; for, as oftymes occuris, he come, baith at anis, to eild and avarice, and was penitent of the landis gevin, be his liberalite, to his nobillis : and to recover the said landis, he slew and bañist mony of his lordis, be vane and fenyeit causis. The noblis, movit be thir injuris, and havand gret indignation, that the king nocht only put handis in thair blud, bot was set to conques thair landis and rowmes be fenyeit causis ; conspirit aganis him, with frequent conventionis to the same effect. King Malcolme, heirand thair conspiracy, to saif his life, fled with certane his familiaris to Glamis : quhare he was slane, be freindis of the nobillis quhilkis war slane afore be him. Thir cursit limmaris, efter his slauchter, fled with thair complices be swift hors, howbeit thay war uncertane quhare to fle ; for the ground was sa ouircoverit with snaw, that thay micht not knaw the gait. Finaly, thay come to the loch of Forfare, quhilk was sum part frosin for the time. Als sone as thay war cumin to the middis thair of, thay fel down throw the ise, and perist miserably in that maner. Nocht lang efter, thay war drawin out of the loch with creparis ; and thair quarteris hounge up in sindry townis of Scotland, in punition of thair cruelte. This end maid King Malcolme, the xxxi yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, ane M XL yeris ; and was buryit in Colmekill.

In this time, mony mervellis was sene in Albion. On Yule day, the erd trimblit, and ane gret rift was maid be the samin in the middis of Striveling : out of quhilk sprang, sa huge multitude of watter, that it bure away the nixt wod to the Watter of Forth. The see, in the simer, rais forther in the land than evir it was sene afore in ony time. On midsimer-day, callit the Nativite of Sanct Johne, Boptist, was sa schill frost, that all the cornis war slane, and maid gret derth in the cuntre.

And sa endis the Levint Buke of thir Croniklis.

# The Twelf Buke.

---

## HEIR BEGINNIS THE TWELF BUKE OF THE CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

### Chap. First.

*Of King Duncane. How the surname of Stewartis tuk thair first beginning. And how Makbeth punist sindry enormiteis done in King Duncanis time*



ALCOLME slane as we have schawin, succedit, his nepot Duncane, gottin on his douchter: for Malcolm had two douchteris, of quhilkis the eldest, namit Beatrice, wes gevin in mariage to Abbanath Crinin, quhilk wes Thane of the Ilis and west partis of Scotland. On hir wes gottin Duncane, quhilk succedit immediatlie efter him to the croun. The second douchter, namit Doad, wes gevin in mariage to Sinel, Thane of Glamis; on quhome wes gottin ane feirs and vailyeant man, namit Makbeth, richt ganand to have governit ony realme, wer nocht his strenth wes gevin our mekil to cruelte. Thocht Duncane and Makbeth wer sister sonnys, thay wer far different fra



othir in maneris. For Duncane wes sa mercifull, that he apperit nocht abill to punis the vices of his pepil: be contrar, Makbeth wes gevin als mekill to cruelte as Duncane wes gevin to piete. And thairfore the peple desirit thair maneris to have bene temporat with otheris.

Duncane, in the beginning of his empire, governit the realme in gud peace and justice; for it wes governit be the same counsalouris that governit it during his faderis time. Thus levit the commonis, mony yeris, but ony injure or oppression of gret men. Yit the feble mind of Duncane, quhen it wes patent to the pepil, wes not only cause of gret seditionis amang the noblis, bot occasion to Danis to attempt new weris aganis the Scottis. The cause of thir seditionis rais be the Thane of Lochquhabir, namit Banquho, quhilk wes the beginnar of the noble surname of Stewartis in this realme; of quhome oure king now present, be lang progression, is descendit. Quhen this Banquho had gaderit all the kingis rentis, he punist sindry limmaris of the cuntre with sic extreme rigour of justice, that the pepil rais aganis him with gret power, and spulyeit him of all the money quhilk he had gaderit afore to the kingis use; and thought he eschapit with his life, yit he wes evil woundit. At last, quhen he wes curit of all his woundis, he come to the king, desiring the injuris and contemptioun done to him to be punist. King Duncane, to dant thir attemptatis, send ane officer of armes, and summond all personis that wer suspect in this mater, to underly the law agane ane certane day. Thir limmaris that did this cruelte, heirand thaim summond, for more contemptioun, slew the officer. And becaus the kingis power wes to cum on thame to punis thair offence, thay maid Makdowald thair capitane; and he glaidlie tuk the charge of battall on him, knawing the king soft, and, as he alliegit, more abill to governe ane abbay of monkis than to gide ony band of weirmen. This Makdowald gaderit ane cumpany of mischevous limmaris, out of Ireland, Ilis, and othir regionis thairabout; and slew Malcolme, Lieutenand to Duncane in Lochquhabir, and put his men to flicht. King Duncane, astonist be slauchter of his men, for he wes nocht exercit in weris, nor yit knew how sic thingis might be dressit; convenit his noblis to ane counsal, to tak punishment on thir attemptatis. Eftir sindry opinionis, Makbeth reprevit King Dun-

cane of his soft governance, havand na ingine to punis injuris done to his pepill: and schew, gif the landis of Lochquhabir wer gevin to him and Banquho, thay suld leif nane of Makdowaldis blude on live. And as he promittit, sa followit: for sone eftir his cuming in Lochquhabir, the pepil, heirand the fame of his vassalage, durst nocht attempt sic thingis as thay did afore; and mony of thame left Makdowald, and come to Makbeth. Allwayis, Makdowald wes sa invadit, that it wes necessar to him to gif battal to Makbeth. Nochtheles, he wes discomfist, and chasit to ane castell in Lochquhabir. Makbeth followit on him to the said castel, and be lang sege brocht him to sic miserie, that he wes constrainit to ask grace to himself, his wife and barnis. And becaus he gat nocht bot repuls thair of, he slew first his wife and barnis, that thay suld not remane in derisioun to his ennimes; syne slew himself on the same maner. Makbeth enterit in the castell; and thought he fand Makdowald slane, yit he schure of his heid, and send it to the castel of Bertha, quhair the king wes, and gart hing his body on ane hie tre.

The Ilismen maid thair compositionis with gret soumes of money; otheris of thaim wer punist to the deith. The remanent pepill of the Ilis, movit be the slauchter of thair freindis, gaif displesand wourdis to Makbeth; calland him ane bludy monstour, but ony mercy. Makbeth incontinent maid his ordinance to pas in the Ilis, to punis thaim for thair unbridlit language. Nochtheles, be solistation of thair freindis, he ceissit, and tuke recompensatioun of thair guddis.

## Chap. Second.

*How Edmond Irneside and Canute devidit betwix thame the realme of Ingland. How Sueno, King of Norroway, come in Scotland with ane army, and vincust King Duncane. How the foresaid Sueno was, efter, vincust be ane uncouth slicht.*



KARSLIE wes the realme of Scottis deliverit be Makbeth of al tyrannis, quhen Sueno, King of Danis, wes arrivit in Scotland, with ane army. And to schaw of quhat linnage this Sueno wes discendit, we will repeat sum part of his original.

Sueno, the first King of Danis that rang abone Inglismen, had thre sonnys, Herald, Sueno, and Canute. The first wes maid King of Ingland; the second, King of Norway; and the thrid, King of Denmark. The first wes slane be Eldred, efter that he was exilit be Sueno in Normandy, the thrid yeir efter his faderis deith: and yit Eldrede rejosit nocht lang the croun of Ingland; for Canute, King of Danis, come with ane army in Ingland, to revenge the sauchter of his eldest bruther Herald, and slew the said Eldrede. Eftir quhais deith, his sonne, Edmound Irneside, come with ane army aganis Canute, with purpos baith to revenge the slauchter of his fader, and to recover the croun. At last, quhen the battallis wer arrayit in otheris sicht, reddy to fecht, this Edmond com afore his army, desiring to fecht with Canute in singulare battall; sayng, It wes mair honour to decern the richt betwix tham two, than be ony murdir of pepil: and he that wer victorius of thame two, sall succedd to the croun, but ony more debait. Canute wes glaid of this condition, havand na les confidence in his manheid than had this othir Edmond. Incontinent, thay come fra thair armyis on thair bardit coursouris, and ran, with scharp and groundin speris, ilk ane aganis othir, to the deith. At last, quhen thay had fouchtin lang with uncertane victory, thair steidis ouriset and wery, Canute said, “ O Edmond, quhilk hes now sickir experience of my

“ feirs and awful dint, I se thow may nocht be vincust, as apperis,  
 “ but propiciant favour of goddis ; for thay will that thow have ane  
 “ part of my kingdome, and regne with me in this region. Refrene  
 “ thy swerd ; and be content that the croun of Ingland be devidit  
 “ sa betwix us, that thow reiose the half thairof, havand equale  
 “ empire with me during my life.”

Edmond, glaid of this condition of peace, thocht better to succeid to the half of Ingland but ony mair danger, than to jeoperd himself to uncertane chance of battall ; traisting sumtime to find occasion to recover the hail empire of Ingland, with litill laubour. Incontinent, thay demontit of thair coursouris, and embrasit othir with maist tendernes. Thus wes the realme of Ingland devidit betwix thame in this maner : The part of Ingland fornce France wes assignit to Canute, and the tothir part to Edmond.

In the mene time, Enna, Quene of Ingland, dredand this concord na thing profitable to hir, fled in Normandy, with hir two sonnys, Alarude and Edward, quhilkis scho bure to the said Eldrede. Bot we will returne to our historie.

- Quhen Sueno, King of Norroway, saw his brothir eik to his empire of Denmark the half of Ingland, he tuke desire to be equale to his brothir, als weil in rentis as in marcial glore. And to bring his purpos to effect, he come with ane army in Fiffe. The motive of his cuming wes, to revenge the slauchter of his eme Camus, and othir Danis slane with him at Barre, Crowdane, and Gemmere. And thought Sueno wes cumin, as said is, to conques fame and honour, yit he wes na thing comparit to his brothir Canute ; for he slew innocent barnis, women, and agit personis, but ony difference of thair estait. King Duncane, heirand thir importable and schameful cruelteis done to his pepil, began to be ane prudent capitane ; for oftymes dull and sleuthfull pepil ar constranit, be necessite, to becum prudent and virtuous. King Duncane, heirand how Sueno wes cuming, in maner forsaid, to invaid his realme ; assemblit ane army of all pepill under his empire, and devidit thaim in thre battallis. The first battal wes gevin to Makbeth ; the secound, to Banquho ; and he abaid himself in the middilward, with the remanent nobillis of Scotland : syne met his ennimes at Culros, quhare baith the armyis faucht with gret cruelte ; bot the Scottis war finaly dis-



comfist. Yit the Danis war sa brokin be this battall, that thay maid not lang chace, bot stude al nicht in arrayit battal. On the morow, quhen thay saw the feild discomfist and na ennimes appere, thay partit the spulyeis be rite of armes; and inhibit to sla nakit men, traisting to conques the realm with favour and benivolence of the pepil. Sic thingis done, Sueno rasit his tentis, to follow on the remanent Scottis. And becaus he was advertist that King Duncane was fled to the castel of Bertha, and Makbeth gadering ane new army to resist his incursionis, he laid ane strait sege about the said castel. Als sone as King Duncane saw himself beltit on ilk side with ennimes, he send ane officer, be counsal of Banquho, to Makbeth, commanding him abide at Inhecuthill, quhill he send him othir word. In the mene time, he send ane herald to Sueno, desiring licence to himself, and the noblis that was within the castel, to depart, thair life and guddis saif. This was desirit be Duncane, howbeit he knew na thing better than repuls thair of, that his ennimes nicht have na othir suspition bot the castel was to be randerit but ony mair delay. At last, quhen Sueno had desirit the castel to be randerit, King Duncane, to intertene him quhil all materis war brocht to gud purpos, promittit to send ane large provision of vittallis out of the castell to refresche his army. Thir offeris war not only plesand to Sueno, bot als to his army; for thay had bene mony days afore but ony fresche vittallis, in gret penurite. Incontinent, the Scottis tuk the jus of mekilwort beryis, and mengit it in thair wine, aill, and breid; and send the samin, in gret quantite, to thair ennimes. Sueno and his army, rejosung of this fouth of vittallis, began to waucht on thair maner, and to have experience quha nicht ingorge thair wambe with maist voracite, quhil at last the vennoun of thir beryis was skalit throw all partis of thair bodyis; throw quhilk, thay war resolvit in ane deidly sleip. Than Duncane send to Makbeth, commanding him to invaid his ennimes with al diligence; for thay war at ane esy point to be vincust. Makbeth, but mair tary, com with his folkis to the tentis of ennimes; and first he slew thair wache; and the remanent of thame, sowpit with sleip, war al murdrest in thair beddis. Sueno was brocht, with few nowmer of his folkis, to the schippis, quhare he pullit up salis, and returnit

in Norroway. Of all this army eschapit nane bot Sueno, and x personis with him, by the marineris. Mony yeris efter, na knichtis war maid in Norroway, quhill thay war sworne to revenge the slauchter of thair freindis in Scotland. The remanent schippis, quhilkis war left behind the Danis, in the Scottis Firth, within thre dayis efter thair departing, raschit ilk ane on othir, be violence of ane eist wind, and sank down in the Firth: quhare thay ly yit, to the gret dangeir of all othir schippis that cumis in the samin; for quhen the see flowis, thay ar coverit with watter, and quhen it ebbis, thay appeir sum part above the samin, callit yit be the pepil, Drum-law Sandis. The Scottis, efter this victory, gat the spulyeis of the feild, and maid general processions throw al partis of thair realm, gevand thankis to God for the felice falling to thame.

Quhil the Scottis war at thair processionis in this wise, tithingis come that ane new flote of Danis war arrivit at Kingorne, and the weirmen cuming on land, invading the cuntre with maist cruelteis. To dant thir attemptatis, wer send, with the kingis auctorite, Makbeth and Banquho; quhilkis slew ane gret part of thir Danis, and the remanent chasit to thair schippis. Thir Danis that fled to thair schippis, gaif gret sowmes of gold to Makbeth, to suffer thair freindis that war slane at his jeoperd, to be buryit in Sanct Colmes Inche. In memory heiroyf, mony auld sepulturis ar yit in the said Inche, gravin with armis of Danis. At last, peace was ratifyit betwix Scottis and Danis, in this maner: "The Danis sal never cum in Scotland, to move ony weir aganis the Scottis."

Thir war the weris of King Duncane, led aganis the Danis, the vii yeir of his regne.

## Chap. Third.

*Of the Weirdis gevin to Makbeth and Banquho. How Makbeith was maid Thane of Cawder; and how he slew King Duncane, to make himself King.*



OCHT lang eftir, hapnit ane uncouth and wounderfull thing, be quhilk followit, sone, ane gret alteration in the realme. Be aventure, Makbeth and Banquho wer passand to Fores, quhair King Duncane hapnit to be for the time, and met be the gait thre women, clothit in elrage and uncouth weid. Thay wer jugit, be the pepill, to be weird sisteris. The first of thaim said to Makbeth, “ Hale, Thane of Glamis !” the secound said, “ Hale, Thane of Cawder !” and the thrid said, “ Hale, King of Scotland !” Than said Banquho, “ Quhat women “ be ye, sa unmercifull to me, and sa favorabil to my companyeon ? “ For ye gaif to him nocht onlie landis and gret rentis, bot gret “ lordschippis and kingdomes ; and gevis me nocht.” To this, answerit the first of thir weird sisteris, “ We schaw more felicitie ap- “ pering to the than to him ; for thought he happin to be ane king, “ his empire sall end unhappellie, and nane of his blude sall eftir “ him succed ; be contrar, thow sall nevir be king, bot of the sal “ cum mony kingis, quhilkis, with lang progressioun, sall reiose “ the croun of Scotland.” Als sone as thir wourdis wer said, thay suddanlie evanist out of sicht. This prophecy and divinatioun wes haldin mony dayis in derision to Banquho and Makbeth. For sum time, Banquho wald call Makbeth, King of Scottis, for derisioun ; and he, on the samin maner, wald call Banquho, the fader of mony kingis. Yit, becaus al thingis succedit as thir women devinit, the pepill traistit and jugit thame to be weird sisteris. Not lang efter, it hapnit that the Thane of Cawder wes disherist and forfaltit of his landis, for certane crimes of lese majeste ; and his landis wer gevin be King Duncane to Makbeth. It hapnit in the nixt nicht, that Banquho and Makbeth wer sportand togiddir at thair supper.

Than said Banquho, "Thow hes gottin all that the first two weird "sisteris hecht. Restis nocht bot the croun, quhilk wes hecht be "the thrid sister." Makbeth, revolving all thingis as thay wer said be thir weird sisteris, began to covat the croun; and yit he concludit to abide quhil he saw the time ganand thairto, fermelie believing that the thrid weird suld cum, as the first two did afore.

In the mene time, King Duncane maid his son Malcolme Prince of Cumbir, to signify that he suld regne eftir him. Quhilk wes gret displeseir to Makbeth: for it maid plane derogatioun to the thrid weird, promittit afore to him be thir weird sisteris. Nochtheles, he thoct, gif Duncane wer slane, he had maist richt to the croun, becaus he wes nerest of blud thairto, be tennour of the auld lawis maid eftir the deith of King Fergus, "Quhen young children wer "unabil to govern the croun, the nerrest of thair blude sall regne." Als, the respons of thir weird sisteris put him in beleif, that the thrid weird suld cum als weill as the first two. Attour, his wife, impatient of lang tary, as all wemen ar, specially quhare thay ar desirus of ony purpos, gaif him gret artation to persew the thrid weird, that scho micht be ane quene: calland him, oft timis, febil cowart, and nocht desirus of honouris; sen he durst not assailye the thing with manheid and curage, quhilk is offerit to him be benivolence of fortune; howbeit sindry otheris hes assailyeit sic thingis afore, with maist terribil jeopardyis, quhen thay had not sic sickernes to succed in the end of thair laubouris as he had.

Makbeth, be persuasion of his wife, gaderit his freindis to ane counsall at Innernes, quhare King Duncane happinnit to be for the time. And becaus he fand sufficient oportunitie, be support of Banquho and otheris his freindis, he slew King Duncane, the vii yeir of his regne. His body was buryit in Elgin, and efter tane up and brocht to Colmekill, quhare it remanis yit, amang the sepulchris of uthir kingis; fra our redemption, MXLVI yeris.



## Chap. Fourth.

*How Makbeth usurpit the crown, and chasit the sonnis of King Duncane in Cumbir. How he punist sindry limmaris, and maid lawis for the common weil.*



LS sone as Duncane was slane on this maner, Makbeth come with ane gret power to Scone, and tuk the crowne; syne chasit Malcolme Canmore and Donald Bane, the sonnis of King Duncane, in Cumbir: quhare Malcolme remanit continewally, quhill Sanct Edward, son to King Eldred, recoverit the realme of Ingland fra the Danis, and ressavit the said Malcolme in maist tendernes. Bot Donald went in Ireland. Makbeth, efter thair departing, to stabil the realme to him with sicker firmanee, maid distribution of the kingis rentis amang the noblis, and be that way he conquest thair favoure. And becaus he saw na man oppone thaim to him, he set him to governe the realme in justice, and to punis all enormeteis that fell be febill administration of King Duncane. Yit, becaus he dred gret trubil to follow, gif his purpos war devulgat or it come to effect, he devisit ane subtell slicht, to bring all misdoaris and brokin men to his justice; and solistit sindry his liegis, with large money, to appele the thevis quhilkis opprest thame maist, in barras, aganis ane prefixit day. And quhen thir thevis war enterit in barras, quhare thay suld have fouchtin aganis thair nichtbouris, thay wer all takin be armit men, and hangit on jebatis, according, justly, to thair demeritis. The remanent misdoaris war dantit in sic maner, that, mony yeris efter, al thift and reiffis war dantit, and the pepill brocht to gret tranquillite.

Sic thingis done, King Makbeth visyit al the boundis of his realme, and was haldin the sicker targe of innocent pepill, and maist diligent punisar of al injuris done aganis the commoun weil; and gaif his labouris to caus young men increas in gud maneris, and

kirkmen to do thair devine service. He slew sindry Thanis of Cathnes, Suthirland, Stranavorne, and Ros, becaus gret trubil rais in the realm be thair sedition. He brocht Galloway in gud peace; and slew the tyran Makgill, quhilk contempnit, mony yeris afore, the kingis auctorite. Attour, he maid lawis for the commoun weil; and was worthy to be nowmerit amang nobill kingis, gif he had succedit to the crown be just titill, and had perseverit in justice to the end of his empire. And becaus sindry of his lawis apperis proffitabil, I have colleckit thaim in this werk, to mak thaim the mair patent, as followis: “ He that is within ordouris, sall not  
 “ answeire afor ane prophane juge, bot sal be remittit to his juge  
 “ ordinar. The tent part of al frutis growing on the ground sall  
 “ be gevin to kirkmen, and God sal be adorit with oblationis and  
 “ prayer. He that perseveris in contempton aganis the kirk, stand-  
 “ ing curst ane yeir, and will nocht be recounsailt thairto, sall be  
 “ repute ennime to the commoun weil: gif he perseveir with indu-  
 “ rat mind, two yeris, al his guddis sal be confiscat. He that is  
 “ maid knight, sal be sworne to defend wedois, commonis, and pu-  
 “ pillis; and he that is maid king, sal be sworne in the samin maner.  
 “ The eldest douchter sal succeid to heritage, failyeing of the eld-  
 “ est son; and gif ony woman mary with the lord of the ground,  
 “ scho sall tine her heritage. Na man sall posseid landis, rentis,  
 “ officis, or bigingis, be ony othir auctorite, bot allanerly be the  
 “ kinges licence. Na office sal be heritage, but during the kingis  
 “ pleseir. Na man sall sit in prophane nor temporall actionis, with-  
 “ out commissioun of the king. Al convention, office, and justice,  
 “ sal be led in the kingis name and auctorite. He that makis band,  
 “ or is sworne man, to ony othir man, bot allanerly to the king,  
 “ sal be punist to the deith; and ilk man sal be bound to defend the  
 “ king aganis al othir levand creaturis. He that raisis the kingis  
 “ liegis sal be put to deith, and his guddis confiscat; and all the  
 “ pepill that ar gaderit, on that samin maner. He that followis ane  
 “ man to the kirk or market, or ony othir convention, sal be punist  
 “ to the deith, without he leif be his industry that he followis. Ane  
 “ hors fed be commonis to ony othir use than laubouring of the erd,  
 “ sal be escheat to the king. Fulis, menstrualis, bardis, and al othir

“ sic idil pepil, bot gif thay be specially licent be the king, sal be  
 “ compellit to seik sum craft to win thair leving: gif thay refuse,  
 “ thay sal be drawin, lik hors, in the pluch and harrowis. Howbeit  
 “ the son be put in fee of the land, during the life of his fader, be  
 “ licence of the king; yit he sal be disherist efter, gif his fader be  
 “ found criminabil to the kingis majeste. All wemen that is ma-  
 “ ryt with ony fre baron or lord, howbeit scho have na barnis to  
 “ him, sal have the thrid of his land efter his deith; and the rema-  
 “ nent sal be rejosit be his airis. All gret baronis sal be inhibit to  
 “ mary with othir, under pane of deith; specialy gif thair landis  
 “ and rowmes lvis togidder. All armoure and wappinnis that ar  
 “ borne to ony othir effect than to the kingis weris, sal be confiscat,  
 “ with al his othir movabill guddis. The kingis capitane that  
 “ byis ony landis within the boundis quhare he is capitane, sall  
 “ tine baith the land and the money. Siclik, gif he mary his son  
 “ or douchter with ony folkis dwelland within his boundis, he sall  
 “ tine his office, and it sal not be leifful to his son nor his mawchis  
 “ to bruke his office.”

Thir and siclik lawis war usit be King Makbeth; throw quhilk  
 he governit the realme x yeris in gud justice. Howbeit, the samin  
 was contrar his naturall inclination; for he was gevin to conques  
 the favoure of his pepil, and to stabill the realm to him, erar than  
 to ony sicht of the commoun weill.

## Chap. Fifth.

*How Banquho was slane be Makbeth, and his son Fleance slane in Walis. How Walter, the son of Fleance, come in Scotland. And of the Genology of Stewartis.*



SHORT time efter, Makbeth returnit fra al meiknes to his innative cruele; for he was led be wod furyis, as the nature of all tyrannis is, quhilkis conquessis landis or kingdomes be wrangus titil; ay full of hevvy thocht and dredour; and traisting ilk man to do siclik crueleis to him, as he did afor to othir. Forthir, remembring the weirdis gevin to him, as is rehersit, That Banquhois posterite suld reiose the crown be lang progression; he callit Banquho, and his son Fleance, to ane supper, with purpos to sla thame baith, howbeit thay suspekkit na thing les than his treason. Makbeth, quhen the banket was done, thocht not expedient to sla thaim in his awin hous: and, thairfore, to eschew al suspectioun of crime that micht be imput to him thairby, he laid ane band of armit men in thair gait, to sla thame baith, at thair returning hame. Thir men, that war laid in wait to this effect, slew Banquho. Nochtheles, Fleance, be covert of nicht, eschapit, and was saiffit, as apperit, be singular favoure of God, to ane better fortoun.

Fleance, eschaping in this wise, and seing new waching laid for his slauchter, fled in Walis; quhare he was plesandly ressavit be the prince thairof, and maid sa familiar with the princis douchter, that he maid hir with child. The Prince of Walis, finding his douchter deflorit, persewit this Fleance with sic hatrent, that he finaly slew him; and held his douchter in maist schameful servitude, becaus scho consentit to hir defloration with uncouth blude. At last, scho was deliverit of ane son, namit Walter, quhilk, within few yeris, became ane vailyeant and lusty man, of greter curage and spreit than ony man that was nurist in landwart, as he was. And thought he was haldin with the Prince of Walis, his gudschir, in law estait;



yit he had ane thie mind, and abill to na thing mair than to attempt gret chargis. At last, he fel at contention with his companyeoun, quhilk objectit to him, that he was not gottin in lauchful bed. Efter mony feirs and injurius wourdis on athir side, this Walter was sa impacient, that he slew his companyeoun; syne fled in Scotland, to seik support of freindis. At his cumming, he happinnit in cumpany with the Inglismen that come in Scotland with Sanct Margaret: quhare he behavit him sa plesandly in every sort, that he conquest thair benivolence and favour. Nocht lang efter, he was send with ane gret power in the Ilis, Galloway, and othir partis of Scotland, to punis tyrannis and limmaris of the cuntre; quhom he dantit with sic manheid and prudence, that he was maid Stewart of Scotland, to ressave the kingis malis and rentis out of al partis of the realme. This Walter Stewart had ane son, namit Alane Stewart, quhilk, efter, passit, with the Duke of Lorane, and Robert, bastard son of the King of Ingland, in the Haly Land, quhare thay did mony vailyeant deidis aganis the Turkis; fra the incarnation of Crist, MXCIX yeris. Of this Alane, was gottin Alexander Stewart, quhilk foundit the Abbay of Paslay: quhare mony religious men hes bene, of the ordour of Sanct Benedict. Of this Alexander, was gottin Walter Stewart of Dundonald, quhilk faucht vailyeantly in support of Alexander the Thrid at Largis, as we sall efter schaw. This Walter had two sonnys; the first namit Alexander, quhilk faucht in support of his fader at the said feild of Largis. His secound son, namit Robert Stewart, gat the landis of Terbowtoun, and maryit the air of Crukeistoun; fra quhom descendit the Erlis of Levenax and Dernly. Attour, of this Alexander Stewart, that foundit Paslay, war gottin sindry othir sonnys; Johne and James, and sindry otheris; howbeit thay tuke new surnamis, be name of the landis to quhilkis thay succedit. This Johne Stewart, efter deith of his brothir James, maryit the aire of Bonkil, ane virgine of gret bewtie; and gat on hir, Walter Stewart, quhilk succedit to the landis of Bonkill, Ranfrew, Rothessay, Bute, and Stewartoun, efter that his fader Johne was slane at Falkirk. This Walter Stewart maryit Marjory Bruce, douchter to King Robert Bruce; of quhom was gottin Robert, the secound of that name.

This Robert the Secund tuke Issobell Mure, ane virgine of incredible bewte, douchter to Schir Adam Mure, Knight, in place of his wife; and gat on hir, thre sonnys and thre douchteris. The first was Johne Stewart, othirwayis namit Robert; quhilk succedit immediatly to the crown. The secound was Robert, Erle of Fif and Menteith, Duk of Albany; and was Governoure of Scotland xvi yeris. The thrid son was namit Alexander, Erle of Buchquhane, and Lord of Baudyenot. The eldest douchter was maryit on James, son and air to William, Erle of Dowglas. The secound was maryit on Johne Dunbar, brothir to George of Dunbar, Erle of Marche; and he was maid Erle of Murray. He gat on hir bot ane douchter, quhilk was maryit on the Dowglas, and sa the Dowglas come to the erldome of Murray. The thrid douchter was maryit on Johne Lyoun, quhilk was maid, efter, Lord Glammiss. Attoure, this Robert, the first king of the Stewartes, maryit Eufame, douchter to the Erle of Ros; and gat on hir, two sonnys; Walter, Erle of Athole, and David, Erle of Stratherne. This Walter solistit Robert, Duk of Albany, to sla David Stewart, Duke of Rothesay; and efter the hame-cuming of King James the First, he solistit the king to sla al Duk Robertis linnage, on the samin maner: ay traisting, efter the slauchter of his freindis, to cum to the crown. And finaly, he solistit his nepot, Robert Stewart, and Robert Grahame, his douchter sonne, to sla King James the First; for the quhilk crime the said Walter was, efter, convickit, and distroyit, with all his sonnys. And of his brothir, David, Erle of Buchquhane, come na succession: and, thairfore, baith thair landis returnit agane to the crown, but ony memory of thair blude. Of Robert Stewart, Duke of Albany, come Duk Murdo; quhilk maryit the Erle of Lanox douchter, and gat on hir, thre sonnes, Walter, Alexander, and James. Duke Murdo, with his first two sonnys, war slane at Striveling, be King James the First: and the thrid brothir James, to revenge thair slauchter, brint Dunbertane; and efter that, he was chasit in Ireland, quhare he deceissit but ony successioun. Robert, the thrid of that name, maryit Annabill Drommond, douchter to Schir Johne Drommond of Stobhal, Knight; and gat on hir, David and James. The first deit in Falkland; and that othir was James the First, and maryit Jane, douchter to Johne Bewfuerd,

Erle of Somerset, in Ingland. He gat on hir, two sonnys, borne at anis, Alexander and James. The first deit in his infance; the secound was James the Secound. He had vi douchteris: of quhilk the eldest was maryit on the Dalphine of France; the secound, on the Duke of Bertanye; the thrid, on the Lord of Feir; the feird, on the Lord of Dalkeith; the fift, on the Erle of Huntly; and the sext had na successioun. James the Secound maryit Margaret, douchter to the Duke of Gilder, and gat on hir, thre sonnys and two douchteris. The first sonne was James the Thrid. The secound, namit Alexander, was Duke of Albany, and maryit first the Erle of Orkneyis douchter, and gat on hir, Alexander, now Bischop of Murray; and nocht lang efter, he partit with hir, and went in France, quhare he maryit the Countes of Bolony, and gat on hir, Johne Stewart, Duke of Albany, quhilk was mony yeris Governour of Scotland in our days. The thrid sonne, Johne Stewart, was Erle of Marre, and was slane in the Cannongait, in ane baith fatt. The first douchter of James the Secound, was maryit on the Lord Boyd: of quhome was gottin ane sonne, quhilk was slane be the Lord of Mongumry; and ane douchter, Gregane, quhilk was maryit, efter, on the Erle of Cassellis. And efter the deith of the Lord Boyd, this douchter of James the Secound, was maryit on the Lord Hammiltoun: and be that way, the hous of Hammiltoun is decorit in the kingis blude. The tothir sister was maryit on the Lord Creichtoun; and of hir come litill successioun worthy to have memory. James the Thrid maryit Margaret, douchter to the King of Denmark: on hir was gottin, James the Feird; Alexander, quhilk was Bischop of Sanct Androis and Duke of Albany; and Johne Stewart, Erle of Marre: and thay deit baith but ony successioun. James the Feird maryit Margaret, douchter to King Henry the Sevint, and gat on hir, James the Fift; quhilk regnis now with gret felicity above us, the yeir of the translating of thir Croniklis. Bot we will returne to oure history.



## Chap. Sixty.

*How Makbeth slew his Lordis, for the proffet of thair landis and guddis. How he biggit the Castell of Dunsinnane; and slew Makduffis wife and his barnis. Of the orisoun maid to Malcolme Cammore be Makduf.*



A thing succedit happely to Makbeth efter the slauchter of Banquho; for ilk man began to feir his life, and durst nocht compeir quhare Makbeth was. Thus, followit, ilk day, mair displeseir; for quhen this tyrane persavit ilk man havand him in dreid, he began to dreid ilk man in that samin maner; and be that way, he grew maist odious to his subdittis, ay slaing his noblis, or ellis confiscand thair guddis be vane causis. At last, quhen he had gottin gret proffet be slauchter and proscription of his noblis, he began to put his handis mair pertly in thair blud: for he thocht the proffet sa sweit that come to him be slauchter of his noblis, that he nicht not desist thairfra; for he had doubil proffet be that way: first, thay war slane that he dred; and secondly, he gat thair guddis to sustene ane gard of armit men, to defend him fra injure of tham that he suspekkit. Forthir, that he nicht invade the pepil with mair tyranny, he biggit ane strang castel in the hicht of Dunsinnane, ane hill in Gowry, x milis fra Perth. This castel was biggit with infinit expensis; for na stuf nicht be caryit to the samin but gret difficulte: and yit, he ceissit not fra the bigging thairof, bot causit al the thanis of ilk schire to big the said castel, thair cours about. At last, it fel to Makduf, thane of Fif, to big his part of the said castel. And becaus he durst not cum to this werk, in aventure the king put handis in him, as he did afore in othir noblis of the realme, he send craftismen, with al provision; and commandit thame to do sa in his absence, that the king might have na occasion to be movit aganis him. Sone efter, Makbeth come to vesy his castell: and becaus he fand not Makduf present at the werk, he said, "This man wil not obey my chargis, quhill



“ he be riddin with ane mollet bridil : nochtheles, I sall gar him “ draw like ane avir in ane cart.” Fra thenes, he nicht nevir se Makduf with pacience ; othir becaus he thocht his power our gret, or ellis, becaus it wes schawin, be the prophecy of the foresaid wichis, that Makduf suld invaid him with displeseir : and, as oft occurris, quhare ony prince takis suspitioun, ane smal offence is occasion of gret injuris. Finalie, he had slane Makduf be sum slicht, wer nocht ane wiche, in quhom he had gret confidence, said, to put him out of all feir, That he suld nevir be slane with man that wes borne of wife ; nor vincust, quhill the wod of Birnane wer cum to the castell of Dunsinnane. Makbeth, havand gret confidence in thir wourdis, set aside all feir of deith ; and traistit fermely, that he nicht do quhat he plesit, but ony punishment eftir following : for be the ta prophecy, he belevit it wes unpossible to vincus him ; and be the tothir, unpossible to sla him. Bot thir fals illusionis of the devil brocht him to uter confusion, and gart him rage in ithand slauchter of his subdittis, but ony feir of his life. At last, Makduf, disparit of his life, tuk purpos to pas in Ingland, that he nicht bring Malcolme Cammore in Scotland, to resist the tyranny of Makbeth. And yit the samin was not devisit sa secretly, bot Makbeth gat knowlage thairof ; for all kingis, as the proverbe sayis, hes scharp sicht and lang eiris. This Makbeth had, in every gret hous in Scotland, part of men, quhilkis war corruppit be his money, to reveil al thingis said or done in thair housis ; and throw this slicht, he opprest all the noblis of the realme, or thay nicht fulfil thair attemptatis aganis him. This tyrane was ay ful of sollicitude, dreidand to have ane terribil end, for his cruelte ; for that cumis be impulsione of conscience, quhilk bringis every man, that is gilty, in perpetuall sollicitude, but ony securite of his life. On the samin maner, Makbeth, evir in feir of ennimes, for his treasonabil murdir and tyranny ; come haistely, with ane gret power, about Makduffis hous. The men that was in the hous, traisting na evil, oppinnit the yettis. Incontinent, Makbeth entrit, and slew Makduffis wife and hir barnis, with all othir personis that he fand in it ; syne confiscat Makduffis guddis, and put him to the horn. Makduf, banist in this maner, fled in Ingland to Malcolme Cammore, to se gif he nicht find ony way, at his hand, to revenge the slauchter maid sa cruelly on his wife and

barnis. And quhen he was comin to Malcolme, he declarit the gret oppression done to him be Makbeth ; and how the said tyrane was hatit with al his liegis, for the innocent slauchter, baith of his noblis and commonis ; and sindry othir detestabil cruelteis, not worthy to be rehersit. At last, quhen he saw Malcolme sich for compassion of his sorrowis, he said, “ How lang sall thow suffir the murdir of  
 “ thy fader and othir freindis to be unpunist ? Quhen sall thow be  
 “ sariat with the affliction of thy realme ? Quhat dammage have we  
 “ sufferit be thy proscription ? Thow was, that time, of sa tender age,  
 “ that thow micht not debait aganis sa bludy monstoure. And  
 “ thought we condiscendit, sum time, to the election of this tyrane,  
 “ to oure gret dammage ; yit now, for experience of his cruelte, we  
 “ desire nathing mair than to be exonerat thair of. The pepill  
 “ murnis ; accusing thair wilfull ignorance, consenting to sa hie mis-  
 “ chevis in thair awin perdition. And now, thair onely esperance  
 “ is in the ; traisting, be the, to be deliverit of thair calamite. Thair-  
 “ fore, les than the affliction of thy pepil and thy awin proscription  
 “ be thy maist pleseir, dres the to deliver thy pepil of the tyranny be  
 “ thame daily sustenit. For King Edward, the maist humane and  
 “ gracious prince, sal not fail to support the with al pissance, as thow  
 “ desiris : becaus his realm was sumtime opprest be tyrannis ; and  
 “ finaly, deliverit, be grace of God, and his awin manheid, out of  
 “ thair cruel handis. Attour, gif thow knawis not quhat benivo-  
 “ lence thy pepil hes to the, thow may understand sum part be thir  
 “ wordis : Thy pepil ar murdrist in al partis, as this bludy fleschoure  
 “ taikis in heid : and, thairfore, thow nedis not to dout, bot thy  
 “ returning in Scotland sal be richt plesand to all Scottismen ; (for  
 “ thir cruelteis, daily done to us, suld not be lamentit be effeminat  
 “ pepill, bot erar revengit be vailyeant campionis ;) sen thow art  
 “ nocht only savit fra invasion of thy ennimes to better fortoun, bot  
 “ ordanit, be devine providence, to deliver thy pepill of all afflic-  
 “ tionis.”

## Chap. Seventh.

*How Malcolm Cammore schew himself unabil to be King, for his sindry vices. And how he come in Scotland, and was maid King thairof. And of Makbethis deith.*



THOUGHT Malcolme was gretumly commovit for the sindry oppression and crueleis done to Scottis, yit, be gret prudence, he dissimulit his mind, to have the better experience of Makduffis intention; that is to say, to se gif he war cuming to the samin effect as he desirit; or gif he war cumin, be dissait and industry of Makbeth, to betrais him, or put him in his ennimes handis. And thairfore, he answerit, "I am richt sorowful for the trubill falling to my cuntre. And thought I have gret affection thairto, yit, for certane irremediabill vices following me, I am unabill, outhir to govern the realm, or to re-leif the pepill of the trubill that thay presentlie sustene: first, for immoderat lust, the abhominabil fontane of all vices, quhilk ragis in me with sic undantit renyeis, that, gif I wer maid King of Scottis, I suld deflore virginis and matronis in sic maner, that my intemperance suld be mair importabill to yow than the bludy tyranny of Makbeth." To this answerit Makduf, "That is ane evill falt; for mony nobill princis and kingis bene disherist, and tint baith thair life and kingdomis for the samin. Nochtheles, thair is gret plenty of wemen in Scotland; and thairfore, will thow do my counsall, make thyself king. I sall dres that mater sa wisely, that thow sal be satisfyit at thy pleseir, and thy vice sal be unknowin." Than said Malcolme, "I am als, the maist avaricius man in erd: and I wil seik sa mony occasionis to conquest landis or gudis, that I wil sla mony of all the noblis of Scotland be fenyteit causis; to that fine, that I may reiose thair realmes, landis, and guddis. And thairfore, to schaw yow quhat infinite harmes sal cum on yow be my insaciabil avarice, I wil remembir yow ane fabil: Ane tod was ouriset with ane bike of fleis,

“continewally soukand out hir blud. And quhen ane passinger be  
 “the gait had demandit hir, gif scho wald have thir fleis skalit fra  
 “hir body; sho answerit, Na, becaus thir fleis that sat on hir  
 “woundis, war all full of hir blud; and for fouth thair of, sat with  
 “lital displeseir: and gif thay war skalit, utheris, quhilkis war mair  
 “yevy and tume, suld licht in thair rowmes, and souk out the  
 “residew of hir blude; quhilk war unprofftabil. Heirfore, suffir  
 “me remane quhare I am, in adventure sic displeseir fall amang  
 “yow be my unsaciabie avarice, that ye sall eftir chace me out of  
 “your realme with more schame; and think thir displeseiris now  
 “regnand amang yow, bot small, in respect of sic terrible outragis  
 “quhilkis sall appeir sone be my cuming.” To this answerit Mak-  
 duf; “This is ane wer falt than the first; for avarice is the rute  
 “of all mischeif: and the maist part of all our kingis ar slane for  
 “that crime. Nochtheles, mak thyself king, and do my counsall:  
 “thow sall have riches at fouth; for thair is gold and geir ineuch  
 “in Scotland, to satifie the at thy pleseir.” Than said Malcolm:  
 “I am ful of lesingis and dissait, and rejosis in nothing sa mekle as  
 “to betrais all thaim that gevis me credit or traist. And sen na  
 “thing semis mair ane prince, than constance, verite, and justice;  
 “and nathing sa unsemand as falset, treason, and lesingis: thow  
 “may consider how unabil I am to govern ony province or cuntre.  
 “And sen thow hes sa mony rameidis to colour all the laif of my  
 “vics, I pray ye to hide or colour this vice amang the laif.” Than  
 said Makduf: “This is the warst falt of all; and thair I leve the.  
 “O unhappy and miserable Scottis! quhilkis ar scurgit with sa  
 “mony calamiteis, ilk ane abone othir; ye have now ane cursit de-  
 “vill that regnis abone yow but ony titill, and distroyis yow be his  
 “bludy tyranny. This othir, that hes the richt to the crown, is so  
 “repleit with the treasonable maneris and vics of Inglismen, that  
 “he is unworthy to be king; for, be his awin confession, he is nocht  
 “onlie avaricius and gevin to unsaciabie lust, bot so fals ane tra-  
 “tour, that we may nocht trow ane wourd he sayis. Adew, Scot-  
 “land! Now am I banist for evir, but ony confort or consolation.”  
 And with thir wourdis, the teris fast halit ouir his cheikis. At last,  
 quhen he wes makand him to depart, Malcolme tuk him be the sleif,  
 and said, “Be of gud confort; for I have nane of thir faltis: how-



“beit I refusit, onlie to have experience of thy mind; for Makbeth  
 “hes oftymes, be sic wayis, desirit my slauchter. And the more  
 “slaw that I wes to condiscend to thy mind, I sal be the more de-  
 “ligent to fulfill the same.” Incontinent, thay enbrasit othir; and  
 tuk avisement, howe thay micht provide all materis for thair singu-  
 lare and common weil.

Sone efter, Makduf send letteris to the nobillis of Scotland, schaw-  
 ing how Malcolme wes confiderat with him to cum haistely in Scot-  
 land; and prayit thame, sen the said Malcolme wes just heritour  
 to the croun, to assist to him, that he may recover the samin. In  
 the mene time, Malcolme purchest the Erle of Northumbirland to  
 cum with x.m. men, to help him to recover his realme. Thir ti-  
 thingis, fra thay wer schawin in Scotland, drew the nobillis in two  
 sindry factionis; of quhilk, the tane assistit to Makbeth, and this  
 othir to Malcolme: throw quhilk, rais oftymes sindry frequent scar-  
 mussing betwix thir partyis; for the nobillis quhilkis wer of Mal-  
 colmes opinioun, wald nocht jeoperd thame to uter chance of bat-  
 tall, quhil his cuming out of England to thair support. Makbeth,  
 seing, finalie, his ennimes increas ilk day with more pissance, fled in  
 Fif; and abaid, with all his freindis and part-takaris, at Dunsin-  
 nane; with purpos to fecht with his ennimes, erar than to fle out of  
 the realme schamfullie, but ony straik. His freindis gaif counsall,  
 othir to tak peace with Malcolm, or ellis to fle haistelic, with his  
 treasour and gold, in the Ilis; to that fine, that he micht fee sindry  
 gret princis of the realme with his money, to tak part aganis Mal-  
 colme. Nochtheles, he had sic confidence in his fretis, that he be-  
 levit fermely nevir to be vincust, quhil the wod of Birnane war  
 brocht to Dunsinnane; na yit to be slane with ony man borne of  
 ane woman. Malcolme, following haistely on Makbeth, come the  
 nicht afore his victory, to the wod of Birnane. And quhen his army  
 had refreschit thame ane schort time, he commandit ilk man to tak  
 ane branche of the wod, that thay micht come, on the nixt morow,  
 arrayit in the same maner, in his ennimes sicht. Makbeth, seing  
 him cum in this gise, understude the prophecy was completit, that  
 the wiche schew to him; nochtheles, he arrayit his men. Skarsly  
 had his ennimes cassin fra thame the branches, and cumand forth-

wart in battal, quhen Makbeth tuk the flicht : on quhom followit, Makduf, with gret hatrent, saying, "Tratour, now thy insaciabill "cruelte sall have ane end." Than said Makbeth : "Thow fol- "lowis me in vane ; for nane is born of ane woman that may sla "me." Than said Makduf : "I am the same man ; for I was "schorne out of my moderis wambe." Incontinent, he slew Mak- beth, and brocht his heid to Malcolme. This was the end of Mak- beth, efter that he had rounge xvi yeris. In the beginning of his empire, he did mony profitabil thingis for the common weil ; bot sone efter, be illusion of devillis, he was degenerat fra his honest beginning, in maist terribill cruelte ; and slane, fra the incarnation, ane thousand Lxi.

### Chap. Eighth.

*Of the deith of Edmond, Canut, Herald, and Hardy Canut, Kingis of Ingland. How the Crown of Ingland was recoverit fra Danis ; and Godowine weryit, for the innocent slauchter of Alarude.*



Ow we will schaw how the empire of Ingland was tane fra Danis, and restorit to King Edward, just heritour thairrof. Quhen Canute and Edmond had partit the realm of Ingland betwix thame be concord, as said is, the realm was in gud peace foure yeris nixt following ; for ilk ane of thame dred the pissance of othir, ay desiring to have the hail empire of Ingland under thair singular dominion. In the samin time, ane wickit and malivolis man, namit Edrik, tuk purpos to attempt ane hardy vassalage, to cum in favour, as he belevit, to ane of thir two princis. This Edrik, deliverit, in this maner, to have thankis or commoditeis, awaitit, quhen King Edmond was sittand at his eis, and [gaif him] ane straik throw the scheir in his bowellis : throw quhilk, this Edmond deceissit. Edrik, efter this schamefull slauchter, went to Canute, and said, "Hail ! King of al Ingland." Canut, astonist be this salutation, began to demand how the mater stude, mair diligently. And quhen he fand King Edmond slane,

be treason of this unhappy man, he thocht nathing sa gud as to geif him reward according to his treasonabill labour; and gart hing him on ane jebat. Canut, exonerat be this way fra al suspition of Edmond's deith, succedit, with benivolence of the pepill, to the hail empire of Ingland. Sone efter, ane counsal was set: in the quhilk, the noblis deliverit, baith King Edmond's landis, and his 11 sonnys, Edward and Edwin, in the handis of Canut; quhom he, certane yeris, tretit with gret humanites: bot sone efter, he changit his purpos, and thocht to sla thame baith, that the realm might be stabillit to his posterite. Not lang efter, he send thame to Valgarius, Regent of Swedrik, with quiet letteris to sla thame baith. Nochtheles, this regent, knowing the innocent and nobil blude of thir 11 children, was movit with sic reuth, that he send thame baith to Salamon, King of Hungary; and maid Canut understand, that al his chargis wer done as he devisit. Efter deith of Canute, succedit, his son Herald, namit, for his gret swithnes, Hairfut: quhilk rejosit the croun of Ingland twa yeris. Eftir quhome succedit, his brother, Hardy Canut, maist vicious and proud tyrane that evir rang abone Inglismen; for he wald nocht suffir the bonis of his brothir to rest under erd: bot, for unnaturall dispit, tuk up his bonis, and set his heid apoun ane hie staik, quhair maist confluence of pepil wes in London, and kest the residew of his body in Thamys. He maid ane law, that every Inglisman sall bek and discover his heid, quhen he met ane Dane. Gif ane Inglisman and ane Dane come baith to the brig at anis, the Inglisman sal tary, quhill the Dane be past our the brig.

The Inglismen, richt commovit of thir displesand lawis, conspirit aganis the Danis in al partis of Ingland; and callit al thair wageouris to supper, and slew thame all, quhen thay wer ful of winis, on ane nicht. Hardy Canut, heirand al his men put down be this slicht of Inglismen, slew himself be disperatioun. Thus, wes Ingland deliverit fra tyranny of Danis; for schort time eftir, the noblis of Ingland send ane of the gret princis thair of, namit Godowine, quhilk had maryit afore, Canut's douchter, in Normandy, to bring two sonnys of Eldrede in Ingland, and to resave the croun thair of. This Godowine, becaus he maryit Canut's douchter, thocht to conquess the croun to his awin son; and thairfore, at his cuming in Normandy,

he devisit to distroy baith the sonnys of Eldred be poison. The eldest son, namit Alarude, wes slane be this maner ; bot Edward eschapit, be mirakil of God, and come sone eftir in Ingland, quhair he ressavit the croun. Godowine, seing that his attemptatis com not to purpos, durst not return in Ingland, for feir of the treason that he did aganis the said Edward. Nottheles, this Edward wes ane man but ony rankoure ; and sa reuthful to the pepil, that he wes reput ane mirroure of virtew. Quhen Godowine askit grace at him for the slauchter of his brothir, he not onlie remittit the offence, bot als, maid his son Herald, Duk of Oxfurd. And yit, this cruelte done be Godowine wes not lang unpunist : for within schort time eftir, he wes standing at the burd afore King Edward ; and quhen he hard the nobillis lament the deith of Alarude, the kingis brothir, he eit ane pece of breid, and said, “ God gif that breid wory me, “ gif evir I wes othir art or part of Alarudis slauchter.” And incontinent, he fel doun weryit on the breid. The noblis, astonist be this devine punition, gaif loving to God, that he had punist this tyrane : and commandit his body to beryit under the gallous. Bot we wil return to our historie, quhair we left.

### Chap. Ninty.

*Of King Malcolme Cammore and his actis. And how he punist syndry conspiratouris aganis him. Of the deith of King Edward. And how the Bastard of Normandy conquest Ingland.*



ALCOLME CAMMORE, be support of Edward, King of Ingland, recoverit his realme, in the viii yeir of the regne of the said Edward ; and wes crounit at Scone, the xxv day of Aprile ; fra the incarnation, MLXI yeris. Eftir his coronation, he maid ane generall convention of his noblis at Forfair : in the quhilk, he rewardit al tham that assistit to him aganis Makbeth, with landis and offices ; and commandit, that ilk man haif his office and landis namit efter his surname. He maid mony erlis, lordis, baronis, and knichtis. At his cumming, mony of



thane that war thanis afore, war maid erlis; as Fif, Menteth, Athol, Levenox, Murray, Cathnes, Ros, and Angus. Thir war the first erlis amang us, as our Croniklis beris. Mony new surnames come at this time amang us; as, Cauder, Lokart, Gordon, Seyton, Lauder, Mawane, Meldrum, Schaw, Leirmouth, Libertoun, Strachquhen, Cargill, Rattray, Dundas, Cokburn, Mirtoun, Menyeis, Abircrummy, Lesly; with mony othir namis of landis, quhilkis gaif namis to thair possessouris for the time. Otheris gat thair surnamis be officis; as, Stewart, Durward, Banerman. Mony othir proper namis of vailyeant campionis war turnit in general surnamis; as, Kennedy, Grahame, Hay, with mony otheris, quhilkis war our prolix to noumer. In this samin counsal, King Malcolm maid mony civil and religiis lawis, to the honour of God, and proffet of his realm: and gaif to Makduf, Erle of Fif, and his airis, becaus he was principal bringar of him in the realm, III privilegis: first, that the Erle of Fif sal croun the king; the secound, the Erle of Fif sal strik the vangard of al battallis, quhen the king is to pas on his ennimes; the thrid, he sal have fre regalite, to mak officeris with-in him, and to replege his men, gif neid beis, fra the kingis lawis to his regalite. It was ordanit als, be the said counsal, that fre baronis sall mak jebattis, and draw-wellis, for punition of criminabil personis. And amang mony othir his constitutionis, he abrogat al the lawis maid be Makbeth. Quhill King Malcolme was gevin to sic besines, tithingis come, that Lugtak was cumin, with ane gret noumer of pepill, to Scone, and maid himself king. To resist sic fuliche attemptatis, was send, be the kingis auctorite, Makduf, Erle of Fif, quhilk finaly slew the said Lugtak be set batal, and put his company to flicht. Followit, sindry yeris efter, gud peace; quhill at last, ane gret noumer of thevis come in Mers and Louthiane, invading the cuntre with continual heirschip and slauchter. Nochtelikes, thay war finaly tane and justifyit, be Patrik Dunbar of that ilk. Than King Malcolm, that na virtew suld be unrewardit, maid this Patrik Erle of Marche, and gaif to him the landis of Cokburnispeth, under this condition, that in times cuming the Erlis of Marche sal purge Mers and Louthiane of all thevis. In memory heirof, he bure in his baner, ane thevis heid strinklid with blud. Not lang efter, King Malcolme was advertist, that sindry his noblis war con-

spirit aganis him, and devisit his slauchter. Incontinent, but ony feir or dredour, he went pertly to the hunting, quhare his slauchter was devisit, and drew the principal movar thair of in commoning, quhil thay war baith severit fra al cumpany; and incontinent he pullit out his swerd, and said, "Traitor, thow hes devisit my deith; now is best time; debait thyself, and sla me now, gif thow dow." This man that was conspirit aganis him, knawing his singular manheid, fel on his kneis, and desirit grace. The king, seand him penitent, said, "I remit thy offence, sa thow attempt na sic treassonabil dedis in times cuming."

Quhil sic thingis war done in Scotland, Edward, King of Ingland, becaus he had na airis of his body, send his ambassatouris in Ungary, to bring hame the two sonnys of Edmond, namit Edwin and Edward: bot Edwin was mony yeris afore deceissit; and this othir Edward maryit on Agatha, douchter to the King of Ungary: on quhom, he had ane son, namit Edgar; with 11 douchteris, Margaret and Cristine. Sone efter, Edward come with his wife and children in Ingland. At his cuming, King Edward wald have resignit to him the croun: howbeit, he refusit it, saing, He wald not be so inhumane, to take the croun during his onclis life. Heir is ane thing to be in admiration to al pepil: ane man refusit the croun offerit frely to him with benivolence: quhilk al pepill covatis with maist desire; regarding na cruelte that may follow, be fire or swerd, to succeid to ane kingdom. And yit, the felicite of thir 11 princis succedit not lang to Ingland; for Edward of Ungary sone efter deceissit: throw quhilk, King Edward, his oncle, tuk sic dolour, that he sone efter deceissit. Followit than, gret contention for the croun of Ingland; for thocht the same pertent justly to Edgar, nepot to King Edward, afore deceissit, yit the noblis assistit to Herald, Erle of Oxford, son to Godowine, afore rehersit. Als sone as Herald was maid King of Ingland, he began to govern the realm in gud justice, ceissing fra al slauchter; as sindil is sene with thame that usurpis the croun be wrangus menes. He sufferit als, Edgar, with his mider and sisteris, to pas at liberte in al boundis quhare thay list, howbeit the said Edgar was richtuis air to the croun; and thairfore apperit, that he had fortoun in contemption, beleving na thing nicht succeid aganis his felicite. Nochtheles, Agatha, havand

suspition of trubil efter following, kepit hir son Edgar secretly in hir chalmer. Quhil at last, King Herald, as na besines war to do at hame, tuk purpos to pas in Flanderis ; and was drevin, be contrarius windis, in Normandy, amang his unfreindis ; for Godowin afore slew Alarud, quhilk was nepot to William, Bastard of Normandy. Als sone as he was presentit to the said duk, he said, with dissimilit and fals mind, That he send not, as othir kingis usit, ambassatouris to do his erandis ; bot was comin, in proper person, to treit mariage betwix him and the said Duk of Normandy. William, Duk of Normandy, suspekand na dissait under his wordis, gaif sic credit, that he condiscendit to geif his douchter to him in mariage. Belive, ane day was set, and the mariage maid with al solempnite that micht be deviset, to the gret pleseir of al the pepil, baith of Normandy and Ingland. Within certane dayis efter, King Herald returnit, with his new wif, in Ingland ; havand with him, mony noblis of Normandy, for affection, as apperit, of his new wife. Nochtheles, fra he was cummin to London, he commandit, be general edict, al the Normanis to depart of his realm, within IIII dayis, under pane of deith. And nocht satisfyit of this injure, he causit his unhappy limmaris to defoule his lady. And efter that he had causit thame to cut hir eris, he send hir agane, in ane fischer-bait, in Normandy. William, Bastard and Duk of Normandy, movit with this insufferabil injure, arrivit with ane army in Ingland ; and efter his cuming, brint al his schippis, that his folkis micht have na esperance of flicht ; bot outhir do vailyeantly with thair handis, or ellis schamfully to de. Finaly, he faucht with Herald at Townisbrig, and spulyeit him baith of his life and kingdome at anis ; and was crounit sone efter, at Westminster, be Eldred, Archebischof of York, the xxv day of December, the yeir of God, ane M LXVI yeris.

## Chap. Tenth.

*How King Malcolm maryit Sanct Margaret, and ressavit al hir freindis in Scotland. How sindry armyis of Ingland war discomfist be Scottis ; and how peace was maid betwix Inglismen and Scottis.*



EDGAR seing the crown of Ingland conquest, as said is, be the bastard of Normandy, was disparit to succed, ony way, to the crown. And thairfor, to eschew al dangear appering, he gat ane schip, with purpos to return, with his moder and sisteris, in Ungary. Nochtheles, be contrar windis, he arrivit in ane part of Forth, callit The Quenes Ferry. King Malcolme, quhilk was this time in Dunfermeling, heirand the cuming of this schip, send his familiaris to se quhat pepil thay war, laity arrivit in his watter, and to inquire thame quhat thay desirit. Als sone as he understude thay war Inglismen, and descendit of King Edward, quhilk did sumtime to him sa mony pleseiris ; he come, with ane honourabill cumpany, to the schip quhare thay war. Edgar, on the samin maner, arrayit him, with his moder and sisteris, in thair best avise ; and was ressavit be King Malcolme with maist tendernes, and brocht within his palice. Schort time efter, King Malcolme, seand the excellent bewte, wisdom, and gud maneris of Margaret, eldest sister to the said Edgar, proponit to Agatha, hir moder, to have hir in mariage : and Agatha, knowing weil hir douchter not abil to get sa nobil ane prince in this warld, condiscendit glaidly to his desiris. Sone efter, be convention of al the noblis of Scotland, efter the Octavis of Pasche, Quene Margaret and King Malcolme war spousit, with maist triumphe and honour that micht be devisit.

William, the bastard of Normandy, and conquerour of Ingland, heirand this mariage betwix King Malcolme and Quene Margaret, dred that sindry factionis suld follow in his realme, be assistance of Edgaris freindis ; and, thairfore, he banist al the linnage and blude



that pertenit to the said Edgar. Be this proscrition of Edgaris freindis, thair come ane gret nowmer of pepill in Scotland to King Malcolme; and mony of thame gat landis fra him, for thair honest behavingis: amang quhome war Lindesay, Waus, Ramsay, Lovel, Towris, Prestoun, Sandelandis, Bissart, Sowlis, Wardlaw, Maxwel, with othir sindry. Attour, thair come gret nowmer of pepill out of Ungary, to Quene Margaret; as Creichton, Fotringham, Giffart, Melvil, Borthwik. Mony othir surnames, be sindry chancis of time, come out of France in Scotland; as Fraseir, Sinclare, Boswel, Mowtray, Montgummery, Campbel, Boyis, Betoun, Tailyefer, and Bothwel; with mony othir, quhilk we may not schaw for prolixite of time. Thir men, that come out of Ingland to Edgar, brocht mekil silver and gold with thame, with mony haly reliquies, quhilkis wer haldin in gret reverence amang us.

In the mene time, William, the Conquerour of Ingland, send his herald to Malcolme, desiring Edgar to be deliverit in his handis; certifying, gif he refusit, he suld tak him be force of battal. King Malcolme, notwithstanding this gret minassing of King William the Conquerour, gaif plane repuls to his desiris, and said thay war not respondent to equite. King William, for this repuls, denuncit weir to Scottis. In the mene time, al the pepil of Northumbirland assistit to King Malcolm; for he was thair erlis sister son. Sone efter, King William send ane vailyeant capitane of the blud rial of Normandy, namit Roger, with ane army, in Northumbirland. Howbeit, he abaid schort time in honour; for he was discomfist be Scottis and Northumbrianis. King William, litil affrayit of this discomfitour, send the Duk of Glocester, with ane new army, in Cumbir; aganis quhom war send the Erlis of Marche and Menteith, and keptit the boundis of Scotland fra al invasion of the said Duk. King William, herand na vassalage done be the said Duk, send ane new army, with mair pissance than afor, in Northumbirland. Be this last army, ane gret noumer, baith of Scottis and Northumbrianis, war vincust and slane. King Malcolm, movit with thir injuris, rasit ane army of al pepil under his dominion, and, be support of the Northumbrianis, followit, with na les deligence than hatrent, on this army of Ingland, and, with infinit slauchter, put

thame to flicht. King William, na thing brokin with thir disple-seris, send his son Robert, with greter power than afore, in North-umbirland: and quhen he had remanit lang time at the Watter of Tyne, and durst assailye na thing worthy to have memory, he maid peace betwix the two kingis, under thir conditionis: “ King Malcolme sall have that part of Northumbirland quhilk lyis betwix “ Tweid, Cumbir, and Stanemure; and sal mak homage to all “ Kingis of Ingland for that samin: and in middis of Stanemure “ sal be ane croce, with the King of Inglandis image on the ta side, “ and the King of Scotlandis on the tothir; to signify the tane sal “ be marche of Ingland, and this othir of Scottis.” This croce is callit, now, The Recroce; that is to say, The Croce of Kingis. “ Attoure, Voldosius, sonne to the Erle of Nortumbirland, sal “ have King Williamis cosingnais in mariage; and sal be male fre, “ for xx yeris eftir following.”

### Chap. Eleventh.

*How King Malcolme dantit sindry conspiratouris in his realme. Of his gret devotion, and liberalite to the kirk. With ane complaint of riotus cheir.*



**E**FTIE that the two kingis wer aggreit in this maner, followit, in Scotland, part of trubill. The men of Galloway and Ilis rais, with gret noumer of pepil, and maid gret slauchter and heirschippis in all partis quhare thay come. King Malcolme, to punis thir attemptatis, send Walter, the sonne of Fleance afore rehersit, with ane band of chosin men, in Galloway. Finalie, this Walter dantit all thir limmaris with sic felicite, that he wes maid Stewart of Scotland, and callit Stewart to his surname. Eftir that this truble wes dantit in this wise, followit ane othir of gretar motion. The Murrays gaderit to thair opinioun the inhabitantis of Ros, Caithnes, with sindry othir pepill thairabout; and nocht onlie slew the kingis servandis and ministeris of justice, bot, be assistance of Makduncane, maid mair heirschippis and slauch-

ter than wes hard ony time afore. To punis thir cruelteis, wer send Makduf, with ane army, in Mar. The inhabitantis thairof, astonist be his cumming, thocht na thing sa gud as to stop his invasion be thair money. In the mene time, happinnit King Malcolme to cum to Monymusk, and gat advertising, that al the north partis of Scotland and the Ilis wer confiderat with thir Murrayis aganis him. The King, affrayit be thir tithingis, demandit his thesaurar, gif ony landis wer in thay boundis pertenant to the croun. And fra he wes advertist that the barony of Monymusk pertenit thairto, he vowit it to Sanct Andro, to send him victory. At last, quhen he wes cuming to Spay, and fand his ennimes of greter power than he nicht resist, he espyit his baner-man, for feir of ennimes, trimbland, and not passand so pertlie forwart as he desirit. Incontinent, he pullit the baner fra him, and gaif it to Schir Alexander Carron, quhilk gat mony riche landis for that samin office. Bot his name wes turnit, efter, to Skrimgeour; of quhilk is descendit ane nobil hous, perseverand yit, in gret honour, under the samin surname. Quhen King Malcolme wes cuming our Spay, quhair the armyis wer reddy to fecht on al sidis, thay wer severit be intervention of prelat; and trewis tane under thir conditionis: "The commonis sal return hame, and the noblis sal submit thame to the kingis will, thair livis and landis saif." Nottheles, mony of thaim war spulyeit of thair guddis, and haldin in preson to the end of thair life.

Sic thingis done, King Malcolme, be persuasion of his haly quene, gaif him haill to virtew, and began to do haly werkis in sic maner, that he excellit all othir men in his days in fervent devotion; and was sa obedient to his haly quene, that he left na thing undone, that pertenit to werkis of piete. The devotion of thir two haly levaris brocht mony pepill, be thair imitation, to clene life. Thay contendit quhilk of thaim suld be maist fervent in the luf of God. Agatha and hir othir douchter, movit to religious maneris be example of thir two haly levaris, left the cumpany of pepill, and went to ane privat and solitare life, gevand thaim haill to thair contemplation. It is said, the peace beand maid betwix Inglismen and Scottis, Edgar went to William, King of Ingland: quhare he gat certane landis to sustene his estait; and become sa familiar to him,

that he was haldin with him in gret felicity to the end of his life. Forthir, King Malcolme ceissit not, be imitation of his wife, to do gud werkis; and gaif his extreme diligence to recover the thing that was tint afore, be negligence of his predecessouris.

Afore this time, war in Scotland bot foure bischoprikis; Sanct Andros, Glasgew, Galloway, and Murthlak. Sanct Andros and Murthlak stude in that samin maner as thay stand now; bot Galloway and Glasgew war all desert, quhil thay war restorit to thair auld dignite be King Malcolme, and two bischoprikis eikit to thame, Murray and Cathnes. It is said, that sic insolence rais, that time, amang our eldaris, quhen the maneris, langage, and superflew cheir of Inglismen come first amang us, that the noblis went to King Malcolme, and lamentit hevely, that this venomus pest was burgeand fast, in perdition of his pepil; and prayit him to remeid the samin, that the pepill might leif with sic temperance as thair eldaris did afore: for our eldaris eit nocht bot anis on the day, desiring na superflew metis quhilkis war socht curiously be see and land; bot allanerly desirit sa mekill as nature requirit to thair necessar sustentation, havand thair bodyis in ithand exercitioun: throw quhilk thay grew mair strang, and greter of bodyis, than we ar in thir dayis; for thay war like giandis, with gret bodyis, gret armes and leggis, cumand like feirs lionis aganis thair ennimes, and war not astonist thairwith: for thay passit al strenth of man that is in thir dayis. King Malcolme tuk gret laubouris to expell this sproutand pest fra his pepil: nochtheles, the ingine of man is sa unhappy, that it is mair reddy to evil than ony gud werkis. Howbeit the Scottis war afore content of scarsnes, knawing na intemperat nor riotus surfet; yit, fra thay taistit the venomus bait thair of, it inccressit ilk day sa far, that na thing might refrene the samin. And yit the riotus and superflew maneris quhilkis war brocht in this realme be cuming of Inglismen with King Malcolme, ar of litil comparison to sic thingis as ar usit in our dayis. In thay dayis, the nature of man was not sa ouerset with superflewiteis as now: for than the pepill eit bot twyis on the day, and had bot two courssis; bot now the avaricious taist of manniss wambe is sa desirus, that na frute growing under the hevin, be land or see, may be sufficient to satisfy the hungry appetit of gluttonis; na man sa estimet, nor yit commendit,



as he that may swellie maist ; comparit justlie to the nature of greedy wolffis. Bot it proffettis litill to complane be my wourdis ; for this roust is ron sa far, that it may be purgit be na maner of way. The pepill sal be erar alluterlie distroyit, or this vice be brocht away.

### Chap. Twelfth.

*Of the Deith of King William, bastard of Normandy. Of sindry noble actis done be King Malcolme. Of the Deith of the said Malcolme and Sanct Margaret. And of sindry mervellis sene in Albion.*



UHL sic thingis wer done in Scotland, King William the Conquerour deceissit, the xx yeir of his regne ; fra the incarnation, MLXXXVI yeris : and left behind him III sonnys, Robert, Duke of Normandy ; William with the reid face, quhilk succedit efter him to the crown of England ; and Henry Bewcleir, to quhom he left gret riches and jowellis.

About this time, King Malcolme kest down the auld kirk of Durame ; and biggit it fra the ground, with gret magnificence. The priour of this abbay wes namit Turgot, quhilk wes, efter, maid Bischop of Sanct Andros, and wrait the livis of Sanct Margaret and Malcolme, in vulgare langage. He deceissit in Sanct Andros, bot his body wes brocht to Durame, becaus he wes prior sumtime thair-of. King Malcolme, be persuasion of this Turgot, biggit ane kirk in Dunfermeling, quhilk wes ordanit to be the common sepulturis of all Kingis of Scotland in times cuming. Attour, quhay list to know the life of King Malcolme Cammore, and his blissit quene, Sanct Margaret, may returne to the said Turgot, quhilk schawis the samin at lenth. Amang mony werkis quhilkis he did, it wes not litill to be commendit, that he abrogat the wickit lawe maid be King Ewin the Thrid, and commandit half ane mark of money to be payit to the lord of the ground, in redemptioun of the womannis chastite and honour ; callit, yit, The Merchētis of Wemen. This

law wes nocht unlik to the thing that wes usit in ane town nocht far fra Lovane, quhare the gudman redemit the use of his wife with gret soumes of money, fra the lord of the ground.

King William with the reid face, eftir that he had ressavit the croun of Ingland, invadit the kirk with intollerable injuris; and reft fra the samin all landis and rentis quhilk wer gevin to it afore. He kest doun mony abbayis; for thay wer, as he alliegit, impediment to his hunting. He slew al his nobillis that wer repugnant to his doingis; and banist Anselme, Bischop of Canterbery, and wald suffir nane of his linnage to abide in his realme, becaus he reprevit his doingis. Finalie, herand that Scottis had ane gret part of Cum-bir and Northumbirland, he rasit his army, and invadit thame with gret slauchter, afore ony weris wer denuncit to thame. At last, he tuk the castell of Anwik, and slew all pepil found in it. King Malcolme, to resist sic thingis in the beginning, come with ane army in Northumbirland, and segit the castel of Anwik. And quhen the castel, be lang segeing, wes reddy to be randerit, ane knight of Ingland, intending to do ane hardy vassalage, come, on ane swift hors, out of the castell, but armour, beirand the keyis of the castel on his speir point; to signify, the castel reddy to be randerit. The wache, seand him cum in sic maner, tuke na suspition; bot brocht him, with gret noyis and clamour, to the kingis palyeon. The king, heirand the noyis, come out of the palyeon, to se the cause thair of. In the mene time, this Inglisman held out the keyis to King Malcolme; and quhen the king wes lukand maist diligently thairto, this Inglisman ran him throw the left ee, and fled haistelie to the nixt wod. Thus wes the king slane, in middis of all his army. It is said that King William of Ingland changit the surname of this hardy knight, and callit him Pers-e: of quhome is descendit ane noble hous, under the same surname, decorit with gret honouris, callit the Erllis of Nortumbirland. The Scottis, eftir slauchter of King Malcolme, skalit fra the sege, and returnit hame; and buryit King Malcolme in the Abbay of Tinmouth, within Ingland. Bot he wes tane up efter, be Alexander, his son; and buryit in Dunfermeling, before the Trinite alter. Eftir deith of King Malcolme, followit new displeseir; for Edward, Prince of Scotland, eldest son

to King Malcolm, deceissit, throw ane wond that he gatt at ane scarinus, nocht far fra Anwik; and wes buryit in Dunfermeling. Quene Margaret, heirand the deith of hir husband and hir son, fel in malancoly, and decessit, the thrid day efter. King Malcolm wes slane the xxv yeir of his regne; fra our redemption, mxcvii yeris.

The samin time, mony uncouth mervellis wer sene in Albion. Be inundation of the Almane Seis, mony townis, castellis, and wodis wer drounit, baith in Ingland and Scotland: and in this yeir, al the landis of Godowine, be spait of seis, wes coverit with sandis; and thairfore it is callit Godowine Sandis. The pepil belevit this vengeance cumin to him and his posterite for the slauchter of Alarude, as we haif schawin. Sindry castellis and townis in Murray wer cassin doun be the see fludis. Sic thundir rais, that baith men and beistis wer slane, and gret housis cassin doun. In Louthiane, Fiffe, and Angus, grene treis and cornis tuk neid-fire.

In the time of King Malcolme, was ane Generall Counsal haldin at Clairmont; in the quhilk, Urbane, the secound of that name, institute the houris and matinis of the Blissit Virgine Mary, to be said daily in hir loving; and commandit the pepill to have hir in speciall remembrance ilk Satterday: for on Satterday efter Gud Friday, the Cristin faith was tint in all erdly creaturis, saif in her allanerly. The samin time, Licia, quhilk is ane gret part of Asia, was distroyit be the Sarayenis; and the bonis of Sanct Nicholas brocht out of the samin, to Barre.

### Chap. Thirteenth.

*Of King Donald the VII; and how the sonnys of King Malcolme fled in Ingland. How Duncane, bastard son to King Malcolme, usurpit the crown, and was slane for his tyranny. How Edgar recoverit his realm. And of the deith of Donald.*



ALCOLME had VI sonnys with Sanct Margaret: Edward, quhilk was slane, as said is; Etheldred, quhilk deit in his tender age, and buryit in Dunfermeling; Edmond, quhilk renuncet the warld, and leiffit ane haly life in Ingland. The tothir III war namit Edgar, Alexander, and David. Sum authouris sayis, this Edmond was put in preson, and slane be his oncle, Donald Bane. This Donald, as we schew afore, fled in the Ilis to eschew the tyranny of Makbeth: and efter the deith of King Malcolme, his brothir, he returnit in Scotland, be support of the King of Norroway; for he promittit to geif the Ilis of Scotland to perpetual dominion of the said king, sa that he optenit the crown be his support. Donald, finaly, tuk the crown with small difficulte; for the pepil detesting the riotus and intemperat maneris brocht amang thaim be Inglismen, assentit sone to his opinioun; and traistit, becaus he was nurist with thair auld customis and gud maneris, to recover, be his severite, the temperance of thair auld progenitouris. Als sone as Edgar, bruthir to Quene Margaret, wes advertist that Donald Bane had tane the crown of Scottis, he brocht quietlie his thre nepotis, Edgar, Alexander, and David, with thair twa sisteris, in Ingland. And quhen he had kept thaim certane time, ane knicht, namit Organus, movit of malice, and traisting to get reward thairfore, accusit him of treason, saying, He nurist his sister sonnys and douchteris within Ingland, to be heritouris to the crown thairrof. Bot this malice wes nocht lang unpunish; for the said Organe wes slane be ane freind of Edgar, quhilk assistit to the said Edgar, and defendit his action in singular battall, to the deith. Quhen Donald had ressavit the crown at Scone, he fand



part of the nobillis nocht afald to his opinion, havand more benevolence to the childrin of King Malcolme than to him: and for that cause, he said amang his familiaris, efter collation, that his nobillis suld haistelie repent thair doingis, les than thay applyit thame to his opinionis. Bot thir wourdis war depar prentit in thair mindis than he belevit. In the mene time, Schir Duncane, bastard son to King Malcolme, wes send out of Ingland, be support of King William with the reid face, to put King Donald fra the croun. King Donald, advertist of his cuming, met him with ane army; and quhen the battallis wer reddy to june, mony of the noblis and commonis of Scotland com fra Donald to Schir Duncane. Thus, wes Donald constrainit to flee in the Ilis. Schir Duncane come haistely with his victorius army to Scone, and tuk the crown. And becaus he wes more exercit in chevalry than ony administratioun of justice, he traistit nathing just nor richt, bot as it succedit be swerd and richt of battal. Followit, infinite trubill and devisionis in the realme. Donald Bane heirand thir devisionis amang the lordis, solistit Makpender, Erle of Mernis, to assist to his opinion; and finalie, slew King Duncane slepand in his bed, eftir that he had rounge ane yeir and ane half. And becaus this Duncane wes ane tyrane gevin to cruelte and blude, few menit his slauchter, or thocht it evil done. Eftir his slauchter, Donald wes restorit to the croun; quhilk he brukit afore Schir Duncane, ane yeir and vi monethis; and sa the realme wes in continewall trubill iii yeris, be thair tyranny. The nobillis socht mony occasionis to finis his empire. In the mene time, rais gret slauchteris and heirschippis in al partis of the realme. And nochtwithstanding this division and trubill amang the lordis, yit the weris continewit aganis Inglismen. Howbeit, nathing followit worthy to haif memorie.

Nocht lang eftir, Magnus, King of Norroway, come, with ane flote of schippis, about al the Ilis of Scotland; and garnist all the strenthis thair of with men, munition, and vittallis; and maid the samin lawis and institutionis quhilkis ar yit usit in the Ilis. The Scottis, havand gret indignation that the Ilis of Scotland suld pas under uncouth empire, send thair oratouris to Edgar, quhilk wes fourt son to Malcolme, desiring him, with gret instance, to recover his faderis

heritage and croun of Scotland. Edgar sone eftir send his ambassaturis to his eme, Donald ; promitting, gif he wald exoner him of the croun plesandlie, sen it pertenit nocht to him, to deliver to him gret lordschippis in Louthiane. Thir ambassaturis, be cruelte of King Donald, wer finalie slane. Edgar, richt desirus to revenge thir injuris, come in Scotland, with ane gret power, be support of William, King of England. And quhen he wes cuming to Durame, he gat ane visioun in his sleip : Gif he rasit the baner of Sanct Cuthbert, he suld haif victorie. On the morow, he enterit in the abbay of Sanct Cuthbert, quhair he gart do devine service with maist reverence : and sone efter, as he wes commandit in his vision, he displayit Sanct Cuthbertis baner. Nochtheles, King Donald met him with arrayit oistis : and eftir lang battall, he wes chasit in the Ilis, quhair he wes tane ; and finalie, brocht to Edgar, and put in preson, quhare he sone eftir deceissit. Edgar, efter this victory, went to Dunfermeling, to vesy the sepulturis of his blissit modir, Sanct Margaret, and his remanent brethir ; syne maid ane convention of his nobillis at Scone : quhare he ressavit the croun ; and wes ointit be Godrik, Bischop of Sanct Andros, the yeir of God, m c and ane yeir : for Sanct Margaret purchest, schort time afore hir deceis, fra Paip Urbane, that efter hir, al Kingis of Scotland suld be ointit ; and, thairfore, Edgar was the first King of Scottis that was ointit. This privilege was confermit efter be Paip Johne, the secound of that name.

## Chap. Fourteenth.

*Of the vassalage done be sindry Cristin princis in the Haly Land. How Mald, eldest douchter to King Malcolme, was maryit on the King of Ingland ; and the youngest douchter maryit on the Erle of Bolony. Of thair succession ; and of the deith of King Edgar.*



Wo yeir afore the coronation of King Donald, mony nobill men passit to the haly land ; amang quhom was Robert, Duk of Normandy ; Godofrid, Duk of Lorne ; the Erle of Blasen ; the Erle of Flanderis ; with mony othir princis of France. And becaus thay went to invaid the Sarayenis, and gaif large feis to thair men of armis, thay gaderit ane army of mair pissance and nowmer of pepil than ever was sene afore. This army went first throw Grece and Constantinople ; syne com throw the seis callit Hellespontus, with displayit baner, to litill Asia ; and wan ane strang toun, namit Antioche, in the land of Syria : quhare thay war warnit be ane vision of Sanct Andro the appostil, that the speir-heid that persit Cristis hart, was hid under the erd in the kirk of Sanct Peter. Finaly, efter mony strang townis tane be thame, thay tuk Jerusalem, the heid toun of Jowry ; fra our redemption, mxcix-yeir. And becaus the Haly Land was recoverit in this maner fra Sarayenis, the pepil maid frequent processionis throw al partis of Cristindome, gevand loving to Almichty God for thir happy victoryis falling to Cristin princis.

Efter this, fell ane gret contention amang thame, quha suld be King of Jowry : ilk ane refusit that honour, and knawing himself not worthy to sustene sa gret charge. At last, be general vocis, Robert, Duk of Normandy, was chosin to be king : nochtheles, becaus he was advertist that his brothir, King William of Ingland, with the reid face, was deceissit, but ony airis of his body, he refusit the croun of Jowry ; traisting mair expedient for him to have the empire of Ingland, with the duchery of Normandy, than to be King of Jowry : and, thairfore, he gaif his richt thairof to the Duk

of Lorane. Sic thingis done, mony of thir Cristin princis returnit hame. Robert, Duk of Normandy, was frustrat baith of the croun of Jowry and Ingland; for, efter that he had refusit to reiose the croun of Jowry, he was preventit be his brothir, Hary Bewcleir, of the croun of Ingland. This Hary Bewcleir maryit Mald, eldest sister to King Edgar of Scotland: and King Edgaris secound sister, namit Mary, was maryit on Eustachius, Erle of Bolony; and bure to him ane douchter, quhilk was heritoure to Bolony, and was maryit efter on Stevin, Erle of Marche, in Ingland, quhilk succedit immediatly to the croun thairof; for he was nepot to King Hary Bewclere, as we sal efter schaw. This Hary Bewcleir gat on Mald, first sister to King Edgar, two sonnys, namit Richard and William, and two douchteris, namit Effem and Mald. Bot we wil return to our history.

King Edgar, for the benivolence schawin to him be Sanct Cuthbert, gaif al the landis of Coldinghame to the monkis of Durame; and gaif the town of Berwik to Canulphus, Bischop of Duram. And becaus this Canulphus committit sindry treasonabil dedit aganis King Edgar, he tint baith the keping of Berwik, and was deprivat of his benefice. Quene Mald, efter that scho was maryit on King Hary Bewcleir, gaif hir to singular virtew, following the life of hir blissit moder, Sanct Margaret: throw quhilk, scho was ane mirrour of gud leving to all pepil of Ingland. King Edgar had na uncouth weris nor trubil in his dayis, and governit his realme in gud peace, and was haldin in mair veneration than terroure amang his pepil; quhil at last, he deceissit, the ix yeir of his regne, at Dundee; and was buryit in Dunfermeling; fra our redemption, M and ix yeris.



## Chap. Fifteenth.

*Of King Alexander the First. How King David, his brothir, was maid Erle of Huntingtoun and Northumbirland. Of the weris maid betwix Hary Bewcleir and France. Of his dolour in the deith of his sonnys. And of the deith of King Alexander.*



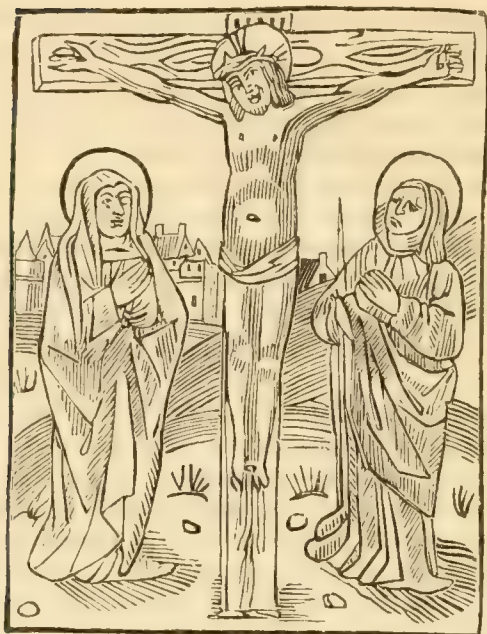
FTER deith of King Edgar, succedit, the v son of Malcolme, namit Alexander the Feirs, becaus he dantit thevis with singular manheid. In the beginning of his regne, the Murrayis and Rossis seing him continually exercit in sic contemplative materis as his fader and moder usit afore, maid divers reiffis and extorsionis in the cuntre, with gret slauchter, baith of men, wiffis, and barnis, quhare thay come. King Alexander, to dant thir attemptatis, come with sic diligence on thir conspiratouris, that thay war finaly tane, and punist to the deith. At his returning hame, ane woman fell on knees afore him, in dolorus array, complening that baith hir son and husband war slane be the Maister of Mernis. King Alexander, movit with this pietuus complaint, lichtit doun of his hors; and come never on him, quhil he saw the erlis son hingit for his offence. Sic thingis done, he tuk purpos, in his returning, to repare the castell of Baledgar, quhilk was foundit afore be King Edgar, in Gowry: quhair gret multitude of thevis usit to remane in the wod, invading the pepill oftymes with slauchter and heirschippis. The king gat certane landis fra the Erle of Gowry, and annexit thame to this castel. Yit, quhen he was biging this castel with maist diligence, the thevis tuk sic feir, dredand that the said castel suld be ane awband aganis thame, that thay conspirit aganis him, and corruppit his cubicularis with money, to suffer thame to ly in wait within ane closat of this castel, that thay nicht cum, within the nicht, to sla the king quhen he was sleipand. Nochtheles, sone efter thair cuming within the chalmer, the king was advertist, be providence of God; and pullit haistely his sward, quhilk was hingand on his bed-heid: and slew first, his

cubicular, becaus he was participant with thair treason ; and finaly, he slew sex of thir limmaris, be support, allanerly, of God and his awin handis. The residew of thir limmaris, effrayit on this maner, fled with al deligence thay micht : nochtheles, mony of tham war tane and brocht afore the king. Als sone as thay war demandit for quhat occason or motive thay pretendit the kingis slauchter, thay schew that thay war solistit thairto be advise of sindry gret baronis of the cuntre. Finaly, the king gat sicker information quhat the personis war that devisit his slauchter ; and incontinent, he gaderit ane gret cumpany of men to pas on thame. Nochtheles, afore the king was cumin to Spay, thir conspiratouris gaderit all the power thay micht, to resist his ouircuming. The king, seing thame gaderit on this wise, send his banerman, Schir Alexander Carron, with ane cumpany of chosin men, our Spay : be quhais cuming, thir conspiratouris war vincust, and mony of thaim tane and punist to the deith. Mony yeris efter this punition, followit, gret tranquillite in this realme. This Alexander Carron, be his singular vassalage, slew sindry of thir conspiratouris, with ane crukit swerd, afore the king, and was callit, thairfore, Skrimgeour ; that is to say, ane scharp fechter : and, for his singular vassalage, he gat armis ; in quhilkis, is ane lion rampand, with ane crukit swerd. Otheris sayis, that he was callit Skrimgeour becaus he slew ane Inglisman in singular battall. The principall of this surname is Constable of Dundee ; and hes in his baner, ane crukit swerd, in maner of ane huke.

Sic thingis done, King Alexander biggit the abbay of Scone, of channonis regulare, and dedicat it in the honour of the Trinite and Sanct Michael. Nocht lang efter, King Alexander come in Sanct Colmes Inche : quhair he was constraunt, be violent tempest, to remane thre dayis, sustenand his life with skars fude, be ane heremit that dwelt in the said inche : in quhilk, he had ane litill chapell, dedicat in the honoure of Sanct Colme. Finaly, King Alexander, becaus his life was saiffit be this heremit, biggit ane abbay of channonis regular, in the honour of Sanct Colme ; and dotat it with sindry landis and rentis, to sustene the abbot and convent thair of. Sic thingis done, he dotat the kirk of Sanct Andros with certane landis, namit The Bairrink ; becaus ane bair, that did gret injuris to the pepill, was slane in the said feild. The teith of this bair ar sextene

inche lang, and foure inche thik ; and hingis now with chenyeis, on the stallis of the queir, before the hie alter of Sanct Andros. This Alexander completit the abbay of Dunfermeling, and dotat it with mony landis and possessionis. Quhill King Alexander was gevin to sic besines, his brothir David levid in Ingland with his sister Quene Mald, and maryit Mald, the bastard of Normandyis wife, quhilk was douchter to Woldosius, Erle of Huntingtoun and Northumbirland ; and throw this mariage he was maid Erle of Huntington and Northumbirland ; and gat on his wife the heritoure foresaid, ane sonne, namit Hary : be quhome, the landis of Huntington and Northumbirland war eikit to the crown of Scotland, as we sall efter schaw.

At this time, Mald, douchter to King Hary Bewcleir, was maryit on Hary, the fourt Romane Emprioure ; and sone efter, Quene Mald deceissit : quhais body was buryit in Westnureland ; fra oure redemptioun, ane thousand, ane hundred, and twenty yeris. The thrid yeir efter, deceissit, Mary, Countes of Bolony, ane woman of singulare devotioun ; as hir epitaph eschawis, above hir sepulture, at London, in the abbay of Sanct Salvatour. Efter the deith of Mald, King Hary had thre yeris continewall weir aganis France, with sindry chance of battall ; bot at last, peace was maid betwix the two realmes of Ingland and France. In the mene time, King Hary was returnand with his navy in Ingland ; quhen suddandlie thair rais sa vehement tempest in the seis, that his thre sonnis, namit William, Richard, and Effem, perist, with all the remanent pepill that was in thair navy. King Hary, destitute of all his children in this wise, saif onely Mald, his douchter, quhilk was maryit on the Romane Emprioure, tuke sic displeseir, that he wald suffer na consolation nor blithnes to be maid in his palice. Followit, nocht but afflictioun and doloure in all partis of his realme : ilk man clothit in dule weid. It is said, that he tuke sic malancoly for the tinsall of his sonnis, that he leucht nevir efter, during his life, nor tuke nevir consolatioun in his mind. Schort time efter, King Alexander deceissit, but airis of his body ; and was buryit in Dunfermeling, beside his faderis sepulture, the xvii yeir of his regne ; fra our redemptioun, ane thousand, ane hundred, and xxv yeris.



### Chap. Sixteenth.

*How King David past to the Huntis on the Croce Day in hervest.*

*How he was doung fra his hors be ane wild Hart. And how he foundit the Abbay of Halyrudhous, be miracle of the Haly Croce.*



**I**N the time of King Alexander, the Cummingis tuke thair beginning, be Johne Cummin; quhilk, be his singulare manheid and virtew, wes promovit to sindry landis in Scotland. Thir Cummingis, of smal beginning, spred in gret nowmer of pepill, and grew sa hie in manrent and pissance of landis, that thair gret power and importabil hicht, as oft times occurris in this realme, was the caus of thair declination and finall ruine; as we sall, efter, heir.

At this time began the ordoure of chevalry, and knightis of Rodis. At this time began the ordoure of quhit monkis; of quhilkis ar now



mony religious placis, ful of devoit men, in all partis of the world. And at this time, Sanct Bernard decorit the ordoure of Cistuus, with singulare eruditoun and haly life. This ordoure began be Sanct Robert, the yeir fra our redemption, MLXXXV. Bot Sanct Barnard deceissit in the Abbay of Clairwall, and wes buryit in the said abbay, with Sanct Melchiad, Scottisman. Bot we will returne to our history.

Eftir deith of Alexander the First, his brothir David come out of Ingland, and wes crounit at Scone, the yeir of God, MCXXIV yeris; and did gret justice, efter his coronation, in all partis of his realme. He had na weris during the time of King Hary; and wes sa pietuous, that he sat daylie in jugement, to caus his pure comunis to have justice: and causit the actionis of his noblis to be decedit be his othir jugis. He gart ilk juge redres the skaithis that come to the party be his wrang sentence: throw quhilk, he decorit his realm with mony nobil actis, and ejeckit the vennomus custome of riotus cheir, quhilk wes inducit afore be Inglismen, quhen thay com with Quene Margaret; for the samin wes noisum to al gud maneris, makand his pepil tender and effeminat.

In the fourt yeir of his regne, this nobill prince come to visie the madin Castell of Edinburgh. At this time, all the boundis of Scotland wer ful of woddis, lesouris, and medois; for the cuntre wes more gevin to store of bestiall, than ony production of cornis: and about this castell wes ane gret forest, full of haris, hindis, toddis, and siclike maner of beistis. Now wes the Rude Day cumin, callit the Exaltation of the Croce; and, becaus the samin wes ane hie solempne day, the king past to his contemplation. Eftir that the messis wer done with maist solempnite and reverence, comperit afore him, mony young and insolent baronis of Scotland, richt desirus to haif sum pleseir and solace, be chace of hundis in the said forest. At this time, wes with the king ane man of singulare and devoit life, namit Alkwine, Channon eftir the ordour of Sanct Augustine; quhilk wes lang time confessoure, afore, to King David in Ingland, the time that he wes Erle of Huntingtoun and Northumbirland. This religious man dissuadit the king, be mony reasonis, to pas to this huntis; and allegit the day wes so solempne, be reverence of the haly croce, that he suld gif him erar, for that day, to contemplation, than ony

othir exercition. Nochtheles, his dissuasionis litill avalit; for the king wes finalie so provokit, be inoportune sollicitatioun of his baronis, that he past, nochtwithstanding the solempnite of this day, to his hountis. At last, quhen he wes cumin throw the vail that lyis to the gret eist fra the said castell, quhare now lyis the Cannogait; the staill past throw the wod with sic noyis and din of rachis and bugillis, that all the bestis wer rasit fra thair dennis. Now wes the king cumin to the fute of the crag, and all his noblis severit, heir and thair, fra him, at thair game and solace; quhen suddanlie apperit to his sicht, the farest hart that evir wes sene afore with levand creatour. The noyis and din of this hart, rinnand, as apperit, with auful and braid tindis, maid the kingis hors so effrayit, that na renyeis nicht hald him; bot ran, perforce, our mire and mossis, away with the king. Nochtheles, the hart followit so fast, that he dang baith the king and his hors to the ground. Than the king kest abak his handis betwix the tindis of this hart, to haif savit him fra the strak thair of; and the haly croce slaid, incontinent, in his handis. The hart fled away with gret violence, and evanist in the same place quhare now springis the Rude Well. The pepill, richt affrayitly, returnit to him out of all partis of the wod, to comfort him efter his trubill; and fell on kneis, devoutly adoring the haly croce: for it was not cumin but sum hevinly providence, as weill apperis; for thair is na man can schaw of quhat mater it is of, metal or tre. Sone efter, the king returnit to his castel; and in the nicht following, he was admonist, be ane vision in his sleip, to big ane abbay of channonis regular in the same place quhare he gat the croce. Als sone as he was awalkinnit, he schew his vision to Alkwine, his confessour; and he na thing suspendit his gud mind, bot erar inflammit him with maist fervent devotion thairto. The king, incontinent, send his traist servandis in France and Flanderis, and brocht richt crafty masonis to big this abbay; syne dedicat it in the honour of this haly croce. This croce remanit continewally in the said abbay, to the time of King David Bruce; quhilk was unhappely tane with it at Durame, quhare it is haldin yit in gret veneration. This abbay was laitly in governance of ane gud man, Den Robert Bellenden; Abbot, xvi yeris. He delt, ilk owlk, iv bowis of quheit, and xl s. of silver, amang pure houshaldaris and inde-

gent pepil. He brocht hame the gret bellis ; the gret brasin fount ; xxiv capis of gold and silk. He maid ane chalice of fine gold ; ane eucharist ; with sindry challicis of silver. He theikkit the kirk with leid. He biggit ane brig of Leith, ane othir our Clide ; with mony othir gud werkis, quhilkis war our prolix to schaw. Nochtheles, he was sa invyit be sindry othir prelatis, becaus he was not gevin to lust and insolence efter thair maner, that he left the abbay, and deit ane chartour monk.

### Chap. Seventeenth.

*Of the gret liberalite of King David toward the Kirk, in dammage of his successouris ; and of the Battall of Allartoun. And how peace was maid betwix Scottis and Inglismen.*



ING David biggit xv abbayis in Scotland : quhais namis ar, Halyrudhous, Kelso, Jedburgh, Melros, Newbotel, Holmcultrane, Dundranane, Cambuskenneth, Kinlois, Dunfermeling, Holme in Cumber ; ii nunryis, ane at Carlele, and ane othir at North Berwik. He foundit ii abbayis beside the Newcastle ; the tane, of Sanct Benedictis ordour, and that othir, of quhit monkis. He foundit iv bischoprikis, Ros, Brechin, Dunkeld, and Dunblane ; and dotat thame with gret rentis, landis, and possessionis.

Sindry prudent men na thing apprisis the gret liberalite of King David toward the kirk ; for he dotat the kirk sa richely with the landis pertenant to the croun, that his successouris nicht not sustene thair riall estait, efter him, sa weil as thay did afore ; and for that caus, he hes bene the deith of mony nobil princis in this realm, gevand thame, sum time, occasion to bring gret housis to nocht, to conques landis to sustene the croun ; sum time invading the cuntre with continewal stentis and importabil exactionis on the pepil ; and sum time constranis thame, as disparit princes, to invaid Ingland with battal, takand na sollicitude quhat cum of thair life ; and sum time prentand evill money, aganis the

common weil. Al thir mischevis hes followit sen syne in this realm, becaus the croun wes left indegent, throw ampliacion of gret rentis to the kirk. Howbeit, King David did the samin, as he belevit, for the best; for the pepil war sa simple in thay dayis, that thay traistit fermely, na man micht have sa singulare favoure of God, as he that gaif maist riches and landis to the kirk. Thairfore, the wise prince, King James the First, quhen he com to Davidis sepulture at Dunfermeling, said, "He was ane soir sanct for the crown:" as he wald mene, that King David left the kirk our riche, and the crown our pure; for he tuke fra the crown, as Maister Johne Mair writis in his Cronikles, LXXM pundis Scottis: quhilk is possedit, this day, be the kirk, to na les dammage of common weil, than perdition of gud religion; for gif King David had considerit the maneris and nurising of devoute religion, he had nothir dotat the kirkis with sic riches, nor yit biggit thaim with sic magnificence: for the superflew rentis of kirkis, now as thay ar usit, ar not only occasion to evil prelatis to rage in maist insolent and corruppit life; bot ane sicker net, to draw al maner of gold and silver out of this realm. Howbeit, les dammage wald succed, gif the abbayis war providit be thair ordinaris, but ony dispensation fra thair habit and religious maneris; and the ordinaris, be thair primat, but ony exemption; and the primat, be thair counsal provincial: for in verite, within thir LXX yeris, na maner of beneficis, bot allanerly bischoprikis, yeid to Rome; and sen syne, we se quhat infinit gold and silver is tane out of this realm, be thair continewal promotion. And thairfore, this realme sal be brocht to sic irrecoverabill poverté, be continewal promotion of prelatis, within few yeris, that it sal be ane facil pray to our enemies: for it may not sustene, now, sa gret charge in time of weir, as it has done afore be our eldaris. And becaus nothir spirituall nor temporall estait, within this realme, hes ony affection to the common weil thair of, bot ilk man set allanerly for his awin singular way; I wil deplore na mair the calamiteis succeding daily be thair imprudence: bot wil return to our history, quhair we left.

King David translatit the sait of Murthlak to Aberdene, quhare mony nobil bischoppis hes bene, as we sall efter schaw. King David had ane sonne, namit Hary, gotin, as we have schawin, on Mald, heritour to Northumbirland, Cumber, and Huntingtoun. This



Hary was maryit on the Erle of Warrannis douchter, and gat on hir, thre sonnys; Malcolme, William, and David: and thre douchteris; Adama, Margaret, and Mald. In the mene time, King Davidis hous was in gret displeseir: for his wife deceissit in hir flurisant yeris, and was buryit at Scone; fra our redemption, ane M CXXXII yeris; in the VII yeir of the regne of King David. Efter hir deith, King David passit the residew of his dayis but ony cumpany of wemen.

Quhil sic thingis war done in Scotland, Mald, douchter to Hary Bewcleir, returnit in Ingland; for hir husband, Hary, the fourt of that name, Empriour, was deceissit, but ony airis of his body. At hir cuming in Ingland, hir fader, King Hary, maid ane general convention of all his noblis; and gart thame swcir to defend the said Mald, his douchter, as just heritour to the croun of Ingland: syne maryit hir on Gawfrid Plantaginet, Erle of Angeos; to quhom scho bure ane son, namit Hary, quhilk wes efter King of Ingland; callit be the pepill, the son of the Emprice. At this time, Robert, Duk of Normandy, deceissit, but ony succession of his body; be quhais deith, the duchery come to Hary Bewcleir, his brothir. This Hary Bewcleir deceissit, fra our redemption, M CXXXIV yeris. Than succedit gret trubil in Ingland: for Mald, the Emprice, was, in the time of his deith, with hir husband, Gawfrid Plantaginet, at Angeos; quhilk was that time in gret infirmite, havand hir son Hary bot II yeris of age. In the mene time, Stevin, Erle of Bolony, sister son to Hary Bewcleir, gaderit ane gret army to cum in Ingland, that he micht conques the croun thairof. And first, as he war to underminde the cuntre be his slichtis, he desirit the croun to be gevin to him, quhil Prince Hary war of lauchful age to succed. The noblis, seand his petitionis reasonable, maid him king; and randerit all the strenthis of the cuntre, garnist with men, munition, and vittallis, at his pleseir. Schort time efter, King Stevin send ane herald to King David of Scotland, chargeand him to cum, but ony tary, in Ingland, to geif his aith of fidelite and homage for the landis of Northumbirland, Huntingtoun, and Cumbir; with intimation, gif he refusit, to invaid him with battal. King David answerit, That he gaif his aith afore, for thir landis, to Mald, his wife; and sen it was not lefull to violat his aith, he wald erar stand at the faith

that he hes promist, than to applaud to new invasouris. King Stevin, movit be this answer, send the Duk of Glocester, with ane army, in Northumbirland, quhilk stude, that time, under the empire of Scottis; and maid incredibill slauchter and heirschippis in all partis thairof. The Scottis, movit with thir injuris, ceissit not quhil thay recompensit the said injuris on Ingland; for the Erlis of Marche, Menteth, and Angus went in Ingland with ane gret power, and faucht at Allirton; quhare the Inglismen war discomfist, and mony noblis of Ingland, with the said duk, brocht presoneris in Scotland. King Stevin, throw this discomfitour, was constranit to redeme the said duk, and his noblis, with huge money; and, in payment of thair redemption, gaif our al richt and clame that he, or his successouris, nicht ony way have to Northumbirland, Cum-bir, and Huntingtoun. Nochtheles, efter the redemption of his noblis, he become penitent of this discharge foresaid; and come in Northumbirland, quhare he maid gret slauchter and heirschippis, throw all boundis thairof, to recover it to his dominion. King David, to resist thir injuris, gaderit ane army, with deliverit mind, othir to expel Inglismen out of al boundis pertenant to his empire, or ellis, al atanis, to de. Efter his cuming to Roxburch, come to him the Bischop of York, and maid peace for iv monethis, under thir conditionis: "That Inglismen sal deliver Northumbirland, fre, "to Hary, Prince of Scotland." And becaus thir conditionis war not kepit, King David come, with ane new army, in Northumbirland, and left na Inglismen in it on live. King Stevin, to revenge thir injuris, com, with gret ordinance, to Roxburgh; and was constranit to return hame but ony invasion of Scottis, becaus his noblis wald not assist to his purpos. At last, peace was tretit, under thir conditionis: "Northumbirland and Huntingtoun sal remane under "the empire of Hary, Prince of Scotland, be richt of his moder; "and Cumber to remane with him, be richt of King David, his father. And for thir landis, the said Hary, and his successouris, "sall mak homage to al Kingis of Ingland for the time."

## Chap. Eighteenth.

*Of the Deith of Hary, Prince of Scotland. Of the Orison maid be King David to his noblis. How Malcolm, his first Nepot, was maid Prince of Scotland; and William, his secound Nepot, Erle of Northumbirland. Of the Deith of King David; and of sindry gret Clerkis.*



HE peace ratifyit in this maner, King Stevin returnit to Kent, and King David to Cumbir, quhare he remanit certane time, reparing the towne of Carlele with new walles. Thir war the dedis of King Stevin, the thrid yeir of his regne. In the iv yeir, Mald, the Emprice, come in England with ane army, to recover hir heritage; and left behind hir, Gawfrid, hir husband, with hir young son, in Angeos. At hir cumming, baith the Erle of Chester and Glocester, with mony othir thair freindis, went to hir opinion: and becaus the residew of the noblis assistit to King Stevin, the decision of this plee continewit, with lang weris, in England, with sindry chancis of fortoun. In the mene time, Hary, hir sone, maryit Elinore, quhilk was heritour of the duchery of Turing, and of the erldomes of Poiteris and Mans: throw quhilk, he was supportit, and come, with ane gret army, in England. Nochtheles, quhen the battallis war reddy to june, peace was maid in this maner: “Hary sall have ane part of the landis “pertenand to the croun of England, to sustene him, during the “life of King Stevin; and efter his deith, to succeid to the hale “empire of England.” This Elinore was maryit, afore, on Lewis, Dalphin of France; and partit with him, becaus scho was conjunit to him in proximate of blud. Scho bure to this Hary, ane son, namit Richard; quhilk was, efter, heritour of England, Normandy, Angeos, and Gascunye, be richt of his fader; and was heritour of the duchery of Turing, Poiteris, and Mans, be his moder.

Sic thingis done in Ingland, Hary, son to King David of Scotland, deceissit, with gret lament of pepill; and left behind him, as we have said afore, thre sonnys of smal age. He was buryit in the Abbay of Kelso, the yeir fra our redemptioun, MCLII yeris. The deith of this Hary was richt displesand to King David; for he was ane prince of singular virtew and gud maneris. Efter deith of Hary, the noblis convenit furth of al partis of Scotland, to mak consolation to King David for the dolour that he tuk in the deith of his son. Yit, becaus Hary left behind him III sonnys and III douchteris on live, thay thocht the realm weil garnist. King David, seing his noblis richt dolorus and hevvy for the deith of his son, callit thame to ane banket, and said in this maner: “Tender freindis, your trew faith, and perseverand deligence for my weil, is richt patent this day; howbeit na experience, in time bigane, had bene thair of: for I se your mindes gevin to me, with na les compassion on my hevynes, than ony of your awin sonnys had de-ceissit. Ye ar cumin to mak me consolation for the dolour that I have tane in the deith of my son: and becaus we may not rander yow condigne thankis at this time, we superseid it quhill we may do it mair plesandly; as now it is inouch to confes, all thing that is in me, baith body and saule, is dettit to yow. Forthir, concerning the mater that ye ar cumin for, schawing your humanite towart me, ye may have my mind in few wordis: My parentis, quhom I beleve cikit to the nowmer of sanctis, for thair singular and devote life, hes institute me, in my youth, to worship God with all reverence, quhilk dois nathing in vane, bot every thing disponis, be his infinite wisdom, to sum gud fine. Quhen I consider the wise and devote commandementis of my parentis, baith adversite and gud chance ar paisit be me in equale balance. Our fader, our moder, brethir, and sisteris, ar passit fra this fragil life, and we man nixt follow: and sen we ar mortale, al adversite suld be paciently sufferit be us, les than we, be corruppit life, list thirl ourself to eternal deith. I think, thairfore, that I suld erar reiose that God gaif me ane son, be his special favour, quhilk hes conquest benivolence of al pepil be his gud havingis, than to sorrow in his deith; for quhat injure is it,



“ thought I craif the geir fra yow, quhilk ye have possedit lang  
 “ time be my tollerance? And yit, I beleif that I sall nocht be lang  
 “ absentit fra my sonne; traisting, be will of him that is maist pis-  
 “ sant King, to be suddaanly brocht to him and otheris my freindis,  
 “ quhilkis ar now of more preeminance and glore, than evir thay  
 “ wer into this sorowfull vail. Now, I reiose that the mercifull  
 “ God hes gevin us sicker esperance to beleif my son passit to that  
 “ permanent glore quhair we intend al to cum; and prayis God,  
 “ that we may be worthy, quhen our saule mon sevir out of this  
 “ corporall preson, to pas to the felicitie quhare, we traist, he is  
 “ gone.”

Eftir this orison, the noblis went to thair lugeingis, havand gret  
 admiration of the kingis constant devotion and mind. Sone eftir,  
 King David causit Malcolme, eldest sonne of Hary afore rehersit,  
 to be declarit Prince of Scotland, and the nobillis sworne in his  
 opinion. Eftir this, he went in Northumbirland, and maid Wil-  
 liam, his secund nepot, Erle thairof. Eftir this, he went to Car-  
 lele, quhare he maid Hary, Prince of Ingland, knight; and tuke  
 his aith, that he suld nevir tak Northumbirland, Cumbir, nor  
 Huntingtoun, fra the empire of Scottis. Schort time efter, King  
 David fell in ane hevy maledy, quhilk perseverit with him to the  
 end of his life. And quhen he fand himself febill, he went to the  
 kirk, and tuke the blissit body of Crist, with maist reverence; and  
 randerit his happy saule to God, the xxix yeir of his regne, and  
 wes buryit in Dunfermling, fra the incarnation, MCLIII yeris.

This nobill prince wes na litill commendit in his time for his sin-  
 gulare piete, quhilk he had abone ony man in his realme, to the  
 pure pepill. He had sic prudence, that he nocht onlie purgit his  
 realm fra corruppit and vicious limmaris, bot causit his servandis  
 to be exercit in virtews occupationis. Nevir vicious wourd wes  
 hard of his mouth; na insolence within his hous; na riotu ban-  
 ketting, nor surfet collation, usit in his cumpany. Al wourdis,  
 werkis, and doingis of his servandis wer ay direckit to sum gud fine,  
 but ony seditioun or displeisur; with sic cherite and concord, that  
 all his servandis apperit under ane mind and amite.

In the time of King David wer mony nobill clerkis: as Richard, Scottisman, Channoun of Sanct Victouris Abbay; quhare he wes, eftir, buryit: Peter of Lumbardy, Doctour of Theologie, and Bischop of Paris. Siclik, wes in thay dayis, Graciane, that gaderit all the decretis togiddir, in ane volumen.

And sa endis heir, the Twelf Buke of thir Cronikillis.

# The Thretene Buke.

---

HEIR BEGINNIS THE THRETENE BUKE

OF THE

CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

## Chap. First.

*Of King Malcolme the Madin. Of gret mortalite and derth in Scotland. How King Hary tuk Malcolme, in his weris aganis France. And of sindry slichtis devisit aganis Malcolme be the said Hary.*



AVID buryit on this wise, his nepot Malcolme, gottin on Hary his sonne, havand bot XIII yeiris in age, wes maid king: and thocht he wes nocht ganand to sustene sa gret charge, for his tendir age; yit he aperit, for his maneris and virtew, to be ane nobill prince. He wes nurist, fra his first youth, with sa clene and haly life, that he wes namit Malcolme the Madin. In the first yeir of his empire, Hary, Prince of Ingland, tuke the croun: throw quhilk, King Stevin tuke sic malancoly, that he deceissit.

At this time, wes ane miserable derth, throw all boundis of Scotland. And sone efter followit ane violent pest, howbeit it wes not

contagius, to the gret mortalite baith of man and best. This mortalite gaif occasioun to Somerled to attempt ane mater of hiear besines than semit to his estait: and becaus he saw the ta half of the realme slane be pest, and this othir be hunger, he come with ane huge peple to conques the croun; and slew, or ellis heryit, all thaim that he fand repugnant to his mind. Bot his attemptatis wer not lang unpunist; for Gilcrist, Erle of Angus, slew MM of his army, and chasit himself in Ireland.

Hary, the secound of that name, King of Ingland, heirand that King Malcolme had dantit his ennimes in this sort, dred that the same suld gif him occasioun to be insolent, and invaid Ingland with battall: and thairfore, be counsall of his nobillis, he send ane herald to King Malcolme, chargeand him to cum to London, to mak homage and service to him for the landis of Cumbir, Northumbirland, and Huntingtoun, siclik as David, his gudschir, did afore to Hary the First; with certification, gif he failyeit, he suld tak fra him all the said landis. King Malcolme obeyit this charge; howbeit, it wes under this condition, "That it suld nocht be prejudiciall to the liberte of Scotland." King Hary had weir, at this time, aganis Lewis the vi, King of France; and constranit King Malcolme to pas with him in France: for thocht King Malcolme had ane saif-conduct to pas and repas, yit he nicht nocht ganestand King Haryis charge at that time. Attoure, he wes meik, and more desirus of peace than of battall: and thought he knew it detestable and injurius to pas in weirfair aganis his confiderat freind, the King of France; yit he thocht, becaus he wes constranit, he nicht have sufficient mater to excuse himself, quhen time occurrit. Thus obeyit he to King Hary in all pointis. At this voyage, King Hary invadit France with gret injuris, and segit the town of Tullus; and tuk with him King Malcolme, in all his expeditionis and weris: to that fine, that King Malcolme suld incurre sic hatrent and indignatioun of Franchemen, that the samin nicht dissolve the band betwix thaim and Scottis. At last, King Hary, brokin with gret slauchter of his nobillis, returnit in Ingland, and licent Malcolme to pas in Scotland.

King Malcolme, eftir his returning, send his ambassaturis to mak his obedience to the Paip: and eftir thair returning, ane con-



ventioun wes maid at Scone, in the quhilk the lordis reprevit King Malcolme, that he, in his vane foly, bure armour and wapinnis aganis Franchemen, thair confiderat freindis. King Malcolme excusit him with humil wordis, sayng, He come unwairly in King Haryis handis, and micht nocht resist his desiris for that time: and belevit, thairfore, the King of France suld have litill hatrent aganis him for that mater, fra he understude the verite.

King Hary, not satisfyit that he gaif occasioun of seditioun betwix Malcolme and his nobillis in times bigane; bot to renew the samin with more displeseir, he causit King Malcolme to return agane to York. Eftir his returning thairto, he complainit to his noblis, that King Malcolme revelit all the secretis of his army to Franchemen, to na litill dammage and slauchter of his pepill; and said, thairfore, the samin wes sufficient reason to deprive him of the landis of Cumbir, Huntingtoun, and Northumbirland. Thought King Malcolme, be mony sufficient reasonis, declarit thir imaginatis of vane effect: yit King Hary, afore King Malcolmes returning in Scotland, send wound to the nobillis thair of, that King Malcolme had renunciit all claime that he had to the said landis; to mak him odious to all his realme and liegis. Als sone as he wes returnit in Scotland, mony of the nobillis conspirit aganis him, and segit him in the castell of Bertha. Howbeit, he knew na thing of thir injuris wrocht aganis him be slicht of Inglismen. Nochtheles, fra thay knew the verite, thay skalit fra the sege, and askit him mercy. King Malcolme, movit with thir injuris, and seand his landis haldin wranguslie fra him, rasit his army, and invadit Ingland with sindry displeseiris. At last, eftir sindry chances of battall, ane convention wes maid at Carleil, and peace maid in this maner: "Northumbirland sall pas under the empire of King Hary; " bot Cumbir and Huntingtoun sall remane, as afore, under the " empire of Malcolme."

## Chap. Second.

*How King Malcolme punist sindry Conspiratouris; and how the Murrayis, for thair rebellion, war disherist, and put out of Murray.*



HIS trubill beand mesit in maner afore rehersit, followit ane othir: howbeit, it wes of les motioun. Angus, Thane of Galloway, seand his attemptatis nicht not cum to effect quhen thay wer quietlie done, come with ane gret cumpany to usurpe the croun. Nochtheles, his army wes discomfist be Gilcrist, Erle of Angus; and himself chasit to Quhiterne, quhare ane girth is dedicat in the honour of Sanct Niniane. King Malcolme wald not brek the girth: nochtheles, he commandit ane gard to wait on this Angus sa lang, quhill he come in will. King Malcolm, to dant his insolence, and that he suld nocht have occasioun to do sic attemptatis in times cuming, confiscat the maist part of all his landis, and tuke his sonne in pledge for gud reule of him in times cumming. Angus, seing that he nicht nocht sustene his estait, quhen his landis wer taikin fra him, as afore; schoif his heid in Halyrudhous, and deceissit ane channon thairof.

Nocht lang eftir, rais ane othir trubil, of siclik motioun. The Murrayis, be advise of Gildo, thair capitane, heryit Ros, Bogeall, Mar, Gareach, Buchquhen, and Mernis; and slew the kingis servandis quhilkis wer send to inquire the motive of thair injuris. To punis thir attenptatis, King Malcolme send Gilcrist, Erle of Angus, with ane army, in Murray: nochtheles, the Murrayis put him to flight. King Malcolme, nochtwithstanding this discomfitour, come with displayit baner ouir Spay, and dantit the Murrayis with sindry victoris: and in punition of thair offencis, he commandit nane of thaim to be saiffit, except wiffis, barnis, and agit personis; to be exemple to all othir his subdittis, to move rebellion aganis him in times cuming. The Murrayis beand, on this wise, neir distroyit,

in al partis of the realme; the king commandit new pepill to be set down in thair landis, for the inhabitation thairof.

In the mene time, Somerled, Thane of Argyle, quhilk was banist, as we have schawin, in Ireland; traisting King Malcolme to be odius to his nobillis and commonis for his cruelte usit aganis the Murrayis, thocht expedient to assailye new chance of fortoun, and returnit with certane nakit men in Scotland. Bot his attemptatis com to mair infelicite than afore; for he was vincust, and hingit on ane jebait, be command of King Malcolme.

### Chap. Third.

*How the Bischop of Sanct Andros persuadit Malcolme to mariage.  
Of sindry actis done be King Malcolme; and of his deith.*



ALCOLME, void of all solicitude and charge of battall, and havand ennimes in na partis, set his engine to govern his realm in justice. And becaus he had two sisteris reddy to mariage, namit Margaret and Adame, he maryit the first on the Duke of Bertanye, and this othir on the Erle of Holland. Sic thingis done, he set ane counsall at Scone for certane materis concerning the common weill. The nobillis beand assemblit, rais up, ane man of singulare prudence, namit Arnald, Bischop of Sanct Andros, and said in this wise: “Ane thing is, “maist nobill prince, that I wald say for the commoun weill, praying, thairfore, thy hienes to geif eiris thairto; for it sal pertene “na les to thy singulare honour than common weill. Not lang ago, “thow tuk purpos to pas thy time but frute of mariage. And sen “thow tuke this purpos in thy tender youth, howbeit it was be zelevirtew, yit, gif thow geif eiris to me, quhilkis nevir exhortit “the to vane purpos, thou will change thy mind, as unproffitabill “to the governance of thy realme; for quhat thing may be mair “honest than mariage? quhilk was not institute be Minois, King of Crete; nor Ligurgus, King of Lacedemon; nor Solon of Athenes: “howbeit thay war maist civil and prudent men in thair constitu-

“ tionis: bot allanerly be God, as maist honest and profitabill to the  
 “ nature of man. And gif that wise and prudent beginnar of the  
 “ world had found ony othir thing mair profitabill than mariage,  
 “ he had commandit it for weill of man. Attoure, quhat is mair  
 “ profitabill than it, that bringis all levand creaturis in the world?  
 “ Quhat is than mair naturall than conjunctioun of male and female?  
 “ And thocht thow wald allege, Crist and mony othir his sanctis  
 “ leiffit chaist; I say, sic life is nocht ordanit for publict personis,  
 “ nor yit for every stait, bot allanerly for religious men, and preche-  
 “ ouris of the lawis: bot thow art chosin to ane othir office; that  
 “ is to say, to governe thy pepil in justice, and to leif succession of  
 “ thy body, that may proffet the commoun weill efter thy deith.  
 “ Quhat thing may be mair plesand or profitabill to the, than to  
 “ have ane lady to thy fallow, quhilk may geif the consolatioun in  
 “ every doloure or adversite that may fall; to do the plesair in thy  
 “ heill; to meis the quhen angir apperis; to cure thy body, and  
 “ refresche thy spreit, quhen thow art wery? And dispair nocht, bot  
 “ sum lady may be found richt aggreabill to thy conditionis. Othir  
 “ privat personis nicht have solicitude or gret cummer in espying  
 “ sic thingis, bot thow suld have na feir thairrof. Finaly, quhat  
 “ thing is mair dulce and plesand to kingis and princis, than to have  
 “ children of thair bodyis? quhilkis ar maist necessar to thaim in  
 “ weir and peace: in peace,—that thair commoun weill may be go-  
 “ vernit maist faithfully be thaim: in time of weir,—that thay may  
 “ be thair lieutannantis and invincibil campionis; and beir sic char-  
 “ gis, that thay sall be na les terroure to thy fayis, than munitioun  
 “ to thy pepil. Thairfore, said the prudent and wise philosophouris,  
 “ Men ar nocht cumin in this world allanerly for thair awin weill,  
 “ bot sum part for the weill of thair freindis and thair children,  
 “ and sum part for the weill of thair realme and cuntre; specially  
 “ thay that ar maid be God and nature, publict personis. Heir-  
 “ fore, sen nathing is sa commendabill, sa honest, nor yit sa proffi-  
 “ tabill to thaim that hes the publik governance, as to leif succes-  
 “ sioun behind thaim, for the commoun weill; traist finaly, thow  
 “ sall nocht do ane thing mair displesand to God, than to defraude  
 “ thy realme of successioun.”



Quhen Bischop Arnold had assailyeit with thir and mony othir reasonis to persuade the king to mariage, the king was mair repugnant to the samin than afore ; for he was institute sa in his youth, that he dedicat his virginite to Crist. Nochtheles, God providit that the realme suld nocht want airis to governe the samin in justice. Nocht lang efter, King Malcolme fell in ane hevy malady ; and be noy thairof, he was constranit to tak peace with his nichtbouris. And, in the menetime, he foundit the abbay of Sanct Reule, now callit Sanct Andros, quhilk is biggit, as we se, with gret magnificence. Bot he dotat it with small rentis, sufficient inouch to sustene divine service ; and, thairfore, the channonis of the said abbay levit than in maist fervent devotioun and service of God, becaus thay had na provocation of lustis be superflew rentis ; nocht gevin to avarice and plescir, bot onely to thair contemplatioun. He foundit als, the abbay of Cowpar, efter the ordoure of Cistius, and dotat it in the honour of the blissit Virgine Mary, with mony landis and possessionis. At this time, Thomas of Cantorbury, ane man of singulare life and devotioun, was exilit out of England. King Malcolme, finaly, vexit with lang infirmite, deceissit at Jedburgh, the xii yeir of his regne. Ane comet schane fourtene dayis togidder afore his deith, with lang and terribill bemis. His body was buryit in Dunfermeling ; fra the incarnatioun, ane thousand, ane hundred, lxxv yeris.

## Chap. Fourth.

*Of King William, and his actis. How the Scottis sustenis mair displeisur be thevis, than be externe weris. How King William was tane at Anwik.*



ALCOLME, buryit on this maner in Dunfermeling, William, his brothir, callit, for his singulare justice, The Lioun, was maid king. Efter his coronatioun, he thocht nathing sa honest, as to recover the landis reft afore fra his brothir, King Malcolme; and send his ambassatouris to King Hary, desiring Northumbirland to be restorit to him, becaus it pertenit to him be kindly heritage. King Hary answerit, He suld haif al thingis pertenant to him be reason, sa that he wald, as his eldaris did afore, cum to London, and make homage for the landis of Cumber and Huntingtoun. King William sone efter come to London; and quhen he had maid his obedience for the said landis, he desirit Northumbirland to be restorit to him. King Hary refusit thir desiris, saying, The landis, quhilkis war annexit to the crown, nicht nocht be severit thairfra be ony privat auctorite. Nochtwithstanding, he promittit to convene his nobillis to ane counsall, to fulfill his desiris, gif thay war found reasonabill, quhen time occurrit mair expedient. In the mene time, King Hary went with ane army in Normandy, and causit King William, with mony othir nobillis of Scotland, to pas with him in the said jorney. King William wald not refuse thir chargis at this time, in adventure the samin war occasion to repell his desiris. At last, quhen he had taryit lang time in this army, and was in na esperance to recover his landis, he desirit licence to returne hame: quhilk beand with gret difficulte grantit, King William, with his nobillis, come throw Ingland the maist haiste way he nicht, in Scotland, and set his ingine to punis the cruelteis done be thevis and tratouris of his realme. This act, be my estimatioun, was the maist proffitabill thing that he nicht have done; for gif ony wise men will considder baith the dammage and commo-

diteis of this realme, thay sall find the skaith and dammage done be thevis, ar mair displesand and skaithful to us than ony weiris of Ingland: for oftimes we find innocent pepill and passingeris murther be the thevis, for sobir geir, in thair vayage. And yit thir displeseiris ar bot small, in respect of othir cruelteis and injuris done be thir thevis. Quhen thay ar gaderit, thay birn the cuntre, and slayis the commonis, quhilkis may nocht resist thaim; with mony othir cruelteis, mair insufferabill to us than ony uncouth weiris, howbeit the samin be nocht done sa opinly. Attour, the slauchter and heirschippis maid be uncouth weris, ar nocht sa miserabill and unworthy to be rehersit, as thir cruelteis done be strang thevis and tratouris. For in every chance of battall is sum consideratioun concerning the estait of all pepill; bot thir bludy fleschouris and thevis makis heirschippis and slauchter, but ony mercy, quhare thay cum. And thairfore, the prudence of this nobil prince, in danting of sic strang limmaris, was mair to be commendit, than to have slane mony thowsandis of uncouth ennimes.

Sic thingis done, King William send his ambassatouris to King Hary, desiring Northumberland, as afore, to be restorit to him; certifying, gif the samin war nocht done with favour, it suld be takin be force of battall. King Hary, seand that he behuffit othir to leif Northumbirland, or ellis to fecht with set battall aganis the Scottis; be advise of his noblis, restorit King William to sa mekill of Northumbirland as was inhabit afore be Malcolme, his gudschir. King William thocht nocht the samin to be refusit: howbeit, he wald nocht omit the richt that he had to the hail landis. And yit King Hary, within few yeris efter, was penitent of this contract: and, to recover the said landis, he persuadit the residew of Northumbrianis, quhilkis stude under his empire, to provoke the Scottis, be frequent heirschippis, to battall; that he micht have sum occasioun to invaid the Scottis, and recover the landis of Huntingtoun, Cumbr, and Northumberland, to his empire. Als sone as thir injuris and heirschippis war maid on the Scottis, the wardan of the Scottis Bordour desirit restitution: and, becaus na thing was done according to justice, the wardanis rasit gret cumpanyis, and maid heirschippis and slauchter on athir side. Yit, becaus King Hary was

this time in France, and the corne to be won, thay war content, on all sidis, to defend thair awin, but ony forthir invasion of othir, quhill the nixt yeir.

In the nixt simmer, King William come with ane army in Cumbir. The richt wing was gevin to Gilcrist, quhilk, for his singulare manheid and virtew, provin oftymes in the time of King Malcolme, had maryit his sister. The left wing was gevin to ane cousing of the kingis, namit Rowland. In the middilward was King William. Quhil the Scottis war arraying thame in this maner, King Hary send ane herald to King William, desiring him to skail his army, but ony forthir invasioun; and he to redres all expensis maid be his weris. King William answerit, That he rasis nocht his army for desire of money, nor yit gaif the first occasioun of battal; bot was ay content to have leiffit on his awin. And forthir, he was nocht sa inhumane, nor desirus of blude, bot he wald gladly skail his army, sa that the landis, quhilkis pertenit to him be just heritage, war restorit. At last, quhen King William had waistit all Cumbir, he come to Anwik in Northumbirland, quhare he abaid mony dayis, to have had battall of Ingland. In the mene time, the Inglisemen lay sa clois togidder, but ony noyis or din, that na Scottisemen knew quhare thay war. King William, irkit with lang residence at Anwik, and seand na ennimes appere, maid him, afore his returning in Scotland, to do sum notabill vassalage; and send al his army heir and thair, with maist awful and weirly incursionis throw the cuntre: and left nane bot ane few nowmer of pepil with himself, to thair returning. Incontinent, ane buschement of Inglisemen come on him, with ansenyeis of Scotland, and war nocht suspekkit for Inglisemen, quhill the king was circulit with thaim on ilk side, and finaly tane away, or ony Scottisman wist, saif onely ane few cumpany, quhilkis war left, as said is, with him for the time. King William was tane on this wise, at Anwik, the XIII day of July, the x yeir of his regne; fra the incarnatioun, ane thousand, ane hundred, LXXIV yeris. Not lang efter, he was brocht to King Hary, as presonere, in Normandy. And, nochtwithstanding this trubil that fel to King William, becaus na slauchter was maid at his taking, the weris continewit stil betwix Ingland and Scotland: quhill at last peace was maid, under thir con-



ditionis: “ During the captivite of King William, Northumbirland  
 “ sall remane under the dominion of Inglismen; and Cumbir and  
 “ Huntingtoun sal remane, as afore, under the empire of Scottis.”

### Chap. Fifth.

*How Sanct Thomas of Cantorbury was martyrit. How King William was redemit. How Gilbert defendit the liberte of Scotland aganis the Paipis Ligat. Of sindry mervellis; and how the Abbayis of Abirbrothok and Hadingtoun war foundit.*



T this time, Thomas, Bischop of Cantorbury, quhilk was banist afore, for his obstinat mind in defence of the liberte of haly kirk, was recunsaed to King Hary, be request of sindry gret princis. Bot this recoonsaling succedit to his gret dammage: for within schort time efter, King Hary, richt impacient to sustene the hatrent within his breist, quhilk he had consavit aganis Sanct Thomas; send his familiaris and houshald men, namit William Bretoun, Hew Morwell, William Trace, and Reginald Fittis; and finaly, slew this haly bischop, at the mes, within his kirk of Cantorbury, before the hie alter of Sanct Benedict, upon the sext day following the nativite of Crist. The yeir nixt following, King Hary, returning out of Ireland, efter that he had put it to gret affliction, for rebellion aganis his empire, arrivit in Normandy, and com to the cathedral kirk of Rowane; quhare he, be solempne aith, purgit him of the slauchter of Sanct Thomas. And yit, within few dayis efter, he become sa penitent, that he come in his linning claithis to the sepulture of Sanct Thomas, and, with mony salt teris, askit mercy for his slauchter. The thrid yeir efter, Sanct Thomas was canonisat be Paip Alexander, and eikit to the nowmer of sanctis.

In this yeir, apperit ane mervellous sterne standing stil in the west, baith day and nicht; with mony othir sternis about the samin.

Quhen the unhappy chance of King William was divulgat throw the realme, his brothir, David, Erle of Lewcester, be licence of

King Hary, come in Scotland, to governe the realme, quhill his brothir war redemit. Als sone as he had stabillit the realme in gud justice, he send Richard, Bischop of Sanct Andros, with mony othir noblis, in Normandy, to King Hary; and maid King Williamis ransoun, under this maner: "King William sal pay ane hundreth thousand poundis Striveling for his redemption: the tane half to be payit with argent content; and for sickir payment of this othir half, he sal geif Cumber, Huntingtoun, and Northumbir-land under ane reversioun, ay and quhil the residew of his ransoun war payit to the King of Ingland. Attoure, King William sall move na weir aganis Ingland, for retention of thir landis fra his empire. And for the mair securite of thir premissis, foure of the strangest castellis within Scotland, that is to say, Berwik, Edin-burgh, Roxburgh, and Striveling, sal be deliverit in Inglismennis handis."

Sic thingis done, followit new trubill in Scotland; for Gilbert of Galloway, ane cruell and ane unhappy man, tuk purpos to conques the croun, and maid gret slauchter and heirschippis on all thame that war repugnant to his desiris. He put out his brotheris ene, and cuttit his handis, becaus he reprevit his faltis. Nochtheles, Gilerist come sone aganis him with ane army, and chasit him in Ireland.

In the yeir following, Hugo, Cardinall of Sanct Angell, was send be the Paip to reforme the kirkis of Ingland. Als sone as he had re-fourmit thame, he come in Scotland, and summond all the bischoppis thair of to Northamptoun. Efter thair conventioun, he began to persuade thaim, with lang orisoun, to obey to the Archebischop of York: saying, Al othir realmes had ane bischoppe, to heir thair complaintis; that thay nicht eschew gret expensis and laubouris in devolving thair causis to Rome. And becaus na metropolitane kirk wes in Scotland, quhair thay nicht convene to thair consultatioun, best wes to obey to the Archebischop of York; for be that way thay nicht eschew surfet expensis, havand decision of thair actionis, with esy proces, be thair Superior. To this answerit Gilbert, ane young man of gret eruditoun, quhilk wes send be the king, to suffir na thing to be done prejudiciall, be this cardinall, to his realme; and said in this maner: "Scotland, sen it first tuke the faith of Crist,

“ wes nevir subdewit to na othir bischop, bot allanerlie to Cristis  
 “ vicar : and, thairfore, it wes ane thing richt unreasonabil to this  
 “ cardinal, to desire the Scottis to be subdewit to Inglismen, consi-  
 “ dering ilk ane of thaim hes weir perpetually with othir. Howbeit,  
 “ it apperit more honest to treit concord or peace amang thaim, than  
 “ to gif occasioun of battall. Attoure, na thing wes done be the  
 “ bishoppis of Scotland, worthy to deprive thaim of thair liberte :  
 “ and gif ony wrangis wer done in Scotland, thay micht be decidit  
 “ sufficiently within the realme, be civill or prudent men ; and gif ony  
 “ gret chargis occurrit, thay [micht] be decidit be the king.” For thir  
 and siclik reasonis, he desirit our haly fader the Paip, to thirl nocht  
 the realme of Scotland to ony jurisdiction or empire of ennimes, con-  
 sidering it nevir offendit to his sait. Becaus this Gilbert defendit  
 so weill the liberte of Scotland, he wes maid Bischop of Caithnes ;  
 and for his haly life, he wes eikit to the noumer of sanctis.

Sindry mervellis wer sene, this yeir, in Albioun. On Midsimer-  
 day, callit the Nativite of Sanct Johne the Baptist, wes sic vehement  
 schour of hail, that it slew mony small bestial. The pepill that wer  
 out of housis, in this mene time, wer strikin at erd, be violence of  
 the samin. In September, the son obscurit of his licht, at noun,  
 twa houris, but ony eclipse or interposition of cluddis. In York-  
 schire, wes sa gret thundir, with uncouth flammis, that mony ab-  
 bayis and kirkis wer brint be the samin.

Not lang eftir this time, wes biggit the Abbay of Abirbrothok, of  
 the ordour of Sanct Benidict, dedicat to Sanct Thomas of Canter-  
 bery, and dotat be King William maist richely ; fra our redemptioun,  
 MCLXXVIII yeris. The samin time, the Abbay of Haddingtoun wes  
 foundit, be Adama, Quene, King Williamis moder ; quhilk deceis-  
 sit sone eftir it wes dotat.

## Chap. Sixth.

*How Pape Alexander send to King William ane rose full of balme.  
How Gilcrist wes disherist for the slauchter of his Wife. Of  
gret cruclteis done be Turkis to Cristin pepill. How King Wil-  
liam dantit the thevis, and tuke Gilcrist in favoure.*



SHORT time eftir, King William send ambassatouris, to mak his obedience to Paip Alexander the Thrid. The Paip sone eftir send to King William ane goldin rose, full of balme, with sindry new privilegis concerning the libertie of haly kirk. The samin time, Gilcrist slew his wife, for suspitioun that he had aganis hir of adultry. King William, movit with this contemptioun, banist him out of Scotland, and kest down his hous to the ground. This Gilcrist had ane brothir, namit Bredus, quhilk, afore this trubil, gat the landis of Ogilvy; of quhome the Ogilvyis tuke thair beginning.

At this time, King Hary gart rander the Castel of Edinburgh, be request of the Bischop of Durame, to King William. This William, eftir deith of his first wife, maryit Emengarda, douchter to the Erle of Bewmont; quhilk wes gottin on King Williamis, the Bastard of Normandyis, sister. Be this mariage and aliance, the peace wes roborat betwix Scotland and England, in sic maner, that nane of thame nicht resset othir rebellis within thair realmes. Thus wes Gilcrist, quhilk wes banist afore in England, for his wiffis slauchter, constranit to returne in Scotland: quhare he and his two sonnys leiffit lang time ane miserable life, unknowin, for thair pure habites, to ony pepill, amang the woddis and covis of the cuntre.

At this time, the Soldane invadit the Haly Land with hevy weris, and recoverit Jerusalem, with mony othir townis, quhilkis wer that time under dominion of Cristin men. So far enragit the cruelte of this Soldane, that he culd nocht be saciat with blude of Cristin pepill: for be him wer slane, xxx.M futmen; M twa hundreth horsmen, sic as wer bischoppis, prelatis, and maisteris of hospitalis. The



fame of thir miserabill calamiteis, quhen thay wer divulgat, maid the pepill to lament with sorowfull murning. Attoure, incredible noumer of nobill men wer haldin in captivite, quhilkis send thair freindis to al Cristin princis, for support, to thair redemptioun, and schew the miserie and displeseiris that thay sufferit; thair townis segit, and thair self brocht to captivite: quhais infinite sorowis wer sa importable, that thay movit every pepill to miseration and teris. King Hary, movit be thir insufferabill cruelteis done to Cristin pepill, promittit to cum haistly, with ane army, to thair support. Bot his purpos wes impeschit be sindry trublis quhilk followit in his realme: for his sonne Hary, quhilk wes crounit be him afore, conspirit, be assistance of sindry princis of his realme, to put him fra the croun. Thus wes he constranit to ceis fra his hailsum purpos.

At this time, King William come in Ros, and punist Makulyene and Makbenne, with mony othir wekit limmaris of the Ilis. Sic thingis done, King William come to Abirbrothok, and commandit the craftismen to ceis not for expensis; that it micht rise with maist magnificence, to the honour of God. At his returning to the castell of Bertha, he saw, be aventure, Gilcrist, with his two sonniss, castand scherattis for thair meit, nocht knowing quhat thay wer; for thay wer disgisit: nochtheles, he had gret mervell that sa plesand young men as thay apperit, wer occupyit with sic vile laubour. Incontinent, Gilcrist, with his beld heid, fel on kneis afore him, and said, "Gif ony mercy be for tint men in the, maist reuthful prince, "quhen thay ar punist condignely for thair offence; I beseik the, "for the luf that Crist had to all sinfull pepil, quhen he sparit "nocht to sched his precious blude for thair redemption, to have "piete and reuth on me, and thir my miserable sonniss; quhilkis hes "sufferit gret displeseir with me, but ony crime be thaim commit- "tit." At last, quhen King William had inquirit him quhat he wes, and how he wes brocht in sic miserie, the teris fell sa fast fra his ene, with ithand sichis, that he micht nocht schaw, lang time, quhat he was. At last he said, "I am Gilcrist, maist unhappy and "sorowfull creature in erd, quhilk, alace! put my handis in thy "blude, and was thairfore disherist of all my landis, and exilit in "Ingland, with thir my two sonniss. And becaus I micht nocht

“ suffer the schamefull injuris done to me be Inglismen, objectand  
 “ daily the gret felicity that I had sum time, to my derisioun; and  
 “ als, for the lawis maid laithly aganis outlawis of aithir realmes; I  
 “ was constranit to cum heir, with my sonnys: quhare we leif on  
 “ the rutis of herbis in simer, and castis scherettis, as thou seist, to  
 “ sustene our lifis in the winter. Heirfore, gif ony reuth or piete  
 “ be in thy hart, or gif thy indignatioun be mesit be lang time by-  
 “ run, have mercy on our sorowfull life, and remit us oure offence;  
 “ for we desire nocht to be restorit to oure heritage and honour,  
 “ bot allanerly to thy favoure and grace. And gif thou wilt con-  
 “ descend heirto, thou sall not onely conquere gret honoure and fame  
 “ be exemple of piete, bot be ane renownit prince amang all pepil,  
 “ and win gret merite afore God, schawing thyself the followar of  
 “ Crist, the gevar of mercy and peace.”

The king, movit be this wourdis, and remembring the gret man-  
 heid quhilk he had sa oft provin afore, at sindry jeoperdyis, for the  
 honour and commoun weill of Scotland, and seing him dejectit fra  
 gret honoure in supreme miserie; nocht onely remittit all his offence,  
 bot petuisly embrasit him in his armis, and commandit him to be of  
 gud comfort; syne gaif him hors and money, to follow him to For-  
 fair, quhare he restorit him and his two sonnys to all thair landis,  
 except sa mekill as war gevin afore, be King William, to the Ab-  
 bay of Abirbrothok. Efter this, Gilcrist perseverit in gud faith  
 and obeisance to the king: and becaus his eldest sonne deceissit but  
 ony airis, and his othir sonne unabill to mary, he gaif mekill of his  
 heritage to Abirbrothok. Efter his deith, his sonne was of na les  
 devotioun; for he gaif the residew of his landis to the said abbay:  
 and, thairfore, Gilcrist, and his two sonnys, ar buryit in the said  
 abbay, before Sanct Katherinis alter; as thair superscription schawis.  
 And thought King William was gevin, in this wise, to the bigging  
 of the said abbay; yit he left na thing undone that might pertene  
 to ane gud prince, and governit his realme in justice, gevand his  
 engine to reward all gud men and virtewis personis, and to punis  
 limmaris. He maid sindry lawis to punis thevis and oppressouris  
 of the cuntre, quhilkis war our prolix to put in this Buke.

## Chap. Seventh.

*How King William recoverit his landis. How Richard, King of Ingland, and Philip, King of France, went with gret armyis in Jowry. Of thair vassalage and trubill. How Erle David returnit out of the Haly Land, and foundit Lundoris.*



UHILL sic thingis war done in Scotland, King Hary, the Emprice sonne, deceissit in Ingland: to quhome succedit his sonne Richard; for Hary, his first son, wes deceissit. King Richard, eftir his coronatioun, full of curage and spreit, gaderit ane strang army to pas in the Haly Land; and maid peace with all his nichtbouris, that na trubill suld follow in his realme be his absence. Afore his jorney, he randerit Berwik, Roxburgh, and Striveling to King William; with sa mekil of Northumbirland as wes tane fra him afore, in this last battall at Anwik. He gaif ouir all the landis of Cumbir and Huntingtoun, undir thir conditionis: "The munitionis and strenthis thairof sall remane undir his capitanis; and the remanent landis thairof to be inhabit be the Scottis." Attoure, to have the more benevolence of Scottis, he dischargit the residew of King Williamis ranson, except x.m poundis, quhilkis he tuke allanerly to support his weris. And quhen King William had resavit al his landis and castellis on this maner, he maid his brothir David Erle of Huntingtoun; and send him, with v.m men, to support King Richard in his weris. King Richard left his brothir Johne Governour of Ingland, to his returning; and maid his sister sonne, Arthure, Duk of Normandy, to be heritour to the croun of Ingland, failyeing succession of him and his brothir.

Nocht lang eftir, King Richard come, with mony nobil men, dukis, erlis, baronis, to Massilia, ane port of Provance; quhare he pullit up salis, with ane hundreth and x schippis, to pas to Jerusalem: fra our redemptioun, ane thousand, ane hundreth, xci yeris. On the samin maner, Phillip, King of France, come out of the port

of Janis, with mony nobill men, spirituall and temporall; and arrivit at Achon, ane gret town of Jowry, quhilk wes that time under the empire of Sarayenis, and beltit the samin with strait sege. Quhill King Phillip wes lyand thus at the sege of Achon, King Richard arrivit in the Ile of Cipre; and tuke purpos, or he went ony forthar, to purge the samin of Cristis ennimes. Sone eftir, he displayit his baner, and come with bludie swerd throw the said Ile; and finalie, tuke the King of Cipre, with his douchter, presoneris. And quhen he had deliverit this Ile to Cristin pepil, he pullit up salis, to meit King Phillip at Achon; and, be adventure, met ane flot of Sarayenis be the gait, quhilkis wer cuming in support of the said toun: and, eftir lang and terrible bergane, he sank ane large part of the Sarayenis under seis, and the remanent put to flicht; syne went forthwart to King Phillip. The sege continewit lang time at this toun, throw the gret defence that the Sarayenis maid with the samin; howbeit the uter wallis wer brokin in sindry partis, be force of rammis, and othir instrumentis of chevalry. At last, King Phillip fell in sic infirmite, that he wes constrainit to retorne in France. Nochttheles, King Richard determit, nocht to depart fra the sege of Achon, quhill the samin wer expugnat. In the mene time, hapnit ane Scot, namit Oliver, to be in the said toun; for he wes banist afore out of Scotland, and fled to the Sarayenis: and, be lang conversatioun with thaim, he had thair perfite langage, nane of thame knawing quhat he wes. This Oliver wes than sodjour in ane toure of this toun, quhare na trinschis nor outwallis wer beyond the samin. He happinnit, be aventure, to se amang the wache of Erle David of Huntington, ane of his kinnismen, namit Johne Durward, with quhome he wes lang time afore acquentit; and incontinent, he cryit on him be name, desiring, under assurance, to commoun with him. Efter certane commoning, this Oliver set ane houre to geif entres to Erle David, with al his army, in the toun; sa that Erle David wald restore him to his land and heritage in Scotland. The houre set, Erle David come, with ane gret power of men, to the toure afore rehersit, quhare he gat enteres with his army; and incontinent, with gret noyis and clamoure, he come throw the town, to the gret slauchter of all pepill foundin in it. King Richard seand, on the morow, the Scottis



standart on the wallis, enterit in the town; and within schort time efter, brocht ane gret castell, quhilk stude nocht far fra this town, to rewine. Attoure, he had tane mony othir gret townis and strenthis of Jowry, quhilk war takin afore fra Cristin men, be cruelte of Sarayenis, war nocht ane wickit contentioun rais betwix Inglismen and Franchemen, for desire of honouris. At last, quhen King Richard had distroyit this town of Achon, and was returnand in Italy, ane suddane tempest severit his navy: throw quhilk he was destitute of freindis, and finaly, be treasoun of certane evill Cristin men, he was brocht to Hary, Emprioure. The schip that Erle David was intil, be rageand tempest, was sa brokin, that mony of thaim quhilkis war in hir perist, and he narrowly eschapit with his life. Efter this, he was tane be the inhabitantis of this land, and brocht to Alexandria, quhare he was haldin lang time in preson: quhill at last he was coft be marchandis of Venice, and brocht to Constantinople. Nocht lang efter, he was brocht to Venis, quhare he was redemit be merchandis of Ingland, and brocht to Flanderis; and thair he pullit up salis, to returne in Scotland: and, quhen he was litill departit fra the land, he was drevin, be unmercifull tempest, nocht far fra Norroway and Scheitland, with incredibill danger. Finaly, quhen he had maid ane voit to big ane kirk in the honoure of the Virgine Mary, gif he war fortunat to eschape the danger of seis, he arrivit in Tay, beside Dundee, not far fra Sanct Nicholas Chapell, but ony rudder or taikill; and gaif thankis to God and the Blissit Virgine for delivering of him fra sic extreme perill. The place quhare he arrivit was callit Allectum; bot efter his cumming, it changit name, and was callid Dundee, quhilk signifyis, in our langage, the Gift of God. King William, heirand the returning of his brothir, quhome he belevit mony yeris afore deceissit, come with maist diligence to Dundee, and embrasit him; syne gaif thankis to God and the Blissit Virgine Mary, that deliverit his brothir fra sa mony dangeris. Efter this, he gart maik generall processionis throw the realme, to geif thankis to God for the happy returning of his brothir.

Sic thingis done, ane conventioun was maid at Dundee; in the quhilk, licence was gevin to Erle David to big ane abbay in quhat

place he plesit of Scotland, and to dotat it with landis and rentis at his pleseir. King William gaif mony privilegis to Dundee, quhilkis induris to thir dayis. David, nocht refusing the benevolence of his brothir, biggit ane abbay, callit Lundoris, efter the ordour of Sanct Benedict. Ane thing is thair, richt mervellus: na man is hurt in that abbay with eddaris. Thir eddaris lyis in the middis of ane vale, circulit with wod and rinnand watter: throw quhilk, thay burgeon with mair plentuous nowmer than evir was sene in ony othir partis. Howbeit, na man gettis skaith thair of: for we have sene young barnis play amang thaim, but dammage or hurt following.

### Chap. Eighth.

*How King Richard returnit in Ingland. How King William punist gret limmaris in his realme. Of the Nativite of Prince Alexander. Of the Coronatioun of King Johne. How the Paip send ane sword to King William.*



ING Richard, schort time efter, was redemit with sa huge money, that mekil of al the silver and goldin vessel of Ingland was cunyeit for his redemptioun. Thus was he finaly deliverit, and ressavit in Ingland with gret triumphe. King William, heirand the returning of King Richard in Ingland, come with his brothir Erle David to London, and gaif to him two thousand mark Striveling; for he had waistit all his money be payment of his ransoun and weris. Be thir humaniteis, followit gret amite and tendernes betwix the two kingis.

In the mene time, King William fell in gret infirmite within Ingland: and, becaus the pepill belevit his deith, rais gret trubill in all partis of Scotland: for sindry limmaris, traisting all justice to expire be his deith, invadit the pepill with heirschippis and slauchter in all partis. Nocht lang efter, King William convalescit of his infirmite, and returnit in Scotland with sic deligence, that mony of thir limmaris war tane, and punist effering to thair demeritis. The princi-

pal movar, namit Herald, was brocht to the king: first his ene was put out, syne he was geldit, and hingit, efter, apon ane gallous. Attoure, all his freindis war geldit on the samin maner, that na succession suld follow of thaim in times cumming.

In the yeir following, was mair derth than evir was sene afore; for the boll of beir nicht scarsly be coft for v cronis. And in the nixt yeir, quhilk was fra the incarnation ane thousand, ane hundred, ninte and nine, was mair abundance and plente than evir was hard afore. In this yeir, King Williamis wife, namit Armangarda, was deliverit of Prince Alexander. The samin yeir, King Richard of Ingland deceissit; to quhom Johne, his brothir, succedit. The iiii yeir following, Alexander was maid Prince of Scotland. The samin yeir, was send ane legat fra the Paip, to King William; and presentit to him ane swerd, with hiltis and scheith of gold, set with mony precious stanis. This legat als presentit ane bonat of tire, maid in maner of diademe, of purpoure hew; to signify that he was defendar of the faith. At this time, mony indultis and privilegis war grantit be the Paip, for the liberte of haly kirk in Scotland. It was commandit be King William, that Saterdag sal be haldin hali-day, fra xii houris furth at none; quhilk sall be schawin to the pepill be sound of bell: and na prophane laubouris to be exercit fra that time furth quhil Monunday; and the pepill to perseveir al-lanerly in divine service. Gret punitioun was ordanit for thaim that war found rebelland thairto.

## Chap. Ninth.

*How King William and King Johne war considerat togidder be marriage. Of King Williamis haly life, and liberalite to the Kirk. How the Toun of Perth tuk beginning.*



FTER this, King William returnit to London, to make his homage for the landis of Northumbirland, Cumbir, and Huntingtoun. Als sone as he had maid his homage, King Johne desirit him to pas with him in France, aganis King Philip. And becaus he refusit, for the band that his eldaris maid afore with France, King Johne clamit agane his landis foresaid, and tuk ane gret nowmer of guddis out of the samin, in maner of poind, for the proffet bygane. Nochtheles, the nobillis of Ingland, knawing richt difficill to have weir baith with France and Scotland atanis, causit all the saidis guddis to be redressit. In the yeir following, was sa vehement frost in Scotland, that na pluch nicht be put in the land afore the middis of Marche: attoure, the aill was sa frosin, that it was sald be pound wechtis. Efter quhilk, followit ane huge snaw, to the gret mortalite of bestiall. Als, ane continewall trimbling and erdquaik followit, fra the Epiphany Day to Februar.

Efter this winter, King Johne endit his weris on France: and, to have occasioun of battall aganis the Scottis, he began to big ane castel fornens Berwik. King William, advertist heirof, send his ambassatouris to King Johne, desiring him to seik na occasioun of battall, and to big na strenthis fornens him: and becaus he gat nocht bot repuls of his desiris, he come with ane gret power, and kest down the said castel. King Johne, to revenge thir injuris, rasit ane army, to cum in Scotland; and King William, to prevene his travell, come to the bordouris. Yit, quhen baith the armyis war reddy to fecht, thay war severit be intervention of prudent men. Finaly, baith the armyis skalit, and the two kingis come to York; quhare peace and amite was roborat betwix thaim, under thir conditionis:



“ King Williamis two douchteris, namit Isobell and Margaret, sal  
 “ mary two sonnys of King Johne, namit Hary and Richard; to  
 “ that fine, gif ane deit, the tothir sall succed to the crowne of Ing-  
 “ land: for quhilkis King William sal geif sufficient drowry. At-  
 “ tour, the castel that was cassin down laitly be King William, sal  
 “ remane in that samin maner, nevir to be edifyit in times cuming.  
 “ In the plege of Towquhare, and observatioun of al thir premisses,  
 “ nine nobillmen of Scotland sal be deliverit to King Johne.” In  
 this conventioun, King William resignit the landis of Northumbir-  
 land, Cumbir, and Huntingtoun, in the handis of King Johne, that  
 his sonne, Prince Alexander, might be sesit thairintill. For siclik,  
 consuetude was observat, in josing of thir landis be Scotland, that  
 thay suld be haldin of the King of England; and homage to be maid  
 to him and his successouris, be all Scottis kingis that josit and bru-  
 kit thame for the time.

Efter that thir two kingis war at thair counsal at York, was brocht  
 to thaim ane child of gret bewte, heritour to sindry landis of Ing-  
 land; bot he was trublit with mervellus infirmite: for ane of his ene  
 was consumit be flux of evill humouris; his hand pinit away; and  
 had na power of his toung, nor yit his ta side. The medicinaris,  
 seing him have sic contrarius infirmiteis, and nocht knowing the  
 caus thair of, jugit him incurabill. Nochtheles, King William maid  
 ane croce on him, and restorit him, incontinent, to his heill. Sindry  
 belevit this done be miracle of God, that the virtew of this nobil  
 man sall nocht be hid, nor unknowin to the pepil.

Nocht lang efter, King William returnit in Scotland, and dotat  
 the kirkis of Newbottell, Melros, Dunfermeling, and Aberdene, with  
 sindry landis. He foundit ane new bischoprik, callit Argyle, with  
 landis sufficient to sustene the samin. Sic thingis done, King Wil-  
 liam went to the castell of Bertha; and within schort dayis efter,  
 the watter of Tay and Almond rais with sa terribill inundatioun and  
 preis, that it brak the wallis of Bertha, and drownit mony of the  
 pepil that wes in it. And thocht King William narrowly eschapit,  
 with his wife, barnis, and freindis; yit his young son, namit Johne,  
 perist, with his nurice, and othir sindry personis that dependit on  
 him for the time. Thus rais na les dolour and lamentation, than is

with the pepill quhen thair townes are tane with ennimes: for the preis of rageand watteris apperis to me mair terribill and dangerus than ony fire. For the fire increissis with small beginning, and schawis sa sone the self, that it invadis the pepil mair in thair guddis than in thair bodyis, and is sone slokin, quhare men ar deligent. Be contrar, no wit nor deligence of man may resist the inundatioun of watteris; for it enteris at duris and windowis with sic violence, that na remeid is aganis it, bot gif ane man find haistely schippis or bairtis: and quhen sic thingis can nocht be gottin, thocht the pepill pas to the hicht of the hous, yit thay ar nocht saiffit be that way; for the watter gangis above thair heidis, and puttis thaim to miserabill deith. Thus ar sindry houssis quhilkis stude on land, nocht bot seyis. King William, seand the castell of Bertha distroyit be inundatioun of watter in this wise, foundit the towne quhilk was callit, eftir, Perth, be ane man of that name, quhilk gaif the ground quhare this town was biggit. King William, to caus the samin rise in honour and riches, gaif sindry privilegis thairto. Bot now this town is callit Sanct Johnstoun; and was foundit, fra our redemption, ane m ce and x yeris.

### Chap. Tenth.

*How King Johne subdewit Ireland and Walis. How King William punist sindry Conspiratouris. How England and Ireland war maid tributaris to the Paip. Of King Williamis Deith; and how sindry ordouris of Freris began.*



HE yeir following, King Johne of Ingland subdewit the maist part of Ireland to his empire; and the nixt yeir, he subdewit all Walis. The samin time, rais in Caithnes gret trubill; for Gothred, son of Makculyem, quhais rebellion was schawin afore, maid gret heirschippis in Ros, and sindry othir boundis thairabout. His cumpany incressit ilk day mair, be assistance of sindry limmaris of Lochquhaber and Ilis. To punis thir attemptatis, King William send the Erlis of Fif, Atholl,

and Buchquhane, with vii men; and thay, be set battall, vincust the said Gothred, and brocht him presoner to the king: quhom he gart heid, with mony othereis quhilkis war brocht to him on the samin maner.

At this time, rais ane gret dissensioun betwix King Johne of Ingland and Paip Innocent the Thrid; as efter followis. King Johne tuk, be generall exaction, the tent peny of al landis and frutis pertenand to the kirk, and punist thaim that war repugnant thairto with maist cruelte: and becaus certane abbayis and bischoprikis within his realme war nocht obeisant, he tuk possession of all thair landis, and nocht onely reft fra thaim all thair gold, silver, and jowellis, bot banist the religious men thair of. Paip Innocent, traisand sic cruelteis nocht semand to Cristin princeis; that othir princis suld nocht invaid the kirk with siclik avarice, persuadit King Johne, mony wayis, to desist fra thir extorsionis, and to redres all injuris done be him to the kirk. And becaus he couth na way divert his mind fra the samin, he denuncit him cursit, and deprivit him, sa far as he micht, of al honour and dignite; makand invocatioun to all Cristin princes to cum with thair armyis aganis him, for defence of the liberte of haly kirk. King Johne, seand him of na pissance to resist sa mony armyis devisit aganis him in all partis, fenyeit him penitent. And, to have absolutioun for the offence that he had committit aganis the kirk, he gaif ouir the realmes of Ingland and Ireland to Paip Innocent, to pay yeirly, quhill vii yeris war gone, x thousand markis Striveling to the Paip and his successouris, for the realmes of Ingland and Ireland; quhilk pensioun is yeirly payit, to oure dayis. Sic thingis done, King Johne and his realme wes assoilyeit fra all censuris led aganis thaim.

Schort time efter, King William, brokin with lang age, deceissit at Striveling, the xlix yeir of his regne; fra our redemptioun, ane thousand, two hundred, xiv yeris; and was buryit in Aberbrothak, before the hie alter. The yeir afore his deith, two cometis apperit, in the moneth of Marche, richt terribill to the sight of pepill: that ane schane ay afore the sonne-rising, and this othir afore his down-falling. In the nixt yeir, ane calf was sene in Northumberland, with heid and crag like the awin nature, and the remenant like the

nature of ane hors. In the nixt winter, was sene two mones in the lift, severit fra othir, and hornit naturally, as the mone usis to be in hir incressing or wainding.

In the time of King William war mony nobill clerkis: as Dominicus, Spanyeart, Channoun of Saint Augustinis ordoure; quhilk, sone efter, left the samin, and began the ordour of freris, callit Predicaturis. And in this time was Sanct Francis, quhilk began the ordouris of freir minouris, callit Gray Freris; of quhom mony abbayis ar now richely biggit, in all partis of the warld. At this time was Joachim, Abbot of Calaber, quhilk wrait the commentaris in the bukis of Apocalipsis. That ilk time was Rodulphe, Archebischop of Culane, quhilk brocht the bodyis of thre kingis out of Pers to Constantinople, and efter that in Culane; quhare thay remane now, in gret veneratioun of the pepill. The samin time, Peter Comestor wrait the History Ecclesiastik. Amang us, war in thay dayis sindry haly men: as Udward, Bischop of Brechin; Eustachius, Abbot of Arbroth: quhilkis war excellent precheouris. King William foundit the Abbay of Balmernocht, bot it was dotat be Emen-gard, his wife. And about this time war institute the monkis of the Trinite, callit the redemptioun of captivis. Two of thame war send in Scotland be Paip Innocent; to quhome King William gaif his palice riall in Aberdene, to big thair abbay; and was of purpos to geif thaim sindry othir thingis, gif he had levit.



## Chap. Eleventh.

*Of King Alexander the Secound, and his actis. How King Johne of Ingland invadit the kirk with gret exactionis. How the Paip and kirkmen war corruppit be his money to assist to his opinioun. How King Alexander renewit the band of France; and of the Deith of King Johne.*



ING WILLIAM deceissit in this wise, his son, Alexander the Secound, was crownit at Scone. Efter his coronation, he went to Abirbrothok, quhare he remanit xiv dayis, doing funerall obsequies for King William, his fader; and commandit na playis nor bankettis to be usit for ane yeir to cum, that the pepil nicht lament the deith of his fader with publik doloure. The kingis servandis war clothit in dule weid all the yeir following. The first conventioun that he maid, was in Edinburgh, quhare he ratifyit all thingis done be his fader. And efter that he had assignit certane landis to his moder, to sustene hir rial estait, he assignit certane jugis to remane in all townis of his realm, for decision of doutsum materis, and execution of justice.

At this time, rais gret discention betwix King Johne of Ingland and his nobillis: for he was sa full of avarice, and birnand desire to conques guddis, that he wald admit na heritoure to thair landis, quhill he had, for thair enteres, the just valour of thair heritage for ane yeir. He tuk yerely pensionis fra abbottis and bishoppis, contrar the liberte of haly kirk: and quhen ony prelate deceissit, he tuk all the rentis of the place, quhil the successoure enterit. The prelati of Ingland, richt impacient to suffer sic exactionis, solistit sindry gret princes to rise aganis the king; and finaly, dressit thair purpos with sic menes, that baith the Kingis of France and Scotland promittit to cum in Ingland to thair support. King Johne, heirand sic rebelloun maid aganis him, to eschew the present danger, maid aggreance with his prelati; and promittit, be his gret aith, to repare al injuris done be him. Howbeit, na thing thair of

followit in effect: for he was sa blindit with avarice, that he returnit to his evil maneris; and send his ambassatouris to Gawlo, ane cardinall of Rome, complaning the violence of his subdittis aganis him, quhilkis, be thair menis, hes persuadit the Kingis of France and Scotland to invade him, in sic maner, that he may nocht governe his realm in liberte. Pape Innocent, becaus he had ane yeirly pension of King Johne, was the mair commovit at this complaint, and promittit to debait him with maist favoure. In thay days war, as thair is now, maist avaritious pepill in the court of Rome; and thairfore every thing was grantit that micht bring ony importance to thaim, but sicht to reason or conscience. Amang al sic inordinat personis, nane was mair vicious nor covatus than Gwalo; for he pretermittit na thing unsped to King Johne, quhare he micht find ony commodite efter following.

Now will we mak ane digressioun, and se how far the prelatis and kirkmen in auld times war above the prelatis in our dayis, in virtewis and singular life: of quhilkis the prelatis now present beris nocht bot the name, na thing following thair life. For thay auld Faderis war gevin to imitatioun of Crist in poverté, pieté, humilite, and justice; drawing the pepill, be thair fervent cherite and continewal precheing in service of God, with equale affectioun to pure and riche: nocht arraying thaim with gold, silver, nor precious abulyementis; nocht using the court, nor accompanyit with weirmen and bordellis; nocht contending to exceid the lust and insolence of princes, nor doing na thing be dissait, bot levand with pure conscience and verite. Bot the prelatis and kirkmen, in oure dayis, ar rutit with ma vicis than ar sene with ony othir pepil. Sic enormiteis hes rogne perpetually in the kirk, sen riches was apprisit and haldin in maist honoure amang kirkmen.

King Johne, nochtwithstanding his promes and obligatioun maid afore be his gret aith; quhen he was advertist be Gwalois writtingis, promitting to defend him in all materis, began to invade his nobillis, spretuall and temporall, with mair exactionis than he did afore; regarding na thing, bot onely to conquer guddis and riches. The nobillis, richt impacient to sustene thir extorsionis, solistit Lewis, Dalphine of France, and Alexander, King of Scotland, to cum with gret armyis in thair support. King Johne, havand litill confidence

in his subdittis, fled to ane strenth : throw quhilk, Lewis come, but ony obstakill, to London, quhare he was ressavit plesandly be the pepill. Efter this, he send to King Johne, desiring him to abstene fra all exactionis, and nocht to injure his pepill, in times cuming, with sic extorsionis ; for sic thingis makis princes baith odious to thair subdittis, and to all othir pepill. Attoure, the said Lewis desirit King Johne to redres all skaithis quhilkis his subdittis hes sufferit be his tyranny, and to kepe his faith to thaim, as afore promittit. And gif he thocht sic thingis to be observat, to send his sonne, with othir his nerest freindis, to remane in plege for observation thairof. King Johne, havand his confidence in na thing mair than in his money, and in this Gwalo, cardinall afore rehersit ; wald heir na condition of peace, and said, he suld nocht ccis quhill the attemptatis done be his pepil war condignely punist. Lewis, incontinent, rasit his army, with sindry Inglismen of his opinion, to invaid King Johne. Nochtheles, he was consultit to superseid his passage, becaus the samin nicht succeid mair to publik dammage of the cuntre, than punitioun on him that was the motive of all thair trubil. King Alexander, heirand sic trubill in England, come with ane army to London, but ony dammage done to the pepil. Be quhais cuming, al trubil ceissit : for als sone as thir two princis, Alexander and Lewis, had commonit betwix thaim of sindry materis pertening to thair realmes, thay went to King Philip in France ; levand behind thaim x.m men, to assist to the lordis of England aganis King Johne. Sone efter, Kinge Philip and King Alexander met togidder at Bolonie ; quhare the band was renewit betwix Scotland and France, with all pointis efter the auld maner. Sic thingis done, King Alexander and Lewis returnit in England. Efter quhais cuming, King Johne tuk sic malancoly, that he deceissit.

### Chap. Twelfth.

*Of the Generall Counsall haldin at Rome be Paip Innocent. And how the Kingis of Scotland and Ingland invadit aithir realmes with gret heirschippis and slauchter; and how thay war agreit.*



FTER deith of King Johne, his son Hary was crounit. Quhil sic thingis war done in Ingland, ane Generall Counsall was at Rome: in the quhilk was cccc and xii bischoppis, and dccc abbotis. In this counsall, Paip Innocent cursit all thaim that war ennimes to King Johne of Ingland; and in speciall, cursit Lewis, Dalphin of France, and Alexander, King of Scotland, with all otheris of thair opinioun; alliegeand thame invasouris of the liberte of Rome, becaus Ingland was tributar to the Paip. Schort time following, Gwalo, the avaritious cardinal afore rehersit, come in Ingland, and cursit all thame that invadit King Johne during his life, and interditit all placis quhare thay com. Lewis, seand the maist part of Ingland assist to King Hary and Gwalo, bocht ane absolutioun with infinite money, syne returnit in France. Attoure, this avaritious cardinal curst and interditit sindry gret princes of Ingland, quhil thay war constrainit to by thair absolutiounis with infinite money; for he had na sicht to honest nor dishonest actionis, bot allanerly to his proffet.

Nocht lang efter, King Hary come with ane army in Scotland, invading the cuntre with gret slauchter and heirschippis, quhare thay come. Als sone as he was advertist that King Alexander was gaderit, with all the power of Scotland, to geif him battal, he fled with gret deligence in Ingland. Nochtheles, King Alexander followit on him, and kest down mony castellis and strenthis of Northumbirland to the ground; and efter that he had won Carlele, and garnist it with folkis, he returnit, with gret triumph and honouris, in Scotland. King Hary, heirand that King Alexander had skailit his army, returnit with ane new power in Scotland, and tuke baith the town and castell of Berwik; syne brint and heryit all the see



camp to Haddingtoun; and saiffit nane that was found be the gait, except wiffis, barnis, and preistis; and returnit with his army in Ingland. In the mene time, this avaritious prelat Gwalo, traisting to find sufficient oportunitie to conques gret money in Scotland, put the samin under proces of interdictioun; and persewit King Alexander, becaus he invadit Ingland, with maist terribill cursingis. Thir cursingis inflammit the Scottis with sic hatrent aganis Inglismen, that the same apperit not to ceis, but uter exterminion of baith thair realmes. Nochtheles, be intervention of prelatis, peace was finally maid betwix the two realmes, under thir conditionis: “King Alexander sall rander to Inglismen the town of Carlele; and “King Hary sall rander the town of Berwik to Scottis. The hail “dominion of Cumbir to remane with King Alexander, with the “half of Northumbirland, to the recroce; and King Alexander to “be assoilyeit of all censuris led aganis him be Gwalo.” The two kingis beand aggreit, on this wise, on al debaitis, King Alexander was assoilyeit, and his realme deliverit fra interdiction. Incontinent, Gwalo, that he sall not depart with tume hand, summond all the prelatis of Scotland to Anwik; havand na actionis aganis thaim, bot onely to trubil thame, quhil thay have debursit large soumes of money to his profet. Sindry of thaim, to be exonerat of truble, gaif him large money; otheris refusit his desiris, and tuk indignatioun, that sperituall materis wer sa opinly sauld for money. Incontinent, Gwalo summond thame to Rome; beleving thay suld tak sic feir for lang jurnay and travell thair of, that thay suld condiscend to his purpos. Nochttheles, thay wer litill affrayit thairwith, bot went finalie to the Paip, and complanit the insufferable injuris done in Ingland and Scotland be Gwalo. Thus wes Gwalo finalie dischargit of all auctorite, and condampnit in gret soumes of money to the Paip. All thir prelatis that wer summond be him to Rome, wer assolyeit fra his petitioun.

At this time, David, Erle of Huntingtoun, deceissit; and wes buryit in ane abbay of Ingland, namit Sevicia.

### Chap. Thirteenth.

*How King Hary and King Alexander wer alliat be mariage. Of the translation of Sanct Thomas of Canterbury. Of sindry legatis send in Scotland be the Paip to conques money.*



ARY, King of Ingland, eftir his cuming to perfite age, wes more desirus of peace than weir. Ane convention wes maid betwix him and King Alexander at York; in the quhilk, the two kingis wer alliat togiddir in this maner: Jane, sister of King Hary, wes maryit on King Alexander; and the two sisteris of King Alexander wer maryit on two gret princes of Ingland. This alliance wes maid, fra our redemption, mcccxx yeris. And in this yeir wes the translatioun of Sanct Thomas of Canterbury done be the king and his nobillis spirituall and temporall, with al solempnite and reverence that micht be devisit. In the nixt yeir, ane legat wes send be the Paip in Scotland, to purches money, to furnis ane new army to pas on the Turkis. And quhen he had gottin na litill money to this effect in Scotland, he spendit it in his lust and insolence; and said, at his returning to the Paip, that it wes reft fra him be brigandis. Schort time eftir his cuming to Rome, ane othir legat wes send to the samin effect in Scotland. King Alexander, advertist afore be his cuming, convenit his noblis to ane counsal; in the quhilk, ane bischop said to him as followis: “ Howbeit sindry thingis presentlie occurris, quhilkis  
 “ effrayis me to schawe sic materis as bene prejudiciall to the com-  
 “ moun weil; yit, maist nobil prince, quhen I considir thy huma-  
 “ nite, faith, and constance, gevin to nathing mair than defence and  
 “ weil of thy liegis, I can nocht ceis, for the action of common  
 “ liberte, to schaw the suth: for sen the tyranny is intollerable,  
 “ quhilk is exercit be kingis or princis discending of linial succession,  
 “ to thair kindly heritage; mekill mair is the tyranny insufferable,  
 “ quhen it is exercit on us be men of vile and obscure linage. Heir-  
 “ fore, gif the sindry and manifest wrangis done to us thir mony

“ yeris bygane, had cumin be the Paipis mind, thay wer to be suf-  
 “ ferit in sum maner: bot sen limmaris of vile and obscure lignage,  
 “ quhilkis ar promovit to beneficis for thair horrible vices, hes nocht  
 “ onlie interditit our realm but ony commission, bot hes spendit in  
 “ thair corruppit vices, the money that thay gaderit in our cuntre,  
 “ be the Papis autorite, for rasing of armyis aganis the Turkis; I  
 “ think thair cursit avarice suld have na forthir place amang trew  
 “ pepill, specially amang us, becaus thay have oure simplicitie and  
 “ meiknes in contemptioun. The yeris afore passait, ye complanit  
 “ the injuris done be Gwalo, quhen he held your realm interditit,  
 “ and mony of al your prelatis under cursing, becaus thay wald not  
 “ answeire him of money to sustene his lustis. Attour, this Gwalo  
 “ wes so periolus fontane of al iniquite and vice, that, howbeit he  
 “ wes send to treit concord betwix Inglismen and Scottis; yit, be  
 “ his avarice, he gaif sic occasioun of battall, that baith the realmes,  
 “ wer nocht thair hatrent wes the more haistely mesit, had invadit  
 “ othir, to thair uter distructioun. And sen thir terrible dedis ar  
 “ patent, quhat nedis thaim to be remembrit to your displeseir?  
 “ Attoure, eftir that we wer exonerat of Gwalo, come in his place  
 “ ane new legat, of na better life, bot erar wors; for quhen he had  
 “ gottin large money fra us, for redemptioun of presoneris, and  
 “ rasing of new armyis aganis the Turkis, he spendit it all in his  
 “ insolence, and fenyeit that it wes reft be brigandis. Heirfore, sen  
 “ we have experience of sa mony wickit and hevy dammagis done  
 “ to us be thir two legatis afore rehersit, we sal be reput mischant  
 “ fulis to admit the thrid; for it is not to be belevit, that this new  
 “ legat sal be of better conditionis than his fallowis wes afore. And  
 “ gif ony man list demand me quhat is to be done in this mater, I  
 “ say, Nothir this legat, nor yit na othir legat in times cuming, suld  
 “ be ressavit within this realme; becaus the samin is heryit and  
 “ waistit of money be thair continewall exactionis. Gif ony of yow  
 “ hes superflew money, ye may dispoine it erar to pure folk, than to  
 “ sic corrupit use of vicious legatis.”

Finalie, thir wourdis wer sa apprisit be the counsall, that this  
 legat wes nocht admittit to cum in the realme.

### Chap. Fourteenth.

*How King Alexander punist sindry Conspiratouris in his realme.  
And of the first cuming of Blak and Gray Freiris in Scotland.*



HE peace roborat in maner forsaide, followit ane civil battal in Scotland, be motioun of Gilespey Ros; for he com, with gret army, aganis the kingis auctorite: and eftir that he had slane mony of the kingis liegis, he brint the toun of Ennernes. To punis thir attemptatis, wes send Johne Cumin, Erle of Buchquhane, with ane cumpany of chosin men; and finalie, slew the said Gilespey, with baith his sonnis, and brocht thair heidis to the king. This trubill beand dantit, as said is, followit ane othir: for the men of Caithnes brint Adam, thair bischop, eftir that he had cursit thaim for non-payment of thair teindis. King Alexandir, heirand sic terrible cruelte done to this nobil prelat, ceissit nocht quhill cccc of the principall doaris thairof wer hingit. Attour, that na successioun sal cum of this wickit seid, he gart geld thair sonnis. The place quhare thay wer geldit, is callit, yit, The Staney Hill. Attoure, becaus the Erle of Caithnes maid na support to Bischop Adam, nor yit take punitioun on thir limmaris that committit this cruelte, he wes forfaitit of all his landis. King Alexander, for this punitioun, wes gretumly lovit be the Paip. Sic thingis done, King Alexander went to Abirdene, and dotat it with mony privilegis, howbeit the samin wes dotat afore with sindry commoditeis, be othir kingis. The bullis quhilkis war grantit be sindry Paipis, concerning the liberteis of the kirkis of Scotland, wer gevin in keping to Sanct Gilbert, Archeden of Murray; quhilk sucedit immediatly to the sait of Caithnes, eftir the slauchter of Bischop Adam. In the thrid yeir eftir, the Erle of Caithnes come to King Alexander, quhen he wes sittand with his modir, on the Epiphany Day, at his yuill; and desirit grace. King Alexander wes so pieteous and reuthfull, that he restorit him to his honouris,



landis, and possessionis, be ane sobir compositioun of money. Nochttheles, the offence that wes unpunist be man, wes sone eftir punist be gret justice of God: for he wes slane be his awin servandis, slepand in his bed; and the hous quhare he wes slane, brint; that na man suld have suspitioun of his slauchter, bot as it wer cumin be suddane aventure: and so he perist in the samin maner as Bischop Adam did, of quhais deith he wes participant.

At this time, sindry blak freris wer send in Scotland be Sanct Dominik. It is said, quhen King Alexander went in France, to renew the band of Scotland with King Philip, he prayit Sanct Dominik to send part of his freiris in Scotland, to instruct the Scottis: and, thairfore, thir freiris wer plesandly ressavit, and kirkis ereckit to thair contemplatioun. And thought thir men quhilkis wer send be Sanct Dominik, leiffit, as thay wer institute be him, in singulare life: yit, as oftimes hapis, all thingis, fra gud beginning, fallis in wers maneris; all thair successouris declinit fra gud religion in maist insolence and lust, and continewit in vicious life, ccc yeris; quhil at last thay wer reformat, in oure dayis, be Freir Johne Adamison, ane man of singulare erudition and life, quhilk wes professit in theologie with us at Abirdene. On the samin maner, wer send in Scotland, freir minouris, of Sanct Francis ordour. Mony of thaim, in the same maner, wer, sindry yeris eftir the deith of Sanct Frances, nocht sa religious as he wes. Nochttheles, thay ar now men of best life, specially amang us in Scotland.

## Chap. Fifteenth.

*How King Alexander punist sindry Conspiratouris, and agreit King Hary of Ingland and his nobillis. Of his new mariage; and of the nativite of his sonne Alexander. How mony nobillis of Scotland wer slane in Jowry.*



ANg peace perseverit, eftir this, in Scotland; quhill at last, Alane, Lord of Galloway, and Constable of Scotland, deceissit. And becaus he devidit al his landis, afore his deith, amang his thre douchteris, his bastard sonne gaderit ane army of x.m men, beleiving to recovir the lordschip of Galloway. At last, quhen he had invadit the cuntre with gret trubill, he wes slane, with v.m men of his opinioun, be the Erle of Merche and Walter Stewart, and the residew of his oist discomfist. The eldest douchter of this Alane of Galloway wes maryit on Roger Quincy, quhilk wes maid Constable of Scotland; and brukit it continewally be his succession, quhill the time of King Robert the Secound: in quhais time, this Roger of Quincinis successioun wes disherist and forfeitit, for certane crimes committit aganis the kingis majeste. And eftir his forfeit, the constabillary wes gevin to the Hayis of Arroll.

Sic thingis done in Scotland, King Alexander wes advertist of gret devisioun rising betwix King Hary of Ingland and his nobillis. And thairfore, to meis the samin, he went to London, with Jane his quene, and Isobell his sister. And quhen he had agreit King Hary and his nobillis of all debaitis, he maryit Isobell, his sister, on the Erle of Northfolk. And in the mene time, Jane, his quene, deceissit but ony successioun; quhilk thing causit King Alexander to return with gret lament in Scotland. In the next yeir, quhilk wes fra oure redemptioun ane thousand, twa hundreth, xxxix yeris; King Alexander, becaus he had na successioun of his body, maryit, at Roxburgh, the douchter of Ingeliame, Erle of Gowry; ane virgine of incredible bewte, namit Mary: on quhom he gat ane sonne,

namit Alexander, quhilk succedit immediatlie eftir him to the croun. In this yeir, King Hary dantit Walis, and slew the principall movaris of rebellious aganis him. During this time, wes ane knichtlie tournament at Hadingtoun, quhare King Alexander, with all his nobillis, wer assemblit for the time, and mony vailyeaunt men, be soverane vassalage, wan gret honouris. Nochtheles, the end of al thair pleseir succedit to anguis and sorow: for Patrik Cuming, Erle of Athole, wes slane within the nicht be Johne Bissart; and the place quhare he wes slane, brint, that na man suld have suspition of his slauchter, bot as it wer cumin onlie be suddane aventure of fire. And for this crime the Bissartis wer banist out of Scotland, and votit to the Haly Land, thair to fecht aganis the Turkis, and nevir to returne in Scotland.

About this time, Somerleid, Thane of Argyle, son to Somerleid afore rehersit, rasis gret trouble in al partis quhare he come: quhil at last he wes brocht be the Erle of Merche, with ane cord about his hals, afore the king; and gat remissioun, be that way, of his offence. At this time, wer mony seditious personis in the court of Ingland, traisting gret commoditeis to fall to thaim be weris. And thought the samin wer contrarius to thair commoun weill, yit thay traistit the oppression done to the pepill to be unpunist during the weris; for lawis and justice hes na place in time of battal. Thir men, in hop of thair perticular commoditeis, inflambit King Hary, contrar his faith, to invaid Scottis with battall; and began to big ane castell fornens Berwik, howbeit it was cassin down afore be King William, be condition of peace, nevir to be edifyit in times cuming. The bigging of this castell had bene sufficient occasion of weir betwix Inglis and Scottis, war not the noblis of Ingland inhibit the samin, as contrar to thair band and promes: and thus al occasion of battall ceissit.

In the nixt yeir following, come ambassatouris fra Lewis, King of France, schawing him redde to pas in Jowry; and thairfore desirit support of Scotland in his jorney. King Alexander, be tenor of his confideration with France, send Patrik, Erle of Marche; David Lindesay of Glennesk, and Walter Stewart of Dundonald, with ane nowmer of chosin men, to support King Lewis in the said jorney. All thir Scottis war slane be pest and swerd in Egypt, and

nane of thame returnit. Fra that time furth, King Alexander leiffit not lang; and deceissit in ane Ile of Argyle, efter gret infirmite, the xxxv yeir of his regne, the viii day of July; fra oure redemption, ane M CCXLIX. His body was buryit in Melros.

In the time of King Alexander war mony nobill clerkis; as Hugo, cardinall of the ordour of freir predicatouris, quhilkis maid the commentaris of the Bibill. Siclik, was in thir dayis Sanct Gilbert, Bischop of Caithnes. It is said, the haly bischop, Sanct Dutho, was in thir days, preceptour to Sanct Gilbert; otheris sayis, he was lang yeris afore this time. Nochtheles, in quhatsumevir time he was, treuth is, he was ane man of singular and haly life, richt acceptabill to God and man. His body lyis in Ros, haldin in gret veneration of pepill.

### Chap. Sixteenth.

*How the reliques of Sanct Margaret war translatit. How King Alexander was haldin in captivite with the Cumingis. Of his mariage with King Hary the Thrid; and of the bigging of Sanct Mungois Kirk.*



LEXANDER the Secound buryit on this wise, his son, Alexander the Thrid, havand bot ix yeris in age, was maid king. In the time of his coronatioun, stude afore him ane Hielandman, and salust him King of Scottis, in eloquent meter of his langage; schawing al the kingis of quhilkis he was linialy discendit, to Gathelus, the first beginnar of Scottis: and was plesandly rewardit for his labouris. King Alexander, in the secound yeir of his regne, convenit all the prelatiis and baronis of his realme; and tuke up the bonis of his grandame Sanct Margaret, and put thame in ane precious fertour of silver, the xxi day of July. And quhen hir blissit reliquies war brocht forthwart with maist veneration, thay baid still at the sepulture of Malcolme, hir husband, and wald na way be severit fra the samin. The pepill war astonist be this uncouth miracle, not knowing the caus thair of;



quhil, at last, ane agit man, movit be the Haly Spreit, exhortit thame to heir him, and said, “ Sanct Margaret hes hir husband in “ na les reverence, now quhen he is deid, than quhen he was on “ live; and, thairfore, scho wil not pas to the place quhare ye de- “ vise hir blissit bonis to rest, quhil the bonis of hir husband be “ translatit with hir, on the samin maner.” And quhen the samin was done, scho was brocht esaly to the samin place, quhare scho lyis to this day, in gret veneratioun of pepill; and baith buryit in ane place.

King Alexander had bot ix yeris of age quhen he was crownit. The noblis, dredand that, be contemptioun of his auctorite, gret trubil suld rise; send ambassatouris in Ingland, to renew peace, and to desire King Haryis douchter to him in mariage. In the same yeir, baith thir kingis convenit, with mony nobilmen, speritual and temporal, of baith the realmes, at York; quhare King Alexander marryit Margaret, douchter to King Hary the Thrid, in maist solempnite and reverence that micht be devisit, on Sanct Stevins Day, in Youle: and within few days efter, King Alexander returnit in Scotland. During the tender age of King Alexander, the realme of Scotland was governit in gret felicitye be his noblis: and efter his cuming to perfite age, he maid him to punis sindry extorsionis done be certane of his noblis; and summond the Erlis of Menteith, Athole, and Buchquhane, and the Lord of Strabogy, quhilkis war all Cumingis, and put thame to his horne, becaus thay comperit not to his justice. Thir lordis, movit with this displeseir, set thame to revenge the samin; and finaly, tuk the king at Kinrossy, with ane gret power of men, and brocht him to Striveling, quhare thay held him, lang time, in captivite and ward: throw quhilk, ilk day, rais mair trubil in the realme than was sene afore; becaus the king was haldin in captivite, quhilk suld have done thaim justice. The hous of Cumingis war in thir dayis full of riches, landes, and manrent: forby thir thre erllis and lord foresaid, thair was xxx knichtis and landit men, all of ane surname. Bot, as oft occurris in this realme, men of gret dominioun and rentis ar sa suspitious to the king, that the same is occasion of thair rewine. Within few dayis efter that King Alexander was tane in this maner, Walter, Erle of Menteith, the cheif of all the Cumingis, was poisonit be his wife: throw quhilk

the remanent Cumingis war sa astonist, that thay put the king to liberte, and tuk remission for all crimes that micht be imput to thaim. This woman that slew hir husband the Erle of Menteith, with hir new luffer, Johne Russell, fled in Ingland; quhare scho deit in miserie.

About this time, Paip Urbane, the fourt of that name, institute the feist of Corpus Cristi, to be ilk Thurisday efter Trinite Sondag. The Carmelite freris come at this time in Scotland, and ereckit ane chapell of oure Lady, outwith the wallis of Perth, to be thair kirk. It is said that ane monke of Melros was admonist, in the samin time, be ane vision in his sleip; and fand ane part of the haly croce, nocht far fra Peblis in Louthiane, within ane cace: and nocht far fra the samin, thay fand ane pig craftely ingravin, in quhilk was found certane bonis wound in silk, bot it was not knawin quhais bonis thay war. Als sone as the cace was opnit quhare the haly croce was inclusit, mony miraclis apperit. King Alexander, movit be devotioun thairof, biggit ane abbay in the honour of the haly croce; in the quhilk ar now monkis efter the ordour of the Trinite.

Not lang efter, wes ane conventioun betwix the two Kingis of Ingland and Scotland, at Wark, accompanyit with thair noblis of baith thair realmes. Thair was sa gud redres maid on ilk side, that baith the realmes war in gretar tranquillite than evir was sene in ony kingis time afore. At this time, the kirk of Glasgew was completit to the same perfectioun as it standis this day, biggit with gret magnificence; the maist part be liberalite of William, Bischop thairof; quhilk levit nocht lang efter the completing of the samin.

## Chap. Seventeenth.

*Of gret Derth in Albion. How Acho, King of Norroway, invadit Scotland with gret cruelteis. Of the Orison maid to him be ambassatouris of King Alexander.*



IN the yeir of God ane M CCLXIII, was ane gret derth in Albion; for the hervist was sa wak in the yeir afore, that the cornis, for the maist part, war corruppit, and maid ane miserabill derth throw all boundis of Albion. Acho, King of Norroway and Denmark, heirand how Scotland was trublit in this maner, belevit to find sufficient occasion to subdew it to his dominioun; and arrivit with ane flot of schippis in the Ilis, on Lammas Day, callit *Advincula Petri*. The Ilis war continewally haldin under the empire of Danis, fra King Edgaris time to thir days. Efter this, King Acho come in Arrane and Bute; and quhen King Acho had subdewit thame to his empire, in esperance of mair felicite, he arrivit in Albion; and tuk the castel of Aire be lang sege, and began to waist al the boundis lyand thairabout. King Alexander, astonist be thir novellis, for he was of young and tender age, and not sufficient to resist the cruelte of Danis, efter sa frequent victoryis falling to thaim; thocht na thing sa gud as to brek his ennimes be lang tary: and to that fine he micht prolong the battall, he send ambassatouris to King Acho; of quhilkis the principall said to him in this maner: “ War nocht our king and nobillis, be an-  
 “ ciant consuetude, observit sen thair first beginning, seikis redres  
 “ of all injuris done to thaim, afore thay invaid thair ennimes with  
 “ battall; thow suld nocht se oratouris send to the, bot erar ane army  
 “ cumand in thy contrar, with maist awfull and weirly ordinance.  
 “ We get nevir sa huge spulye, nor yit sa triumphant victoryis of  
 “ our ennimes, as quhen thay invaid us with maist wrangis, and  
 “ will heir na reason nor redres. We think na thing sa gud as to  
 “ eschew battall, and tak restitutioun of our guddis, quhilkis ar  
 “ tane fra us be injure of battall. Quhow may thair be ony getar

“wodnes or fury, than to do the thing be swerd or fire, that may  
 “be tretit be plesand wordis? Nochtheles, quhen oure honorabill  
 “and just desiris ar refusit be ennimes,—quhen we find thaim mair  
 “desirus of weir than peace,—we rise haistely, with maist hatrent, to  
 “revenge thair contemptioun. Heirfore, we ar send fra our sove-  
 “rane, to inquire quhat occasioun thow hes to invaid his realme  
 “and subdittis, in violatioun of peace, quhilk hes bene observat be-  
 “twix him and Danis thir hundred yeris bygane; and cumand  
 “nocht onely to reif fra him Bute and Arrane, with othir landis  
 “quhilkis he hes jesit in peace, bot als ceissing fra na maner of  
 “cruelte that may be devisit on his pepil. Quhat offence, quhat  
 “cruelteis hes his pepil done aganis the, to invaid his realm with  
 “sic awful ordinance; slaing wiffis, childrin, and febill personis,  
 “without ony mercy or ransoun, howbeit maist cruell tyrannis hes  
 “miseratioun of sic personis? Quhat furius ire hes movit the to  
 “birne the kirkis of God and his sanctis, to the gret murder of his  
 “pepill? Quhy puttis thow al placis quhare thow cumis, to heir-  
 “schippis and rewint? Attour, gif thow dredis not God, quhilk  
 “governis al thing that we se be his providence; gif thow dredis  
 “not sanctis, nor vengeance to cum on the be punishment of God;  
 “yit thow suld dreid the two maist pissant Kingis of Albion, alliat  
 “togidder with maist tender blud, quhilkis sal cum on the with sic  
 “pissance, that thow may not resist. Heirfore, sen thow may de-  
 “part with honoure, best is to the, redres al skaithis in time, in aven-  
 “ture, thow be brocht to sic extreme disperation, thy army dis-  
 “comfist, that thow sall be uterly distroyit, and find nocht bot re-  
 “puls, thocht thow wald implore mercy.”

Thir wourdis war said be the ambassatouris, to put sum terrour  
 to this hardy King Acho. Nochtheles, he answerit to thame in this  
 maner: “Ye beleif, wise ambassatouris, to astonis us be your fers  
 “and awfull wourdis; traisting us sa full of dredour, that we wil  
 “desist fra our purpos be your onely minassing. Ye ar void of al  
 “reason and prudence, gif ye sa imagin. And quhare ye aggrege  
 “our injuris, be reiffing of certane Ilis fra your dominioun, we un-  
 “derstand ye ar na lauchfull jugeis, to geif decision of ony injuris  
 “or richtis pertening to us or our liegis. Forthir, gif ye desire the  
 “caus, quhy we haif invadit Arrane and Bute; we say, Not only



“ thir Ilis of Arrane and Bute, bot al the Ilis of Albion, pertenis  
 “ to us and our pepil, be auld heritage : and we ar cumin to tak as  
 “ mekill proffet of our landis presently, as ye have tane of thaim in  
 “ times bygane. Thairfore, schaw to youre king, we feir nocht his  
 “ minassing, nor na othir violence that he may do aganis us. Nocht-  
 “ withstanding, gif he be mair desirus of peace than battall, and  
 “ covatis to eschew the direptioun and birning of his townes, [and]  
 “ the slauchter of his pepil ; or gif he desiris not to se the uter ex-  
 “ terminion of his realm afore his ene ; command him to send to us  
 “ x.m markis Striveling, for the frutis of our landis tane up be him  
 “ and his eldaris in times bygane : dischargeand him thair of in times  
 “ cuming, that the said Ilis may pas under our perpetual dominioun.  
 “ Gif he refuse the charge, force is to him to abide the chance of  
 “ battall aganis us ; quhilkis ar preparit, with maist weirly ordinance,  
 “ to invade his realme and pepill.”

### Chap. Eighteenth.

*How King Alexander come with ane army aganis King Acho. Of  
 the Orisonis maid be the two Kingis to thair armyis ; and how  
 King Acho was discomfist at Largis.*



LEXANDER, commovit with this answer, and seing na  
 waye to eschewe battall, thocht na thing sa gud as to  
 assailye the chance of fortoun ; and gaderit x.l.m men  
 to meit his ennimes : quhilkis wer devidit in thre bat-  
 tallis. In the first wing wes ane vailyeant knight, Alexander Stew-  
 art, nepot to that Alexander that dotat the Abbay of Paslay. He  
 had with him all the men of Argyle, Levenax, Athole, and Gallo-  
 way. In the left wing wes Patrik Dunbar, havand with him the  
 men of Louthiane, Fiffe, Mers, Berwik, and Striveling. In the  
 middilward wes King Alexander, with the remanent pepill of Scot-  
 land, to support the wingis quhen danger occurrit. Thir battallis  
 wer arrayit in sic maner, that every clan had ane capitane assignit

to thaim, of thair awin langage, to exhort thaim to win laud and honour be thair manheid. King Alexander, seing his ennimes in sicht, causit mes to be done to his army; and said to thame in this maner: “ We haif maid now, beluffit freindis, our orisoun to God, “ be quhais providence and wisdome every thing is governit in erd, “ to send victory to thaim quhilkis hes maist richt and justest caus “ of battall. Now wald I exhort yow to have sic faith and confidence in Him that is ennimy to thevis and revaris, that ye may “ with invincible curage distroy your ennimes. Belcif weil, ye ar “ nocht to fecht now aganis thaim that invadis your landis be just “ clame; bot only aganis thaim that traistis, be penurite of vittallis “ now regnand amang yow, to find sufficient oportunitie to conquest your landis. Thir limmaris rejosis sa mekill in thift and reif, that “ thay ar nocht content onlie of the landis reft fra us thir mony “ yeris bygane, bot ar cumin, with new tyranny, to dwel in your “ maist inward landis. Remembir, heirfore, nocht onlie the hevvy “ and importable injuris be thame done, bot als how necessar it is “ now to fecht aganis thaim, for defence of our wiffis, barnis, libertis, and landis; havand na securite of life, bot in your handis. “ Restis schortlie na othir thing, bot othir to vincus your ennimes “ with manheid, or ellis to leif miserabillie under thair servitude, “ and suffir youre wiffis and douchteris to be fulyeit be thair lust. “ Remembir that ye ar nocht to fecht now onlie for your native “ cuntre, bot for the livis of thaim that ar maist deir and tendir “ freindis. Considir that nocht onlie I, bot al Scotland, seis yow “ fecht this day, and notis baith your manheid and cowardie. Belt “ yow, thairfor, vailyeant campionis, with the more manheid and “ curage, that your mater is just, and movit onlie in your pure “ defence. Considir how your ennimes invadis yow onlie for pray “ and spulye of gudis; and sal be, thairfore, sone vincust, quhen “ thay se yow gevin with perseverant constance to debait the samin. “ And first, I pray yow, refresche youre bodyis with meit; syne “ cloith the samin with armour, that ye may, be the grace of God, “ have victory.”

Skarslie wer thir wourdis said, quhen King Acho began to exhort his army, in maner as followis: “ Wer nocht, your manheid

“ is provin to me lang time, wise freindis, with sicker victory in  
 “ your handis, it had bene vane to jeoperde my body this day with  
 “ yow, or to haif assailyeit sic thingis that bene uncertane, for thaim  
 “ that ar certane. It had bene more lesum, gif ye be febill and  
 “ astonist pepill, to have levit ane hard and sobir life at hame, with  
 “ miserie and gret laubour, than to have jeoperd yow in battall  
 “ aganis your strang ennimes. Nochtheles, sen ye, with deliverit  
 “ purpos, ar votit to follow gud fortoun and me, ye may se how  
 “ occasion and sufficient oportunitie schawis quhat virtew and reward  
 “ sall follow to ilk man for his laubouris. Ye se now, that, ye de-  
 “ sirit maist; your ennimes full of riches and guddis, quhilkis ar to  
 “ be gottin now be na thing sa mekill, as preis and dint of swerd:  
 “ and nocht onlie, gif ye happin to have the glore of victory, sall  
 “ fall to yow the riche treasour of this army, bot the haill realme of  
 “ Scotland sal fall in reward of your laubouris. Vincus, thairfore,  
 “ your ennimes, and every thing in Scotland sal be offerit to yow,  
 “ with maist magnificence; and fra your ennimes be vincust, every  
 “ ane of yow sal be rewardit with landis at youre pleseir; and ye  
 “ sal be als riche in times cuming, as your ennimes ar at this time.  
 “ Forthir, sen gret chargis may nocht be done but extreme jeoper-  
 “ die, I beseik yow, advise how esalie this battal sal be led aganis  
 “ our ennimes; for the derth that now apperis amang thaim, hes  
 “ maid thaim more febill than ony othir pepill. Thus ar thay so  
 “ destitute of corporall strenth, that thay sall gif bakkis to us, or  
 “ thay cum to ony straikis; for thay ar bot ane schaddow of pepill,  
 “ and may thairfore be slane like miserabill beistis. And becaus thay  
 “ ar in more noumer of pepil than ye, thair spulye sal be to yow  
 “ the more riche. Be contrar, gif discomfiture fallis to yow,—quhilk  
 “ God forbeit,—na thing sal fallow bot deith and heirschip, quhare  
 “ ye cum. And thought I beleif na thing les than sic adversiteis, I  
 “ beseik yow, gif ony sic misadventure fallis, revenge youre deith,  
 “ that ye be nocht slane like beistis quhilkis ar offerit in sacrifice;  
 “ for we ar circulit, as ye se, on ilk side with ennimes, and our  
 “ schippis severit sa far fra us, that we may haif na refuge thairby.  
 “ Thus restis na succouris to us, gif we be discomfist. Attour,  
 “ quhat folly and quhat extreme miserie is, to ony creature to leif  
 “ the wappinnis quhilkis may defend his life, and have his confi-

“ dence onlie in swiftnes of feit ! Now, sen ye have sa gud experience quhat commoditeis may fal be your manheid, and quhat mischeif and sorow may fall be your cowartry; suffir nocht your handis to dul in sleuth; that ye may, be propiciant fortoun, have sikir victory, quhilk is now in your handis; quhairthrow, incredible riches and felicite may thaireftir succed.”

Skarsly wer thir wourdis endit, quhen baith the armyis began to array othir. In the mene time, Acho come, with all his ordinance, on the middilward, quhare King Alexander wes arrayit for the time; traisting, gif the samin wer brokin, the remanent battallis to be sone vincust. This battall wes fochtin with gret cruelte on athir side, specialie quhair the two kingis faucht; for thay ruschit ay to thay partis quhair thay saw thair pepil waikest, exhorting thame to schaw thair manheid and curage. King Acho incontinent maid him, with ane band of forcy campionis, to rusche out-throw the samin battall quhair King Alexander faucht. Nochtheles he wes stoutlie resistit; for King Alexander had sa gret noumer of pepill with him, that he stuffit the battall with fresche men in al partis quhair it failyeit; quhill, at last, baith the wingis of Danis wer put to flicht. Incontinent, Alexander Stewart of Paslay come, with ane buschement of fresche men to the middilward, quhair King Alexander wes fecht and aganis King Acho, with lang bergane, and uncertane victory. The Danis seand this Alexander cum, with new and recent victory on thame, gaif bakkis; on quhome followit the Scottis, with gret cruelte, throw all Cuninghame, and maid ithand slauchter on thaim, quhill the nicht put ane end to all thair laubour.

On the morow, King Acho fled, with ane few noumer, to the castell of Air, quhilk wes tane laitlie be him; and, in the mene time, he gat tithingis, that his flot, quhilk contenit i. schippis, wes perist be unmercifull tempest, and nane of thaim savit except foure; atoure, the marineris quhilkis eschapid eftir the tinsal of thair schippis, war all slane be the inhabitantis of the cuntre. King Acho brokin in this maner, gat thir iv schippis, and fled to Orkney.

In this battall wer slane xxiv. m. Danis; and of Scottis, v. m. This battall wes fouthin at Largis, on the thrid day of August; fra our redemption, mclxiii yeris.



King Acho, at his cuming to Orknay, send for ane new army out of Norroway and Denmark, to invaid the Scottis aganis the nixt simer ; nochtheles, becaus he deceissit in the yeir nixt following, all his army skalit, and the weris ceissit.

### Chap. Nineteenth.

*Of the nativite of Alexander the Ferd. Of the message send be Magnus, King of Norroway, to King Alexander the Thrid ; and of his answer. And how the said Alexander recoverit the Ilis of Scotland fra the Danis.*



OLLOWIT gret blithnes in Scotland eftir deith of King Acho : for the samin day that he deceissit in Orknay, that is to say, the XXI day of Januar, wes borne Alexander, Prince of Scotland, gottin on Margaret, sister to King Hary. Thus wes dowbill joy and glaidnes in al partis of Scotland ; the ennime deid, and ane new prince borne.

Eftir deith of King Acho, succedit his son Magnus, ane richt catholik prince. This Magnus send his chancellor, in the yeir following, to King Alexander at Perth, and offerit to gif our all richt and clame that the said Magnus, King of Norroway, had to Arrane and Bute, sa that the remanent Ilis micht be peaceabillly josit be him in times cuming. To this answerd King Alexander, that the Ilis per-tenit, be auld heritage, to him and his progenitouris, Kingis of Scotland ; and [that he] micht have na amite nor freindschip with Danis, quhil the said Ilis war restorit to him.

In the nixt yeir, this chancellor of Norroway, with mony othir nobil men, returnit fra King Magnus in Scotland ; and, be letteris under his gret sele, renuncit and gaif our all richt and clame that he had, or micht have, to the Ilis of Scotland ; and King Alexander sal pay to the said King of Norroway, for the said renunciation, iv.m markis striveling, togidder with ane yeirly pension of ane c markis. And, for the mair roboratioun of perseverand amite and

kindnes betwix Scottis and Danis in times cuming, Margaret, King Alexanderis douchter, havand bot ane yeir in age, sal be gevin in mariage to Hannigo, the son of King Magnus, quhen scho is cumin to perfite age; and the place quare maist occision and slauchter wes of Danis, sal be maid ane hospitall of pure folkis.

The samin time, King Hary, and his son Edward, had weir aganis Symon Morfort, and otheris sindry noblis of Ingland, and requeistit King Alexander of Scotland for support aganis thame. King Alexander send, sone eftir, Alexander Cumin, with v.m chosin men in Ingland; and supportit King Hary in sic maner, that the maist part of his ennimes war distroyit, and the remanent constranit to seik his mercy. This trubil beand dantit, as said is, followit ane othir be Roger Mortimer: howbeit it was sone pecifyit; for the said Roger was tane, with mony otheris of his factioun, in the castel of Rowlard, and put to deith.

About this time was the waithman, Robert Hode, with his fallow, Liril Johne; of quhom ar mony fabillis and mery sportis sounng amang the vulgar pepill.

### Chap. Twentieth.

*Of the answer maid to the Papis Legat be King Alexander. Of the nativite of Robert Bruce, the vailyeant conquerour. Of the deith of King Alexanderis wife, and hir barnis.*



IN the yeir following, wes ane legat send fra Paip Clement the Feird, to gader money in Scotland, for rasing, as he allegit, of armyis aganis the Turkis. This legat was not ressavit in the realme, bot commandit to schaw his message on the bordouris. He desirit, be ane breif of the said Paip, to have iv mark striveling for ilk peroche kirk, and lxxx markis striveling for ilk bischoprik and abbacy that was in Scotland; and, to caus him to be the mair plesandly answerit of his desiris, he send certane statutis, maid be him in his vayage, richt proffitabil for the governance of Scottis. To thir petitionis was answerit

be King Alexander, that it was not necessar to send sa gret sowmes of money as he desirit; nochtheles he suld send, gif it war necessar, certane armit men, providit on his expensis, to pas with the Papis army aganis the Turkis. To his othir pointis it was answerit, that Scotland wald ressave na statutis, bot only thame that war comandit be the Paip, or his generall counsall; for ay the mo preceptis ar gevin, the mo transgressouris ar foundin.

In the yeir fra the incarnation MCCLXXI yeris, Thomas, Erle of Carrik, past with mony nobil men in the Haly Land; al votit under ane mind to fecht aganis Christis ennimes to the deith. Few of thame returnit; for thay war al slane be pest and insufferable heitis of that cuntre. This Erle of Carrik left na heritour to succeid efter him to his heritage, saif only ane douchter, namit Martha, of xv yeris. This lady, for hir solace, hapnit to pas to the huntis, quhare scho, be aventure, met ane nobil man, Robert Bruce, son and air to Robert Bruce, lord of Annandale in Scotland, and Cleveland in Ingland. This lady finaly was sa inamorit with this man, that scho hint his hors be the renyeis, and forcely led him with hir to Carrik; quhare scho, but lang tary, or consultation of freindis, tuk him to hir husband and lord. Als sone as King Alexander was advertist heirof, he tuk hir castell of Turnebery, and eschetit al hir landis and gudis in his handis; for scho maryit but his consent. Nochtheles the king, within few dayis efter, had sic compassion of hir, that he tuk ane esy composition of money for hir mariage, and sufferit hir to jose hir husband as scho desirit. This Martha bure, in the thrid yeir efter, the nobil and invincibil campion Robert Bruce, quhilk was efter King of Scotland. And in this yeir, quhilk was fra the incarnation MCCLXXIV, deceissit David, the secound son of King Alexander.

In the III yeir efter, Alexander past with his lady Quene Margaret, accompanyit with mony noblis and baronis of Scotland, to London, to the coronation of King Edward Langschankis; for he was brothir to King Alexanderis wife: and on the assumption day of our Lady, in that samin yeir, was the coronation of the said King Edward at London, with gret triumphe. At this time was ane Norman in King Edwardis hous of mervellus strenth, and had sic craft in wersling, that he kest all men that assailyeit him; nochthe-

les he was finaly vincust be Ferquhard Ros, Scottisman. King Alexander, for this notabill vassalage, gaif to him the erledome of Ros. Of this Ferquhard descendit v erlis, all of his surname; bot the vi erle was namit Walter Ros, othir wayis Leslie, and, in his son, failyeit the erldome for falt of succession.

Sone efter the returning of King Alexander in Scotland, his lady, Quene Margaret, deceissit, and was buryit in Dunfermeling; efter that scho had borne to him ii sonnys, Alexander and David, and ane douchter, namit Margaret. This Margaret was maryit, in the iii yeir efter, on Hanigo, King of Norroway, and deceissit in the seicound yeir efter hir mariage, and left behind hir ane douchter, namit Margaret. In the nixt yeir, quhilk was fra the incarnation m<sup>c</sup>clxxix, Alexander, son to King Alexander the iii, was maryit at Roxburgh, on the Sonday efter Martinmes, in winter, on the Erle of Flanders douchter; quhare mony of al the noblis of Ingland and Scotland war present for the time; with al solace, game, and pleseir, that micht be devisit, continewing xv days togidder but ony interruption. Nochtheles, this joy was not permanent; for this nobil prince deceissit at Lundoris, the iii yeir efter, in the xx yeir of his age, to the gret sorow and lamentable displeseir of al Scotland; for in him failyeit al the succession of King Alexander, saif only the Madin of Norroway, quhilk was gottin on his douchter Margaret, afore rehersit.



## Chap. Twenty-first.

*Of sindry actis done be King Alexander, and of his deith. Of Thomas Rimour. Of sindry mervellis sene in Albion. And of mony nobil Clerkis.*



IN the same yeir, was haldin ane generall counsall at Lyonis, in presence of the Paip, and mony of all the prelatis of Cristianite. And to this counsal war summond al the provincialis, wardanis, and ministeris of all beggand freiris: and, becaus thair was sa mony sindry ordouris of thame, ilk man devisit to find ane new ordoure. All thir ordouris war reducit to thir iv quhilkis ar yit approbat; and generall edict maid, that na man suld attempt to begin ony new gise of sic vane superstitious pepill; quhilkis are set to eschew labouris, that thay may leif, in lust and idilnes, apon the frutis of othir mennis handis.

Quhill sic thingis war done in Scotland, mony sorowfull battallis war betwix the Cristin Princis and Turkis in Affrik; quhill, at last, trewis war tane with the said Turk: and, in the mene time, al the Cristin Princis returnit hame. Als sone as thay war departit, the Gret Turk, notwithstanding the said trewis, invadit all Cristin pepil, that war left behind thair armyis in Affrik, with maist cruelte. The Cristin Princis movit for this cruelte, maid thair ordinance, with new expeditioun, to cum in the Haly Land. The Scottis gaif the tent penny of al the landis of thair realme to support this jorney; nochtheles, sic invy and contentionis rais amang the said Princes, that the jorney ceissit, to the gret dammage of our faith.

King Alexander, eftir the deith of Margaret, his wife, wes in gret noy; for baith his sonnis wer deceissit but ony succession; and his douchter Margaret, quhilk wes maryit in Norroway, on the samin maner levand behind her, ane madin quhilk had bot twa yeris in age: throw quhilk noch the king, bot al Scotland, wes brocht in gret malancoly; ilk man, be his awin fantasy, jugeing mony displeseiris to follow; as we sall eftir schaw. King Alexander, be advise

of his nobillis, maryit than the Erle of Champanis douchter, namit Joleta, with gret triumphe, at Jedburgh. Howbeit, this triumphe indurit schort time eftir; for, the xviii day of Aprile, quhen he was rinand ane feirs hors at Kingorn, he fell ouir the west crag towart the see, and brak his nek, the xxxv yeir of his regne, and wes buryit in Dunfermeling, fra the incarnation m<sup>c</sup>clxxxv yeris.

It is said, the day afore the kingis deith, the Erle of Merche demandit ane propheit, namit Thomas Rimour, othirwayis namit Ersiltoun, quhat weddir suld be on the morow. To quhome answerit this Thomas, That on the morow, afore noon, sall blaw the grettest wind that evir wes hard afore in Scotland. On the morrow, quhen it wes neir noon, the lift appering loune, but ony din or tempest; the erle send for this propheit, and reprevit him, that he pronosticat sic wind to be, and na apperance thair of. This Thomas maid litil ansuer, bot said, Noon is not yit gane: and, incontinent, ane man come to the yet, schawing that the king wes slane. Than said the propheit, Yone is the wind that sall blaw, to the gret calamite and truble of al Scotland. This Thomas wes ane man of gret admiration to the peple; and schew sindry thingis as thay fell, howbeit thay wer ay hid under obscure wourdis.

Schort yeris afore King Alexanderis deith, al Walis wes subdewit to the King of England, and the prince thair of slane. His brodir wes drawin sindry be wild hors, and his quarteris set on sindry gret tounis of England, to be example to al peple quhat frut followis of rebellioun aganis thair prince.

Mony mervellis wer sene in the time of Alexander the Thrid. The xvii yeir of his regne, wes sic infinite noumer of wourmes throw al partis of Albion, that nocht onlie the levis and frutis of the treis, bot flouris and herbis in gardingis, wer consumit thairwith: and, in the samin yeir, the watteris of Forth and Tay rais with sic inundatioun of spait, that mony tounis wer drounit, to the gret damage of men and beistis. In the xx yeir of his regne, apperit ane comeit of mervellus quantite, schinand ilk day, with terrible bemis, towart the south. On the Epiphany day, nixt efter, rais sa gret windis, with hail of uncouth magnitud, that mony tounis wer cassin doun thairwith. In the mene time rais, throw the preis of windis, ane suddane fire in sindry boundis of Scotland, and brint the stepillis

and bellis to nocht Aberdene and Perth wer baith brint that samin time. Mony pepil and bestial wer brint under nicht, with mony othir tounis; quhilkis wer our prolix to schaw. In the xxxi yeir of his regne, wes the first cuming of the pest in Scotland, to the gret mortalite of the peple thairof. In the triumphe and secound marriage of King Alexander, quhen every man wes ganging in the traies with his wife, dansing with al glaidnes that micht be devisit; apperit in thair sicht ane image of ane deid man, nakit of flesche and lire, with bair bonis; throw quhilk the king and remanent pepil wer sa astonist, that thay left thair sport with gret affray.

In the time of King Alexander wer mony nobil Clerkis; as, Thomas de Aquino, a man of singulare life and erudition in theologie. Bonaventure, of the ordour of Freir Minoris. Michell Scot, richt excellent in medcine; quhilk, for his singulare erudition, wes na les tretit with Edward, King of Ingland, than with Alexander, King of Scottis.

And saendis heir, the xiii Buke of thir Cronikillis.

# The Fourtene Buke.

---

## HEIR BEGINNIS THE FOURTENE BUKE OF THE CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

### Chap. First.

*How Scotland was gidit be vi Governouris. How the mariage betwix the Madin of Norroway and King Edward of England, fail-yeit. How Bruce and Balliol contendit for the crown. How the decision thair of was committit to King Edward; and how he maid the Balliol King.*



LEXANDER the Thrid, quhilk deceissit miserabilly, as wes schawin, left na airis testamenter, nor yit gottin of his body, to succeid to the croun; saif onlie the Madin of Norroway, as said is. Thus wes the realme in gret trubil, and wes but ony king, vi yeris and ix monethis. Followit mony terribill cruelteis in al partis of the realme; for sic personis as wer dantit afore be feir of justice, began, with opin renyeis, to ouirhail the peple with sindry oppressionis: and yit the realme wes governit, al the said time, with vi regentis; quhais namis wer William Fraseir, Bischop of



Sanct Androis; Duncane, Erle of Fif; and John Cumin, Erle of Buchquhan. Thir war regentis in the north. Robert, Bischop of Glasgew; Schir Johne Cumin; and James, Stewart of Scotland, war regentis in the south.

In the mene time, Edward, King of Ingland, callit Langschankis, tuk purpos to conquies the realm of Scotland; for it was destitute, but ony heid. And becaus he knew the Madin of Norroway just heritour to the croun of Scotland, he send ambassatouris in Scotland, desiring this Madin of Norroway to be gevin to him in marriage. The lordis, efter lang consultation, assentit to his desiris, under thir conditionis: "That the realm of Scotland suld be as fre, in "peace and quite, but ony subjection of servitude, in his time, as "it was afore in the time of King Alexander: and gif na succession "followit betwix him and this Madin of Norroway, the croun to "return to the nerrest airis of King Alexander last deceissit, but "ony clame of King Edward or his successouris in times cuming." Incontinent, ii nobill knightis, Schir Michel Scot and Schir Michel Wemis, war direkit, as ambassatouris, to bring this Madin out of Norroway, to the effect foresaid. Nochtheles, afore thair cuming, this Madin was deceissit. Thus returnit thir ambassatouris, but ony expedition of thair erandis; and, be hir deith, failyeit al amite and kindnes betwix Inglismen and Scottis.

Followit gret trubil in Scotland, be freindis of King Alexander contending for the croun, to the gret dammage and violation baith of the law of God and man; specially betwix Johne Balliol and Robert Bruce. This Robert was nepot to that Robert Bruce that maryit Isabel, youngest douchter to Erle David of Huntingtoun; on quhom he gat ane son, namit Robert, quhilk maryit the heritour of Carrik, as we have schawin, and was fader to this Robert that clames now the croun. Johne Ballioll was gottin on Margaret, eldest douchter to the said Erle David of Huntington: for Allane, Lord of Galloway, quhilk maryit the said Margaret, had on hir, ii douchteris, of quhilkis the eldest, namit Dorvidilla, was maryit on Schir Johne Balliol, fader to this Johne Ballioll that clamit the croun, becaus he was cumin of the eldest douchter of Erle David, and was, be that reason, nerrest aire to King William; for nane othir was sa

neir approcheand in blud to him on live. On the tothir side, Robert Bruce, howbeit he was discendit of the youngest douchter to Erle David, was cumin of the first mail, for his fader was first born ; and clomit the croun, for that reason, to pertene to him. This debait and clame was sa favorit, be assistance of sindry gret princes in this realme, that it nicht na wayis be decidit, howbeit it was oftimis brocht afore thir governouris and regentis foresaid. And becaus thay dred, gif thay declarit the tane of thame king, the tothir suld usurpe the crown perforce ; thay remittit the decision of the richt thair of to King Edward of Ingland, with power to constrane the said partyis to stand at his sentence. King Edward plesandly ressavit the ambassatouris quhilkis war send to this effect, and promittit to cum to Berwik, agane ane certan day. At last, quhen he was cumin to the place and day be him assignit, he began to explore the richtis of thir ii partyis afore rehersit : and quhen he had considerit tham at lenth, he maid answer, sayng, He nicht not decide in sa diffieil mater, quhil he had sindry wise and prudent assessouris concurrand with him ; and, thairfore, desirit to have xii Scottis, of maist knowlege and eruditoun that was in Scotland ; and promittit to tak xii of the maist resolut and wise clerkis in Ingland, to sit apon the decision of that mater ; to that fine, that all difficulteis and dowtis sal be sa cruelly socht furth, that the just verite nicht allanerly triumphe. And quhen he had writtin the reasonis and juris of baith the partyis, he returnit to London. Bot, as daily occurris, the ingine of mortal pepil ar sa fragil, that nane beris commissioun or office quhare ony proffet risis, that may part thairwith, quhil thair handis be weil ointtit. On the samin maner, King Edward couth not keip his handis clene in the commission gevin to him apon the decision of this debait : for efter his returning to London, he brocht certane resolute men out of France, to decide upon this mater ; and commandit thame to be vareant and dowble in thair deliverance : to that fine, that quhen thay war found vareant, and not of ane mind, in decision of this pley, he nicht the erar mak quhom he list of thame two, king. The maist part of thir men of law jugit with Robert Bruce ; for he was cumin of the first male, and Johne Balliol of the secound. Otheris, quhilkis war subornat be King Edward, declarit Johne Ballioll to have maist richt, as cumin of the

eldest sister. King Edward, beleiving sufficient time to conqure the realm of Scottis, becaus it was devidit in sindry votis, returnit to Berwik, quhare he gaderit the xxiv men of maist eruditoun, as he devisit afore, to geif finall sentence in this mater. And quhen he was cumin, with baith the partyis and his assessouris, in ane quiet chalmer, quhare it was devisit to sit on this mater; he causit the samin to be keptit with maist deligence, but ony isching or entres: and concludit to make him king, that wald be sworn to hald the croun of him, as superioure thair of. And, becaus he knew Robert Bruce of singulare manheid and wisdom above the Balliol, he thocht best to assailye him first; and gif he war repugnant to his desiris, to geif the crown to the Balliol. At last, quhen King Edward had proponit this mater, in maner afore rehersit, to Robert Bruce; this Robert, havand na respect to his singulare proffet nor honour, in compair of the common weill and liberte of Scotland, answerit, That he wald not randir his native cuntre, sen it bene fre to his dayis, to servitude of Inglismen. King Edward assailyeit the mind of Johne Balliol; quhilk had sa blind desire to the crown, that he curit not, sa that he nicht jose the samin, quhethir he held it in liberte or servitude. Finaly, quhen the Balliol had gevin his faith to King Edward to mak him homage, he gat the sentence gevin for him. It is said, the Erle of Glocester, ane man of gret prudence and aucto-rite in Inghland, seand the Balliol maid king, and Robert Bruce sa unreasonably rejeckit; said in this maner: “Remembir, O King Edward! quhat is done be the this day, not gevand just sentence “in this mater; for thocht the samin now be hid, it sal be richt “manifest quhen the Gret Juge, that ripis the conscience and se- “cretis of every mannis mind, sall caus the to answer for it in the “horribil jugement. Thow hes gevin now sentence on ane king; “than sal be jugement gevin on the.”

Schort time efter, Johne Balliol went, with gret triumphe, to Scone, and was crownit on Sanct Androis Day; fra the incarnation, MCCXCII yeris.

## Chap. Second.

*How the Balliol come in gret trubil, for the making of homage to King Edward. Of his allia with King Phillip of France. How King Edward wan Berwik be treason, and slew all Scottis in the samin.*



ING Balliol, on Sanct Stevins Day of Yule, in the nixt yeir, come to the New Castell, and maid homage to King Edward for the realme of Scotland, contrar the mind of all his noblis; gevand himself and his realme, quhilk was fre to his days, in servitude of Inglismen. Howbeit, smal felicitie succedit be the samin; for within schort time efter, King Edward chargit him, be tenour of his band of homage, to cum, with al the power he micht, to mak weir on the King of France. Incontinent, King Johnne become penitent of the making of the said homage, and send his ambassatouris to London, to renounce the said homage; and allegit, becaus it was maid but avise of the III estatis of Scotland, it was vane in the self, and not to be keipit. King Edward answerit to the ambassatouris of King Balliol, "Sen he wil not cum to us, we sal cum to him." And to dant the Scottis mair esaly, he send his ambassatouris to the King of France, with quhom he was confiderat be lang peace: and to stabill this peace with mair firmance, the King of Francis douchter was gevin in mariage to Edward, his son. Howbeit, he purposit, quhen Scottis war uterly destroyit, to invaid France, as he did afore, notwithstanding ony mariage or band be him contrackit.

In the mene time, King Edward was reconseld with Robert Bruce, in sic familiarite, that he promittit to mak him King of Scottis; and in esperance thairof, he gaif him the keping of sindry gret castellis of Scotland, quhilkis war for that time in Inglismennis handis. King Balliol, dredand, be thir slichtis of Inglismen, extreme dangeir to cum to his realm, send William, Bischop of Sanct Andros, with Schir Johnne Sowlis and Schir Ingerame Umfra, in France, to renew



the band with Phillip the iv, King thairof; quhilk wes finaly done, under thir new conditionis: “ The douchter of Charlis, Erle of Vallance and Angeos, brothir to King Philip of France, sal be maryit on Edward the Balliollis son, and sal haif all the landis quhilkis the Balliol possedit in France, namit Dampart, Harecure, and Horny; for quhilkis King Johne sall ressave lxxm crounis of towquhair.”

Than wes the Balliol advertist, that King Edward wes cumand, with gret ordinance, to sege Berwik: and, thairfore, he convenit his nobillis to ane counsal, and, be thair avise, send mony of al the baronis and gentilmen of Fife and Louthiane to the defence thairof. The Inglismen come nocht onlie with strang army be land, bot als come with ane gret navy, to sege the said town be see. The Scottis quhilkis wer send be the Ballioll for defence of the toun, tuk xviii of thair schippis, and the remanent chasit fra the sege. King Edward, more provokit than brokin be this displeseir, come with doubill army more than afore, to tak the said toun. And becaus he couth nocht get it be force, for the gret defence that the Scottis maid within it, he thocht to assailye the samin with maist treasonable slicht: and maid him to rais his army fra the sege of the said toun; syne went about to ane othir part, and returnit with fenyeit ensenyeis and baneris of Scotland, havand Sanct Androis croce abone thair harnes, on the Scottis maner; and send certane limmaris of Scotland afore to the toun, saying, Johne Balliol wes cumand with his army in defence thairof, commanding thame to haif the portis opin agane his cuming. The fuliche peple of the toun, rejosing of the cuming of the king, as thay belevit, opinnit the portis, and come furth of the toun on all partis; traisting not onlie to be deliverit of feir of ennimes, bot als to be of pissance to meit thaim with plane battall, gif ennimes wald assailye thame ony forthir. Yit, quhen thay saw thame neir the portis, thay knew weill, be thair langage and habit, thay wer Inglismen; and incontinent, maid thame, with all deligence, to rescours the toun: and, in the mene time, the Inglismen ran with swift hors betwix thame and the toun. Incontinent, King Edward enterit, with all his army; and slew nocht onlie the sodjouris and weirmen, bot barnis, women, and agit personis, but ony reuth, mercy, or ransom: and left na creature of Scottis

blude on live within the toun. This toun wes tane on Gud Friday, the xxix day of Marche; fra our redemptioun, mcccxcv yeris.

O Edward, maist furious tyrane! how micht thow rage with sic cruelte on the peple, but ony exception of age; quhair na occasioun wes precedent of injuris; and quhare the pepil wes not subdewit be force of armis? Thir cruel tigris ruschit throw al the toun, and savit nane, in kirk nor mercat, quhair thay micht be apprehendit. So lamentable slauhter wes throw al the partis of the toun, that ane mil micht haif gane two days ithandle, be stremis of blude. In this toun wer slane viii. men, with maist part of all the nobillis and gentilmen of Fiffe and Louthiane.

### Chap. Third.

*How King Balliol was discomfist at Dunbar, and tint al the strenthis of Scotland. How he guif ouir the crown to King Edward, and fled in France.*



ING BALLIOL, heirand the miserabil slauchter of his pepill at Berwik, gaderit ane army, with gret hatrent, to revenge the samin, and faucht with King Edward at Dunbar; quhare he was discomfist, and mony of al his army tane and slane. Efter this discomfitour, the Erlis of Marche and Menteith, with lxx knichtis, fled to the castel of Dunbar; and war seigit sa lang, quhill thay war constranit, for laik of vittallis, to be randerit to King Edward, and thair livis to be saiffit: nochthel, thay war al slane be this cruel tyrane King Edward, but ony respect to his faith or promes. It was said, be thame that followit the opinion of Balliol, that Robert Bruce solistit all his freindis, in the beginning of the battall, to leif the Balliol, and was, be that way, the caus of this discomfitour. Bot thir wordis war fals; and said be the freindis of Balliol allanerly, for malice; to that fine, that the Bruce suld cum in hatrent to the Scottis.

Robert Bruce, efter this victory, past to King Edward, and desir him to fulfil the promes, maid be him afore undir his gret aith:

nocht heles, he gat bot ane wicket answer ; for King Edward had na les desire to be King of Scotland than the Bruce had. His answer was, “ Belevis yow, that we haif na othir besines ado bot to conques “ realmes and kingdomes to the ? ” Robert Bruce, persaving sic dissait and treason under the wordis of King Edward, returnit richt sorrowfull to his landis in Ingland, havand gret indignation in his mind, that he had obeyit to the King of Ingland forthir than reason requirit ; and concludit, with deliverit mind, quhen time occurrit, to revenge the injuris done be King Edward, in his maist cruel maner.

Efter this victory, King Edward tuk baith the castel of Edinburgh and Striveling, and chasit the Balliol to the castel of Forfare ; and, thair, Johne Cuming, Lord of Strabogy, come to King Edward, and was sworn his lege man. And, sone efter, this Johne Cuming brocht the Balliol, with his son Edward, to Montros ; quhair the said Johne Balliol, void of al kingly abulyementis, come, with ane quhit wand in his hand, to King Edward, for feir of his life, and resignit all richt and titill, that he had or micht have to the croun of Scotland, be staf and burdoun, in King Edwardis handis, and maid him chartour thairof, in his maner, in the iv yeir of his regne. Efter this, King Edward convenit al the noblis of Scotland at Berwik, quhare thay war sworn to be leill and trew subdittis to him in times cuming ; and, for the mair securite, he constranit thame to randir all the strenthis and munitionis of Scotland, baith be see and land, in his handis. Sic thingis done, he send Johne Balliol, with his son Edward, to London, quhare thay war keipit in strang ward lang time ; quhill, at last, he sufferit Johne Balliol to return in Scotland, levand his son in plege, that he suld attempt na rebellion aganis him.

Johne Balliol, efter his returning, seing himself nothir cherist with commonis nor nobillis of Scotland, fled in Normandy to his faderis heritage ; quhare he, be lang age, wes maid blind : efter quhais deith, his son Edward succedit to his heritage in France, and invadit Scotland with gret trubill, as we sall efter schaw.

### Chap. Fourth.

*How King Edwart come with ane army aganis France. How the Erle of Buchquhane maid gret heirschippis in Ingland. Of William Wallace, and his vassalage aganis Inglismen.*



INGE EDWARD, nocht removing the battal out of his mind that he supersedit on France, garnist all the strenthis of Scotland, to resist the rebellion of Scottis; syne went with ane army in France, levand behind him Hew Cressingham, to be Regent of Scotland to his returning; and belevit litill injuris to be attemptit be Scottis, for the gret afflictioun done to thame be his weris afore rehersit. Bot tyranny is of sic nature, that it may nevir have sufficient munition, nor sicker targe, nochtwithstanding quhatsumevir garneson be laid in defence thair-of: for every pepil, that is opprest with tyranny, will labour to exoner thaim thairof, quhenevir thay may find ony sufficient oportu-nite.

The lordis of Scotland, sone efter the departing of King Edward, renuncit al band and promis maid to him, and convenit togidder, al of ane mind, at Striveling, to recover thair realme and liberte. In this counsall wer chosin XII nobill men, to be governouris of Scotland, ilk man within thair awin boundis, that thay micht the mair esaly resist the tyranny of King Edward: amang quhom Johne Cuming, Erle of Buchquhan, was principall, ane man of singulare prudence, baith in weir and peace. This Erle of Buchquhan come with ane army in Northumbirland, quhare he ceissit fra na maner of cruelte that micht be devisit, and waistit al the landis thairof with fire and sward. At last he segit Carlele; bot it was sa strangely defendit, it micht not be tane.

In this time was ane young man, namit William Wallace, son to Schir Andro Wallace of Cragy, Knight. He was of stature and corporall strenth above al othir man sene in his dayis, with sic pru-



dence and craft of chevelry, that nane was found perregal to him. This Wallace, fra his first youth, persewit Inglismen with extreme hatrent, and, be sindry jeoperdis, did mony vailyeant actis in support of Scottis; and was of sic incredible strenth, at his cuming to his perfite age, that he vincust oftymes III or IV Inglismen atanis in singulare battall. Quhen the fame of his illuster vassalage was blawin throw the realme, mony nobill men, to exoner thame fra servitude of Inglismen, assistit to his opinion: throw quhilk he was sa strang, that he nicht na way be circumvenit be treasoun of Inglismen: and, finaly, behad him sa manly at al jeoperdis, that he was chosin be general vocis, quhen maist truble apperit, Governour of Scotland, in place of Johne Balioll, to deliver the samin fra servitude and tyranny of Inglismen.

At this time, mony of al the abbasyis and prelatyis of Scotland war in Inglismennis handis; nochtheles, William Wallace, be commission of William Fraser, Bischop of Sanct Andros, ejection, and put thame furth of al partis of Scotland; and left nothir temporal, spiritual, nor religiis man of thair blud in Scotland. And, sone efter, he resavit the army that Johne Cuming, Erle of Buchquhan, had afore; and constrainit the Scottis to obey to him, othir be force or favour: syne come, with prowde baner, throw sindry partis of Scotland, invading Inglismen, and all otheris of thair opinion. Efter sindry gret jeoperdis, he wan the castellis of Forfare, Dundee, Brechin, and Montrose, and slew al the soudjouris fundin in thaim. Wallace, prowde of thir feliciteis, tuk Dunnoter, efter that the principal capitaneis thair of war furth, and slew all personis found in it; syne garnist it in his strangest maner. Efter this he went to Aberdene, quhilk was left wast to his cuming; and, becaus the castel was garnist with sic provision that it nicht not be takin but gret murdir of pepill, he left the samin, and returnit in Angus.

King Edward, heirand thir doings, in France, send Hew Cressingham with ane army to invade Wallace. Als sone as Wallace was advertist of the coming of this army, he left the seige of Cowpar, and went to the brig of Striveling, to stop the ouircuming of Hew Cressingham; and finaly slew him be singulare manheid, and put his army to flight.

Efter this victory, he returnit to the sege of Cowpar, quhilk was randerit to him sone efter his returning.

Mony Scottis send thair ambassatouris to Wallace efter this victory, promitting to support him with money and vittallis gif he wald ressave thame in favouris. Sindry othir castellis war randerit to him, quhilkis war garnist be him with al provision. Efter this he scalit his army, and come to Striveling, with ane certane of his maist tender freindis: and, becaus he saw ane miserabil derth rising in al partis of Scotland, to the gret mortalite of the pepil thairof, he gaif his besines to releif the pepil, and to sustene thame on the frutis of Ingland. Incontinent, he commandit al Scottis to be reddy agane ane prefixt day, to pas on thair auld ennimes; and, in the mene time, he maid sic punition on thame quhilkis war repugnant to his proclamation, that the remanent pepil, for feir thairof, assistit to his purpos. Sone efter, Wallace, with III battallis arrayit in maist awful ordinance, brint and heryit al Northumbirland to the New Castel; and, be fame of his forcy chevelry, become in sic terroure to his fayis, that he returnit with riche spulye, and gret triumphis, in Scotland, but ony battall.

### Chap. Fifth.

*Of King Edwardis message, send to Wallace. Of Wallace answer; and of his gret prudence in chevelry. How the Scottis war discomfortit at the Falkirk. And how the King of France purchest peace to Scottis.*



EDWARD, Langschankis, heirand the gret heirschippis and slauchter done to his pepil, returnit with hevvy displeseir in Ingland; and send his ambassatouris to Wallace, saying, Had he bene in Ingland, Wallace durst not have done sic crueltis to his pepil. To thir wordis answerit Wallace, He tuk not bot his time on Ingland, quhen King Edward was out of it, as King Edward tuke on Scotland, quhen he fand the samin destitute of ane heid; makand him to conques the realme,

efter that the noblis had chosin him, as amiable and freindly compositour, to geif decisioun apoun the juris and richtis of two partis contending for the crown. Attour, to mak his singulare manheid and prudence mair knawin to Inglismen, and that King Edward may understand his besines gevin in perpetuall defence of Scotland, with obstinat mind baith to deliver the said realme out of servitude, and to revenge the cruelteis done be Inglismen in times bygane; he commandit ane herald to pas to King Edward, to advertis him, that he suld hald his Pasche in England, gif God fortunit him to be on live, in dispite of King Edward, and al pepil that will beir armour in his name.

At last, quhen King Edward and Wallace war baith cumin to the place assignit, the day of battall was set on all sidis. Howbeit Inglismen war in dowble mair nowmer than Scottis, yit Wallace, with perte curage, na thing effrayit of thair multitude, com first to feild; and, quhen the armyis war reddy to jone, the Inglismen left thair palyonis, and maid thame to fle. In the mene time, the Scottis, prowde efter mony victoryis, and seand thair ennimes geif bakkis, nicht scarsly be refrenit fra the chace. Wallace, quhilk knew na thing better than the dissait of Inglismen, ran, with swift hors, afore the Scottis, exhorting thame to rin not wilfully to thair awin perdition, devisit aganis thame be slicht of ennimes; becaus the hasty fleing of Inglismen was nocht bot cullourit fraude; and, thairfore, it was sufficient to thame to have victory but ony strakis. The Scottis beand dantit thus of thair wild fury, be prudence of this worthy campioun, wer saiffit with thair honour and livis; and returnit in Scotland with infinite spulye and riches. Forthir, as the pepill supportit Wallace ay the more that he grew in manheid and pissance aganis Inglismen; on the samin maner, thay began to invy him, quhen he wes cumin, be his vailyeant dedis, to maist felicite and honour; specially the gret lordis and princis of the realme; havand gret indignatioun, that ane man of small linage suld rise, be his virtew, in sa gret estimation and reverence abone thame. Throw quhilk rais gret seditioun in Scotland; specially be the Cumingis, and Robert Bruce, quhilkis invyit him maist.

King Edward, knowing this new sedition, send his ambassatouris to the principall men quhilkis invyit Wallace maist; and, quhen

he had gottin thame bound to his opinion, he come with ane army in Scotland. Wallace, knowing na thing of this treason devisit aganis him, rasit his army, and met him at the Falkirk. Eftir his cuming, rais ane odious debait betwix the Stewart, Cumin, and Wallace, quhilk of thaim thre suld have the vangard. The first two thocht hevy, that a man of sobir linage, and small beginning, suld be preferrit to thaim in dignite and honouris of chevalry: the thrid thocht, the charge wes gevin to him be the thre estaitis of Scotland; and, for that cause, he wald gif na place to thame. In the mene time, the Inglismen come so awfully aganis thaim, that thay wer constranit to cum forthwart aganis thair ennimes, with breistis boldin more to thair awin than to thair ennimes displeisir. King Edward, knowing thair seditioun, come with the more deligence in battall; and, quhen the battallis wer reddy to june, the Cumingis fled out of the feild, with all folkis of thair opinion. Robert Bruce wes this time with the army of England; and micht, thairfor, mak na support to Scottis: and so thay wer miserable slane on all sidis. And, thought the Scottis wer murdris on this maner, yit Wallace left na thing undone, that micht pertene to the devore of ane vailyeant campoun: exhorting his folkis sumtime to be nocht effrayit with thame quhilkis war afore discomfist with onlie feir of thair visage; sumtime ruscheand throw his ennimes, to thair gret slauchter; and instruckand his folkis quhat wes to be done: bot, at last, all the Scottis that faucht that day with him, ouriset with multitud of Inglismen, and the companyis of Robert Bruce cumand on thair bakkis, wer slane. Wallace, seand him circulit on all partis, ruschit feirslie throw his ennimes, and deliverit himself in that maner. In the mene time, ane strang capitane of England, namit Freir Briangis, followit on Wallace with gret ferocite; bot Wallace, na thing astonist of his cuming, met him, nochtwithstanding the discomfitour of Scottis, with sic manheid and curage, that he slew this capitane before the face of al the army of England. Than the residew of Inglismen, for feir thair of, ceissit fra ony forthare chace on Scottis.

In this unhappy battal wes slane, Johne Stewart of Bute, with al his folkis; quhilkis wer left be Wallace in extreme dangeir, efter that he micht have deliverit thame thair of. Makduf was slane in



this battal; with Schir Johne Grahame, quhais deith was richt displeisant to Wallace. Mony othir nobil and vailyeant men war slane in the same maner; quhilkis war our prolix to schaw.

It is said, that Robert Bruce, efter that he had cumin on the backis of Scottis, said to Wallace in this maner: "O, Wallace, quhat presumptuous foly is in the, knawing thyself desert, and left be the nobillis and commonis of Scotland, to fecht with sic vane audacite aganis the pissance of the riche King of Ingland. Seis thow nocht thyself rinnand to uter confusioun. Consideris thow not the irrecoverabil dammage approcheing, to thy displeir?" To this answerit Wallace: "O, Robert, thy febill cowardry and sleuth, movis me to assaile so mony parellus jeoperdyis in defence of thy richt, and delivering of the realme of Scotland fra tyranny of Inglismen."

Thir wourdis war sa deip inprentit in the Brucis hart, that he determit to abide na langar at the opinion of Ingland. Treuth is, that sendill or nevir ar the Scottis vincust be Inglismen without sum divisioun amang thaimself. For thought the Scottis at this time stude in sic array, that thay war invincibil, and culd nocht be brokin afore; yit Robert Bruce come with ane buschement of Inglismen on thair bakkis, be quhilk thay war miserably discomfist and slane. This battall was strikin on the Magdalen day; fra our redemptioun, ane M cxcviii yeris: thairfore, the Inglismen held it ay efter for ane happy day to fecht aganis Scottis. Forthir, thought Robert Bruce, quhilk wes efter King of Scottis, was, baith at the battall of Dunbar and the battall of Falkirk, at the opinion of Ingland, aganis the Scottis; na crime micht be imput to him thairfore: first, Becaus he had na refuge in Scotland; for the Ballioll persewit him to the deid, becaus he was contendand with him for the crown: Secoundly, He held the lordschip of Cleveland of the King of Ingland, and was ane Inglisman born, howbeit he was nerest air, be proximate of blud, to the crowne of Scotland; and, be reasoun thair-of, behuvit to make him service. Als, King Edward promittit, to retreit the sentence he gaif for the Ballioll, and to make the said Robert, King. Attoure, Sanct Paule, as we find, was ane gret scourge of Cristin pepill, and persewit thaim with maist cruell ennimite; and, fra he come to thair opinioun, he was the gretest pillar of our

faith. On the samin maner, howbeit Robert Bruce persewit the Scottis with gret cruelte for postponing of him fra his just heritage and croun: yit, fra he was maid king, he was the best prince that evir rang above the Scottis; for, thought he fand Scotland in gret miserie, and neir conquest be tyranny of Inglismen; yit he recover-it it be his singulare manheid, and left it fre, but ony clame, in gud tranquillite.

Wallace, efter this discomfitoure, come to Perth; and, becaus he couth nocht suffir the invy of the nobillis rising ilk day aganis him, he exonerat him of all auctorite, and dischargit him of the governance of the realme.

The samin time, Philip, the fourt of that name, King of France, havand gret miseratioun on the calamite fallin to his confiderat freindis of Scotland for the actioun allanerlie of France, send his ambassatouris to Edward, Prince of England, quhilk was contrackit in mariage before with his douchter, and purchest peace to Scottis, fra the feist of All Sanctis to the Witsonday nixt following.

### Chap. Sixth.

*How Inglismen wer discomfist at Rosling. How King Edward conquest gret roumes in Scotland. And how the Forbessis tuke their first beginning.*



HE Scottis, brokin with continewal weris, send thair ambassatouris to Paip Boniface, to complene the gret affliction done to thaim be King Edward; quhilk was set, in perdition of thair liberte, to conques thair realme: and desirit the Paip, sen he had mair empire above Inglismen than ony othir realme, to interpone his auctorite, and constrane King Edward to desist fra invasioun of Scottis: for the Scottis war content that al pleyis concerning the liberte and croun of Scotland, war decidit be his Halynes; sen the samin may na othirwayis be decidit, for insufferabil dammage falling to the pepil, be blind desire of nobillis contending for the crowne. The Paip, efter that he had tane

ripe deliberation in this mater, decernit the Scottis to have just action of battal, in defence of thair liberteis, aganis King Edward.

Sone efter, the Scottis chesit Johne Cumin to be governoure of thair realme. Als sone as King Edward was advertist of thair rebellion, he send ane army throw all boundis of Scotland; and come to Perth, invading the cuntre with gret trubill. Mony of the nobillis, becaus thay nicht nocht suffer his injuris, war randerit: otheris, quhilkis had mair sicht to thair liberte than servitude, fled to the woddis; and chesit Symon Fraseir to be college in thair weris, to Johne Cumin: syne gaderit ane power of viii thousand chosin men, to revenge the injuris done be Inglismen; and finaly slew every ane of thaim that was ouirtakin, and the remanent chasit out of the cuntre.

King Edward, commovit with this vassalage, send ane vailyeant capitane, namit Rodulphe Confrey, in Scotland, with xxx thousand men. This Rodulphe, efter his cuming in Scotland, tuke litil respect of Scottis, bot allanerly as he war cumin to take all Scotland at his pleseir; and, thairfore, purposit to pas throw the boundis of Scotland with thre armyis, at thre sindry partis; ilk army havand x thousand men in nowmer: and commandit thaim to meit all togidder at Rosling, efter thay had cumin throw the cuntre at thre sindry partis.

Als sone as Johne Cumin and Symon Fraseir war advertist thair of, thay rasit thair folkis, traisting na thing sa gud as to assailye the chance of battal with ane of thir thre armyis; for thay traistit, gif it happinnit thaim to have victory of ane of thir thre armyis, the remanent two the mair able to be vincust. Incontinent, thay exhortit thair folkis to fecht for defence of thair wiffis, liberteis, and guddis. The Scottis, rasit be thir wourdis in esperance of victory, faucht with sic invincible curage, that thay put the first battal of Inglismen to flicht. Skarsly had thay gaderit the spulye thair of, quhen the secound battall come on thame with mair cruelte than the first: nochtheles, throw curage of thair recent victory, thay jonit with incredibill manheid. And skarsly was this secound battall vincust, quhen the thrid battal come on thaim with fresche power; and thocht the Scottis war woundit and slane in gret nowmer, yit, be hortatioun

of thair capitane, thay ruschit pertely, with new spreit and curage, on thair ennimes; and efter lang bergane, thay put all thair ennimes to flicht. Few of thame had bene savit, war nocht, the Scottis war ouriset be lang fechtung. This victory succedit to Scottis on Sanct Mathewis Day, fra our redemption mccc and twa yeris. It is in dout gif evir ony victorie wes conquest afore thir dayis with more manheid and honoure: xxx thousand Inglismen, with lang provision and set battall, vincust and discomfist with skars viii thousand Scottis; and thairfore ilk man belevit this victory nocht cuming but singulare favour and grace of God. And yit the Scottis kepit bot schort time this victorie; for King Edward, knawin this discomfitour at Rosling, rasit his army to invaid the Scottis, baith be see and land. The Scottis, seand his ordinance of more pissance than thay micht resist, fled to thair strenthis: throw quhilk, King Edwardis army went, but ony obstakill, throw all Scotland, fra north to south partis thair of; and na man found to resist thame, except Wallace, and sa mony as assistit to him; quhilkis leiffit in the montanis and woddis, to eschew the fury of Inglismen. King Edward, heirand that Wallace lurkit in dennis, and lay in wait, abiding sum time to invaid Inglismen; desirit him, be sindry message, to be sworne Inglisman, and to have thairfore gret erldomes and lordschippis within England. Wallace refusit, saying, His liberte wes more to him, with small rentis, in Scotland; than possession of gret landis in England, under servitude.

The castel of Striveling wes kepit, in thir dayis, be ane vailyeant knight, Schir William Olfir. And quhen he had bene continewally segit thre monethis, for laik of vitallis, he randerit the hous to King Edward, under thir conditionis: "All personis that ar in the said castel sal have fre pasport to depart, with thair baggis and guddis, "at thair pleseir." Nochtheles, King Edward, as ane fals tyrane, brak his aith and promes in that behalf; for eftir that the castell wes randerit, he tuke Schir William Olfir, and send him as prisoner to Londoun, quhair he remanit mony yeris eftir in captivite. Mony othir castellis wer tane be King Edward in the same maner, and all the sodjouris thair of slane, but ony mercy or ranson. The castell of Urquhard wes takin, and nane left on live in it, except ane



woman gret with child, of quhome the surname of Boyis and Forbes discendit. This woman that wes savit in this maner, wes wife to Alexander Boyis, lord of the said castell. Howbeit, it wes unknowin for the time; for scho wes in pure array. Eftir taiking of this castell, scho fled in Ireland, quhare scho bure hir son Alexander. This Alexander, quhen Scotland wes recoverit out of Inglismennis handis, come to King Robert Bruce, and desirit to be restorit to his faderis heritage, quhilk wes occupyit for the time with othir possessoris. King Robert [wes] very quhat wes to be done in this mater; for he thocht it nocht semand that ane prince suld tak the landis fra nobill men, quhilkis wer gevin to thaim in reward of thair manheid; and als, it wes not just to spulye the man of his kindly heritage, quhilk had his fader, his freindis, and all his guddis, tint in defence of the realme. Thus wes ane midway devisit, be quhilk certane landis in Mar, of litil les proffet than the landis of Urquhard, wer gevin to the said Alexander Boyis. Nochtheles, this man that wes callit Boyis, wes callit Forbes; for he slew ane beir be singulare manheid: of quhome the surname of Forbessis is discendit.

### Chap. Seventh.

*Of sindry gret cruelteis done be King Edward aganis Scottis. How the Bruce and Cumin war confiderat; and how the Cumin was slane.*



COTLAND beand subdewit in this maner, King Edward gart distroy all the auld lawis and constitutionis of Scotland; traisting, thairthrow, to caus the Scottis and Inglismen to increas togidder in blude, amite, and faith. He brint all the Cronikles of Scotland, with all maner of bukis, als weill of devine service as of othir materis; to that fine, that the memorie of Scottis suld peris. Gret punitioun was maid on thaim quhilkis war repugnant to thir chargis. He gart the Scottis write bukis efter the use of Sarum, and constranit thaim to say efter that

use. Attoure, he banist all Scottis quhilkis had ony singulare eruditoun, and put thaim in Oxfurd; dreidand that the nobillis of Scotland, be thair eruditoun, suld increas in virtew, and sum time deliver thair realme of servitude. Attoure, this tyrane had sic vane arrogance, that he distroyit all the antiquiteis of Scotland: and efter that he had passit throw sindry boundis thairof, he commandit the round tempil beside Camelon to be cassin down, quhilk was biggit, as we have schawin, in the honoure of Claudius, Empriour, and the goddess Victory; nocht suffering, be his invy, sa mekill of the antiquiteis of oure eldaris to remane in memorie. Yit the inhabitantis saiffit the samin fra uter eversioun, and put the Romane ansenye and superstitionis out of the wallis thairof; and ingravit the armis of King Arthoure, and commandit it to be callit Arthouris Hoif. Attoure, King Edward, afore his returning in England, that na memorie suld remane of Scotland, thair bukis beand universally brint; send the chier of marbill out of Scotland to London, and put it in Westminster, quhare it remanis yit; syne callit all the lordis of Scotland to ane convention at Sanct Androis, and tuk new band of thaim, to be leill and trew subdittis to him, but ony rebelloun, in times cuming. All the lordis of Scotland war bound to him, that day, except Wallace, quhom na landis nor riches nicht brek fra defence of the liberte of Scotland. King Edward, to hald the Scottis at his opinioun, left behind him ane vailyeant knight, Odomer Valance, to be Governoure of Scotland; syne returnit, with gret triumphe, to London.

In the mene time, Robert Bruce and John Cumin convenit togidder; and first the Cumin said to the Bruce: "Thow seis howe King Edward slais oure pepill but ony occasioun, and occupyis oure kingrik but reasoun. Be of gud curage, thairfore, and take thy armour and wappinnis. Suffer me to have thy landis, and I sall make the king. Gif thow will nocht do that, suffer me to be king, and thow sall nocht onely have all my landis and heritage, bot thou sall ay be nixt me in honoure and dignite." Thus was the Bruce and Cumin confederat togidder, with endentouris subscrivit with athir handis, and interchangit be thair selis. Sic thingis done, the Bruce returnit in England. This rebelloun of Robert Bruce procedit, becaus he was haldin ay with King Edward in sus-

pition, for the richt that he had to the crown of Scottis; and thairfore he durst not remane lang in Scotland: for King Edward had slane him afore, gif he nicht have gottin him and all his brethir togidder.

Efter this consideration, the Cumin thocht his power and aucto-rite wald be of litil effect in Scotland gif the Bruce war king; and, thairfore, he send ane secret servand to King Edward, and schew the writingis laity maid betwix him and Robert Bruce; desiring King Edward, gif he intendit to juse Scotland but trubill, to put the Bruce haistely to deith. King Edward gaif litil faith to thir writingis at the first sicht; for he belevit that thay come only be invy of the Cumin, quhilk dred that he suld be of litill pissance in Scotland, fra Robert Bruce gat ony auctorite. At last, King Edward schew thir indentouris to the Bruce, and demandit him gif he had ony cognossance of his awin writ. The Bruce denyit the letteris with gret constance, schawing the samin proceeding onely be invy of the Cumin: and thairfore desirit to be avisit with the letteris for ane nicht; and failyeing that he previt not the letteris fals and fenyeit, he suld tane al his landis within England. King Edward gaif litill faith to thir letteris; for it was the will of God that Bruce suld be savit, to recover the realme of Scotland out of servitude and tyranny of Inglismen. The Erle of Glomer, sone efter the departing of Robert Bruce fra the kingis presence, send to him xii Striveling pennyis, with ii scharp spurris: throw quhilk, the Bruce conjecturit that na thing was proffitable to him bot to spur his hors. And becaus the season was than of winter, and the erd ouircoverit with snawis, he gart ane smith scho his hors bakwartis, that nane suld follow him be his futsteppis; and departit out of London, with two traist servandis, in all deligence that he nicht; and come, the vii day efter, to Lochmaben: quhare he met his brothir Edward, quhilk had gret mervel of his haiste cumming; and incontinent he schew how he come in gret trubill be the Cumin, and narrowly eschapid of his life. In the mene time, as thay went forthwart, thay met ane futman be the way; and becaus he eschewit the gait, thay take him, and fand new writingis with him, direckit fra the Cumin to King Edward; quhilk schew, gif the Bruce wer noch slane, na thing bot conspiracy and truble sall follow in al partis of

Scotland aganis King Edward. Als sone as the Bruce had red thir writingis, he inquirit diligentlie quhair the Cumin wes. This servand, suspekand na evill, schew that he wes in the freiris of Dunfreis. The Bruce incontinent slew this man for bering of thir writingis, and come haistly in the queir of Dunfreis, quhair he fand the Cumin; and eftir that he had accusit him, and schawin his awin endenturis, he straik him with ane swerd in the wambe; syne fled haistely out of the kirk, and met James Lindesay and Roger Kirkpatrik, his tender freindis; and said to thaim, "I trow the Cumin "be slane." To quhome thay answerit, "Hes thow attemptit sa "gret ane mater, and left it uncertane?" Incontinent, thay went to the Cumin, and inquirit him gif he had ony deidis woundis; or gif he trowit to recovir, gif he had ony gud surrigiane. And becaus he said he micht recovir, thay straik him III or IV othir straikis, mair cruelly; and sone eftir he gaif the gaist, the yeir of God, MCCCv yeris.

### Chap. Eighth.

*How Wallace wes betraisit be Schir Johne Menteith. Of King Robert Brucis coronatioun; and of his gret miserie. How he conquest Scotland; and how the Douglas tuk thair beginning.*



T this time, Wallace wes tane treasonably be Schir Johne Menteith at Glasgew, and deliverit to King Edward; for King Edward promittit, be general edict, sindry landis, with gret sowmes of money, to thame that wald deliver the said Wallace in his handis. Finaly, this Wallace was brocht to London, quhare he was cruelly martyrit, be tyranny of King Edward; and his quarteris send to sindry gret tounis of Scotland, to be hounge up to his schame. This end maid the nobil Wallace, maist forey campion that was in his dayis; for thocht all othir Scottis randerit baith thameself and thair cuntre to servitude of Inglismen, he wald nevir be subdewit, bot ay josing the auld liberte of Scotland. Nochtheles, sic invy hes ay bene, and is yit,



in Scotland, that na nobillman may leif in it, bot, outhir be ane treason or othir, [he is] finaly distroyit. It is writtin, that ane haly heremite, in Ingland, revist in spreit be heviny contemplantion, saw this Wallace fleand with inestimabil glore unto the hevin ; as he that faucht, for defence of his cuntre, to the deith.

Robert Bruce, efter the slauchter of the Cuming, send to the Paip for absolution. And, to attempt ane thing of mair audacite aganis King Edward, be quhilk he nicht the better resist his tyranny in times cuming, he come with his freindis to Scone ; quhare he was crownit, on the xxvii day of Marche. Yit, quhen he had gaderit al the pepil that he nicht, to invaid King Edward, he was bot ane small nowmer ; for the maist part of Scotland was aganis him. King Edward, advertist of the rebellion maid aganis him be King Robert, send ane army in Scotland, with Odomer Vallance, his Lieutenant ; and faucht with King Robert at Meffene, the xix day of Juny : quhare the said King Robert was put to flicht. And thought few of his army was slane at this time, yit the pepil yeid fra him, traisting ane evil signe, to begin with sic discomfitour. Odomer Vallance, efter this victory, banist all the wiffis of thame that assistit to King Robert : throw quhilk, mony noble wemen and ladyis war constraunt to pas to the desertis and woddis, to eschew the crueltie of Inglismen.

King Robert, discomfist on this wise, come in Athole ; quhare he faucht aganis the Cumingis and Inglismen, and was put to flicht, on the samin maner as afore ; few of his men slane : yit, be thir frequent discomfitouris, he was sa desolate of freindis, that he went solitar, with few personis in his company, amang the montanis and woddis, sustenand his miserable life on rutis and herbis : and in this mischance he had ii maist faithfull servandis to him, the Erle of Levenax and Gilbert Hay. And thocht sum time, be fers persecution of ennimes, thay went fra his presence, yit thay baid ay at his opinion. At last, al his freindis, for feir of thair livis, skalit, and fled heir and thair, to thair best refuge. His quene fled to Sanct Dutho, and was tane be William Cuming, Erle of Ros, and deliverit to the King of Ingland ; quhare scho abaid continewally, to the battal of Bannochburn. His brothir, Nigell, Thomas, and Alexander, war tane ; and sum of thame heidit at Carlele, and sum

at Berwik. Finaly, all thay that fled fra him war othir slane within the yeir, or ellis haldin presoneris in Ingland. Thus was King Robert brocht to sic misery, that he was sum time nakit and hungry, but meit or drink, saif only watter and rutis of herbis: and thought he knew weil the slauchter of his brothir, with al othir afflictionis done in perdition of him and his freindis; yit he had sic excellent fortitude in al adversite, that na thing micht brek his invincible curage: for he was sa accustomit with every truble and weiris in his youthe, that he curit nocht to sleip on the cald erd, nor to drink watter insteid of aill or wine. Attoure, ane thing is, that apperis to have cumin be miracle and grace of God: Howbeit his freindis war neir all uterly distroyit, he ceissit nevir to have ferme esperance sum time to recover his realme, and liberte of his pepil. At last, quhen he had bene vagabound and wilsum in sindry partis, to eschew the treason of thame quhilkis war waitand to put him to deith; he come to ane freind in the Ilis; quhare he gat sic support of men and wappinnis, that he tuk new curage to assailye his ennimes: and be that samin way, he tuke the castell of Carrik, and slew all the Inglismen quhilkis wer fundin in it; syne delt the spulye thairof, with gret liberalite, amang his weirmen. His freindis, quhilkis war lurkand under covert, heirrand his doingis, began to return to him out of al partis. Sone efter, be thair assistance, he wan the castel of Innernes, and slew al the sodjouris thairof; and, with siclik felicite, wan mony strenthis in the north. And becaus he had na pissance to keip thaim, he kest thaim down in al partis quhare he yeid. At last, quhen he was cumand to Glennesk, he gat advertising that Johne Cuming, with sindry Inglismen and Scottis, war gaderit aganis him. And becaus the ground was strenthy, he tuk purpos to abide thame battall. Nochtheles, Johne Cuming, with thir Inglismen and Scottis quhilkis war gaderit to geif him battal, seing him na thing affrayit of thair cuming, send ambassatouris, to have trewis; to eschew the present dangeir, quhill thay war gaderit mair strangly aganis him. Yit, quhen thir desiris war grantit, thay followit him with new power, in thair maist cruel maner. King Robert bure him sa vailyeantly, that oftymes, be his singulare virtew, he put thame to flicht; and maid ay slauchter on thame, how-

beit the samin wes bot smal, as occurris oftymes at frequent scar-mussing and jeoperdis.

The fame of thir honourable actis drew him in sic favoure, that sindry gret baronis of Scotland assistit to him; amang quhome was James Dowglas, ane man of gret spreit and manheid, quhilk was tendir and familiar cousing to William Lambertoun, Bischop of Sanct Andros. This James Dowglas, to support King Robert at his power, tuk all the bischoppis gold and hors, with sindry othir vailyeant young men of his opinion; and went to King Robert, as Bischop Lambertoun had knawin nathing thair of. Howbeit, he assistit weil thair to; bot he durst not opinly, in aventure, gif ony infelicitie had followit efter, it micht have cumin to his displeseir. This James Dowglas was tenderly ressavit be King Robert, and continewit in his service, baith in weir and peace, to the end of his life. Of this James, descendit the illuster surname of Dowglas, quhilkis war evir the sicker targe and weirwal of Scotland aganis Inglismen, and wan mony landis be thair singular manheid and vassalage. For it is said in the Brucis buke,

Sa mony gud as of the Douglas hes bene,  
Of ane surname, was nevir in Scotland sene.

For thay decorit this realme with mony noble actis, and, be glorie of marciall dedis, grew in gret estimation. Nochtheles, thair hicht and gret pissance, baith in manrent and landis, was sa suspect to the kingis quhilkis succedit efter thame, that it was the caus of thair declination: and yit, sen that surname wes put down, Scotland hes done few vailyeant dedis in England. Bot we will returne to our historie.

## Chap. Ninth.

*Of the deith of the tyrane, King Edward, Langschankis. And how Edward Carnaver, his son, was maid King of England. How King Robert gat sindry victoryis on his ennimes. And of gret derth in Scotland.*



EDWARD of England, dredand the Scottis, be thir felicitis, to rise ilk day in more insolence, come with ane more aufull ordinance than evir he did afore in Scotland, with purpos to subdew it all uterlie, but ony recovir; and, at his cuming to the bordouris, he fell in ane hevy maledy, and deceissit suddanlie, but ony confessioun or sacrament of Haly Kirk.

Treuth is, that ane knight of England, namit Schir William Banistar, in the houre of King Edwardis deith, fell in ane extasy; and saw this odius tyran cruellie scurgit, for the murdir of sa mony innocent pepill: and, finalie, saw him convoyit, with infinite noumer of devillis, to hell. Als sone as this knight had sene this visioun, he fell in ane hevy maledy, and culd nevir get rest, quhill he wes brocht to ane opin place, before al the pepil, to schaw his visioun; and quhen he had schawin the samin to the pepill, with all circumstance afore reheirsit, he convalescit, and perseverit in gud life and pennance to his deith. This apperis to be trew; becaus this bludy tyrane ragit, with unnatural cruelte, on Cristin pepil, abone the rigour of armes; for quhen he wes in his last extremes, he commandit L young childrin, quhilkis wer takin in the castell of Kildrummy, eftir that it wes won be Inglismen, to be all slane, but ony compassioun of thair tendir yeris and innocence.

Eftir his deith, the nobillis of England tuk his son Edward out of Carnaver, and maid him king. This Edward, following the footsteps of his fader, summond all the lordis of Scotland to Dunfreis, quhare mony of thaim wer sworne to make homage and faith to him, as to thair superiour and king. Otheris rebellit aganis him;



traisting, be the deith of King Edward, gret dissentioun and trubill to follow in Ingland; for his sonne wes young, and tuke na counsal of his lordis, bot allanerlie of Peter Ganarstoun, quhilk wes haitit baith with Inglismen and Scottis. King Edward, sone eftir, returnit in Ingland, and send ambassatouris in France, desiring support to his weris.

In the mene time, Johne Cumin, Erle of Buchquhan, gaderit ane army of Inglismen and Scottis aganis King Robert. And thocht King Robert wes in gret infirmite, he com on ane hors litter to the camp aganis his ennimes. The Cumin, with othir Scottis, and Inglismen in gret noumer, abaid at ane strenth; traisting be thair onlie multitude, to put King Robert to flicht; bot, at last, the Cumin wes discomfist, and mony of his army slane, or ellis tane. This victory wes gottin at Enverrour, x milis fra Abirdene; and wes sa plesand to King Robert, that he gat his heil thairthrow.

In the same yeir, Donald of the Ilis come with ane gret power aganis King Robert, and wes discomfist be Edward Bruce, at the Watter of Deir. King Robert, eftir sindry chances of battall succeeding to him with gret felicite, come with ane army in Argyle; and nocht onlie subdewit the cuntre to his opinioun, bot tuke Alexander, lord of Argyle, out of ane strang castel thairof, and banist him, with al his freindis, in Ingland, quhair he sone efter deceissit.

In the same yeir, King Edward come with ane army to Ranfrew, and returnit in Ingland, with few werkis worthy to have memory. And, in this yeir, throw continewall weris, rais sic derth in Scotland, that nothir vittallis nor bestial nicht be gottin in ony partis thairof; throw quhilk the derth was sa gret, that the pepill eit hors, and othir sindry forbodin flesche, to sustene thair livis.

## Chap. Tenth.

*Of the condition of trewis, tane betwix Edward Bruce and the Capitane of Striveling. How King Edward come, with ccc thousand men, to reskew Striveling. Of the victory falling to Erle Thomas Randale.*



ING ROBERT, in the yeir following, quhilk was fra the incarnatioun, mcccxi yeris, chasit Inglismen out of all partis of Scotland: syne enterit two sindry times in Ingland; and, efter that he had put mony landis and pepil thair of to heirschippis and slauchter, he returnit in Scotland with innowmerabil riches, spulye, and pray of bestiall; throw quhilk Ingland was put to na les affliction and trubill, than Scotland was, in the yeiris afore rehersit, be King Edward. And in the yeir following, on the viii day of Januar, King Robert wan the town of Perth be strang hand, and slew all the pepill found in it, and kest down all the wallis thair of to the ground. And in the same yeir, the castellis of Dunfreis, Ayre, Lanark, with mony othir strenthis and castellis in Scotland, war randerit to him, and cassin down to the ground.

The castell of Roxburgh was takin be Schir James Douglas on Fastronis Evin, fra our redemptioun, mcccxiii yeris. And in the samin yeir, Thomas Randale, Erle of Murray, wan the castel of Edinburgh. And in this yeir, Edward Bruce segit the castell of Striveling; and, thought he assailyeit it with al ingine and practik that nicht tak ony hous, yit his labour was in vane: for the castell was not onely strang be wallis, bot richt strenthy be nature of the crag, standing on ane hie mote, quhare na passage was bot at ane part. In this castell was ane vailyeant knight, Schir Phillip Mowbray, Scottisman, howbeit he followit that time the opinion of Inglismen; havand sufficient vittallis to defend it lang time. Edward, richt sorowfull in his mind, and nocht knowing quhidder he suld leif the sege, or continew still, to his importable expensis; thought

richt degrading to his honoure, sen he had tane sa gret charge apon hand, to desist cowardly thairfra. At last, he tuke purpos to assailye the mind of the said capitane; and said, gif he wald randir the hous with plesoir, he suld be als familiar to King Robert, as he was afore with King Edward. Finaly, becaus the capitane refusit to randir the hous in this sort, he assailyeit him on ane new burde: howbeit the samin succedit with mair felicite than prudence: gif the capitane gat na releif of King Edward within the yeir nixt following, he sall randir the said castell to Scottis.

This conditioun of peace was maid be Edward Bruce with gret foly. For ilk prudent man nicht beleif, the riche and pissant King of Ingland wald cum in support of his mater, havand sa lang day to be providit thairwith. Attour, it was aganis the art of chevelry, to geif sa lang trewis, quhill thair ennimes nicht be sufficiently armit to invaid thaim with battall. Howbeit thir conditionis of trewis tane be Edward Bruce, wer found richt unplesand to King Robert, yit he wald nocht be repugnant thairto, in aventure sum seditioun or truble nicht follow thairefter betwix him and his brothir; and yit he understude, the battall wes to be led alwayis aganis the King of Ingland.

In the mene time, King Edward send to all kingis and princis that wer alliat with him, to have support aganis the Scottis; promitting, eftir his victory, to devide Scotland amang thaim: and, thairfore, nocht onlie the peple that stude under his empire, bot sindry othir infinite pepill come with him, on thair aventuris; specially thay that had bot small insicht at hame; traisting to purches, be his conquests and victorie, landis and riches sufficient to sustene thair estait in times cuming: and, in esperance thairof, thay brocht with thaim thair wiffis and childrin, with all the guddis quhilkis thay nicht turs, baith on fute and hors. The landis, quhare King Edward gat support to this battall, wer thir that followis: Holland, Zeland, Brabant, Flanderis, Picardy, Bollony, Gascunye, Normandie, with mony othir regionis, quhilkis wer all that time othir confederat with Ingland, or ellis under thair dominioun; and, by thaim, mony Scottismen, quhilkis for the felicite succeeding to Inglismen, tuke part at this time with King Edward, contrar thair native prince. The noumer that come at this time in Scotland with King Edward,

extendit to ane hundreth and fifty thowsand fute-men, with als mony hors-men. And, by this, wes infinite noumer of scudlaris and cariage men, with thair wiffis, children, madinnis, and servandis; as thay wer sicker to sit down perpetually in Scotland: throw quhilk, the nowmer wes sa gret, that na ordour nor craft of chevalry micht be observat amang thaim: for men, wiffis, and childrin wer all mixt togidder; throw quhilk rais ane huge reird and clamour in all partis quhare thay come, throw diversite of toungis.

King Edward, be this incredible noumer of pepil, richt proud and insolent, tuke litill sollicitude or thocht of battall; for, quhen he wes approcheand neir the merchis of Scotland, he tuke avisement with his nobillis, with quhat cruell and schamefull torment he micht best punis King Robert and his nobillis; presuming, be vane arrogance, to put thaim to pine, as thay had bene sicker in his handis. Attoure, he brocht with him ane Carmelite monk, to discrive his conques and victory on Scotland. And nocht onlie the king, bot every man in his cumpany, usit maist detraction on the Scottis.

On the tothir side, King Robert did all thing with gret prudence and industry; and, with xxx.M men, feirs, and weil exercit in chevalry, he come pertlie aganis his ennimes, and set down his tentis with gud array on ane plane abone Banochburn: uncertane quethir he did this for the gret confidence he had in his folkis, or gif he did it to caus his fayis to have him in na contemptioun. And as he belevit, so followit eftir: for, quhen the Inglismen began to wonder how he durst cum with sa small power aganis thair huge ordinance, it wes said, be ane agit and wise capitane of England, "We will get na victory this day, but strang bergane, and gret murdir of pe-  
"pill:" for he knew weill the gret wisdom and manheid of King Robert, and his forcy campionis, sa lang exercit in chevalry.

Forthir, to strenth his manheid with more crafty slicht, he maid deip fowseis in the place quhare the battall wes set, and dang in staikis, with scharp pointis rising up, coverit with scherrettis with sic ingine, that fut-men micht pas thairon but ony danger; bot quhen ony preis of hors-men come abone the said fowseis, the lofting suld brek, and, incontinent, the hors-men suld othir be revin on staikis, or ellis inclusit but ony out-passage. Sic thingis done, he



abaid still in the said place, abiding with gret curage the cuming of Inglismen.

And quhen baith the armyis wer approcheing to othir, within ane mile, King Edward send viii.c horsmen be ane prevay gait to the castell of Striveling, to advertis the capitane of his cuming. Als sone as King Robert saw thaim proceding forthwart, he send Erle Thomas Randale, with v.c men, to saif the cuntre fra thair invasion; quhilk met thir Inglismen with incredible manheid: throw quhilk it wes fouchtin cruelly, with uncertane victorie, lang time, in the face of baith the armyis. In the mene time, Schir James Douglas dred, that Erle Thomas, his speciall and tender freind, suld be ouriset be multitude of Inglismen; and, incontinent, he fell on kneis before King Robert, desiring licence to support his freind: and, becaus the king wald nocht condescend to his purpos sa haistely as he desirit, he ruschit out of the army, but ony licence, with ane cumpany of chosin men, to the effect foresaid. At last, quhen he wes cuming neir the place quhare the erle faucht, and saw the victorie inclinand to him, with gret murdir of Inglismen, he stude still, that he suld nocht, be his cuming, reif fra his tender freind the glore of victorie, quhilk he had conquest with sic felicite and manheid.

This victorie wes sa plesand to all the army of Scottis, that every man wes spretit with new curage; beleving, with sicker esperance, more felicite hastely approcheing.

### Chap. Eleventh.

*How the two Kingis exhortit thair Armyis to Battall. How Inglis-  
men wer discomfist at Banochburn ; and King Edward chasit be  
the Douglas to Dunbar. Of gret riches that fell to Scottis be this  
victorie. How the town of Handwarp and Flemingis tuk thair  
beginning.*



HE Inglismen war litil astonist of this discomfitour ;  
howbeit thay saw the Scottis do this vassalage be more  
manheid, than noumer of pepill : and to that fine, the  
Scottis sall nocht be insolent throw this said victorie,  
thay set battal to fecht with thame on the morow.

King Robert maid his folkis, thought thay wer in few noumer,  
reddy for battall in the samin maner ; casting him mony wayis to  
bring his ennimes in the fowseis afore devisit. First, he commandit  
the army to mak thair confessionis, and to be reddy, on the morow,  
to ressave the blissit sacrament eftir messe : throw quhilk thay micht  
have the better esperance of victory. On the tothir side, the Ing-  
lismen, be hie curage, belevit nocht bot huge pray of landis and  
guddis to fal to thame for smal laubour of ane day.

All the nicht afore the battall, King Robert wes richt wery, hav-  
and gret solicitude for the weil of his army, and micht take na rest,  
bot rolland all jeoperdeis and chance of fortoun in his mind : and  
sum times he went to his devoit contemplatioun, makand his orisoun  
to God and Sanct Phillane, quhais arme, as he belevit, set in silver,  
wes closit in ane cais within his palyeon ; traisting the better fortoun  
to follow be the samin. In the mene time, the cais chakkit to sud-  
danlie, but ony motion or werk of mortall creaturis. The preist, as-  
tonist be this wonder, went to the alter quhare the cais lay ; and,  
quhen he fand the arme in the cais, he cryit, “ Heir is ane gret  
“ mirakle : ” and incontinent he confessit, how he brocht the tume  
cais in the feild, dredand that the rillik suld be tint in the feild,  
quhair sa gret jeoperdeis apperit. The king, rejosing of this mira-

kill, past the remanent nicht in his prayaris, with gud esperance of victorie.

On the morow, he gaderit al his army to messe, to ressave the body of God, to mak thaim have the more curage aganis thair ennimes. In this army wes ane devoit man, namit Maritus, abbot of Inchechaffray, quhilk said messe on ane hie mote, and ministerit the Eucharist to the king and his nobillis; and causit his preistis to mak ministratioun thair of to the residew of the army. Eftir this, King Robert callit the pepill to his standart, and said in this maner: “ I beleif, maist forcy championis, nane is amang yow nocht knawing  
“ how necessar it is to us to fecht this day aganis oure ennimes. Ye  
“ se ane army gaderit aganis yow, nocht onlie of Inglismen, bot of  
“ sindry othir nationis lyand about thame, and cuming aganis us,  
“ with thair wiffis and childrin, nocht onlie to dwel in our boundis,  
“ bot als to banis us out of the samin; and tendis to manure our  
“ landis, to frequent our housis and tempillis, and, finalie, to bring  
“ us to sic uter rewine, that our fame and memorie sall peris in Albion. Oure ennimes hes tane lang consultatioun, howbeit it wes  
“ folie, with quhat cruel and horrible torment thay sall pine us, or  
“ evir we be vincust, or cum in thair handis; not knawing your invincible curage and manheid, sa lang exercit in chevalry, quhilk  
“ is richt patent in me be lang experience. Nochtheles, gif ye wil  
“ knaw quhat vailyeant men bene thir now invading yow with sic  
“ vane minassing, maist forcy and invincible championis; thay ar the  
“ refuse of all realmes; but ony practik or experience of chevalry;  
“ and continewally, sen thair first yeris, drownit in lustis amang effeminat huris. And becaus thir febill and cownt bodyis hes waistit thair patrimony, landis, and gudis, in vile and corruppit usis,  
“ thay intend to ding yow fra your native landis, heritage, and  
“ roumes. Nochtheles, ye sall have sone experience, that it sal be  
“ na mair difficulte to slay thaim than scheip. Forther, suppois  
“ thay wer dotat with maist vertew, ye suld nouthir be affrayit, nor  
“ yit fule-hardy; for, in sa far as we have ane justar querrell to defend than thay have to persew, in sa far suld we beleif that God  
“ sal be mair favorable to us than to thame. God hes now schawin  
“ to us his favour be mirakle of Sanct Phillane, quhilk is cumin, as  
“ I beleif, to your eiris. Thairfore, I pray yow, be of gud comfort,

“ as ye ar. Set on yone confusit multitude of peple ; and traist weill,  
 “ quhare God is concurrant, na multitude of ennimes may avail :  
 “ and the more noumer of pepil cumis aganis yow, the pray and  
 “ riches sall cum to your more proffet.”

On the tothir side, King Edward prayit his folkis to remember, gif thay faucht vailyeantlie for ane hour or two, thay suld have infinite riches, and the realme of Scotland, in reward of thair laubour, of quhilk he desirit nocht bot the superiorite. Attour, prayit tham to remember quhat irrecoverable schame suld follow, sen thay wer departit out of thair cuntreis, to returne hame but proffet or victorie.

At last, quhen thay wer passand forthwart to battal, thay nicht skarslie be severit fra embrasing of thair wiffis and childrin : nocht-theles, be hortation of thair capitanis, thay come to gud array. The archearis stude arrayit amang the hors men, about ilk wing ; and the battall evir in the middis of thame ; traisting, thair ennimes nocht of pissance to sustene thair gret ordinance.

King Robert, that his folkis sall have na esperance to fle, comandit thaim to leif thair hors behind thame, and to cum on fute to battall. Maritus, the abbot forsaid, tuke the croce, in quhilk the crucifix wes hinging, and ereckit it afore the army in maner of ane baner. Incontinent al the army of Scottis fel on kneis, devoitlie commending tham to God. The Inglismen, seing the Scottis fall on kneis, belevit thaim yoldin but straik ; bot quhen thay saw thame rise and cum forthwart, thay began to be affrayit. Incontinent, baith the armyis ruschit togidder. At the first joning, mony pepill wer drevin at erd, on all sidis. The archearis, quhilkis wer arrayit in the uter skirttis of the wingis, wer richt noisum to the Scottis ; quhil, at last, Edward Bruce come on thair bakkis with m speris, and brak thame in sic wise, that thay did litil more skaith. Incontinent, ane battal of hors-men, to the noumer of xxx.m men, come al rusch-and forthwart attanis, to have ouirriddin the Scottis ; and, quhen thay wer cumand forthwart with maist violence, thay fel al attanis in the fowseis, quhair thay wer miserably slane but ony debait. And yit the Scottis, throw multitude of ennimes, wer neir vincust. Than the cariage-men and wemen, seand thair maistres in sic extreme danger, put on thair sarkis above thair clathis, with towellis and nap-



kinnis bound to thair speris, and come down the hil, fornece thair ennimes, with maist auful and terribill noyis. The Inglismen, fechtand than with maist fury aganis the Scottis with uncertane victory, and seing this new ordinance cuming down the hill on thair face, was sore affrayit; and becaus thay nicht skarsly sustene the violent preis of Scottis than present, thay belevit to be uterly destroyit gif thay perseverit ony forthir in battal, and gaif backis: on quhom followit the Scottis with insaciabill ire, and maid slauchter in al partis quhare thay come; specially quhare King Edward fled.

Schir James Douglas, with *iv.c* chosin men, na thing irkit with continewall slauchter of his ennimes, followit King Edward, with lang chace, to Dunbar; quhare he wes ressavit be Patrik Dunbar, Erle of Marche, with *xv* erlis; and put in Ingland be ane fischar bait: to be example of the unsicker stait and glore of princis: for, thocht this Edward wes, this day at morow, richt proud; with mony dukis, erlis, and baronis, under his empire; not unlik sumtime to the gret army of King Xerxis; yit he was constranit, or evin, to saif his life in ane pure fischar bait, fleand be the see in Ingland.

In this battall war slane *L.M* Inglismen, the Duk of Glocister, with *cc* knichtis. Amang otheris wes slane Schir Gelis of Argenty; and lyis in Sanct Cuthbertis kirk, beside Edinburgh. The deith of Schir Gelis was sa displesant to King Robert, for the familiarte that he had with him in Ingland, that he rejosit na thing of the present victory; and was, thairfore, hevely reprevit be his noblis, becaus he apperit dolorus efter sa gret felicite falling to his pepil. Of Scottis war slane scarsly *iv.M* men, with *ii* knichtis; Schir William We-pont, and Schir Walter Ros. The spulye wes sa gret, of gold, silver, and other jowellis, gottin in the said feld, that al the Scottis war richit be the samin, notwithstanding thair gret povertie falling to thaim afore be continewal weris; for thay gat at this time litil les money and riches be ranson of Inglis presoneris tane be thame, than of spulye in the feild.

King Robertis wife, quhilk was haldin *viii* yeris afore in Ingland, wes interchangeit with ane duk of Ingland. The goldin and silkin claithis, of quhilkis King Edwardis palyonis war maid, war distribut amang the abbays of Scotland, to be vestamentis and frontallis

to thair altaris; of quhilkis mony yit remanis to our days. Attour, the freir Carmelite, quhilk wæs brocht, as we have writtin, be King Edward, to put his victory in versis, wes tane in this feild; and commandit be King Robert, in sithement of his ransoun, to write as he saw. This Carmelite freir maid thir rousty versis, quhilkis be-ginnis thus:

“ De plantu cudo metrum cum carmine nudo.”

It is said, in the nicht afore this battal, 11 men, of uncouth habit, come to the abbot of Glassinbery in Ingland, for it was ane abbay of hospitalite, and desirit lugging. The abbot ressavit thame plesand-ly; and, quhen he had demandit thame quhat thay war, and quhare thay war passand to, thay schew, that thay war servandis of God, and send be him to help the Scottis at Banochburn. On the morow, the abbot fand tham away or evir the yetis wer opnit, and thair beddis standing in the same array as thay war left. It was belevit, thairfore, that thay war angellis, send, be provision of God, to de-fende the Scottis, in thair just materis, aganis the tyranny of Inglis-men.

On the samin day that this battal was strikin, ane knight, with schinand armour, schew to the pepil at Aberdene, how the Scottis had gottin ane glorious victory of Inglismen. Sone efter, he went our Penthland Firth: and was haldin be the pepil to be Sanct Maunis, prince sumtime of Orknay; and, for that caus, King Robert dotat the kirk of Orknay with v lib. striveling of the customes of Aberdene, to furnis breid, wine, and walx, to the said kirk.

King Robert, efter this glorius victory, rewardit mony nobil men of his realme with landis and gudis, for thair provin manheid and virtew in the said battal. Robert Fleming, for his faithful service, gat the landis of Cummernald; of quhom ar descendit ane noble hous, perseverand yit in gret honoure to thir days.

It is said, that 11 knichtis of Braban come, be request of King Edward, to this battal. At last, quhen thay had hard maist inju-rius wordis and detraction spokin be Inglismen, in the nicht afore the battal, aganis King Robert, thay prayit God to send him victo-ry; and, for thir wordis, thay come in sic hatrent to Inglismen, that thay eschapit narrowly of thair life, and proclamationis maid,

he that wald bring thair heidis suld have c mark striveling to his reward. King Robert, heirand in quhat trubil thay come for his sake, rewardit thame with riche spulye of the said battal; with quhilkis thay returnit in Braban, and biggit the toun of Handwarp; and ingravit the armes of the Bruce maist curiously in al pertis of the said toun, to be ane memorial of the benevolence that thir ii knichtis had to King Robert for his liberalite.

This gloriuis victory succedit to Scottis on the nativite of Sanct Johne the Baptist; fra our redemptioun, mcccxiv yeris.

### Chap. Twelfth.

*How the crown of Scotland was tailyeit to King Robert and his airis. How Edward, his brothir, was maid King of Ireland, and slane be Inglismen. How King Robert sufferit gret distres in Ireland.*



ANOCHEBURN discomfist in this maner, King Robert set ane parliament at Ayre; in the quhilk, be consent of the thre estatis, he gat the crown of Scotland tailyet to him and the aris-male gottin of his body; and failyeing thairof, the crown to cum to Edward Bruce, his bruthir; and failyeing the airis-male of thame baith, the crown to cum to Marjory, his douchter, and the airis gottin on hir body quhatsumevir. Atour, gif King Robert and his bruthir hapnit to deceis, or the airis of Marjory war of perfite age; it was commandit that Thomas Randal, Erle of Murray, and sister son to King Robert, sall be Governour of Scotland, quhil the airis foresaid war cumin to perfection. This Marjory was gottin be King Robert on the Erle of Marris sister, his first wife; and was maryit, efter the avise of the noblis, on Walter, Gret Stewart of Scotland. King Robert sone efter maryit Elizabeth, douchter to the Erle of Hullester; on quhom he gat ane son, namit David, and ii douchteris, Margaret and Mald. The first was maryit on the Erle of Suthirland, and bure him ane son, namit Johne. The secound, Mald, deceissit in hir infance.

King Robert, efter the mariage of Marjory, his first douchter, went throw al the boundis of his realme, and not only confermit thair auld privilegis, bot dotat sindry townis and barronyis of his realme with new prerogativis; specially the townis of Perth, Dundee, and Aberdene; as apperis yit be his charteris.

In the yeir following, quhilkis was fra our redemption mcccxcv, the princis of Ireland, opprest be lang tyranny of Inglismen, and traisting, becaus sa huge victory was gotin be Scottis, to recover thair liberte; send thair ambassatouris to King Robert, desiring him to send his bruthir Edward, to ressave the croun of Ireland. Edward, not refusing thair desiris, went with ane few nowmer of men in Ireland; quhare he, be assistance of the pepil thairof, wan ane gret town, namit Ulcony, and slew all the Inglismen that he fand in it. The princes of Ireland, efter that thay had chosin Edward Bruce to be king, send ambassatouris to the Paip, desiring him to ratify the thing that thay have done for thair common weill; for thay wald leif na langer under servitude of Inglismen. Thir ambassatouris purchest mony terribil monitionis of the Paip aganis Inglismen, to caus thame to depart out of Ireland; yit thay wald not obey thairto, bot thirlit the pepil thairof ilk day with mair tyranny.

King Robert, heirand in quhat dangeir his brothir was, be cumin of new armyis of Inglismen ilk day in his contrar; left Schir James Douglas Governour of Scotland, and went with ane army to support his bruthir in Ireland; quhare he sustenit sic miserabil distres, that ane gret part of his army deit of hunger, and the residew constrainit to eit hors. And quhen he was within ane dayis jorney to his bruthir King Edward, to have supportit him sufficiently with the residew of his army; the said Edward, not abiding his cuming, faucht unprudently with Inglismen: uncertane quethir he knew not the cuming of King Robert his brothir, or gif he, throw birnand desire of battall, dred that his bruthir suld reif him the gloire of victory. At last, seand the curage of his men fail, that he suld not tine the honour of his nation, he faucht with na les manheid than perseverand constance, to the deith, and was slane; fra the incarnation, mcccxviii yeris.



## Chap. Thirteenth.

*How King Edward was discomfist be Schir James Douglas. Of gret vassalage done be William Sinclair, Bischop of Dunkeld, aganis Inglismen; and how Berwik was recoverit.*



EDWARD, King of England, heirand the passage of King Robert in Ireland, thocht the time expedient to conqures Scotland; and come with ane greter power than evir he did afore. Nochtheles, Schir James of Douglas, Governoure, gaif him battal on the bordouris, and put him and all his army to flicht. Howbeit, the victory succedit not but infinite slauchter on athir side. In this battall, Schir James Douglas slew thre of the maist vailyeant campionis of England, with his awin handis.

King Edward, disparit, for the soverane manheid and wisdome of Schir James of Douglas, to conqures ony honour in Scotland be land; tuk purpos to assailye the same be se; and send ane flote of schippis in Forth, quhilk brint and heryit the land on every side thaim about. Duncane, Erle of Fif, heirand thir cruelteis done be Inglismen, come, with d bodin men, to resist thair invasioun. Nochtheles, fra he saw thame of mair power than he micht resist, he fled abak. In the mene time, met him William Sinclare, Bischop of Dunkeld, with lx weil-armit men; and finaly, brocht him agane to the same place quhare the Inglismen war rinnand, with awful incursionis, throw the cuntre. At the first juning, d Inglismen war slane, and the remanent chasit to thair baitis; and finaly, thay entrit with sa gret nowmer, that the baitis sank down with thame, or thay micht cum to thair schippis. Bischop Sinclare, for this honest vassalage, wes ay callit, efter, King Robertis Bischop.

In the same yeir, Robert Stewart, son to Walter Stewart and Marjory Bruce, was borne; quhilk succedit, efter the deith of King David Bruce, to the croun. And in this yeir, quhilk was fra our redemption mcccxviii yeris, Erle Thomas Randal enterit in the

north partis of Ingland ; and returnit, with gret pray of men and gudis, but ony trubil to his army ; and recoverit Berwik, be industry of ane Inglisman namit Spalden, be quhom the said town was recoverit, efter that it had bene in Inglismennis handis xx yeris. His posterite brukis yit certane landis in Angus, for the samin caus. In the yeir following, King Edward segit Berwik : bot it was sa vailyeantly defendit, that he returnit hame with smal honour.

At this time, Marjory Bruce, King Robertis douchter, deceissit : and sone efter, lang peace was takin betwix Inglismen and Scottis.

### Chap. Fourteenth.

*Of the Blak Parliament. How King Edward complanit to the Paip for injuris of Scottis. Of the Orison maid be the Papis Legat to King Robert ; and of his answer.*



ING Robert havand his realme but ony trubil of ennimes, held ane parliament at Perth ; and desirit his lordis to schaw thair haldingis and charteris of thair landis. The lordis, efter lang avisement, pullit out all thair swardis at anis, and said, Thay had na othir evidentis nor chartouris to schaw for thair landis. King Robert was richt affrayit of this sight ; and howbeit he tuke gret indignation and hatrent in his mind, he dissimilit the samin for ane time, and said, Thay schaw thame nobil men, sen thay wan and debaittit thair landis be the swerd. Nochtheles, he bure gret hatrent aganis thame in his mind, and determinit to revenge thair proude contempton, quhenever he fand sufficient opportunitie.

Sindry of the noblis, advertist that the king was movit with gret hatrent aganis thame, thocht best to attempt ane thing mair cruel aganis him, afore his purpos come to effect ; and maid ane band amang thameself, to put him, be aventure of sum compasit slichtis, in King Edwardis handis. This treason was nocht lang hid to King Robert. Nochtheles, that the verite thairof suld be the mair patent, King Robert gart certane quiet personis ly be the gait, to

ripe al passingeris towart the bordouris ; to se gif thay nicht find ony letteris with thaim, quhairthrow he nicht be the mair surely advertist of thair treason. It is said ane palmer was send be thir lordis, to have passit to the King of Ingland with thair band, and had the samin inclusit within ane staf : nochtheles, he was tane, and finally brocht the band of letteris, contenand the hail treason devisit aganis King Robert. Als sone as King Robert had visit the letteris, he send for thir noblis to cum to him, with al deligence ; as ane gret mater war occurrant, quhilk nicht not be dressit but thair consultation. Efter thair cuming, he demandit thame gif thay kend thair handwrittis and selis : and becaus thay nicht not deny, thay war send to sindry castellis, to remane in ward, quhil he war forthir avisit. Sic thingis done, he went to Berwik, and commandit ane masar to arrest Schir William Soulis, capitane thairof, to his justice. And becaus the masar, for feir of this gret man, was astonist ; he pullit the mais fra him, and said to the capitane, “ Tra-  
“ tour, I arrest the.” Thus was Schir William tane, and brocht to Perth.

Nocht lang efter, was ane convention of the lordis at Perth, callit the Blak Parliament ; fra the incarnation, mccccx yeris. In the first, King Robert accusit his sister sonne, David Abirnethy ; for he knew this treason, howbeit he assistit not thairto, bot he wald not revele it in time. The king wald fane that he had bene saiffit : nochtheles, he was sa rigorous on the laif, that it nicht not be esaly done. And becaus na man laubourit for him, he was heidit with gret lament of pepill ; for he was haldin the floure of chevelry, and had fochtin mony yeris afore, with gret honoure and victory, aganis the Turkis. On the morow, all the remanent conspiratouris war heidit, on the samin maner, but ony mercy.

At this time, King Edward send writtingis to the Paip, complening the injuris done be Scottis, saying, He was sa cruelly invadit be thaim, that he nicht nocht pas with his army aganis the Turkis, as his eldaris did afore ; nor yit cum out of his realme, to support or invade ony othir pepill : and, thairfore, desirit the Papis Halines, gif he desirit peace amang Cristin princis, to ceis the wild fury of Scottis, rageand with maist cruelte aganis him. With thir and siclik wourdis, he movit the Paip to gret hatrent aganis the Scottis ;

howbeit he was the haill occasioun of al weris betwix Ingland and Scotland.

Sone efter, ane legat was send be the Paip to King Robert, complening the injuris and trubil done be his pepill aganis Inglismen; saying, "The Cristin faith micht nevir be sickir, sa lang as Cristin  
" princis war at continewall debait amang thaimself; as weill ap-  
" perit: for the Gret Turk, cruell and unmerciful ennime to Cris-  
" tin pepill, had conquest, laitly, gret boundis of Cristindome, and  
" eikand daily his empire with new conques." The legat, efter thir wordis, was removit, quhil the king had tane avisement with his nobillis, quhat was to be answerit in this mater. The haill nobilite of Scotland beand present at this conventioun, with lang and degeist deliberation, concludit, for mair dispite, to invaid Inglismen with new army; and said, "The wourdis of this legat war nocht  
" worthy to have answer; for ilk man micht cleirly understand the  
" Paip was nocht sa mischant, bot he knew weill the motive of thir  
" weris, sen thair caus bene sa oft devolvit afor him; and Inglismen  
" continewaly set to conques thair realm, howbeit thay had na just  
" titill nor clame thairto; for the crown of Scotland hes ben josit  
" with Scottis in sic liberte, that xcvi kingis, be lang progression,  
" hes linaly succedit to thay dayis, ay of ane blude, but ony inter-  
" ruption; quhill laitly, Inglismen, quhen thay saw the succession  
" of King Alexander failye, maid thaim to conques the crown of  
" Scotland. And for that caus, thay wald first dant the invasion of  
" Inglismen, and, efter that, thay wald be correckit at the Papis  
" mind."

The legat, depeschit in this maner, returnit hame, but ony expedition of his desiris.



## Chap. Fifteenth.

*How King Edward, efter gret cruelteis done be his army in Scotland, was discomfist be King Robert at Byland. How the Ham-  
miltonis tuk thair beginning; and of King Edwardis deith.*

**S**CHORT time following, King Robert enterit with ane army in England, and waistit al the landis thair of with fire and swerd, quhil he come to the Re Croce, in Stanemure. King Edward, movit with thir injuris, come in Scotland, with ane hundreth thousand armit men, on fute and hors. King Robert, advertist of his cuming, gart bring al the cornis and bestial within strenthis, quhare thay nicht not be gottin to support the army of England. At last, the Inglismen come to Edinburgh; bot thay war constrainit, within xv dayis, to depart, for penurite of vittallis: and yit, within few dayis efter, thay returnit in Scotland, and ceissit fra na maner of cruelte on the pepil thair of. Thay spulyeit the abbay of Melros, and slew sindry agit monkis; thay spulyeit the eucarist out of the cais of silver quhair it hang, and kest it in ane trein kist; comparit justly to barnis of Lucifer, quhilkis intendit to spulye God out of his awin hous. Attoure, thay brint Dryburgh, with mony othir religious abbayis and places.

King Robert, to revenge thir injuris, come sone efter in England, and waistit all landis and townis thair of, quhil he come unto York; and faucht with King Edward at Byland, and put his army to flicht, with gret slauchter baith of Inglismen and Normandis: of quhilkis mony war takin, and ransomit with gret sowmes of money. This battall was strokin, fra our redemption, mcccxxiii yeris.

Nocht lang efter, King Robert send ane ambassatoure, to renew the band betwix France and Scotland; and eikit thir conditionis in the said band: “Gif succession failyeit to ony of thir two kingis, “uncertane quha suld be thair aire; the clame and richt of the “crown to be decidit be the noblis of baith the realmes. And thay

“ sall not onely exclude tyrannis, gif ony of thame wald usurpe the  
 “ crown, bot defend the just heritour thair of.” This band was ra-  
 tifyit be comunon of the blissit sacrament, and intervention of the  
 Papis auctorite.

About this time, ane Inglisman of nobil blude, namit Hantoun,  
 to eschew the hatrent of King Edward, fled to King Robert in Scot-  
 land. This Hantoun, efter the battal of Banochburn, was in the  
 King of Englandis hous at London, and had ane singulare favour to  
 King Robert, oftymes avansing his gret manheid and virtew; quhill  
 at last, Johnne Spensar, richt familiar and tender servitour to King  
 Edward, howbeit he was of vile and obscure linnage, tuk sic disple-  
 seir for avansing of King Edwardis ennime, that he pullit haistely  
 his swerd and hurt Hantoun, howbeit he was litil the wers. Han-  
 toun, impatient to suffer this outrage, as man of hie spreit and cu-  
 rage; ceissit nocht fra continewall wait, quhil, at last, he slew this  
 Spensar. And becaus he was consultit be his freindis to eschew the  
 kingis hatrent, he fled with gret deligence in Scotland, and was ten-  
 derly ressavit be King Robert, and gat the landis of Cadyow; quhais  
 posterite perseveris yit amang us, spred in gret nowmer of pepil,  
 callit Hammiltonis, sum part changit fra the name of thair first be-  
 ginnar.

Quhill sic thingis war done in Scotland, King Edward governit  
 the realme of England, baith in weir and peace, be counsal of Hew  
 Spensar, ane man of smal linnage; quhilk was montit to hie honoure  
 in sic maner, that the king was governit onely be him, and held his  
 quene and noblis in na estimation. The noblis, impacient to suffer  
 ane man of sa vile linnage above thaim; be avise of the quene, and  
 hir son, the Prince of England, tuke King Edward, be force of armes,  
 to ward; and slew this Spensar, with mony othir the kingis treason-  
 able counsallouris. Schort time efter, King Edward was slane  
 miserably in preson; for the javellouris quhilkis keptit the presoun  
 quhare he was, to put him haistely to deith, be avise of his sonne,  
 pressit down ane hevy burd on his wambe: and becaus he deit not  
 sa haistely as thay desirit be this punishment, thay put ane hait irne,  
 throw ane horne, in his fundement, and brint all the inwart partis  
 of his body thairwith, quhil he was deid; that the pepil micht un-

derstand he deit of na outward woundis, bot allanerly of naturale infirmite. Efter quhais deith, his son, Edward Windsour, succedit, and was crownit the xxvi day of January ; fra the incarnation, ane thousand cccxxvi yeris.

### Chap. Sixteenth.

*How Johne Balliol transferrit al richt that he had to the crowne of Scotland in King Robert. How the crown was new tailyeit to David Bruce. How Schir James Dowglas and Erle Thomas Randail did gret vassalage in Scotland.*



ROBERT, the recoverer of Scotland, efter mony his illuster dedis for the publik weill and liberte of Scotland; howbeit he had richt ineuch to the crown thairof; and knowing the Balliol unabill to jose the crown, becaus he exonerat himself thairof, and putting the realme in his ennimes handis: yit, that the airis of Ballioll suld have na just clame to the crown efter his deith, he send Schir James Dowglas in France, to solist Johne Ballioll to transfer his richt in King Robert and his airis, and to geif the Balliol baith money and landis in Scotland for his richt.

It is said, the Balliol, at the cuming of Schir James, was fallin blind, be lang age; and said, that he was ay unabil to have gover nit the realme of Scotland; and nane sa abill as King Robert, his cousing, quhilk had sa vailyeantly defendit it fra maist cruell ennimes. Incontinent, the Balliol callit his freindis afore him, and transferrit all richt and clame that he had, or micht have, in and to the croun of Scotland, in the said King Robert and his airis quhat sumevir; desiring na thing sa mekil, as him and his airis to regne in perpetuall felicite.

King Robert, heirand the returning of Schir James Dowglas, with gud expedition of his materis, convenit all his noblis to ane counsall at Cambuskenneth, and maid new tailye to his son David, in this maner: Gif his son David deceissit but airis of his body, his nepot,

Robert Stewart, gottin on Marjory Bruce, his douchter, sal succed to the croun. Al the noblis wer sworne to defend this new tailye.

In the mene time, King Edward send his ambassatouris in Scotland, desiring peace. Howbeit, it wes under dissait; for, nochtwithstanding the peace contrackit be him, he invadit Scotland with continewal weris.

Nocht lang efter, King Robert fel in gret infirmite; and gaif ouir the governance of the realme to Erle Thomas Randail and Schir James Douglas: for thay war ii of the maist nobill knichtis in the warld.

Thir two chiftanis enterit in Northumberland with xxv.m men; aganis quhome come King Edward, with c.m men: nochtheles, thir two campionis governit thair army with sic manheid and wisdom, that thay waistit all the cuntre quhare thay come, and returnit but ony dammage in Scotland.

King Edward, to resist thir incursionis, come with c.m men in Scotland, and wrocht gret cruelteis quhare thay come; to that fine, that the Scottis suld come in defence of thair landis and guddis. At last, quhen thay had line thre dayis at the watter of Tyne, and nicht not cum ouir, for it wes risin abone the brayis; tythingis come, that al Northumberland wes brint and heryit be Scottis, and the forray passand sa fast throw the cuntre, but ony residence, that na man wist quhare to find thame. In the mene time, wer send out exploratouris, on swift hors, to se quhair the Scottis wer; and fand thaim within thre milis to the tentis of Inglismen, arrayit on ane hill, red-dy to fecht. Edward rasit his tentis incontinent, and come fornens the Scottis. On the morow, baith the armyis wer arrayit in utheris sicht. The Scottis, beand of small noumer in regard of Inglismen, stude arrayit at ane gret strenth on the hill. At last, quhen Inglismen had stand all day, and durst nocht brek thair array, thay returnit to thair palyonis: and send ane herald to Scottis, desiring thame, gif thay durst fecht, to cum to the planis, quhare thay nicht have battal; as it had bene na prudence to capitanis, to garnis thair army with maist ordour and munition that nicht be devisit. And quhen the armyis had stand thre nichtis in athir sicht, and durst nocht invaid othir, thay returnit to thair tentis.



Eftir that baith the armyis had standin lang time arrayit in othir sicht on this maner, Schir James of Douglas, tuke purpos to assailye ane mater of gret vassalage; and, incontinent, he chesit cc richt vailyeant and deliver men, with swift geldingis, and slippit quietly by the wache of Inglismen; quhilkis wer at that time all on sleip, except ane certane, quhilkis wer awalkenit be din of hors feit. Thus come the Douglas, but ony noyis, to King Edwardis palyoun: and wer nocht the army of Ingland rais the more hastelie on him, he had slane the king; for he cuttit ii towis of his tent, and returnit to the army of Scottis but ony dammage to him or his folkis. The Inglismen, eftir this effray, wer the more vigilant in times cuming; for thay had bene all uterlie discomfist, gif the army of Scottis had invadit thaim the said nicht. The Scottis, traisting this vassalage sufficient for this time, returnit hame but ony displeseir.

Als sone as Inglismen wer advertist that the Scottis wer departit, thay come haistely to the place quhare thair tentis lay, in esperance of sume riche spulye; and fand x.m pair of Hieland schone, skatterit throw all boundis quhair the army of Scotland lay, quhilkis wer left behind the cariage, as impediment to thair ganging. The Inglismen belevit sic thingis left to thair derisioun; and returnit hame, but ony proffet or honoure falling to thaim be this vayage.

In this yeir, Walter Stewart deceissit; quhais son, Robert, wes, eftir, King of Scotland. And, in the yeir following, Quene Elizabeth, moder to the Prince David Bruce, deceissit, and wes buryit in Dunfermling; fra our redemptioun, mcccxxviii yeris.

In the samin yeir, King Robert wan the castel of Noram; and, sone eftir, he segit the castell of Anwik, quhare mony nobill men of Scotland wer slane. And in the end of this yeir, King Edward send his ambassatouris in Scotland, to treit peace; and renuncit all richt and clame that he had, or micht have, to the realme of Scotland; and declarit it als fre as it wes in time of King Alexander the Thrid, under thir conditionis: “Northumbirland sal be the marchis of Scotland, on the eist partis; and Cumber to be marchis, on the west bordouris thairof. Attoure, for the said renuntiation maid be King Edward, and for the skaithis done be Scottis to Inglismen, King Robert sal pay to the said King Edward, xxx.m markis striveling.” And, that peace sall remane with more sickernes, King Edward

maryit his sister Jane on David Bruce, Prince of Scotland, at Berwik, the xvii day of July, in presence of mony nobillis, baith of Scotland and Ingland.

### Chap. Seventeenth.

*Of the deith and loving of King Robert Bruce; and of his testament and legacy. How Schir James Douglas was chosin, to pas with his hart in the Haly Land.*



ING ROBERT leiffit nocht lang eftir this mariage; for he deceissit at Cardros, in lipre, quhilk fel to him in the letter end of his age, the vii day of Juny, the xxiv yeir of his regne; fra our redemptioun, mcccxxix yeris: ane of the maist vailyeant princis that wes in ony part of the world in his dayis, havand experience baith of gud and evil fortoun. His realme beand tint, and all his brethir slane, except his brothir Edward, he perseverit with sic manheid and invincible spreit, that he recoverit his realme and liberte, quhen mony of all the gret baronis of Scotland wer aganis him.

Attoure, he wes in na les honoure and apprising amang his ennemes, than amang his freindis. For King Edward happinnit to commoun, at ane solempnit banket of sindry vailyeant princis, concerning the glore of armes and chevalry; and, quhen the noblis wer disputand in sindry purpos thair of, thay fel at ane question, Quhilkis wer the thre maist vailyeant and forcy campionis leiffand in thair dayis. Eftir lang contentioun, thay proponit this questioun to be discussit be ane herald, that wes king of armes. The king of armes wes richt stupefact, with the residew of the heraldis; for nocht allanerlie the king, bot mony of the nobillis that wer with him, belevit, for thair singulare manheid, to be noumerit amang thir thre. Howbeit, it happinnit far fra thair purpos: for this herald knew nocht onlie all the nobillis of Ingland, bot all othir nobillis and vailyeant princis of the world, quhare he travellit; havand al thair dedis in recent memory. “The first maist vailyeant campioune,” said the

herald, “ wes Hary, the Emprioure ; for he subdewit thre kingis,  
 “ and thre realmes, and debaittit his imperiall dignite with gud fe-  
 “ licite to the end of his life. The secound was Schir Gelis of Ar-  
 “ genty ; becaus he was victorious in thre sindry battallis aganis Sa-  
 “ rayenis, and slew thre of thair principall capitanis with his awin  
 “ handis. The thrid, gif it war nocht displesant to his prince to  
 “ schaw the verite, was Robert Bruce, King of Scotland.”

Incontinent rais ane huge noyis and clamour with all the pepill  
 thair present, becaus the herald sa pertely schew the verite, but ony  
 feir, in presence of his prince.

Than said the herald, “ I beseik thy hienes, gif I have nocht fail-  
 “ yeit, to take my declaratioun in na displeseir ; for, gif it be neces-  
 “ sar to ony man to be vincust, it is les dishonour to be vincust with  
 “ him that is maist vailyeant, than with him that is maist cownt.  
 “ Attoure, to schaw yow how far I avance the gret manheid of King  
 “ Robert, quhilk ye may evil suffer to be nowmerit with thir two  
 “ first campionis ; howbeit, gif the verite war schawin, we nicht pre-  
 “ fer him weill to the two maist vailyeant campionis afore rehersit.  
 “ For the gret actis and vailyeant dedis done be Hary, Empriour,  
 “ war nocht done be his awin manheid and prudence, bot erar be  
 “ counsall of his nobillis. Be contrar, Robert was exilit his realme ;  
 “ and recoverit it only be his manheid, contrar the gret pissance of  
 “ thy nobill fader, and mony of all the gret baronis of Scotland :  
 “ and, finaly, stabillit it with sic tranquillite, that he apperit mair  
 “ terribill to his ennimes of England, and otheris his invasouris, than  
 “ evir his ennimes war afore to his subdittis. Attoure, nane is on  
 “ live that will reproche his honoure, or will deny thir premissis,  
 “ bot he will preif the samin, with his handis, in singulare battall ;  
 “ and the honoure to be adjudgit to him that is victorious. Attoure,  
 “ he had sic incredibill manheid and strenth, that nane was in his  
 “ realme, that durst move ony rebellioun aganis him.”

King Robert, schort time afore his deith, gaderit all his nobillis  
 to ane counsall, and commendit to thaim the governance of his sonne,  
 David ; for he had that time bot sevin yeris in age : and gaif his  
 counsall, afore his deith, to thame, of sindry hie materis concerning  
 the governance of Scotland. First, he counsallit thaim, nevir to  
 make ane Lord of the Ilis ; for the pepill thair of ar ay flowand in

thair mindis, and sone brocht to rebellioun aganis the king: and, fra thay fall thairintill, it is extreme lauboure to dant thaim, for the gret straitnes of land and seis. Secoundly, nevir to set battall with Inglismen, nor to jeoperd the realme upon the chance of ane battall; bot to resist Inglismen erar be frequent scarmussing, than ony set battall: to that fine, gif Scottis be discomfist, thay may have sum pissance to resist thair ennimes. Thridly, he inhibit that Scottis take ony lang peace with Inglismen; for the ingine of man growis dull and febill be lang sleuth; and, for laik of use and experience, thay may nocht sustene gret chargis of battall, specially quhen thay ar effeminate with lang peace. And sen so is, that Inglismen kepis nevir peace to Scottis, quhen thay se ony avantage, he thought best nevir to have peace with Inglismen above thre or four yeris; and, quhen lest occasion of battall apperis be Inglismen, to be than maist vigilant, in aventure thair ennimes cum on thaim but ony advertising. And, becaus he maid his solempne vote, to pas with ane army, in defence of Cristin faith, aganis the Turkis, and was prevenit be untimus deith, he left his hart to Crist: and chesit his trew knight, Schir James Dowglas, to pas with it to the haly graif; howbeit his presence had bene maist necessar for defence of this realme. And, for this caus, the Dowglas bure the bluddy hart in thair armis.

And sa heir endis, the Fourtene Buke of thir Croniklis.



# The Fiftene Buke.

---

## HEIR BEGINNIS THE FIFTENE BUKE OF THE CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

### Chap. first.

*How Schir James of Douglas past, with King Robertis hart, to the Haly Graif. Of the Coronatioun of King David Bruce; and how Erle Thomas Randal was maid Governoure; and of his deith.*



WHEN Schir James Dowglas was chosin as maist worthy of all Scotland to pas with King Robertis hart to the Haly Land, he put it in ane cais of gold, with arromitike and precious unyementis; and tuke with him Schir William Sinclare and Schir Robert Logan, with mony othir nobilmen, to the haly graif: quhare he buryit the said hart, with maist reverence and solempnite that culd be devisit. Sic thingis done, he went to othir Cristin princis, quhilkis war gaderit with gret armyis, fra sindry partis of Cristindome, to weir aganis the Turkis: and be his singular vassalage, he dantit nocht onely the ennimes of Crist, bot, be his frequent victoryis,

wan gret honoure to all Cristin pepill. At last, quhen he had completit all chargis commandit be his soverane, with na les honoure than magnificence, he pullit up salis, to have returnit in Scotland. And in the mene time, be contrarius windis, he was drivin on ane angill of Spanye; quhare he fand the King of Aragon reddy to fecht aganis the Sarayenis, quhilkis war cumin with gret navyis to invade his realme. The Dowglas, to make his manheid and singulare virtew patent in all partis quhare he come; went to the King of Aragon, and faucht in his support, at sindry jeoperdyis, with gret felicite: quhill, at last, havand our gret confidence in fortoun, quhilkis bringis mony nobil men to deith, he become necligent, and held nocht his weirmen about him, as he was accustomat afore. And in the mene time, ane buschement of Turkis, quhilkis war lyand afore at wait, come on him, with displayit baner. And thocht he was of few nowmer, he schrinkit nocht, bot faucht obstinaty, with perseverant manheid, to the deith; and was slane, the xxvi day of August, fra our redemption, ane thousand, thre hundreth, xxx yeris. This was the end of the nobill Dowglas, maist vailyeant knicht that was in his dayis; quhilk had bene richt necessar for defence of the commoun weil of Scotland, gif he had bene fortunat to returne. He was lvii sindry times victorious on Inglismen, and xiii times on the Turkis; as is writtin at lenth in Scoticronicon. Bot we wil returne to our history.

Efter the deith of King Robert, his sonne David, havand bot viii yeris of age, was crownit at Scone, the xxiv day of November; fra the incarnatioun, ane thousand, thre hundreth, xxxi yeris. And becaus he was unabill to governe the realme be his tender age, Erle Thomas Randle was maid Governoure. Erle Thomas, seing the pepill brokin with lang weris, thought maist expedient, quhill thay war sum partis enrichit in thair gudis, to have peace with Ingland. Belive, ambassatouris war dereckit be him in Ingland, and purchest peace for thre yeris. In the mene time, Erle Thomas gave his ingine to governe the realme in equite and peace. And to that fine, the pepill micht leif but ony feir of ennimes or thevis, to invade thaim in thair landis or guddis; he commandit that sadillis, bridillis, and all othir instrumentis pertenant to the use of husbandry, sal ly thairfurth, baith day and nicht. Gif ony of thaim war stollin or

tane away, the schiref of the schire sall caus the samin othir to be restorit to the awnaris, or ellis to pay it on his awin purs. Finaly, sic extreme punitioun was maid on thevis, that baith thift and pikry war dantit in all partis, and the realme brocht to mair tranquillite than evir it was in ony kingis time afore. Mony insolent and wild men war dantit be his severite and justice. Attoure, that virtew suld be autorist in this realme, he commandit na vagabound nor idill pepill to be ressavit in ony town, without thay had sum craft to debait thair leving. Be this way, he purgit the realme of mony idill limmaris. It is said, sic severite and justice was in his time, that ane carle, becaus he nicht nocht steill othir mennis guddis, stall his awin pleuch-irnis, that he nicht have the valour thair of recompensit to him be the schiref. Nochtheles, sic extreme deligence was maid in serching of his pleuch-irnes be the schiref, that thay war finaly found with himself; and, for that caus, he was hingit eftir. Erle Thomas, seand how difficil it was to bring thaim fra stouth that hes bene hantit thairwith, held ay with him ane gard of bodin men: throw quhilk, he punist the rebelloun of limmaris in all partis of the realm. All personis that comperit to his justice war punist with mercy; otheris that war found rebelland thairto, war othir slane, or tane efter be his gard: as hapnit, nocht lang efter, at Halidon; quhare thre score of men war gaderit togidder, invading the pepill with reiffis and injuris. And becaus thay contempnit his officiaris, efter that thay war summond to compere to his justice; thay war all tane be his gard, and hinggit on jebatis. Throw this justice, na rebelloun was sene in this realme mony yeris efter; and sic tranquillite, that nocht allanerly thevis and limmaris war dantit, bot the realme inccressit with riches, to the gret terroure of thair fais.

King Edward, seing this gret felicite succeding to Scottis, and dredand thaim to revenge auld injuris, be singulare manheid and prowes of this Erle Thomas; thocht na thing sa gud as to attempt the thing be slicht, that he nicht nocht do be force: that, efter deith of Erle Thomas, the realme of Scotland nicht be patent to his injuris; for King David was young, and mony of his nobillis movit in gret hatrent aganis his hous, for the slauchter of thair faderis in the Blak Parliament; and, thairfore, he tuk consultation, be quhat ingine and slicht he nicht best distroy Erle Thomas. At last, he

tuk purpos to sla him be vennome. And becaus it was dangerus to attempt this mater be ane Scottisman, for reveling of his treason be sum aventure; he thoct it necessar to have ane man of gret spreit, quhilk couth dissimill, saying ane thing with his mouth, quhilk he thoct nevir with his hart. And quhen he had serchit lang, he fand nane sa abill to bring his purpos to effect as ane monk; for oftymes men of that ordoure hes na respect to schame nor justice, bot clokis thair wickit liffis under fenyeit schaddow of ane coule. Schortly, he instruckit this monk, as he had bene ane medcinar, havand speciall remeidis aganis the gravell; for in that infirmite, Erle Thomas was hevely tormentit. King Edward commandit this monk to use venomus potionis amang his othir seropis; and promittit, gif Erle Thomas was slane be his industry, to reward him maist richely. This monk instruckit in this wise, at his cuming in Scotland, fenyeit him to have knowlege of mony nobillis, baith in Ingland and France; and nocht onely curit thaim of sindry gravellis, bot, be his crafty potionis, brak confermit stanis, and hes curit mony and divers pepill of thair infirmiteis. Forthir, he was informit that Erle Thomas, ane of the maist vailyeant princis of the warld, was hevely pinit with the said maledy: nochtheles, gif the said Erle wald use counsall, he suld be deliverit, within schort time, of all maledy. This monk had ane othir limmar instruckit with him, in the samin maner, to be his colleig; quhilk schew, in all partis quhare he went, that his companyeoun past all men in practik and science. This monk was finaly sa commendit, that he was brocht to Erle Thomas, and inquirit be him, gif he culd cure his maledy, or releif him of his insufferabill dishonoure. The monk tuke him gladly on hand; and, as he was instruckit, he commandit the Erle to observe ane diet: sone efter, he gaif him soft seropis; and quhen he was admittit to mair familiarite, he gaif him ane venomus potioun: howbeit, the vennome was nocht haiste deid, bot erar to consume ane man with lang proces. This monk, efter that Erle Thomas had drunken the vennome, to find occasioun to get away, said, He had ane singulare medicine in Ingland, quhilk was nevir usit be him bot quhen all othir medicine failyeit. Thus fand he occasioun to depart in Ingland, and promittit to returne in Scotland with al diligence.



Nocht lang efter, this monk returnit to King Edward, and said, “ Now, sen I have done all thy chargis as thow devisit, best is to “ rais thy army in haist, that thow may be in Scotland in the trubil “ of his deith, and conquies the realme as thow list.” In the mene time, Erle Thomas fand certane dolouris ilk day mair inressing in his wambe ; and becaus he herd tell that King Edward was cumand with ane army aganis him, and na returning of the monk at his set day, he tuke ane vehement suspitioun of his treason ; and fand, sone efter, be the medcinaris, that the vennome was sa sunkin in his bowellis, that it was nocht remedable. And, howbeit he nicht nocht ride nor gang to meit King Edward, he gart turs him in ane cheriot. The motive that King Edward had to rais weir at this time, as he allegit, was for falt of redres on the bordouris. King Edward, advertist that Erle Thomas was cummand in arrayit battal to meit him, send ane herald in Scotland, to treit peace : howbeit, he was send erar to espy how all materis stude, than to ony othir purpos. Erle Thomas, heirand the cuming of this herald, arrayit him in his best abulyement, and sat in ane chier, dissimuland his gret infirmite, as na thing had alit him. Belive, the herald was brocht to his presence, and schew his message. At last, quhen the herald had desirit certane thingis nocht respondent to reason, Erle Thomas answerit, “ I sall schaw, sone, quhat richt Inglismen hes to sic wickit “ and injust petitionis.” And quhen he had depeschit the herald with his answer, he gaif all the precious abulyementis, as he was arrayit for the time, to the herald. Sone efter, this herald returnit to King Edward, and said, He saw nevir ane mair lusty nor vail-yeant prince, than was the said Erle Thomas. King Edward, heirand that Erle Thomas was in gud heill, scalit his army ; and believing that the monk had nocht done sic chargis as he promittit, he gart brin him, according weill to his demeritis.

In the mene time, Erle Thomas returnit hame, and deceissit at Mussilburgh, and was buryit in Dunfermeling ; fra the incarnation, mcccxxxi yeris.

## Chap. Second.

*How the Erlis of Marche and Mar was maid Governouris of Scotland. How Edward Ballioll come in Scotland, to conques the croun ; and of the Battall of Duppline.*



**E**RLE THOMAS deceissit in this maner, ane counsall was set be the noblis ; in quhilk, be generall votis of the thre estatis, Patrik, Erle of Marche, and David, Erle of Mar, war chosin Governouris : the first, to governe the realme on the south side on Forth ; and the tothir, to governe the north side.

Sic thingis done, rais gret trubill in Scotland, be Edward Ballioll afore rehersit, in maner following. Thair was ane wikit limmare, namit Twiname Lorison, quhilk was oftymes dilatit of adultry, and haldin be the officiall of Glasgew, mony yeris, under censuris of the kirk. At last, he tuk the officiall, passand to the town of Ayre, and held him in captivite, quhil he payit two hundreth pound Striveling. Bot this oppressioun was nocht unpunist : for he was sa scharply persewit be Schir James of Douglas, afore his passage to the Haly Land, that he fled in Ingland ; quhare he met David Cumin, Erle of Atholl, with mony othir Scottis quhilkis war banist afore be King Robert, for thair assistance to the King of Ingland. Thir limmaris, confiderat all togidder under ane band, abaid lang time in Ingland ; and, fra thay war advertist of the deith of Erle Thomas Randale and Schir James Douglas, thay went in France, to Edward Ballioll ; and persuadit him, be mony reasonis, to cum in Scotland, to recover his faderis heritage and crown. The Ballioll, persuadit be thair wordis, howbeit he had na sicht afore to the crown of Scotland, come in Ingland, to seik support at King Edward ; for he knew Inglismen ay ennimes to Scottis : and promittit to King Edward, gif al materis succedit with felicite, to hald the realme of Scotland of him, as Superiour thair of. King Edward, glaid of this condition, nochtwithstanding the peace afore contrackit,

and the mariage of his sister, maid afore with King David of Scotland; send VI.M men, weill providit with schippis, to pas with him in Scotland; traisting, efter his cuming, to find mony othir freindis that wald assist to him: and, as we schew afore, mony Scottis war in Ingland with the Balliol, quhilkis informit him, gif he arrivit in Scotland, mony of all the lordis thair of wald assist to his opinion. Balliol, persuadit be thir reasonis, arrivit at Kingorne, quhare he brocht all his folkis on land; and, sone efter, slew Alexander Seytoun, and put his folkis to flicht. The Balliol, proude of this victory, come with his folkis to Perth.

The Erlis of Mar and Marche, advertist of his cuming, rasit two gret armyis, and come aganis him; not as thay had bene to fecht aganis weir-men, bot allanerly as thay wer to punis certane thevis or limmaris of Ingland. At last thay concludit, to convene baith togidder in Strathern, that thay nicht invade thair ennimes at anis. The Balliol, howbeit he knew his ennimes cumand with mair power than he nicht resist, was na thing affrayit; for the mater was sa far procedit, that na feir of deith nor fleing nicht avale: nochtheles he belevit, gif his army faucht with perseverant constance, to have victory be sum chance of fortoun: alwayis, he set down his tentis at Dupline, nocht far fra the Water of Erne. In the samin nicht, the Erle of Mar come, with gret multitude of pepil, and parkit thame in the sicht of Balliolis army; bot the Erle of Marche lay at Othirardour. The Scottis, seand thair ennimes of sa few nowmer, held thaim in contempt, and pretermittit thair wache; passing the nicht with singing, dansing, revelling, and drinking. Thir doingis succedit the mair unhappely, that thay war done, with sa manifest contempt, in the face of thair ennimes. Be contrar, the Inglis-men, richt circumspect and vigilant, had sic spyis, that every thing done or said in the army of Scottis was manifest to thaim.

The Balliol, rejosing of this vane and insolent foly amang Scottis, commandit his army to be reddy to invade thair fais. In the nicht following, he come, but ony noyis, to the Watter of Erne, and fand the furd thair of be ane lang staik, quhilk was affixit in the middis thair of be Andro Murray of Tullibard. Be this treason, he led all his army ouir the Watter of Erne; and come sa quietly to the Erle of Marris tentis, that he slew him sleipand in his bed. Incontinent, with

huge clamour, he come upon the remanent army of Scottis, and slew thame buri in sleip, but ony defence. Followit sa cruell slauchter, that nocht was hard bot rummissing and granis of deand pepill; and had nocht bene, Edward Balliol gart ilk man in his army bind ane quhit clout on his arme, na man micht have knawin, for mirknes of nicht, quha was freindis or fayis. The Inglismen war inflammit in sic ire, that thay couth nocht be saciat with blud and murdir of Scottis, and savit nane that micht be ouirtaikin. Mony of the nobillis wer slane, to the noumer of III.M, with gret noumer of commonis. Ane certane of thaim quhilkis eschapid fra this battall, returnit agane to revenge the murdir of thair freindis, and wer all slane.

The principal noblis quhilkis wer slane in this feild, wer, the Erle of Mar; Robert Bruce, Erle of Carrik; Alexander Fraseir, knicht; William Hay, constable; with all his kin sa halelie, that, wer nocht his wife wes deliverit of ane son, all his surname had bene al uterlie distroyit: Robert Keith, merscheall, with mony of his surname; David Lindsay of Glenesk, Alexander Seiton, George Dunbar, Robert Strathaquhen, Thomas Haliburtoun, and Johne Skrimgeour, knichtis; with mony otheris, quhilkis wer our prolix to schaw. The Erle of Fife wes tane.

This battall wes strikin on the thrid day of August; fra our redemption, MCCCXXXII yeris.



## Chap. Thrid.

*How Edwart Ballioll was crounit at Scone. How King David fled in France. How Perth was recoverit; and the Ballioll vincust be the Douglas. And how King Edward segit Berwik.*



UPLINE discomfist, as said is, the Balioll went to Perth, and tuke it with small difficulte. It is said, that sindry Inglismen, for auld hatrent aganis Scottis, went, eftir thair victory, to Dupline, to se gif ony Scottis wer lyand in the feild, abill to recover gif thay had gud surrurgianis, that thay nicht chace out the residew of thair life; nochtheles, seing the miserable slauchter that wes maid on thaim in the nicht afore, thay fell in gret comploratioun, saying, thay belevit nocht sa infinite noumer of Scottis slane.

The Erle of Marche, herand the Scottis discomfist sa miserable at Dupline, come, with foure gret cumpanyis, to sege the toun of Perth. At last, quhen he had line certane time at the sege thair of, the fowseis beand fild, and the toun reddy to be randerit in his handis, he skalit fra the sege; howbeit, he nicht haif had the toun, and the battall baith, at his pleseir.

The Ballioll, incontinent, becaus the peple come fast to his opinioun, come, with the Bischop of Dunkeld, and the Erle of Fiffe, to Scone, and wes crounit, the xxiv day of September, in the yeir afore rehersit.

Be discomfitoure of this last battal rais sa gret trubil in Scotland, that King David, havand bot ix yeris in age, be counsall of his freindis, fled in France, with his quene, Jane, sister to King Edward; and wes tenderlie ressavit be Phillip, the vi King of France of that name, quhare he remanit ix yeris.

In the next yeir, Robert Keith, Alexander Lindesay, with othir sindry nobillis, to revenge the slauchter of thair faderis at Dupline, wan the toun of Perth, the fourt moneth eftir thair sege. The Erle

of Fiffe, and Androw Murray of Tullibard, wer tane, with otheris thair complices, quhilkis kepit the said toun in name of the Ballioll. The Erle wes send in ward to Kildrummy; bot Andro Murray, for his treason afore committit, wes hedit. The toun, eftir that it was tane in this maner, wes gevin in keiping to Johne Lindesay.

The winning of this toun be sic manheid and virtew, put the Scottis in esperance of better fortoun; and, thairfore, Johne Randale, Erle of Murray, son to Erle Thomas afore rehersit, and Archebald Douglas, Lord of Galloway, and brothir to James Douglas, slane laitlie in Spayne, come, with ane gret cumpany, aganis the Ballioll. The Balliol, weil advertist thair of, met tham in Annandale, quhair it wes cruellie focht in; bot, at last, the Ballioll wes discomfist, and himself chasit, on ane hors but bridil, to Roxburgh. In this battall wer slane, Schir Henry Ballioll, Schir Johne Mowbray, Walter Cumin, and Richard Kirklie: Alexander Bruce, Erle of Carrik, and Lord of Galloway, wer taikin presoneris; and saiffit be the Erle of Murray, for thay wer nocht lang afore at the opinioun of Ballioll.

Eftir this victorie, Andro Murray, ane man of gret pissance and rentis, wes maid governour, to be colleig to the Erle of Marche. Thir twa governouris, knowing King Edward to cum aganis thame with all the power of England, send Schir Alexander Seitoun, with mony othir gentilmen, to keip Berwik. Sic thingis done, Andro Murray come with ane army to sege Roxburgh; and faucht sa vailyeantly, that he put the Ballioll to flicht: nochtheles, he followit so feirslie, that he wes tane, and brocht presonere within the castell. At this time, William Douglas of Liddisdale, callit, for his singulare manheid, the Flour of Chevalry, faucht unhappely aganis Inglismen in Annandale; quhare he wes tane presonere, and his folkis discomfist. This William wes son to gud Schir James Douglas afore rehersit. Baith thir nobill men wer redemit with gret sommes of money, eftir that thay had bene haldin othir half yeir in England.

The realme standing thus in jeoperdy, the pepill wer dividit in two partis; the tane half assistit to the Ballioll, and the tothir to King David. King Edward of England, seing sa gret truble in Scotland, thocht the time sufficient to conques the croun; for he understud na thing sa difficill, bot it may be done othir in al, or in sum part, gif it be oft assailyeit. And, nochtwithstanding his band of

peace, and mariage of his sister, Jane, with King David of Scotland afore contrackit ; he gaderit ane army, baith of Ingland, Normandy, Angeos, and Flanderis, wagit be his money, and come in Scotland ; speciallic quhare maist rebelloun wes aganis the Balliol. He schew, that he wes cumin in support of Ballioll ; nochtheles, gif all thingis had succedit as he desirit, he wald na mair have kepit faith and promes to the Ballioll, than to otheris.

The Scottis, seing thaim neir ouriset on al sidis with ennimes, send Johne Randale, Erle of Murray, in France to King David, to get sum support fra King Phillip of France, to debait his realme.

At this time King Edward segit Berwik, baith be see and land : nochtheles, the Scottis debaitit it als vailyeantlie as he assailyeit ; and nocht allanerlie ischit sindry times on Inglismen, bot slew sindry of thair wachis, and sum times brint thair schippis with gret manheid. In the mene time, William Seitoun, son to Schir Alexander afore rehersit, followit sa feirslie at ane skarmusche aganis Inglismen, that he wes takin. His bastard brothir, ane man of singulare manheid, invading our feirslie the Inglis schippis, under nicht ; fell in the see, quhare he perist. The sege continewit foure monethis continewallie about the town, and maid gret penurite of vittallis. At last, Schir Alexander Seitoun send his sonne to King Edward, promitting, gif he wald ceis the sege, to rander the toun to him within vi dayis, gif na support come to him within the said time ; and, for the sickir observation of his promis, he left his sonne and air in pledge.

## Chap. Fourth.

*Of the orison maid be Alexander Seitonis wife; and how his Son was slane be tyranny of King Edward.*



Ic thingis done at Berwik, the nobillis of Scotland, be thair convention, maid Archebald Douglas governour, in Androw Murrayis place. The Douglas, to rais the sege of Berwik, come with ane army in Ingland. King Edward advertist thair of, send ane herald to Schir Alexander Seiton, certifying him, gif the toun wer nocht randerit in haist, baith his sonnis suld be haistelie hingit afore his eyne. Alexander answerd, that the dayis wer nocht out-run of trewis; and desirit the king, othir to keip his faith, or ellis to deliver his pledgis, that he micht be at his advantage. King Edward, havand na sicht to his faith nor band, gart rais haistelie ane gallous afore the toun, and have baith the sonnis of Alexander thairto. Ane of thame wes taikin presonere; and that othir deliverit in maner of pledge, as we haif schawin.

Alexander, seing his sonnis led on this maner to the gallous, wes movit be gret commiseration; thinkand, it wes ane thing richt detestable and odious that his sonnis suld be sa innocentlie slane, considering he micht saif thaim, gif he wer obeisant to the pleseir of the tyrane: and sa, be commiseration of his sonnis, on that ane part, and faith promittit to the king and his realme, on the tothir side, he wes oft drawin in sindry purpos, and micht skarslie refreine himself fra randering of the toun. Yit, it is uncertane, bot, be compassioun of his sonnis, and natural affection, he had bene obeisant to the desire of King Edward, wer nocht his wiffe, and moder to his sonnis, ane wise woman, abone the spreit of man, exhortit him oftymes, erar to suffer the immolatioun and murdir of his sonnis, than to commit sa manifest treason aganis his prince. “My deir husband,” said scho, “behalde degeistly quhat thow dois. Gif thow fulfill the desire of this tyrane, and violat the lufe that thow hes to thy cuntre; gif thow brek the faith promittit to thy souveraine, for any feir of deith



“ appering to thy sonniss; thow sall nocht fail to do na les schame  
 “ to thyself and freindis, than dammage to thy cuntre. And thought  
 “ our sonniss de, with excellent fortitude, in defence of thair cuntre,  
 “ it sall succede na les to thair loving and fame, than to thy gret  
 “ honoure and weill. Consider, first, how abhominable thow sal  
 “ be perpetually to thy natioun, gif thow commit sa manifest trea-  
 “ soun to betrais this town. Yon tyrane minassis oure sonniss with  
 “ the deith; intending to bring us to so opin schame, that, gif we  
 “ fulfil his mind, we sall nevir, quhil the world induris, recovir oure  
 “ honour. Lat nevir, thairfore, the town, committit to our faith and  
 “ credit, be schamefully tint be oure dissait. Traist nocht, that yon  
 “ tyrane wil observe his promis ony better efter the town be randerit  
 “ to him, than afore. Have we not trewis of him for sindry dayis yit  
 “ to rin, and yit he kepis na faith to us. Forthir, gif yon fals and  
 “ manesworn king wil nocht kepe sic thingis to us as he hes promit-  
 “ tit, bot failye, as he hes done in times bygane; quhat mischeif and  
 “ sorow sall cum on us, gif we fulfill his desire! Oure town sal be  
 “ put to sak; oure housis brint; oure tempillis spulyeit; our guddis  
 “ cscheittit; oure virginis and matronis fuilyeit; and all the inno-  
 “ cent pepill of our toun slane, but mercy or ransoun. Is the life  
 “ of our sonniss so deir to us, that we sal redeme thame with venge-  
 “ ance and murdir of sa mony pepill? Ar thay weill savit fra thair  
 “ deith, quhen we have ransonit thaim with sa manifest treason?  
 “ Quhat pleseir or honeste sall we jose for the residew of our life,  
 “ quhen it is filit with sa schameful cowardry? Apperis, thairfore,  
 “ mair honoure to us, to follow the constance and ferme purpos of sic  
 “ nobill pepil as bene rememberit in haly writ, than to saif the livis  
 “ of oure sonniss with sic irrecoverabill dishonoure. Was nocht Da-  
 “ niell cassin afore the lionis be cruel tyrannis, becaus he wald nocht  
 “ offend God? Was nocht the thre barnis cassin in ane birnand une,  
 “ becaus thay wald nocht adorne fals idolis? Was nocht the sevin  
 “ sonniss of Machobee, with thair moder, put to gret torment, quhen  
 “ thay so constantly refusit to eit swine flesche, quhilk was inhibit  
 “ to thaim be thair lawis? Consider and revolve, my deir husband,  
 “ in thy mind, with quhat constance and plesant vult thy sonniss  
 “ contempnis the tormentis of yon tyrane. And, wald God, that I  
 “ micht de siclike, for defence of my cuntre, as thay do! For, cer-

“ tane, gif I nicht, with my deith, deliver this toun, as now my sonnīs  
 “ may, thow suld not se me pas with ony feir or murning, bot with  
 “ gret spreit and curage to the deith : for thair slauchter is na deith,  
 “ bot ane changing of thair fragill liffis with eternale glore. Now  
 “ think I, the pine, sollicitude, and travel, that I sufferit for thaim,  
 “ ten monethis berand thaim in my wambe, weill warit. Now have  
 “ I gud frut of my lauboure. Now I se the affection of all my mind,  
 “ sa oft desiring thaim to be nobill men, brocht to gud fine. Now  
 “ think I nocht my sonnīs tint, bot erar won, to remane with inter-  
 “ minabill honoure : for we ar yit abill to recover thaim with new  
 “ children ; bot we may nevir recovir our honoure quhen it is lost.”

Quhen this happy and nobill woman had exhortit hir husband with thir and siclike wourdis, scho broucht him, with sorowfull and hevy cheir, unto hir chalmer ; that, be commiseratioun of his sonnīs, he suld commit na thing outhir aganis his honoure or weil of the toun : and yit he was evir flowand in his minde, be impulsiou of lufe that he had to his sonnīs on that ane part, and faith that he had to his cuntre on this othir part.

In the mene time, baith his sonnīs war put to deith on the gal-  
 lous, deing with maist honoure for defence of thair cuntre.

### Chap. Fifth.

*How the Scottis war discomfist at Halidon Hill, and Berwik was randerit to Inglisemen, with mony othir strenthis and munitionis of Scotland.*



ACHEBALD DOWGLAS, governoure of Scotland, heirand this schamefull cruelte done be King Edward, come, on the thrid day efter, with his army, fra Northumbirland, to revenge the displeseir thairof ; and set down his tentis nocht far fra King Edwardis army.

Sindry prudent men war in the Dowglas army, quhilkis persuadit him, be mony reasonis, to abstene fra battall : for King Edward had ane army full of pepil daily exercit in chevelry, and richt inso-

lent eftir thair frequent victoryis, with gret munitionis and weirlic instrumentis: be contrar, the Scottis wer brokin with the weris afore past; thair agit and wise capitanis, be sindry discomfitouris, slane; and the peple than present in his army, young, and but ony experience of armes: and, thairfore, alliegit, na thing sa gud as to desist, quhill thay had sum practik or experience in armes. To this answerit the governour, That his folkis, howbeit thay wer in few noumer to ennimes, laikit na curage; and wer all movit with extreme hatrent aganis Inglismen, for the cruelte laitlie committit aganis the sonnis of Schir Alexander Seitoun. It wes, thairfore, not profitable to abide; for be lang tary thair ire sall peris: forthir, na exercition micht eik thair strenthis sa mekill as ire rageand in their breistis. The Douglas left this hailsum counsal; and commandit his army to refresche thameself with meit and sleip, and to be reddi to fecht aganis thair ennimes on the morow.

At the brek of the day, he arrayit his folkis in thair best maner. The vangard wes gevin to Hew, Lord of Ros; havand with him, Kenneth, Erle of Suthirland, Simon and Johne Fraseir, and Johne Murray, lieutenant to the Erle of Murray, quhilk wes than trublit with gret infirmite. The secound battall wes gevin to Alexander Lindesay; with Alexander Gordon, Reginall Grahame, and Robert Kenneth. In the thrid battal was the Douglas, governour; havand with him, James, Johne, and Allane, sonnis of Walter, Gret Stewart of Scotland.

On the tothir side, the Inglismen, na thing affrayit of this ordnance, come pertlie with displayit baneris: and, becaus thay knew the ground quhair the feild wes set, be lang residence at the sege forsaid, thay fenyeit thaim to fle, at thair first juning, to ane hill, sum part stay; and, throw the straitnes thair of, it wes richt contrarius to thaim that assailyeit, and richt commodius for thaim that stude at defence thair of. Als sone as the Inglismen wer cumin to this hill, thay stintit of thair fleing, and, be sound of trampat, went haistelie to thair array; and, incontinent, thay set on the Scottis, quhilk wer skatterit in the vail, following so feirsly, that mony of thame wer miserabillie slane. The residew wer sa astonist, that few of thame faucht, saif onlie thay that had mair respect to thair honoure than to thair livis, or victorie appering; and, thocht thay slew

gret noumer of Inglismen, yit thay wer put to flicht. Finaly, mair slauchter wes maid in the chace than was afore in the battall; for ane wing of Inglismen lay afore, and stopit thair passage: thus wer thay miserable slane on ilk side. Na presoneris wer tane except ane few noumer, quhilkis wer savit onlie becaus thair ennimes wer irkit with slauchter.

In this lamentable battal wer slane mony of all the nobillis and gentilmen of Scotland, that eschapit afore fra the battal of Dupline; and thay wer estimit to the noumer of xiv.M men. Thir ar the principal men that wer slane: Archebald Dowglas, governoure; Johne Stewart, James Stewart, and Alane Stewart, sonnys of Walter Stewart; the Erle of Ros; the Erle of Suthirland; the Erle of Carrik. Sa mony as wer tane wer all heidit on the morow, be command of King Edward; except ane few personis, quhilk wer hid be Inglismen for proffet of thair ransoun: amang quhome wes Schir William Douglas of Liddisdale, tane. This mischevous and unhappy battall wes strikin on Magdalenis Day; fra our redemption, ane thousand, iii hundreth, xxxiii yeris.

Efter this discomfitour, Alexander Seytoun and Patrik Dunbar, capitane of Berwik, disparit of support, gaif ouir the town to King Edward; thair livis and guddis, be condition of peace, to be savit. And, quhen thay had gevin thair aithis of fidelite, King Edward commandit Patrik Dunbar to big the castel of Dunbar, apon his awin expensis; becaus he kest it down afore, quhen he was disparit of releif: and commandit him to kepe it, in times cuming, under his name. King Edward, efter this sorofull victory of Scottis, returnit in England; and left behind him mony gret noblis of England, with Edward Ballioll, to governe Scotland at thair devise.

The Ballioll went than throw all the boundis of Scotland, and garnist all the strenthis thairof with Inglismen, except v castellis allanerly, quhilkis war in Scottismennis handis; that is to say, the castel of Dunbriton, quhilk was kepit be Malcolm Fleming of Cumberlond; the castell of Lochlevin, be Alane Vepount; the castell of Kildrummy, be Cristine Bruce; the castell of Urquhart, be Robert Lauder; and the peil of Lowdown, be Johne Thomeson. All thir castellis stude at the opinioun of King David.



## Chap. Sixth.

*Of the contention betwix Alexander Mowbray and Hary Bewmont ;  
and how Inglismen perist at the Sege of Lochlevin.*



IN the samin time, Phillip, King of France, send his ambassatouris to the Paip, desiring him to interpone his auctorite, and constrane the Inglismen to desist fra thair cruell invasioun maid on the Scottis. The Inglismen held the Papis ambassatouris in sic contemptioun, that thay wald nocht suffer thaim to cum in thair presence: throw quhilk, thay wer constrainit to depart, but ony expeditioun of thair materis.

Sone efter, ane conventioun was maid be Edward Ballioll at Perth; quhare the nobillis of Scotland ratifyit him king, and promittit, be thair aithis, nevir to rebell aganis him in times cuming. In the mene time, rais ane scharp contentioun betwix Hary Bewmont and Alexander Mowbray, for certane landis in Buchquhan. Hary Bewmont clamit thir landis to pertene to him; for he maryit the said Alexanderis douchter, quhilk was heritoure, as he allegit, to the said landis. On the tothir side, Alexander Mowbray clamit thir landis be reasoun of succession, as aire to his brothir. Efter lang contentioun, the said Alexander Mowbray gat the landis adjudgit to him, be sentence of the Ballioll. David Cumin, Erle of Atholl, and Richard Talbot, allieging this sentence wrangusly gevin aganis Hary Bewmont, maid ane conspiratioun aganis the Ballioll; and stuffit the castell of Dongard, in Buchquhane, with mony othir housis of Scotland, aganis his auctorite. The Ballioll, seing gret trubill appering to him be this way, retretit the sentence that he gaif for Alexander Mowbray, and, be new sentence, adjudgit the landis to pertene to the said Hary Bewmont, becaus he maryit the heritoure thair of. The parteis that clamit thir landis war sa gret, that the just verite of thair debait couth nevir be decidit be sicht of

justice. Thus was the Ballioll constrainit to have ay the ta party his ennime, quhen the tothir become his freind.

Nocht lang efter, the Ballioll come to Ramfrew, and ressavit all the pepill and strenthis thair of to his opinioun. Than was brocht to him the keyis of the castellis of Rothesay and Dunnone, be Schir Allane Lyle, sereif of Bute. Thus grew the Ballioll daily in mair pissance, be confluence of pepil; for he enricht thaim with landis and gudis, that assistit to him. Robert Stewart, heirand the Ballioll set ilk day for his slauchter, come out of Bute to the castell of Dunbritane; quhare he was plesandly ressavit be Malcolme Fleming, keipar thair of.

In the mene time, the Ballioll rasit ane army, to take all the strenthis of Scotland, becaus thay war occasioun of battall aganis him. In the nixt yeir, he laid ane sege to the castell of Lochlevin; and quhen he had considerit that this castell nicht nocht be tane but lang sege, he left Schir Johne Striveling to ly at the sege thair of, with ane gret power, quhill the castell war won. And to do thair besines mair esaly, thay maid thair bastailyeis and trinscheis of fale and devat, in the kirkyard of Sanct Sarfe, beside Kinrosse. This castell was kepit be Alane Vepount and James Lamby, cieteyanis of Sanct Andros. At last, quhen thir Inglismen had assailyeit lang time to get this castell, efter mony gret assaltis with sindry inginis, howbeit thay war in vane; thay devisit, be ane subtell slicht, to take the castell but ony straik. First, thay inclusit the watter that ran out of the loch with ane hie dike, and biggit it sa strait with fale, devat, and treis, that the watter of Levin suld have na passage; bot inclusit perforce, quhill it war risin abone the castell, and all the pepill in it perist. And to caus the dam to boldin mair haistely, thay brocht burnis fra sindry partis to the said loch.

Schir Johne Striveling, capitane of the sege, seand al thingis, as he belevit, done in dew maner, for na thing nicht avale bot proces of time to win the hous; went to Dunfermeling, to his devotion, becaus it was Sanct Margretis Day, the haly Quene of Scotland: and left behind him sa mony as he thocht sufficient to kepe the sege. Alane Vepount, capitane foresaid, knowing the gret dangeir appealing to him, send iv men out of the castel, within the nicht, in ane

bait, with speris and wappinnis, to breke the dike foresaid: and quhen thay had laubourit all nicht, borand the dike foresaid, thay tuke purpos, becaus thair lauboure semit vane, to returne to the castell, but ony expeditioun. Nochtheles, ane of thaim exhortit the laif to continew furth ane houre, to se quhat fine nicht cum of thair lauboure. Als sone as thay persavit ane hole maid throw the dike, thay returnit to the castell. Incontinent, the streme followit sa fast, quhare the watter gat passage, that it brake down the bastailyeis, and nocht onely drownit the pepill that lay under the dam, bot brocht thaim, with hors, cariage, and al thair provision, to the see. Alane Vepount, quhen the watter was fallin to the auld mesoure, ischit out of the castell, and slew ane part of thaim that war eschapid at this time, and the remanent put to flicht. Johne Striveling herand sic calamite falling to his folkis, returnit to the sege; and maid ane vow, nevir to depart thairfra quhill it war takin, and every person found in it slane. At last, quhen he had lvin lang at the sege thairrof, and seing the castell nocht abil to be takin, he was constranit to leif the sege, with gret slauchter of his folkis.

This sege of Lochlevin was in Lentrin; fra our redemption, MCCCLXXXV yeris.

### Chap. Seventh.

*How Robert Stewart and Johne Randall recoverit sindry strenthis of Scotland. How David Cumin was brocht to gret trubill, for his rebelloun aganis Scottis; and how he was tane in favoure.*



ING EDWARD, in the yeir following, come in Scotland with fifty thowsand men, and send LXX schippis be the see: of quhilkis mony war brokin betwix Inche Keith and the Northland. And becaus he saw na rebelloun aganis him, he returnit in England with the Ballioll, and left David Cumin, Erle of Athole, to be Governoure, to take the remanent strenthis of Scotland, and to hald the pepill at his opinioun. Erle David, be insolence of this new auctorite, tuke possessioun of all

the landis of Murray and Buchquhan, quhilkis pertenit to Robert Stewart; and nocht onely gat the inhabitantis thair of sworne to his opinioun, bot confiscat all the guddis of thame that war found contrarius thairto. Robert Stewart incontinent assemblit his freindis, and, be avise of Dongall Campbell of Lochquhow, tuke the castell of Dunnone, and slew all personis found in it. The commonis of Bute and Arrane, glaid of this happy beginning, gaderit to the nowmer of iv hundreth men, to fortify the said Robert. In the mene time, Schir Alane Lyle, sereif of Bute, come on thaim, with ane cumpany of armit men. Followit ane scharp battall: quhill at last the sereif was slane, and his folkis discomfist. Sindry of his folkis war brocht presoneris to Robert Stewart. Thir and siclike felicitis movit sindry Scottis to leif the opinioun of Ingland, and come to Robert Stewart.

Not lang efter, the Erle of Murray returnit fra King David out of France, and arrivit at Dunbritane; quhare he was plesandly ressavit be Robert Stewart: for he was ane nobillman of na les manheid and wisdom than his fader, Erle Thomas, afore rehersit. Sone efter, Robert Stewart and the Erle of Murray come with gret power in Clyddisdale, Ramfrew, Kyle, Cuningham, and Ayre; and brocht the samin, with Ros and Murray, to King Davidis opinioun. The Erle of Murray, heirand gret injuris done be Erle David of Athole, went to Aberdene. Erle David, seing the pepill gaderit, ilk day, with new power, to recover thair leberte; fled to the montanis and desertis; quhare he was brocht to gret misere, and constranit, lang time, to sustene his life on rutis and herbis. At last, quhen he saw na way to eschew, he come, in lamentabill weid, petuusly desiring grace. The nobillis of Scotland ressavit him to thair favour; for he was ane man of nobill blude, of gret manrent and landis: and gart him sweir to be as trew to King David, as he was afore to King Edward.

At this time, Schir William Douglas of Liddisdale, and Andro Murray, war redemit with gret ransom, efter that thay war haldin thre yeris presoneris in Ingland. At thair cuming to Edinburgh, was ane conventioun of the lordis. The Erle of Murray and Robert Stewart, with generall electioun, war chosin governouris.



Mony Scottis, at this time, left the opinioun of Inglismen: as Laurence Prestoun, Johne Hering, and Johne Haliburtoun, knichtis, with mony otheris; quhilkis baid, efter, perpetually at the faith of King David. Nocht lang efter, ane conventioun was maid be the governouris at Darse, to advise on sindry gret materis concerning the commoun weill. Nochtheles, David Cumin, Erle of Athole, come with sa strang power, that thay durst attempt na thing aganis Inglismen.

### Chap. Eighth.

*How King Edward come in Scotland with gret armyis, baith be see and land. How the Duke of Gilder was discomfist; and how Erle David Cumin was slane.*



ING EDWARD, herand the rebellion of Scottis in this wise, come with fifty thousand men to Perth, and brocht clxxx schippis in Forth. Thir schippis, sone efter the cuming in Forth, brint and heryit the see-costis on ilk side, and spulyeit the abbay of Sanct Colme. Bot thair sacralege was nocht lang unpunist; for quhen thay war returnand in Ingland, thair navy, be violent wedder, was brocht to gret trubill: sum of thaim perist, and otheris brokin on craggis. The residew of thair navy, knowing that thay incurrit the hatrent of God and Sanct Colme for thair sacralege, returnit to the said abbay, and maid gret offerandis in recompence of thair offence; and returnit hame but displeseir.

At this time, the Duke of Gilder come with gret power throw Ingland, in support of King Edward; and was discomfist on the Burrow Mure, beside Edinburgh, and chasit to the castel thair of, quhilk was that time in Inglismennis handis. At last, he was constrainit, be lang sege, to cum in will; his guddis tint, and his life onely to be savit. The Erle of Murray randerit to him, curtesly, all his guddis; and sufferit him to depart, efter that he was sworn nevir to assist to Inglismen. Amang the spulyeis of this battal, was

found ane woman of mervellus stature, quhilk previt gret vassalage in this battall, and slew mony vailyeant men with hir awin handis. Forthir, becaus this Duk of Gilder was freind to Philip, King of France, he was convoyit be the Erle of Murray to the bordouris. In the mene time, ane buschement of Inglismen and Scottis lay in wait, and randerit him in King Edwardis handis. The Erle of Athole, beleving new felicite to fall to Inglismen be taking of the Erle of Murray; come to Perth, and gaif his faith to the Ballioll, and was maid Governoure of Scotland.

Sone efter, King Edward returnit in Ingland, and tuke the Balliol with him; for he belevit, als sone as he had conquest Scotland, that the Ballioll suld rebell aganis him, on the samin maner as Johne Balliol, his fader, did afore. Erle David, richt insolent efter this auctorite, began to exerce new tyranny on all the Scottis that war repugnant to King Edward; sum of thaim spulyeit of thair landis and guddis, otheris put to deith. The nobillis, havand gret indignation that this Erle of Athole suld exerce sic tyranny on thair pepil, considering he was saiffit only in the yeir afore, be thair commiseratioun; come with gret power aganis him. David Cumin, herand the lordis gaderit thus aganis him, left the sege of Kildrummy, quhare he was that time, and gaif thaim battall. At last, quhen the victory was inclinand to Erle David, be multitude of pepil that assistit to him; Johne Crag, capitane of Kildrummy, come out of the castel, with thre hundreth fresche men: be quhais cuming, the victory succedit to Scottis. Erle David, disparit of his life; that he suld nocht cum quik into his ennimes handis, ruschit, with ane cumpany of his tender freindis, amang the gret pres of his ennimes; quhare he was slane, be Alexander Gordoun.

In this battal war slane Walter Bride, Robert Cumin, with mony athir gentilmen and commonis. Schir Thomas Cumin was tane presonere, and heidit on the morow. Robert Menyeis eschapid, be his fleing to the castell of Cammore. And becaus gret nowmer of pepill enterit with him, but ony provision of vittallis; the castel nicht nocht be defendit; bot was randerit on the morow, efter that the pepil thairof war sworn to King Davidis opinioun.

## Chap. Ninth.

*How Andro Murray was maid Governoure of Scotland. How King Edward returnit with new army in Scotland; and how Inglismen war discomfist at Panmore.*



**D**AVID, Erle of Athole, slane on this wise; ane convention was maid be the nobillis, and Andro Murray maid Governoure, in the place of the Erle of Murray, quhilk was tane unhappely, as said is, with Inglismen. This Andro, efter that he had line lang time at the sege of Cowpar, was advertist that the Cuminis maid gret trubil in the north partis of Scotland: and, thairfore, he thocht it mair necessar to support the cuntre, than to sege ony castellis. The Cuminis, knawing his cuming, met him with set battall; bot thay war vincust. In this battall was slane Robert Cumin, William Cumin, and Thomas Calder, vailyeant knightis, howbeit thay war ennimes to King David for the time. This victory, gottin, as said is, be Andro Murray, brocht al the north of Scotland under gud obeisance to King David. Few Inglismen abaid, efter this victory, in Scotland, except sa mony as war within the castell of Dongard. At last, the said castell was tane, and na man left levand in it, except Hary Bewmont, capitane; quhilk was sworn to depart in Ingland, but ony returning.

Sic thingis done, the Governour laid ane sege to the castel of Lochindoris, quhare Erle David Cuminis wife was for the time. This woman, knawing hir hous mony dayis afore abill to be segit, send to King Edward, and desirit rescours. King Edward, dredand to tine al the strenthis of Scotland, gif the same war nocht haistely rescoursit; come with XI.M men to the said castell of Lochindoris: and efter that he had stuffit it with new provision, he come with bludy swerd throw Murray; and in his returning to Mar, he brint the town of Aberdene. His navy, quhilk was arrivit in Forth, began, on the same maner as the tothir did afore, to spulye the abbay

of Sanct Colme; and on the samin maner, thair sacralege was nocht lang unpunist: for ane of the schippis that was ladin with Sanct Colmes guddis, sank, but ony tempest, to the see ground. King Edward, at his returning to Perth, becaus it was cassin down afore, commandit it to be reparit, with new wallis and bastailyeis, on the expensis of thir vi abbayis: Abirbrothok, Coupar, Lundoris, Balmerinoch, Dunfermeling, and Sanct Andros. He maid Hary Bewmont capitane of the castel of Sanct Andros; quhilkis returnit with him out of Ingland, contrar his faith maid afore at the sege of Don-gard. Attoure, he maid Hary Farrar capitane of the castel of Lucres; William Montegew, capitane of Striveling; William Feltoun, capitane of Roxburgh; and Thomas Urthred, capitane of Perth.

Quhill sic thingis war done in Scotland be King Edward, come to him his brothir Heltane, quhilk exercit gret cruelte on the Scottis, nochtwithstanding thair perseverance at the opinioun of King Edward, his brothir: sum of thaim he slew, and otheris brint, in thair kirkis and tempillis. At last, King Edward tuke sic displeseir aganis this Heltane, his brothir, becaus he brint the kirk of Sanct Bute, with ane thousand personis in it, that he dang him throw the body with ane swerd, afore the alter of Sanct Johne; and said, "This haly place sal be na mair refuge to the, than othir housis of "God hes bene afore fra thy tyranny, quhen thou destroyit sa "mony innocent pepill, but sicht to richt or wrang." Sic thingis done, King Edward returnit in Ingland, and left behind him the Ballioll, with ane gret power, at Perth. At this time, Hary Bewmont slew all Scottis quhome he nicht apprehend; specially thaim that war at the slauchter of his cousin, David Cumin.

Als sone as Andro Murray was advertist of King Edwardis departing, he come fra the montanis, quhare he lay afore, eschewing the fury of Inglismen. At last, be assistance of sindry nobil men, he tuk the castel of Kinclavin, and kest it down to the ground. Sone efter, he come to Mernes, quhare he wan the castel of Kilnesse, and kest it down on the samin maner. Passand forthwart on this wise, he brint Dunnotir. On the tothir side, the Inglismen maid na les slauchter and heirschippis in all partis quhare thay



come: throw quhilk, the Mernis, Angus, Striveling, and Gowry, for continewall reiffis, murdir, and weris done in thaim, war left waist. At last, this Andro, to resist the Inglismen, gaderit all pepill of Murray, Mar, and Buchquhan, and faucht at Panmore, in Angus; quhare he was victorius, with huge slauchter maid on his ennimes. In this battall war slane Hary Montford, quhilk was send laityly be King Edward in support of Ballioll, with *iv.m* nobillis and gentillmen of Ingland: throw quhais deith, rais gret dolour in sindry partis of Ingland, seand thair pissance gretly brokin, for the tinsall of sa mony noblis. Efter this victory, Andro Murray past throw Fif and Angus, and kest down the castell of Lucres, with all othir castellis of Fif, except allanerly the castell of Cowpar.

### Chap. Tenth.

*How William Talbot and Richard Montegew war vincust be Scottis.*

*Of the deith of Andro Murray. Of sindry vassalagis done be William Douglas; and of gret derth in Albion.*



ING EDWARD, heirand the victory falling in this maner to his ennimes, send ane vailyeant knight, namit William Talbot, in Scotland, with two armyis in support of Ballioll: aganis quhom come William Keith, Laurence Preston, and Robert Gordoun, with gret power of Scottis, and put thir Inglismen to flicht; the principall capitane, William Talbot, was tane presonere, and payit two hundreth mark striveling for his ransom. Schir William Montegew, Erle of Sarisbury, come with new ordinance to sege the castel of Dunbar, and lay *xxii* owlkis at the sege thair of; nochtheles, it was sa vailyeantly debaittit be the Contes of Marche, callit Blak Anna, that he was constrant to depart fra the sege.

In the yeir following, was ane miserabil derth in all the boundis of Scotland, with gret mortalite of pepil; for the land lay wast, but ony store or cornis, for continewall weris afore past. All the sod-

jouris, that war in the castell of Cowpar, for laik of vittallis, left the castell desert, and fled to Kingorn, quhare thay hirit ane schip to have past in Ingland; nochtheles, be ane evill mariner, thay come on ane sand-bed, and perist at the nixt flude.

At this time, mony of all the strenthis of Lowthiane was inhabit be Inglismen. The town of Edinburgh was stuffit with mony sod-jouris, baith of Inglis and Scottis; among quhom was ane Scot of gret spreit, namit Robert Pendergest: and, becaus he favorit Scottismen, the marscheall, callit Thomas Knatoun, strake him so violently with ane club, quhill the blude sprang out of his heid. Robert, movit with this injure, lay ilk day in wait, quhill at last he slew the marscheall; and come to William Douglas the nerrest way, persuading him to pas with diligence to Edinburgh, quhare he suld find his ennimes gevin to nocht bot lust and insolence. William Douglas come incontinent to the said town, and slew iv.c Inglismen in thair beddis, buryit in wine and sleip. Thus war the Inglismen constrainit to be mair vigilant in times cuming.

Not lang efter, Andro Murray, gouvernour of Scotland, deceissit, to the gret dammage of the commonweil thair of; and was buryit in Rosmarky; fra our redemption, mcccxxxviii yeris.

At this time rais ane scharp weir betwixt the Kingis of Ingland and France, to the gret weill of Scotland; for, apperandly, Scotland was sa waik at that time, that gif the King of Ingland had continewit in his weris, it suld have cumin, but ony esperance of releif, to uter ruine. Efter deith of Andro Murray, governour, Robert Stewart tuke on him al the charge of the realme, to the returning of King David out of France.

At this time, William Dowglas, with mony jeoperdice and gret lauboure, recoverit Tevidal out of Inglismennis handis; and, thairfore, he josit the said landis, as heritage conquest be his manheid and prowes. King Edward, movit with thir displeseiris, send ane vail-yeant knight, namit Schir Thomas Barclay, with ane gret power, in Scotland; aganis quhom come William Douglas and Robert Stewart, gouvernour, and faucht with him at Blakburn; quhare the Scottis war discomfist; few of thaim eschapit untane or slane.

Nocht lang efter this, William Douglas faucht with Inglismen at the Cragingis, havand with him bot xl men in company; and vin-

cust Schir Johne Striveling, with ȝ men, of the opinion of Ingland. And, in the yeir following, he wan the castell of Harmitage, and slew all personis found in it. In the nixt yeir, this William Douglas faucht aganis Schir Laurence Abirnethy, principall capitane to the Ballioll, with gret buschementis of men on athir side, and was five times discomfist: nochtheles, he renewit ay battall; and, at last, he tuk the said Laurence presonere, and brocht him to Dunbritane. Be thir vassalagis William Douglas was gretumly es-temit: and was direkit ambassatoure, in France, to King David, for certane hie materis concerning the realme.

In the mene time, Robert Stewart come with gret power to sege the toun of Perth; and lay at the sege thair of ten owlkis: at last, quhen he wes disparit to tak the said toun, and reddy to depart thairfra, William Dowglas cum out of France fra King David, and arrivit with gret munitioun in Tay; and, sone eftir his cumming, the toun wes randerit to the governour; fra our redemption, MCCCXII yeris.

In this yeir, wes sic derth in Scotland and Ingland, that the pe-pill wes constrainit to eit hors, hundis, and othir siclik forbodin flesche.

### Chap. Eleventh.

*How the Ballioll fled in Ingland. Of gret vassalage done be Robert Stewart and William Douglas. How King David returnit in Scotland. And how William Douglas wes banist.*



PERTH ressavit on this wise, and garnist with strang munitionis, the governour went with his army to Striveling; and tuke it, the viii day eftir the sege wes laid thairto, under thir conditionis: that Thomas Fulky, capitane thair of, nicht pas, with his wife, barnis, and guddis, but ony impeschement, in Ingland. Edward Balliol, seing thir felicitais falling to Scottis, fled in Ingland.

In the mene time, the castell of Edinburgh wes won be subtell menis of William Douglas, William Bullok, Walter Fraseir, Walter Touris, and Johne Sandelandis, knichtis, in maner following: The Dowglas had ane servand, namit Touris, quhilk come out of his schip, be command of the Douglas, in Forth, fenyeing him to be ane marcheand, with sindry winis to sell. And, be ane devisit slicht, he brocht twa punsionis of wine out of the schip; and, on the morow, he drew ane certan gallonis of this wine, and past thairwith to the castell of Edinburgh, and desirit the stewart to cum furth to taist his winis. The stewart fand his winis delicious; and said, "Thow sall do us ane hie pleseir gif thow provide us certane veschellis of this wine; for wine hes bene richt skant to us thir mony yeris." Attoure, to mak him the more sicker of this wine, he gaif money in hand to this Touris, and prayit him to bring the wine airly on the morow to the castell, and he suld be reddy to ressave it. This Touris come, afore the licht, with the twa punsionis. Some efter his cuming, the yettis wer oppinit be the portaris to ressave the wine. At last, quhen the cart was cumin within the yettis, this Touris pullit out ane wege, and incontinent the cart fell down with the punsionis in the middis of the yet, and stoppit the samin to clois. The Douglas, quhilk wes nocht far fra this slicht, come haistely with bodin men to the yettis; and, eftir that he had slane the portaris, he enterit in the said castell, and left na man in it on live. Thus wes the realme returnit out of Inglismennis handis be nobill men, nochtwithstanding the absence of thair king in France: apperis, thairfore, that nobil men ar als necessar to kingis, as ony landis or riches. All ennimes beand dantit on this maner, the Ballioll wes ejeckit, with al his freindis, and constranit to returne in England.

On the second day of Juny, in the yeir afore rehersit, King David, with his wife, Jane, and sindry gret nobillis, Franche and Scottis, come happily throw the seis, and arrivit at Innerbervy; and convoyit, with gret triumphe, to Perth. At his cuming, Alexander Ramsay of Dalhouse, ane of the maist vailyeant men that wes in his dayis, gaderit ane strang power, and enterit in England. And, first, he laid ane buschement of folkis under covert in ane vail, that thay might tak thair ennimes at advantage quhen thay saw ganand occasion. Sic thingis done, he went forthwart with the residew of his



folkis. In the mene time, the bordoraris, with sindry garnisonis of the cuntre, come aufullie aganis him. Sone efter he maid him, be craft of chevalry, to flee; quhill, at last, his ennimes followit to the same place quhare his buschementis wer lyand under wait. Incontinent, the buschementis rais and invadit thame on ilk side; and, finalie, discomfist tham with gret slauchter. Amang sindry othir presoneris, quhilkis wer tane at this time, the Erle of Salisbery, and the capitane of Roxburgh, wer tane. The Erle wes interchangit for the Erle of Murray, quhilk wes haldin mony yeris afore presonere in Ingland. This Alexander Ramsay seand the capitane of Roxburgh, with mony of all the sodjouris thairof, tane at this jurnay, come haistely with ledderis to Roxburgh, and enterit perforce ouir the wallis. King David, for his vassalage, gaif baith the capitanry of Roxburgh, and sereifschip of Tevidale to the said Alexander: and, for that caus, he come in gret hatrent to William Douglas; and wes finalie tane be him in the Kirk of Hawik, and wes haldin in captivite, in the castell of Hermitage, quhill he deceissit.

King David, richt commovit that this nobill man, Alexander, wes put down on this maner, thocht, gif sic attemptatis wer unpunist, thay micht be occasioun to conspire aganis him in sum hiear materis; and so he gart serche this William Douglas, to be punist to the deith. Nochtheles, the said William drew him fra the kingis presence, and abaid in the montanis and othir desertis of Scotland; quhill Robert Stewart, and othir nobillis, finaly recounsalt him to the kingis favoure, and gat him restorit baith to his honour and landis of Tevidale, as he was afore.

## Chap. Twelfth.

*How King David rewardit the Airis of thaim that war slane at Dupline and Halidon Hill. And how he invadit Ingland sindry times with gret injuris.*



COTLAND beand pecifyit on this maner, and Inglismen ejeckit out of all partis thairof, King David set ane counsall at Perth; and commandit al thaim that did ony honest vassalage for defence of the realme, or had thair faderis slane at the battallis of Dupline and Halidon, to be gevin to him in bil, that he micht consider thair honest jeopardis, and reward thame effering to thair meritis. At last quhen thay war all convenit, he beand perticularly advertist of every dedis done be thaimself and thair faderis, he rewardit thaim richely with gold, selver, and jowellis; that thay micht have als mekill pleseir for the time present, as thay had sorow for the time bygane. Nane was, that couth schaw ony of his freindis or kinnismen slane, or did ony vailyeant deidis with his awin handis, bot was rewardit with gudly recompence.

Amang sindry othir that war rewardit at this time, Hew Boece, grandschir to Maister Hector Boece, compilar of thir Croniklis, gat, in recompence of his faderis slauchter at Dupline, the heritoure and lady of the barony of Balbrid gevin to him in mariage; quhilk barony is yit possedit be the airis of the said Hew.

Quhen King David had rewardit the noblis of his realme on this wise, he thocht na thing sa gud as to revenge the injuris done, sa mony yeris afore, be Inglismen. Yit sindry prudent men gaif him counsall, to delay his weris, quhill his pepill wer convalescit baith in thair bodyis and guddis; for thay wer waistit be lang weris, afore enduring: attour, the season wes than to manure thair landis, that thay micht releif the pepill of gret derth, quhilk thay presentlie sustentit. To thir wordis answerit King David, He wald assaile the chance of fortoun, to bring his pepil in gret riches, be spulye of

Inglistmen; and to revenge the injuris done be thaim sa mony yeris afore.

Sone eftir, all fensabill men wer commandit to be reddi agane ane certane day. Nocht lang eftir, he maid the Erle of Murray lieutenant to his army; and enterit in Northumbirland, quhare he remanit ane moneth, invading the cuntre with fire and swerd: syne returnit in Scotland with gret riches. Sone eftir his returning, he rasis ane new power of Scotland, and enterit agane in Ingland. The Inglistmen seing thameself nocht of pissance to resist his army, gaderit all thair guddis to strenthis.

In the mene time, v knichtis of Scotland, namit Stewart, Eglington, Cragy, Boyd, and Fullartoun, persewing Inglistmen our feirlie, wer taikin; and redemit, eftir, with gret ranson. King David, seing himself ilk day waisting his time, and na apperance of battall, returnit in Scotland.

Not lang efter, he went agane in Ingland; and wes trublit with so vehement weit and haill, that he nicht skarslie debait himself, and his army, unperist be storme of wedder. On the tothir side, the Inglistmen wer gaderit aganis him, ouriset with tempest on the samin maner. King David, that his purpos suld nocht be in vane, kest doun sindry strang housis on the bordouris in Ingland, and returnit in Scotland but ony othir trubill to his army.

### Chap. Thirteenth.

*How King David, at the request of France, invadit Ingland with gret displeseiris; and how he wes taikin at Durame. How Inglismen conquest gret boundis in Scotland.*



ING PHILLIP of France wes cruelly invadit, during this time, be King Edward of Ingland; and send his oratoris in Scotland, desiring King David to invaid Ingland with battall: to that fine, that King Edward, to resist the injure of Scottis, suld leif the sege of Caleis. In the mene time, come ambassatouris, fra King Edward, in Scotland, to treit peace with King David; and promittit to rander baith Berwik and the Ballioll in Scottismennis handis: for he wes, as thay alliegit, the gret occasioun of injuris so lang continewing betwix Inglis and Scottis. The lordis, to answer to thir materis, went to thair counsall; bot thay wer devidit in sindry opinionis, ilk man eftir his fantasie. Sum, be rage of youth, and auld hatrent aganis Inglismen, wer desirus of battall: otheris, irkit with lang weris, desirit peace; and thocht thir offeris of Ingland nocht to be contemptnit, sen mony commoditeis nicht follow thairthrow. Alwayis it wes demit, gif sic honest offeris wer contemptnit, more truble than proffet suld follow. Apperit, that perpetuall amite and kindnes sall continew betwix Inglismen and Scottis, gif he wer tane away, that was the movar of thair weris. To this answerit King David and otheris, that wer of the opinioun of France: “ The memorie of infinite pleseiris done  
 “ to us be King Phillip, movis us to schaw sum kindnes to him;  
 “ for he nocht onlie ressavit us quhen maist dangeir occurrit, bot  
 “ defendit us fra all ennimes, quhen we wer exilit of our realme.  
 “ Forthir, the band afore contrackit betwix King Robert, oure  
 “ fader, and France, movis us to assist to the opinion of France.  
 “ Thairfore, gif we be nobill men, havand sicht to thaim that hes  
 “ avancit our common weill and liberte; no thing wes so gud as to



“revenge auld injuris done be ennimes.” Thus wes it concludit to have battall with Ingland, be sollicitatioun of King David; for he desirit to do sum honest vassalage, that he nicht, thairthrow, be comparit to the glore of his eldaris. The ambassatouris of Ingland wer depeschit on this wise, but ony expeditioun of thair desiris; and the ambassatouris of France fullelie satisfyit. Sone eftir, be opin proclamatioun, all fensabill men within this realme wer comandit to meit the king at ane certane day and place.

In the mene time, the Erle of Ros come, with mony folkis, to Perth, and maid his mowster to the king: and in the nicht following, he slew the Lord of the Ilis, with vii of his kinnismen, slepand in thair beddis; and returnit incontinent to Ros. King David, nochtwithstanding the gret displeisir that he tuke for the said slauchter; richt desirus to have punist the same, supersedit the punitioun thair of, quhill time occurrit more ganand. At his cuming to the bordouris, he maid mony knichtis, to steir thaim to knichtlie vassalage. He maid William Douglas Erle. This William wes son to Archebald Douglas, slane afore at Halidon Hill.

Sic thingis done, King David distroyit the maist part of all Northumbirland with fire and swerd. It is said, King David wes monist be visioun in his sleip, to abstene fra all landis pertenant to Sanct Cuthbart; othirwayis his weris suld haif ane miserable end. Als sone as he wes awalkinnit, he thocht sic visionis bot fantaseis; and commandit his army, nochtwithstanding sic visioun, to spare na landis nor townis quhair thay come. At last, thay come to Durance, quhare Sanct Cuthbart is patron, and spulyeit baith the abbay, and all placis thairabout. King Edward, impacient to suffir thir injuris, send the Erle of Northumbirland out of France, with gret power. This Erle, afore his cuming, send ane herald to King David, desiring him to return in Scotland, and to put end to his weris; othirwayis he suld haif battall on the thrid day eftir. King David tuke litil respect to this message, bot commandit his folkis to be reddey to resist thair ennimes. On the morow, he devidit his army in thre battallis. In the first wing, wes Robert Stewart, Prince of Scotland, and Patrik, Erle of Marche. In the secound wing, wes John, Erle of Murray, and William, Erle of Douglas. In the

mid battall, wes King David, with all the remanent nobillis of Scotland. This Erle of Douglas, becaus he wes wardane of the bordouris, departit fra the Scottis, to espye the army of Ingland; and [cum] so unwarlie, quhair thair army lay, that o of his folkis wer slane, and himself narrowly eschaping with his life. At last, quhen baith the armyis wer in otheris sicht, David Grahame come, with five hundreth bodin men, on the skirtis of Inglis archearis, to have brokin thaim. Nochtheles, he wes so invadit with arrowis, that mony of his folkis war slane, and himself narrowly eschaping. The Scottis, nochtwithstanding baith thir discomfitouris, ruschit feirsly on thair ennimes, and faucht lang time, with gret manheid, to the deith. At last, Robert Stewart and the Erle of Marche, seing thair folkis defaik curage, efter thay had fochtin lang time, with doutsum victory; fled out of the feild. This fleing of the Erle of Marche and Robert Stewart was ane gret displeseir to all the army of Scottis; for the same battall that faucht aganis thaim, come sa awfully on the battall quhare King David faucht, that it was finally vincust and put to flicht. Than was King David left, with ane small cumpany, in the feild. Howbeit, he left na thing undone, that micht pertene to the devore of ane forcy campioun; sum time persuading his folkis to returne with new battall, and sum time ruschit with ane buschement of vailyeant men, quhare he saw maist confluence and preis of Inglismen, with purpos to have put thaim abak; that the residew of his folkis micht have tane new curage, to returne in battall. Nochthelis, thair abaid nane with him, bot sa mony as had mair respect to thair honoure than life, fechtand with perseverand manheid to the deith. And thought King David was destitute, but ony help; yit he ceissit nocht to persevere in obstinat battall, quhill he was ouriset with multitude of pepill, and two speris hingand in his body: and thought he micht nothir fle, nor yit breke the said speris, yit he wald nocht suffer him to be tane; thinkand na thing sa odious as to remane on life, efter sa gret slauchter maid on his nobillis: and ceissit nocht to provoke his ennimes, with maist dispitfull wourdis, to sla him. The Inglismen, seing that he micht nocht eschape, set thair besines to take him. Than Johne Copland desirit him to be yoldin; for baith his swerd and wappinnis war

dong out of his handis: nochtheles, he tuke this Copland with sic violent dint on the chaftis, that he dang out two of his forthir teith. Na better chance was in the left wing, quhare the Erlis of Murray and Dowglas faucht: for that battall was vincust, the Erle of Murray slane, and the Erle of Dowglas tane.

In this sorowfull battall, war slane the Erle of Murray, the Erle of Stratherne, the Constabill, the Marcheall, the Chalmerlane and Chancellar of Scotland, with gret nowmer of mony othir nobillis and commonis. The king was tane, with v erllis; that is to say, Dowglas, Fife, Suthirland, Wigtoun, and Menteith. Ane arrowheid was schot in King Davidis leg, with sic violence, that it couth nocht be gottin furth be ingine of man; yit, quhen he had visit Sanct Monan, the wond opnit, and the heid fell out. Beside othir gret riches tint in this feild, the haly croce of Halyrudhous was tint in it; for King David had it on him, traisting, be vertew thairof, to be invincibill in battall. Nochtheles, he was spulyeit of it, and of al othir jowellis found on him for the time. This battall was strikin at Durame, the xvii day of October; fra our redemption, mcccxlvi yeris.

The Inglismen, efter this victory, tuke the castell of Roxburgh, and Hermetage; and, but ony resistance, subdewit Annandale, Gal-loway, Mers, Tevidale, Twedale, and Ettrik Forrest: and maid marchis at Cokburnis-peth and Sowtray-hege.

### Chap. Fourteenth.

*How William Douglas recoverit sindry landis out of Inglismennis handis, and invadit Ingland with gret displeseris ; and how King Edward wrocht gret trubill in Scotland.*



HE Balliol come, in the nixt yeir, out of Ingland, with the Erle of Northumbirland, and heryit Lowthiane and Clyddisdale ; and brocht the spulye thairof in Galloway, quhare he abaid lang efter. The Scottis, efter this sorrowfull battall of Durame, maid Robert Stewart governoure.

At this time, Schir William Dowglas, son to gud Schir James of Dowglas, that was slane in Spanye ; returnit out of France, and, be support of freindis, chasit Inglismen out of Douglasdale, Tevidale, Twydale, Ettrik Forrest, and Twedale. Johne Copland, capitane of Roxburgh, gaderit ane army of Inglismen : nochtheles, he was discomfist, and chasit to Roxburgh.

In the nixt yeir, quhilk was fra the incarnation ane thousand, III hundreth, XLIX, was sa gret pest in all partis of Scotland, that the thrid part of the pepil deceissit. This pest rais with sa terribill inflation, that ilk man that tuk it deceissit within two dayis efter ; and it was sa contagious, that the fader wald not vise the sonne, nor the sonne the fader.

In the nixt yeir, Johne Sanctmehel slew ane nobill knicht, Schir David Berclay, at Aberdene, within the nicht, be procuration of Schir William Douglas of Liddisdale, quhilk was, that time, haldin in Ingland with the Erle of Dowglas : for this Schir David Berclay slew, afore, Johne Dowglas, bruthir to the said Schir William, and fader to Schir James Dowglas of Dalkeith. In the yeir following, the said Schir William Dowglas of Liddisdale was slane, at the huntis in Ettrik Forrest, be his cousin and godsonne, William, Erle of Douglas ; for the slauchter of Alexander Ramsay, and othir auld ennimeteis. Thus was the hous of Douglas mony yeris devidit amang thamsel, persewing othir with gret unkindnes and slauchter.



In the nixt yeir, quhilk was fra our redemption ane thousand, **III** hundreth, **LV**, efter Pasche; come in Scotland ane nobil knight, Eugenius de Garanteris, with **LX** weil-accuterit men; and deliverit to the Governour, and othir the lordis of Scotland, to support France in thair weris on Ingland, **XL.M** crownis of the sonne.

Sone efter, the King of Ingland send ane army in Scotland, and brint baith Mers, Louthiane, and Tevidale. The Erlis of Marche and Dowglas, impacient to suffir this displeseir, rasit ane army, to invade Ingland. Nochtheles, fra thay war advertist that Ingland was gaderit, thay abaid on the bordouris; and send Schir William Ramsay, to rin ane foray throw the cuntre. At last, quhen he was returnand hame, with gret pray of men and guddis; the Inglismen brak at him, and followit with ithand chace, quhil thay war cumin to the army of Scottis. Incontinent, the Scottis set on thaim with gret noyis and clamour, and put thaim finaly to flicht. Of Inglismen war tane, Schir Thomas Gray, with his son; Johne Darras was tane siclik, with mony othir Inglismen. The Franchemen coft sindry Inglis presoneris at this time, and slew thaim, to revenge the slauchter of thair faderis, quhilkis war slane afore be Inglismen in France.

The Erlis of Marche and Dowglas, efter this victory, come haistely, with ledderis, to the wallis of Berwik, and wan the toun: howbeit, it was nocht but gret slauchter. Of Inglismen war slane, Alexander Ogil, capitane of Berwik; Thomas Persey, bruthir to the Erle of Northumbirland; and Edward Gray. Of Scottis war slane, Thomas Vaus, Andro Scot of Balwery, Johne Gordoun, William Sinclare, Thomas Prestoun, Alexander Mowbra, knichtis.

Quhen the Scottis had won the town of Berwik in this maner, thay war advertist that King Edward was cumand on thaim, with new ordinance. And becaus thay had na provision to resist his army, thay brint the town, and kest down the maist part of the wallis thair of. Nochtheles, King Edward, efter his cuming, reparit it with new wallis; and went to Roxburgh: and thair met him the Ballioll; and transferrit all richt and clame that he had to the croun of Scotland, in the said King Edwardis handis; and requestit him to perseveir with perpetuall hatrent aganis the Scottis.

Nocht lang efter, King Edward come to Hadingtoun, to the gret dammage of all pepill lyand thairabout. Ane part of his navy spulyeit the kirk of Our Lady, callit the Quhit Kirk; and returnit with the spulye thair of to thair schippis. Bot thair sacralege was not lang unpunist; for suddanly rais ane north wind, and raschit all thair schippis sa violently on the see bankis and sandis, that few of thaim eschapid, saif only sa mony as swame to land. King Edward, in contemptioun of God, becaus his navy was trubillit in this maner, persewit all abbayis and religiis placis quhare he come, with gret cruelte. Treuth is, ane Inglisman spulyeit all the ornamentis that was on the image of Our Lady, in the Quhite Kirk; and incontinent, the crucifix fel down on his heid, and dang out his harnis.

### Chap. Fifteenth.

*Of the Battal of Poiteris. How King David was redemit. And how he punist his Baronis, for thair fleing fra him at Durame.*



ONE efter the returning of King Edward in England, William Douglas of Nidisdale recoverit the landis of Galloway. The landis of Dryisdale war recoverit be Kirkpatrik on the same maner. On the xx day of September, in the same yeir, was the battall of Poiteris, in France, in maner following:

Edward, Prince of Walis, and son to King Edward, Windisore, come with ane army in France, and invadit the cuntre sa cruelly, that sindry boundis thair of apperit, gif he war nocht haistely resistit, to cum under his empire. In the mene time, William, Erle of Dowglas, with his kinnismen and freindis, to the nowmer of III.M men, went in France; and was tenderly ressavit be King Johne, the first king of that name. Not lang efter, King Johne rasit ane army, and come to Poiteris. Edward, Prince of Walis, and son to King Edward, Windisore, efter the cuming of King Johne, began to rais his army; and fenyeit him, be subtel slicht, as he war astonist, to

depart toward Ingland; that Franchemen and Scottismen suld breke thair array, be feirs following on his army. At the first skarmusche, Schir Johne Claremont, merschal of France, was slane. Prince Edward, glaid of this beginning, and seand his folkis rasis in new courage, thoct na thing sa gud as to follow fortoun; and come haistely to Poiteris, quhare King Johne was campit for the time. Nocht lang efter, baith the armyis junit, and faucht with gret manheid; quhill, at last, the Dalphine of France fled, with gret buschementis: throw quhilk King Johne was left desolat in the feild, with his youngest sonne, Phillip; quhilk was namit, efter, Phillip Hardy, becaus his swerd was found drawin in his handis. Thus was King Johne tane, and brocht presonere in Ingland.

The Erle of Douglas was rescorsit be his freindis out of this feild. Bot Archebald Dowglas, son to Schir James of Douglas that was slane in Spanye, was tane: bot he was redemit with small ransoun; for quhen he was brocht afore the Inglismen, in cote-armoure and gilt harnes, in the same maner as he faucht, Schir William Ramsay of Colluthy tuk him on the chaftis with his neif, and said, "Tra-  
" toure, thow art the deith of thy maister, the Erle of Dowglas;  
" for thow clothit the in the sam armour that suld have debatit him." Incontinent, he causit him to draw of his butis; and held him in sic vile laubour, that he was redemit with smal ransoun.

It is said, that King Edward, full of vane arrogance, sat crownit, with septour and diademe, betwix two captive kingis, of Scotland and France, in his feist of Yule; that sic thingis micht be rehersit to his glore: takand na respect to the unsickir stait of man, as na sic adversite micht fall to him.

King David, within certane yeris efter, wes brocht, be the Erle of Northhamptoun, to Berwik; quhare mony of all the lordis of Scotland convenit to make his ransoun: and, becaus thay culd not aggre thairapon, he was brocht agane to London. At the nixt Michaelmes, he wes redemit for c.m mark striveling; efter that he had lyin xi yeir presonere in Ingland: and, that this money suld be payit the mair surely, trewis war tane for xiv yeris. Mony of all the lordis and baronis of Scotland war laid in pelege at London, for payment of the said ransoun.

King David was obleist, eftir his returning in Scotland, to cast down the castellis of Mortoun, Dalswintoun, Dunfreis, and Durisdere, becaus thay war noisum to Inglismen. Efter his returning in Scotland, he set ane Parliament, and maid gret punitioun on thaim that fled fra him at Durame. And, first, he brake the tailye, that was maid to his cousin, Robert Stewart, of the croun of Scotland; for he was ane gret occasion of the discomfitoure at Durame, be his fleing: and, thairfore, he transferrit the said tailye in Johne Suthirland, quhillk wes gottin on Jane, his youngest sister; and causit all the lordis to be sworn to kepe the said tailye. The Erle of Suthirland, traisting his son Johne to succede to the crown, delt the maist part of his landis amang his freindis; quhilkis war Hayis, Sinclaris, Ogilbyis, and Gordonis. Nochtheles, the said Erle was frustrat baith of his landis, and the crown of Scotland; for his son Johne was gevin amang the remanent plegis for King Davidis ransoun, and deceissit at London.

Efter the deith of the Erle of Suthirlandis son, Robert Stewart was recounsalit to King David; and maid heritour to the croun, under the same tailye as he was afore. Mony othir gret baronis war punist on the same wise, for thair fleing at Durame. The Kirk of Scotland gaif the x penny of all thair frutis to King David, to help the pament of his ransoun.

At this time, the realme of France was in gret displeseir; for King Johne wes haldin in captivite: quhill, at last, he left baith his sonnys in pledge for him, and come to Paris; quhair he pieteuslie regratit his captivite, and said, It wes ane gret los to him, that he had nocht sic nobil men in his dayis as Roland and Gawine, to labour for his redemptioun, as wes in King Charlis time afore him. Incontinent, stude up ane nobilman of gret manheid and wisdom, ennime to the kingis sleuth, and said, "Micht we find sic ane prince " as Charlis, we suld find Rolland, and Gawine, and othir duche " peris inew."

Thir wordis wer depar prentit in King Johnis mind than ony man belevit; becaus his febilnes and sleuth wes so opinlie reprochit. Nocht lang eftir, he returnit in England to visie his sonnys, and deceissit at Londoun.



## Chap. Sixteenth.

*Of gret tribul that fell in Scotland be King Davidis secund mariage ;  
and of his deith. Of sindry gret Clerkis, and mervellis sene in  
Albion.*



NOCH lang eftir, King David callit his lordis and baronis to ane counsall: for, in the time of his captivite at London, he promittit to transfer the croun of Scotland in King Edwardis sonne, gif the lordis of Scotland wald consent thairto. The lordis, quhen this mater wes proponit afore thaim, answerit, Thay wald nevir consent thairto, sa lang as ony of thaim nicht beir wappinnis or armour. King David wes richt joyus of this answer; for he wes nocht oblist to labour forthir in this mater than his lordis wald consent.

In the nixt yeir, quhilk wes fra our redemption, MCCCLVII, Lady Jane, spous to King David, past in pilgramage to Sanct Thomas of Canterbury, in Ingland, and deceissit, but ony childrin of hir body. King David, eftir hir deith, maryit ane lusty woman, namit Margaret Logy, douchter to Schir Johne Logy; and, within thre monethis eftir, he repentit: and wes so sorowful that he had degradit his blud-rial with sic obscure linnage, that he banist hir, and all otheris that gave him counsall thairto, out of his realme. At last, this lady past, with ane certane hir freindis, to Avinion, quhare the Paip held his seit for the time; and wes so favorit, that scho gat finalie ane sentence aganis King David, to annere to hir as his lawchful lady and wiffe. Thus suld the realme have cumin under interdiction and gret trouble, wer nocht, scho deceissit be the way, return-and hame.

King David, eftir mony othir poleseis, reparit all the strenthis of his realme; and biggit ane toure in the castel of Edinburgh, quhilk wes eftir callit Davidis Toure. Finalie, quhen he had brocht his realme to gret tranquillite, he tuk purpos to pas to Jerusalem, to

vesy the sepulture of Crist: and, quhen he had providit al thingis necessar thairto, he fell in ane hait fevour, and deceissit in the castell of Edinburgh, the xxxix yeir of his regne, and the xlvii yeir of his age: and wes beryit in Halyrudhous; fra our redemption, mcccclxx yeris.

Sindry mervellis wer sene, the same yeir, in Albion. Ravinnis, kayis, and piottis, clekit thair birdis in winter, contrar the nature of thair kind. All the yowis wer barrant, but ony lammis. Mise and ratonis abundit with sic plente, that thay nicht not be distroyit. Sa gret spate of watter wes in all partis of Scotland, that mony housis and cieteis wer distroyit.

At this time wer mony nobill Clerkis: as, Johne Duns, of the ordour of Sanct Francis; ane man of gret knowlege in theologie. Richard Middiltoun, William Ockam, with mony otheris.

And sa endis heir, the xv Buke of thir Croniklis.

# The Sextene Buke.

---

## HEIR BEGINNIS THE SEXTENE BUKE OF THE CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

### Chap. First.

*How Robert Stewart was maid King of Scottis. Of his sonnys and douchteris; and how the realme was tailyeit to thaim.*



ING DAVID buryit in maner afore rehersit, the noblis convenit at Lithquo, to cheis ane successour to the croun. Quhilk day, mony of the noblis beand of the opinioun of Robert Stewart; come William, Erle of Douglas, with ane gret power, and clamit the croun, be richt of Edward Ballioll and the Cumin; saying he wes surrogat in baith thair richtis, and wes thairfore just heritour to the croun. Apperit that the said Erle William wald usurpe the croun perforce, gif it wer nocht gevin to him with benevolence. Nochtheles, he wes frustrat of his purpos be George, Erle of Marche, and Johne Dunbar, Erle of Murray, and sindry othir gentillmen, quhilkis he belevit to have favorit his

action. On Oure Lady-day, in Lentern, callit the Annunciatioun, the said Robert Stewart wes crownit with gret solempnite, the LVII yeir of his age. And, that the more amite and kindnes sal stand betwix the said nobill prince, and his subdeit the Erle of Douglas foresaid; it wes accordit, that Eufame, eldest douchter to King Robert, sal be gevin to Jamis, the Erle of Douglas son, in mariage. Be this way, come the Stewartis to the croun; quhais succession regnis yit, with gret felicite, in the VIII person fra this Robert.

Quhen King Robert ressavit the croun, he had to his wife, Eufame, douchter of the Erle of Ros; of quhome he had two sonnys, Walter and David. Afore he maryit the said Erle of Rossis douchter, he had Elizabeth Mure in place of his wif; and had on hir thre sonnys, Johne, Robert, and Alexander; and divers douchteris; of quhilkis ane wes maryit on Johne Dunbar, Erle of Murray; ane othir wes maryit on Johne Lion, Lord Glamis. This erldome of Murray continewit with the Dunbarris, allanerlie during the life of this Erle Johne and his son; be quhom the successioun failyeit, except ane douchter, quhilk wes heritour to the said erledome, and wes maryit eftir on the Douglas: and be this way, the Douglas come to the erledome of Murray.

King Robert, eftir his coronatioun, maid sindry erlis, lordis, knichtis, and baronis. James Lindesay of Glenesk wes maid Erle of Crawford. In the thrid yeir of King Robert, deceissit Eufame, his quene. King Robert incontinent maryit Elizabeth Mure, lemman afore rehersit, for the affection that he had to hir barnis; that thay nicht be lawchful and reabilit, be virtew of the matrimony subsequent. Nocht lang eftir, be avise of parliament, he maid Johne, his eldest son, gottin on Elizabeth Mure, Erle of Carrik; hir secund son, Robert, Erle of Menteith and Fife; the thrid son, Alexander, Erle of Buchquhan, and Lord of Badyenocht. His eldest son, Walter, gottin on Eufame, his wife, was maid Erle of Athole, and Lord of Brechin; his secund son, David, Erle of Strathern. This Walter was the slaar of James the First; for he pretendit ay gret richt to the croun.

Not lang efter, ane parliament was set at Perth. Thair, was the croun of Scotland tailyeit to King Robert and his sonnys, in this



maner: “Johne, his son, gottin on Elizabeth Mure, his lemman; “be reason that he was his first-gottin son, and legitimat be matri- “mony subsequent, sall succede immediatly to the croun; and “failyeing of his succession male, the croun sall cum to Robert, his “secund son; and failyeing of him, to Alexander. And in falt of “his succession, the croun to cum to Walter, quhilk was gottin on “Eufame, his first wife; and failyeing succession male of him, the “croun to cum to David, Erle of Strathern, and his airis quhat- “sumevir.”

All the noblis war sworne, in thair straitest maner, to observe and keip this new tailye, in thair best maner.

## Chap. Second.

*How the Erle of Marche brint Roxburgh; and how Inglismen war sindry times discomfist be Scottis.*



THE borderaris of Ingland, quhilkis levis allanerly be thair weris and spulye; be invy of fortoun, and lang peace of Scotland, war brocht to extreme povertie: and thairfore, to find occasion of weir, thay slew certane freindis of Georgis, Erle of Marche, at the fair of Roxburgh. Erle George, impatient to suffer this slauchter, send ane herald to Hary, Erle of Northumbirland, wardane of the bordour of Ingland; desirand the slayaris of his men to be randerit, and the injuris done be thaim redressit. At last, quhen he had send oftimes to the said wardane, to the effect foresaid, and findand nocht bot answer full of derisioun; he supersedit his displeseir, quhill mair sufficient oportunitie occurrit.

In the yeir following, sindry marchandis of Ingland convenit at Roxburgh. And in the mene time, the said Erle George gaderit ane gret power, with his brothir the Erle of Murray, and tuk the said town, and put it to sak. The Inglismen, sone efter, come with ane army in Scotland, and brint certane landis pertenant to Schir

Johne Gordoun; for thay lay on marche with the Erle of Marchis landis: and saiffit nothir wife nor barne quhare thay come; regarding nocht quhat misery thay sufferit, swa thay nicht noy thair ennimes. Schir Johne Gordoun, richt desirus to revenge this injure, come in Ingland with ane gret power, and brocht ane pray of men and guddis out of it, but ony obstakill. Aganis quhome, come Johne Lilburn, with ane army; and this Gordoun, nathing affrayit, met him with gret manheid and curage: throw quhilk, followit ane scharp battal, fochtin lang time with uncertane victory; for the Scottis war five times vincust that day, and als oft victorius. At last, the Inglismen war cleirly discomfist, and Lilburn, thair capitane, brocht presoner in Scotland.

Hary Perse, Erle of Northumbirland, come, with VII.M men, to Duns, to revenge thir displeseiris. In the nicht following, the landwart men and hirdis fillit sindry dry leddrin polkis full of small stanis, and band thame togidder, in maner of clogboggis, to thair hors; syne chasit thame about the campe quhare thir Inglismen lay. Incontinent, all the gret hors that wes amang the army of Ingland war sa effrayit with the noyis of thir clogboggis, that na renyeis nicht hald thame; bot ran skatterit throw the cuntre. For feir of this trubill, the Inglismen stud all nicht in arrayit battall, ay waytand quhen thair ennimes suld invaid thaim. On the morow, thay returnit hame, for falt of hors, on thair feit; efter that thair hors war far skatterit fra thaim, and fallin in pray to the cuntre.

In the mene time, Thomas Musgrave, capitane of Berwik, come to support the Erle of Northumbirland; bot he was vincust, and brocht presonere, be Johne Gordoun, in Scotland. And nocht onely war the Scottis victorius in the eist partis of Scotland, bot in the west bordouris in the same maner; quhare Schir Johne Johnestoun of that ilk, faucht with Inglismen at sindry skarmussing, and was ay victorius.

## Chap. Third.

*Of gret pest in Scotland. How Inglismen was discomfist at Sulway.  
Of the message send be Charlis of France; and how the surname  
of Liouns tuke thair beginning.*



**A**BOUT this time, Paip Gregour the xi send ane legat fra Avinioun to King Robert, and inhibit him to intromit with ony guddis pertenand to the kirk, efter the prelat's deith. In this yeir, the abbay of Sanct Andros was brint, be negligence of ane plumber, quhilk left ane of his hait irlis in ane craw-nest; quhare it rasit sa huge fire, that it micht not be slokin quhill all the kirk was brint.

On the xxii day of October, fra our redemptioun mcccclxviii, was borne David Stewart, quhilk was efter Duk of Rothsay. And on Sanct Andros Day nixt following, the toun of Berwik was tane be Schir Johne Gordoun, within the nicht: bot it was nocht lang kept; for he was doung out be the samin way he entrit. Efter this, William, Erle of Douglas, come, with xx.M men, to the faire of Pinnire, within Ingland; and spulyeit the marchandis of all thair guddis, and returnit with incredibill pray in Scotland. The Scottis, beleving to have cumin to gret proffet be thair guddis, come to irrecoverabill dissolatioun; for with thair guddis come sa grevous pest in Scotland, that the thrid part of all the pepill deceissit. This was the thrid time that the pest come in Scotland; fra the incarnatioun of God, mcccclxx yeris.

The Inglismen, to recover thair heirschippis maid be the Erle of Douglas at Pinnire, come in Scotland our Sulway, and invadit the cuntre with fire and slauchter, in maist cruel maner. In the mene time, the Scottis gaderit, to the nowmer of D men, and stude at ane strait glen, quhil the Inglismen war cumin by thame; and with sa huge noyis and clamour set on thame, that thay gaif backis: cccc of thame war slane, and mony of al the laif perist in Sulway. King Charlis the vi, heirand the fame of thair illuster dedis, send his am-

bassatouris to King Robert in Scotland; exhortand him to follow fortoun, and invade his ennimes with continewal battal; and promittit ane yeirly pensiou of money to him and his successouris, Kingis of Scotland, gif he constranit the army of Ingland to pas out of France. Thir ambassatouris renewit the band of France with Scottis, and sone efter war depeschit: and than was send Walter Wardlaw, Cardinal and Bischop of Glasgew, with mony othir nobill men, to renew the band of France.

In this nixt yeir, Johne Lioun, Chancellor of Scotland, wes slane unhappely be James Lindesay, Erle of Crawford. It is said, that this Johne Lioun wes ane lusty man, dotat with mony giftis of nature and fortoun, with excellent bewte; and, for his gud maneris, sa plesand to every creature, that he wes maid secretar to the said Erle; and eftir that, maid sa familiar to King Robert, that he gat his douchter Elizabeth in mariage, with mony riche landis, callit Glamis: of quhom ar discendit the surname of Lionis. In memorie heiroy, thay beir the lioun in thair armes, with lillyis and tressoure, on the samin maner as the king beris; exceppand allanerie, that thay beir thair lionis in ane blak feild. Johne Lioun, eftir his mariage, grew ilk day in maist tendernes with King Robert: throw quhilk, the Erle of Crawford tuke sic displeseir, that he slew him at Forfair. King Robert, commovit for this contemptioun, banist the Erle of Crawford sindry yeris out of Scotland; quhill at last he wes recounsailit, be intercessioun of the Erllis of Douglas and Marche, to the kingis favour. And in the yeir following, quhilk wes fra our redemptioun MCCCCLXXXVI, deceissit Prince Edward of Ingland, that tuke King Johne at Poitiers. And in the nixt yeir, deceissit King Edward Windesore, his fader; and left behind him iv sonnys on live; that is to say, the Duk of Clarence, the Duk of Longcastel, the Duk of York, and the Erle of Cambrige. And in this same yeir, wes the coronatioun of King Richart, son to Prince Edward, afore deceissit.



## Chap. Fourth.

*Of gret cruelteis done be Inglismen aganis Scottis. How the King of France send gret support to Scottis.*



IN the fourt yeir eftir, quhilk wes fra our redcmptioun MCCCLXXXI, Johne Gant, Duk of Longcastel, come, with mony noble men, to treit peace betwix the two realmes of England and Scotland. At last, quhen he had tane III yeris peace with Scottis, and wes returnand hame, he gat advertising, that the commonis of England wer risin with gret power aganis this new King Richard, and slane the Bischop of Canterbury, with mony othir nobillis and gentillis of England. Incontinent, he returnit to the bordouris, and wes convoyit be William, Erle of Douglas, and Archibald Douglas, Lord of Galloway, to Halyrudhous, beside Edinburgh; quhare he remanit quhill, at last, Jak Stro wes quarterit, and all otheris of his opinioun punist.

Als sone as the trewis wer outrun, Archibald Douglas, Lord of Galloway, richt impacient to sustene the injuris daylie done, in Galloway and Annandale, be Inglismen of Lochmaben; come with ane gret power, be support of the Erlis of Douglas and Marche. And quhen thay had lyin at the sege of the said hous ix dayis, thay faucht aganis ane buschement of Inglismen that come out of Carleil to reskew the said hous; and put thaim, be lang bergane, to flicht: throw quhilk, thay gat baith victorie on thair ennimes, and the hous randerit to thaim, on ane day. Als sone as the hous wes tane, it wes cassin down to the ground. King Richard, heirand Lochmaben tane on this maner, send the Baron of Graystok, with gret munition and vittallis, to fornish the castel of Roxburgh. At last, quhen he wes cumin within ane mile to the said castell, he wes tane be the Erle of Marche, and brocht to Dunbar, with all his ordinance.

King Richart, heirand thir sindry injuris done be Scottis, send his eme the Duk of Longcastell, with gret armyis, in Scotland, baith be see and land: and eftir that he had dantit baith Mers and Louthian, he come to Edinburgh. And, for the curtesse that he gat thair in the time of his exile, he returnit in Ingland but ony ferder invasioun. Nochtheles, his navy abaid still in Forth, and heryit and brint the see-coistis on ilk side. In thair returning, thay brint the abbay of Sanct Colme; bot the kirk wes savit be miracle. It is said, ane Inglisman put fire thryis in the kirk, and it yeid out ay, and the Inglisman ran wod. This navy of Inglismen, nocht saciat with thir cruelteis, come in Fiffe, and spulyeit mony tounis thairof. At last, Thomas and Nicholas Erskinnis, Alexander Lindesay, and William Cuninghame of Kilmauris, set aponne thaim in Fiffe, and slew sa gret noumer of thaim, that few of thaim returnit to thair schippis.

In this yeir, the Erle of Douglas put the Inglismen out of Tevidale, and recoverit all the strenthis thairof; quhilkis wer haldin under the dominion of Inglismen, fra the feild of Durame to thay days. This wes the last vassalage done be the said Erle William, ane of the maist vailyeant men that wes in his dayis. He deceissit sone eftir, in the hait fevour, in the castell of Douglas; and lyis in Melros. Eftir his deith, succedit his sonne James to the erledome of Douglas; ane richt feirs and vailyeant knicht. In the moneth of September nixt following, he recoverit the toun of Berwik out of Inglismennis handis; and come with sic ane army in Ingland, that he brint and heryit all the boundis thairof, to the New Castell. Nocht lang eftir, he wes commandit be King Robert to return to Perth, all excusation ceissing, to gif his counsall concerning sindry gret materis; for Johne Veam, Admiral of France, and Erle of Valentines, come, in the moneth of May, in Scotland, with ccxl weir schippis, twa thousand d armit men, mony of thaim baronis and gentilmen: cccc of thaim wer hakbutteris; cc, cros-bowaris; with pickis, halbertis, and sic like munition of weir; thair vittallis fornest and wagis payit for ane yeir. And abone this gret ordinance, thay brocht cccc curacis of quhit harnis, cccc half-lang swordis, and L.M. crounis of the son, to be gevin quhare King Robert thoecht expedient, amang his nobillis.

Nocht lang efter, be advise of all the baronis of Scotland, King Robert rasit ane army of fifty thowsand men; and maid Robert his son, quhilk wes Erle of Fiffe, lieutenant to the said army; and maid the Erlis of Douglas and Marche to be capitane under him. This army come in England, and kest down the castellis of Werk, Furd, and Cornwell. Nochtheles, the weddir wes so bittir, thay wer constrainit to returne in Scotland. At thair returning, thay set down thair tentis at Roxburgh, to sege the castell thair of. The Admirall of France desirit, gif the castell wer won be his munitioun and folkis, to be kept, in times cuming, in the King of Francis name. And becaus the Scottis refusit to win the hous in this sort, the army skalit. And at the Hallomes nixt following, the Admirall departit in France, with the residew of his folkis.

### Chap. Fifth.

*How King Richard invadit Scotland with gret crueltis; and of gret vassalage done be William Douglas.*



**E**FTER the departing of Franchemen, the Scottis come with ane army in England, and remanit two monethis; syne returnit, with gret pray of men and guddis, in Scotland. King Richard, efter his returning out of France, to revenge thir injuris done be Scottis, come, with gret ordinance, throw the Mers and Louthiane; putting baith landis, townis, and kirkis, quhare he come, to utter eversion. He brint Melros, Dryburgh, Newbotil, and slew al the religiis men thair of; als, he brint Edinburgh, and the kirk of Sanct Geil: bot the abbay was savit be the Duk of Longcastel, for he was lugit in it afore. Sic thingis done, King Richard returnit in England, but ony dammage done to him be Scottis.

In the nixt yeir, quhilk was fra our redemption M<sup>CCCLXXXVII</sup>, deceissit Bischop Walter Warldlaw of Glasgew, cardinall.

Not lang efter the returning of King Richard in England, the

Duk of Albany come with ane army of xxx.m men in Ingland. In his army was James, Erle of Douglas, and Archebald Douglas, Lord of Galloway. This army come sa warly throw the watter of Sulway, that thay come to Cokirmouth in Ingland, and abaid thair thre days, invading the cuntre with gret cruelteis ; and returnit with gret pray of guddis in Scotland.

Amang sindry spulyeis gottin at this jornay, was found ane charter of certane landis gevin be the King of Ingland, under thir wordis :

“ I, King Athelstane,  
 “ Gevis to Paulane,  
 “ Oddam,  
 “ Roddam ;  
 “ Als gud, and als fair,  
 “ As evir thay mine war.  
 “ And thairto witnes, Mald, my wife.”

Quhilk charter is nocht unlike to ane charter gevin be King William ; in maner as followis :

“ Heir I, William, King,  
 “ The thrid yeir of my ring,  
 “ Gevis to the, Norinand Huntare,  
 “ (To me thow art baith leif and dere,)  
 “ The Hop, and the Hoptoun ;  
 “ And all the boundis up and down,  
 “ Under the erd to hell, above the erd to hevin ;  
 “ Fra me, and fra mine,  
 “ To the, and to thine,  
 “ Als fre, as the kingrik is mine :  
 “ To verify that this is suith,  
 “ I bite the quhit walx with my tuith,  
 “ Before Meg, Mald, Marjory, and my eldest son :  
 “ For ane bow, and ane braid arrow,  
 “ Quhen I cum to hunt apon Yarrow.”

Be thir charteris apperis, mair faith was gevin to wordis of kingis, princis, and othir pepill, in thay dayis, than ar gevin now ; for the ingine of man sekis sa many slichtis, and new inventionis, that na



wordis can be found sufficient to strenth sic donationis and charteris gevin in oure days.

In this last jornay aganis Inglismen, William, son to Archebald Douglas, Lord of Galloway, wan gret fame and honour. For, above mony othir his vailyeant dedis, he brint the suberbillis of Carlele, havand bot two servandis in his cumpany; and maid sa mervellus slauchter on the sodjouris thairof, that he kest sindry of thaim our the brig, and otheris slew quhilkis kepit the said brig. Efter this, quhen the said town was segit, he followit sa feirsly on the sodjouris quhilkis ischit furth, that he was finaly tane presonere be foure Inglismen, and his wappinnis doung fra him: at last, quhen he was to be brocht within the town, he fellit two of thaim with his neif, and the remanent two chasit; throw quhilk he rescoursit himself fra his ennimes. King Robert, for this maist honorabil vassalage, gaif to the said William his douchter Gelis in mariage, quhilk excellit all othir wemen in bewte. It is said, the King of France was sa inamorit with this virgine, that he commandit ane paintour to cum in Scotland, to paint hir visage to the quik; nochtheles, afore the cuming of this paintour, scho was maryit on the said William. This William gat on hir ane douchter; quhilk was maryit efter on the Erle of Orknay.

### Chap. Sixth.

*How Robert Stewart and William Douglas did gret vassalage in Ireland. How James, Erle of Douglas, vincust Hary Perse in singular battall. And how he segit the New Castell.*



IN the yeir following, quhilk was fra our redemption, MCCCLXXXVIII, Robert, Erle of Fiffe, and Archebald, Lord of Galloway, entrit with ane proude army in Ingland: and, in the same time, come sindry Ireland-men, with gret buschementis, in Galloway, and tuke gret prayis out of the samin. Robert Stewart, and William Douglas, son to Archebald,

Lord of Galloway, till revenge thair extorsionis, went with ane army in Ireland, and segit ane strang town, namit Carlingfurd. The cieteyanis thairof, havand na pissance to resist, purchest trewis for certane sowmes of money; and, in the mene time, thay gaderit ane cumpany of DCCC men, be support of ane othir town, namit Don-dalk. Nochtheles, the said Robert and William faucht with sic manheid, that thay vincust thair ennimes; and efter that thay had spulyeit this toun of Carlingfurd, thay brint it in powder: syne tuk xv schippis quhilkis war lyand in the raid, and chargit thaim with the guddis of this toun; and in thair returning hame, thay spulyeit the Ile of Man.

Nocht lang efter thair returning in Scotland, King Richard send ane army in Scotland. This army enterit in the Mers, and kest down mony gret touris and strenthis thairof. King Robert than convenit all his nobillis at Aberdene; in the quhilk, was concludit to rais the power of the realme with al deligence, to revenge thir injuris done be Inglismen. Not lang efter, ii armyis war rasit. The first was gevin in governance to Robert Stewart, Erle of Fiffe; havand with him the Erle of Menteith; Archebald Douglas, Lord of Galloway; and Alexander Lindesay of Walcop; to the nowmer of xvm men, to pas in Cumbir. The tothir army was gevin to James, Erle of Douglas, and George, Erle of Marche; havand with thaim James Lindesay, Erle of Crawford; Johne Dunbar, Erle of Murray; and Hay, Constabill of Scotland; with siclik nowmer as afore, to invade Northumberland. Thir armyis wrocht sic cruelteis, that nocht was hard bot spraichis and rummissing of deand pepill, in all partis quhare thay come; with maist terribill flambis, bring-and gret townis and bigingis to uter rewine. At last, baith thir armyis met togidder at the New Castell, efter that thay had past, with swerd and fire, throw al boundis of Northumbirland and Cumber.

In the mene time, the Erle of Douglas chesit x.m vailyeant men to sege the New Castel, quhilk standis upon the Watter of Tyne; and began to serche deligently, be quhat maner he nicht maist esaly invade the said town: quhilk was than full of pepill; for the maist part of all the chosin men of Northumberland to York

war in the said town ; with Schir Hary Perse, secound son to the Erle of Northumbirland ; callit, for his ithand priking, Hary Haitspure. This Hary, confiding in his singulare manheid and lang use of arnes, come furth of the New Castell, desiring to fecht with the Erle of Douglas in singular battall. The Douglas, na thing refusinge his desiris, glaidly condescendit to fecht in quhat sort he plesit. Finaly, thir two feirs campionis montit on thair bardit coursouris, and ran aufully togidder, with square and ground speris, to the deith. The Dowglas, wise and circumspect in all his doingis, nocht onely savit himself fra displeseir of ennimes ; bot, be his strenth and singulare manheid, dang the Perse out of the sadil. The Inglismen, quhilk stude afore the portis, abiding the chance of fortoun, suddanly rescoursit the Perse, and brocht him to thair town. Thus succedit na les honour to the Dowglas than dishonoure to the Perse.

Sic thingis done, the Dowglas callit all his capitanis before him, to schaw thaim in quhat part the toun nicht be maist esaly takin. Incontinent, all his army come pertly with ledderis to the wallis, and fillit the fowseis with gret multitude of hay and treis. Nocht thes, the town was sa vailyeantly defendit, that he was constranit to depart fra the sege, with gret slaughter of his folkis ; and sone efter, he tuke his viage to returne in Scotland.

## Chap. Seventh.

*How the Inglismen war discomfist at Ottirburn ; the Erle of Douglas slane ; and the Perse brocht presoner in Scotland. How the Hepburnis take thair beginning.*



Now was Erle James of Dowglas cumin to the town of Ottirburn, in Riddisdale, to have returnit in Scotland ; quhen suddanly come to him ane borderar on ane swift gelding, and schew how the Inglismen war cumand on him with arrayit battallis. Thus war the Scottis gretumly effrayit. Nochtheles, the Douglas exhortit thaim to remember thair frequent victoryis, be quhilkis thay vincust, sa oft afore, thair ennimes : and prayit thaim to feir nocht the multitude of thair fois ; for it was na difficulte to vincus thaim quhilkis hes bene sa oftimes afore be thaim discomfist. Attour, thair ennimes war na ma at that time than thay war afore at Bannokburn, qubare xxx.M discomfist ccc.M. And finally, he desirit thaim to have gud sicht to thair manheid and vassalage, provin with sa gret felicitye in the yeris afore past ; that thay may conques sum new and recent victory, quhilk suld be mair aprisit than ony auld glore of othir victoryis past afore. And becaus he knew al the folkis in his cumpany, and was exercit with thame mekill of his dayis, he exhortit every ane of thame be himself, to schaw thair manheid and virtew with sum notabill vassalage on thair ennimes.

On the tothir side, Hary Haitspur, capitane of Inglismen, exhortit his folkis to fecht for defence of thair cuntre, and thair parentis, children, wiffis, and guddis ; and schew how thay war of sic pissance, that thay nicht distroy thair ennimes at thair pleseir. And becaus victory was sicker in thair handis, and thair ennimes perturbat ; best was to pas forthwart with sic curage, that thair ennimes may be vincust at thair first juning. Incontinent, be sound of trumpet, baith the armyis junit in maist fury, and faucht lang with uncertane victory ; quhil at last thay war severit fra othir be cuming



of the nicht. Nochtheles, thay abaid the rising of the mone, to fecht agane with new battall. Als sone, thairfore, as the mone was risin, thay junit agane, with mair hatrent than afore : and quhen the fore bront of the Scottis war slane, the Inglismen began to put the Scottis abak ; and, but dout, thay had won the ansenyeis of the Douglas, and put his army to flicht, war not Patrik Hepburn, with his son and freindis, come the mair haistely to support of Scottis : be quhome the battallis war renewit.

Quhill the armyis war fechtand in sic cruelte, the Douglas come with ane hevy mace, of mair wecht and quantite than ony man micht weild in thay dayis ; and ruschit amang the gret preis of his ennimes, quhare he maid sic terribil slauchter, that thay war finaly put to flicht. The chace continewit, with gret slauchter on Inglismen, quhil the brek of the day.

In this battal, Hary Perse, and his brothir Rodulphe, war takin be Keith, Marcheall of Scotland. Of Inglismen war slane 10, al noblis. Mony war takin : amang quhom war the two Perseis, Robert Ogil, Thomas Halbart, John Lilburn, William Wauchlute, Robert Hekon, John Colwell, and Patrik Lovell, knichtis ; with mony othir noblis, in sic multitude, that the takaris war of smal nowmer, in compare of the gret nowmer of presoneris. This victory succedit not to Scottis but gret slauchter of mony nobil men ; for quhen the feild was cleirly discomfist, the Erllis of Crawford, Marche, and Murray entrit in the Douglas pallioun, quhare he was returnit efter this victory, and fand him neir deid ; thryis strikin throw the body, and ane deidis wound in his heid ; quhilk was gevin to him be Inglismen, efter that his hewmond was not bound weil to his heid. And quhen thay saw him in sic dolorus array, thay fel doun in teris and murning. Than the Douglas, with sic curage as he micht, said to thaim in thir wordis : “ My hartly freindis, avoid “ all this lament and dolour out of your breistis, and reiose of the “ present victory, quhilk is grantit to yow be special favoure of “ God. We have jeoperd our livis this day, for the honour that “ is succedit now to us. Thairfore, turn your teris and dolour in “ impnis and orisonis for my saule. Foryet not my gud dedis done “ for yow, howbeit this mischance be fallin to me. And gif ye de-

“sire to recompence my indeficient kindnes, sa oft sustenit for your  
 “weill and eis; I beseik yow to pray the reuthful and maist pissant  
 “God to have mercy of my saule. I beseik yow, now, cheris vir-  
 “tew and manheid, for defence of your realme and liberte; and  
 “hald yourself in sic perpetuall concord, that ye may daily increse  
 “in honour and amite, to the terrour of fayis.”


Skarsly war thir wordis said, quhen he, ouriset with dolour, randerit his saule to God. And wes, quhill he levit, ane of the maist vailyeant campionis that evir decorit this realme with maist honoure. Efter quhais deith, sic sorrowful cheir followit in his army, that nothir the present victory, spulyeis, nor gret riches falling to thaim be chance of fortoun, micht contene thair ene fra continewal teris.

Nocht lang efter, be cuming of Robert Stewart, Erle of Fife, the dolour, howbeit it was sum part ceissit, was renewit; for thought this victory succedit to Scottis, with gret murdir of Inglisemen, yit nane was in that army bot wald have bene content to have changit his life for the Dowglas. This Erle of Dowglas was brocht, efter his deith, to Melros, and buryit beside his fader, Erle William. And becaus this Erle James had na airis gottin on his body, Archibald, Lord of Galloway, succedit to the said erldome. It is said, in the time of King David Bruce, ane Inglisman was tane presoner, namit Hepburn; and haldin mony yeris in Scotland, for none-payment of his ransom. At last, quhen the Erle of Marche was in dangeir of his life, be rage of ane insolent and undantit hors; this Hepburn come pertly to his bridil, quhen na othir man durst refrene this hors. Thus savit he the Erlis life, and gat certane landis in Louthiane. Quhais posterite is growin in sic pissance of landis and surname, that now, by sindry noble knichtis quhilkis ar in oure dayis, ar descendit of the samin blud, mony noble Erllis of Bothwell, of na les honour, nobilite, and landis, than ony othir erllis or baronis ar in this realm: and of that surname hes bene mony noble prelatis, of singular eruditoun, as yit occurris in our dayis.

This battall of Otterburne was strikin on Sanct Oswaldis Day, the v day of August; the yeir of God, MCCCLXXXVIII yeris.

## Chap. Eighth.

*How Robert, Erle of Fif, was maid Governour of Scotland. How Alexander, bastard son to King Robert, was punist for his tyranny; and of King Robertis Deith.*

N the nixt yeir, was ane parliament haldin at Perth; in the quhilk, King Robert schew afore his noblis, that he was so brokin with age, that he nicht nocht do his devore, in governance of his realme. And thairfore, be consent of the thre estatis, he maid Robert, his secund son, Governour of Scotland; for his eldest son, Johné, Erle of Carrik, gat sic ane strake on his leg, be Schir James Douglas hors, of Dalkeith, that he nicht nocht travell throw the realme.

King Richard, efter this battall of Otterburn, send the Marcheal of Ingland to be wardane fornens Scotland; for Hary Perse and his bruthir was haldin presoneris in Scotland. This Erle, at his first cuming, reprovit the bordouraris of Ingland, of the misaventure falling to thame at Ottirburne; and said, It was gret schame to thaim to be vincust with Scottis, thay beand ay foure for ane. At last, he maid his gret aith, quharevir he fand ony Scottis, he suld geif thaim battall, howbeit he war in few, and thay in gret nowmer. Nochtheles, as oft occurris, sic vane ostentation succedis sendill with gravite and honoure to the end. This Erle, nocht lang efter, quhen Robert, Governour of Scottis, was cumin in Northumbirland with ane smal army; tuk him to flicht: and quhen the herald demandit him, quhy he was unmindfull of his vote; he answerit, That he was commandit be his maister to jeoperd not sa mony lusty and vailyeant men as war in his army, but sicker advantage. Robert the Governour, efter that he had waistit the maist part of Northumbirland, returnit, with gret pray of men and guddis, in Scotland. In the same yeir, trewis was tane, for thre yeris, betwix France and Ingland; and the Scottis, gif thay plesit, war comprisit within the said trewis.

Sone efter, come ambassatouris to King Robert, direckit fra King Richard of England, to se gif he wald stand at this peace afore contrackit: be quhom was answerit, He wald gladly stand thairto.

Quhill thir gret materis war dressit in Scotland, Alexander Stewart, Erle of Buchquhan, the thrid son of King Robert, brint the cathedrall kirk of Murray, the lantern and ornament of the North of Scotland in thay days. King Robert, impacient to sustene sa gret oppression and cruelte done be his sonne Alexander; tuk him, efter that he was brocht to his presence, and put him in strang pre-soun: quhare he remanit to the end of his life.

The realme beand, on this maner, brocht to gud tranquillite; King Robert, be lang age, was brocht to gret infirmite: and deceissit, at his castel of Dundonald, the xix day of Aprile; fra our redemptioun, ane thousand, iiii hundreth, xc yeris; efter that he had rong xix yeris.

### Chap. Ninth.

*Of King Robert the Thrid. Of the Deith of William Douglas, Lord of Niddisdale. How the Clannis of Clankais and Glenquhattanis faucht at Perth.*



FTER the deith of King Robert the Secund, his sonne, Johne, Erle of Carrik, was crownit at Scone, on Our Lady-day, in August, callit The Assumptioun. The lordis thocht that Johne was ane unchancy name to be ane king; for King Johne of France wes tane unhappely at Poiteris, as is afore rehersit: and, thairfore, thay callit him Robert, efter his fader.

About this time, William Douglas of Niddisdale was chosin, be the lordis of Sprus, as admirall, to pas, with cc and xl schippis, aganis the Turkis. Sa far this William was estemit afore the said lordis, that he was invyit gretumly be Lord Clifford, Inglisman;



and, thairfore, the said Clifford appelit him in singulare battall. Nochtheles, afore the cuming of the day, this Clifford was sa af-frayit, that he lay in wait with gret buschementis of men, and, finally, slew the said Douglas, on the brig of Danskin. Be his deith, ceissit this gret vassalage that nicht have bene done aganis the Turkis.

Nocht lang efter the coronation of Robert the Thrid, tithingis come, that Duncane Stewart, son to Alexander, the kingis bruthir afore rehersit, was cumin in Angus with gret buschementis of men; and slew Walter Ogilvy, with his sonnis and freindis, in defence of the cuntre. Bot his attemptatis war nocht lang unpunist; for he was tane be the Erle of Crawford, and all his compliceis punist for thair conspiracy.

At this time, mekil of all the north of Scotland was hevely trublit be two clannis of Irsmen, namit Clankayis and Glenquhattanis; invading the cuntre, be thair weris, with ithand slauchter and reif. At last, it was appointit betwix the heidis-men of thir two clannis, be avise of the Erlis of Murray and Crawford, that xxx of the principall men of the ta clan sal cum, with othir xxx of the tothir clan, arrayit in thair best avise; and sall convene afore the king at Perth, for decision of al pleis; and fecht with scharp swerdis to the deith, but ony harnes: and that clan quhare the victory succedit, to have perpetuall empire above the tothir. Baith thir clannis, glaid of this condition, come to the North Inche, beside Perth, with jugis set in scaffaldis, to discuss the verite. Ane of thir clannis wantit ane man to perfurnis furth the nowmer, and wagit ane carll, for money, to debait thair actioun, howbeit this man pertenit na thing to thaim in blud nor kindnes. Thir two clannis stude arrayit with gret hatrent aganis othir; and, be sound of trumpet, ruschit togidder; takand na respect to thair woundis, sa that thay nicht distroy thair ennimes; and faucht in this maner lang, with uncertane victory: quhen ane fel, ane othir was put in his rowme. At last, the Clankayis war al slane except ane, that swam throw the watter of Tay. Of Glenquhattannis, was left xi personis on live; bot thay war sa hurt, that thay nicht nocht hald thair swerdis in thair handis. This debait was fra the incarnation, mcccxcvi yeris.

## Chap. Tenth.

*How King Robert maid his son Duke of Rothesay, and his bruthir Duke of Albany. Of gret vassalage done be the Erle of Crawford.*



IN the thrid yeir efter, ane parliament was haldin at Perth; quhair King Robert the Thrid, efter mony constitutionis done for the common weil, maid David, his eldest son, havand xviii yeris of age, Duk of Rothesay; and Robert, his brothir, quhilk wes Governour, and Erle of Menteith and Fiffe, Duk of Albany. Thir wer the first dukis that wer in Scotland.

During the peace betwix Inglismen and Scottis, frequent companyis wer of Inglismen in Scotland; and siclik of Scottis in Ingland: throw quhilk, oftymes mony honorabil tornamentis wer betwix Scottis and Inglis, for defence of thair honouris, and gloire in armes. Amang quhom, wes not litil apprisit, the honorabill victorie gottin be David, Erle of Crawford, on the brig of Londoun, aganis Lord Wellis, in this maner: Lord Wellis was send ambassatour in Scotland, concerning certane hie materis betwix the two Kingis of Inglis and Scottis. And quhen he wes at ane solempne banket, quhare Scottismen and Inglis wer commoning on dedis of armes, this Lord Wellis said: "Lat wourdis have na place. Gif ye  
"knew nocht the chevelry and vailyeant dedis of Inglismen, assailye  
"me, day and place quhen ye list, and ye sall sone have experience." Than said David, Erle of Crawford, "I wil assailye." Incontinent, be consent of athir parteis, day and place wes assignit: Lord Wellis chesit the brig of Londoun for the place, and Erle David chesit Sanct Georgis Day, be reason that he wes sum time ane vailyeant knight. Thus departit Lord Wellis towart London. Afore the day, Erle David come with xxx personis, weil acouterit, to London.

Als sone as the day of battall wes cumin, baith the partyis wer convoyit to the brig. Sone eftir, be sound of trumpat, the two par-

tyis ran haistelie togidder, on thair bardit cursouris, with square and groundin speris, to the deith. Erle David, nochtwithstanding the violent dint of speris brokin in his hewmont and visage, sat so stranglie, that the pepill, movit of vane suspitioun, cryit, Erle David, contrar the lawis of armis, wes bound in the sadil. Erle David, herand this murmour, demontit of his hors; and, but ony support, ascendit agane in the sadill. Incontinent, thay ruschit togidder, with new speris, the secound time, with birnand ire to conques honoure. Bot in the third rink, Lord Wellis wes dounge out of the sadill, with sic violence, that he fell to the ground, with gret displeseir of Inglismen. Erle David, seing him fall, demontit haistelie fra his hors, and tenderly embrasit him; that the pepill nicht understand he faucht with na hatrant, bot allanerlie for the glore of victorie. In signe of more humanite, he vesityt him ilk day, quhill he recoverit his heill. Mony othir contentionis wes at this time, betwix Inglismen and Scottis; ilk man contending to decore his awin nation with maist loving.

Not lang eftir, Erle David maid ane solempne banket, quhair mony noblis of Ingland wer present for the time; nocht ceissing, as thair custome is, to loif maist thameself. At last, quhen the herald of Ingland had blasonit this Erle David, for ane vailyeant and nobil knight, ane Inglisman, movit of invy, said. “It is not mer-  
 “vel thocht Scottis be nobill and vailyeant; for thay wer gottin be  
 “our nobil eldaris, quhen thair faderis wer banist, and thair realme  
 “neir conquest.” Than said Erle David, “It is no mervell thought  
 “Inglismen be febill and degenerat; for thay wer gottin be cukis  
 “and freiris of Ingland, quhen the gret nobillis thairof gat us in  
 “Scotland.” Sic humaniteis and kindnes continewing betwix Ing-  
 lis and Scottis, Erle David returnit in Scotland, with mony nobillis  
 of Ingland. And becaus he vincust Lord Wellis apoun Sanct  
 Georgis Day, he foundit vii preistis to sing for him, in our Lady  
 Kirk of Dundee, in the honour of Sanct George.

## Chap. Eleventh.

*How Schir Robert Morlo was vincust be Hew Traill. How Hary, Duke of Longcastell, conquest the crown of England, and deprivit King Richard.*



OCHT lang eftir, Schir Robert Morlo, Inglisman, come in Scotland, reddy to fecht aganis ony man that wald assailye him in singulare battall. He vincust Archibald Edmonstoun and Hew Wallace: bot, at last, he wes vincust be Hew Traill, at Berwik, and deceissit for displeseir. Sindry othir tornamentis wer, the samin yeir, betwix Inglismen and Scottis, with variant chance of fortoun. The samin yeir, King Richard of England maryit Isabell, douchter to Charlis, the vi of that name, King of France. And becaus scho had bot xi yeris in age, and nicht nocht sustene the det of mariage, King Richard went, be avise of his noblis, to dant the rebellion of Ireland; with purpos to remane in the samin, quhil his wif war cumin to perfection.

Sone efter his departing in Ireland, the Erllis of Derby, Northumbirland, with mony othir noblis of England, conspirit to put him fra the crown. King Richard, herand this conspiracy maid aganis him, come out of Ireland in Walis, and send writtingis to all his freindis to cum haistely to him, that he nicht recover his realme, and punis the rebellion of his noblis. The principal lordis quhilkis conspirit aganis him, send thair writtingis, desiring to be reconsalit with him; and promittit, gif he wald remit thair offence, not only to resave him with maist honour, bot nevir to rebell aganis him in times cuming. King Richard, giffand thame credit in this maner, come out of Walis; and in his returning to London, wes tane be his lordis, nochtwithstanding thair promes, and put in captivite, quhill he renuncit all richt that he had to the crown of England, and wes adjugit to perpetual preson. Eftir lang truble, he gat furth of



preson, under habit of ane woman ; and come in Galloway, quhare he maid service to ane Scot, namit Makdonald. At last he wes knawin, and brocht to King Robert the Thrid : be quhom he wes tretit in gret reverence. King Richard, knawing himself dejeckit fra his rial estait, gaif him hail to contemplation : quhill, at last, he deceissit in Striveling, and wes buryit in the Blak-Freris thair of. Eftir his expulsioun, Hary, the fourt of that name, and son to Johne Gant, Duke of Longcastell, wes crounit at Westmonister, the XIII day of October, the yeir of God, MCCCXCIX.

Nocht lang eftir, Isabel, King Richardis wife, havand bot XII yeris in age, returnit to Paris, efter that scho was redemit be hir fader with gret ransoun. It is said, ane heremit come to King Hary, efter his coronation, and monest him, be auctorite of God, to restore the just heritour to the croun ; and pronosticat, gif he war rebelland thairto, gret vengeance and calamite suld fall to his hous. King Hary, dredand that this heremitis wordis suld move the pepill to conspiracy aganis him, gart put this heremit hastely to deith. And as this heremit schew, sa followit ; for gret slauchter and trubil succedit continewally, betwix the airis of King Richard, and the hous of Longcastel : quhill, at last, Hary, the VII of that name, maryit the douchter of Edward the IV, just heritour to the croun of Ingland. And so baith thir housis war recounsailit to othir, but ony contention following.

## Chap. Twelfth.

*How the Mariage betwix the Duk of Rothesay, and the Erle of Marchis Douchter, was dissolvit. Of the trubill that come thairthrow.*



**I**N the nixt yeir, quhilk wes mcccc fra our salvatioun, King Robert weddit his son, the Duk of Rothesay, on the Erle of Marchis douchter. Archebald, Erle of Douglas, havand indignation that the Erle of Marche suld be preferrit to him, maryit his douchter Merjory on the said Duke, be avise of Robert, Duk of Albany. The Erle of Marche, afore the mariage wes completit, went to the king, to inquire gif he wald stand to his first contract. And becaus he gat na plesand answer, he maid ane vow to revenge the contemption done to him, with al displeseir he micht.

Sone eftir, he went in Ingland, and left his house of Dunbar, weil stuffit, in keiping of his sister son, Robert Maitland. Archebald, Erle of Douglas, eftir his departing, come to Dunbar, and desirit the samin to be randerit to him, be scharp writtingis of the kingis. This Robert Maitland wes sa astonist be the kingis writtingis, that he randerit the hous to the Douglas. George, Erle of Marche, knowing the hous tane fra him be the Douglas, brocht all his freindis in Ingland: and determit, as maist ennimy to Scotland, to invaid it with all displeseir. King Robert, dreidand trouble to returne be his rebellion, send ane herald, desiring him, be his writtingis, to returne in Scotland; and to haif al injuris reparit at his pleseir. And becaus the said George refusit to return in Scotland, quhill he had done sum hie displeseir to the Erle of Douglas, King Robert send writtingis to King Hary of Ingland, desiring him, gif he wald intertene peace with Scottis, to put George Dunbar out of his boundis of Ingland; and to suffir na rebellis of Scotland to haif resset within his realme. King Hary denyit thir ho-

nest petitionis of King Robert. Thus wes the peace dissolvit betwix Scottis and Inglis.

Sone eftir, Hary Haitspur, and the said Erle of Marche, tuke gret pray of guddis out of Scotland. Nocheles, afore thair returning to Berwik, Archebald, Erle of Douglas, recoverit all the samin; and come to Edinburgh: quhare he sone efter deceissit, in the hait fevir. This Archebald wes ane nobilman of singulare manheid and virtew: havand preistis and religious men in gret reverence. He foundit the colleige of Bothwell, and the nunreis of Linclowden; quhilk wes eftir changit in ane colleige of preistis, becaus the nunnis thairof wer of evill life. Eftir the deith of Archebald, Erle of Douglas, his secound son, Archebald, wes maid Erle of Douglas, for his eldest son, William, deceissit in the yeir afore.

### Chap. Thirteenth.

*How King Hary come in Scotland with gret army. Of the deith of the Duk of Rothesay; and how the Scottis war discomfist at Nesbet, be the Erle of Marche.*



SHORT time eftir, King Hary come in Scotland with ane army. Howbeit, he did smal injuris to the pepil thairof; for he desirit nocht bot his baner to be ereckit on thair wallis. Alwayis he wes ane plesand ennime; and did gret humaniteis to the pepil, in al placis of Scotland, quhair he wes lugit. Finalie, he schew to the lordis of Scotland, that he come in thair realme, more be counsall of his noblis, than ony hatrent that he bure to Scottis. Sone eftir, he returnit, but ony ferther injure, in England.

In the nixt yeir, quhilk wes fra our redemption, mcccc, deceissit Walter Trail, Bischop of Sanct Androis. And, in the samin yeir, deceissit Quene Annabell Drommond. Be quhais deith, succedit gret displeseir to hir son, David, Duk of Rothesay: for, during hir life, he wes haldin in virtews and honest occupatioun: eftir hir

deith, he began to rage in all maner of insolence; and fulyeit virginis, matronis, and nunnis, be his unbridillit lust. At last, King Robert, informit of his young and insolent maneris, send letteris to his brothir, the Duke of Albany, to intertene his said son, the Duk of Rothesay, and to leir him honest and civill maneris. The Duk of Albany, glaid of thir writtingis, tuk the Duk of Rothesay betwix Dundee and Sanct Androis, and brocht him to Falkland, and inclusit him in the tour thair of, but ony meit or drink. It is said, ane woman, havand commiseratioun on this Duk, leit meill fall doun throw the loftis of the toure: be quhilkis, his life wes certane dayis savit. This woman, fra it wes knawin, wes put to deith. On the same maner, ane othir woman gaif him milk of hir paup, throw ane lang reid; and wes slane with gret cruelte, fra it wes knawin. Than wes the Duke destitute of all mortall supplie; and brocht, finalie, to sa miserable and hungry appetite, that he eit, nocht allanerlie the filth of the toure quhare he wes, bot his awin fingaris: to his gret marterdome. His body wes beryit in Lundoris, and kithit miraklis mony yeris eftir: quhil, at last, King James the First began to punis his slayaris; and fra that time furth, the miraculis ceissit.

The samin time, George, Erle of Marche, to revenge the contemptioun done to him be the Erle of Douglas, come, with the Erle of Northumbirland, in Scotland; and had ane gret pray of men and guddis out of the samin. To revenge thir attemptatis, the Erle of Douglas come with ane army in Northumbirland, and waistit the cuntre with gret displeseiris. Als sone as he wes returnit, Patrik Hepburn went in England, and did litill les dammage to it than the Douglas army did afore. And thought he wes counsalit be his freindis to depart hame, becaus the Inglismen wer cumand on him with more multitude of peple than he micht resist: yit he refusit; and finalie, faucht with sic manheid aganis Inglismen, that he aperit to haif the victorie. And, incontinent, George Dunbar, eldest son to the Erle of Marche, come with ane hundreth speris on him, and put his folkis to flicht. In this battall wes slane, Patrik Hepburn of the Halis, with mony gentill men of his hous. Sindry wer takin, as Johne and William Cokburne, Robert Lawder of the Bas, Johne and Thomas Haliburtoun. This battall wes strikin at Nes-



bet, in the Mers, the xxii day of Juny, fra our redemptioun mcccc and twa yeris.

### Chap. Fourteenth.

*How the Scottis war discomfist at Hommildoun. How Hary Haitspur, and Thomas Perse his brothir, was slane at Schrewisbery; and the Erle of Douglas tane.*



ISBET discomfist on this wise, followit ane othir discomfitour, more displesand: for Archebald, Erle of Douglas, maich to King Robert, richt desirus to revenge thir injuris done be Inglismen, come, with x.m men, to the New Castell; and brint and heryit the cuntre, on al partis quhare he come. In his army wes Mordok, eldest son to Duk Robert, Erle of Fiffe; Thomas, Erle of Murray; George, Erle of Angus; with mony othir noblis of Scotland. At last, quhen thay wer returnand hame, with infinite pray of riches and guddis; met thaim Hary Haitspure, and George, Erle of Marche; and trublit thame sa be dint of arrowis, that thay war put to flicht. Nochtheles, be hortation of Adam Gordoun and Schir Johne Swintoun, thay renewit battal, and faucht with litill mair felicite than afore; for thay war al slane and tane.

In this unhappy battall war slane, Schir Johne Swintoun, Adam Gordon, Johne Levinstoun of Callendar, Alexander Ramsay of Dalhousy; with sindry othir gentilmen and nobillis of Scotland. Archebald, Erle of Douglas; Mordo Stewart, eldest son to Duke Robert; George, Erle of Angus; Robert Erskin of Alloway: the Lord Saltoun; James Douglas, Maister of Dalkeith, with his ii brethir, Johne and William; with mony of al the baronis of Fife and Louthiane, war tane.

Hary Haitspur, proude of this victory, come, with his victorius army, throw Louthiane and Mers, with purpos to subdew the samin to the empire of Ingland. And, be pissance of the Erle of Marche,

he come in Tevidale, and segit the castel of Cokclavis: bot it was sa vailyeantly defendit be Johne Greinlay, that he was constrainit to depart thairfra; efter that the said Johne Greinlay had gevin plegis, gif he gat na rescours within 11 monethis, to rander the hous. This battal of Hommildon was strikin on the Rude Day, in hervist; fra the incarnation, MCCCCIII yeris.

Efter the departing of Inglismen, Johne Gledstanis went to Duk Robert, Governour, schawing how the castel was condicionat to be randerit, without it gat support agane the terme affixit. Mony of the noblis, quhen thay be convenit to this effect, thocht better to fine the castell of Cokclavis, than to jeoperd the pepil in defence thairof; for thay wer brokin be the weris afore rehersit. Thus had the castel bene left desert, war not, the Governour declarit to pas, in propir person, to the rescours thairof, howbeit nane of the noblis wald follow him.

In the mene time, rais sic displeseir betwix King Hary of England and Hary Haitspur, that it was not necessar to send ony support in rescours of the said castell; for Hary Haitspur, fenyceand him to pas aganis the Scottis, rasit ane army, be support of the Duk of York and the Erle of Stanefurd; havand with him, in cumpany, the Erle of Douglas, quhilk was tane afore at Hommildoun, with mony his freindis, to support him aganis King Hary, under this condition: "Gif the King of England was discomfist and put fra the croun, the said Erle of Douglas suld be ranson fre, and have Berwik randerit to him in reward of his assistance."

King Hary, knawing thair rebellion, come with arrayit battall to Schrewisbery, quhare the Perse was assemblit for the time. Quhen the battallis war reddy to june, thay war severit be intervention of George, Erle of Marche; efter that King Hary was sworn to exoner him of the croun of England, gif sic thingis war acceptable to his noblis, erar or sa gret effusion of blud suld be maid in his defalt. The Perse, gevand ferme credit to thir wordis, sufferit his army to skail to thair loginnis for the nicht, that thay nicht the better be furnist of vittallis. Als sone as thay war skailit, the king set on tham with arrayit battallis, and slew the said Hary Perse, and Thomas Perse, his brothir; with mony othir noblis and heidismen of

thair factioun. The Erle of Douglas, quhillk assistit to the said Hary Perse be condition afore rehersit, faucht that day with incredible manheid, and slew iii men arrayit with the kingis coit-armour of Ingland; and quhen he saw the fourt cum in the samin array, he mervellit be quhat way sa mony kingis war cumin aganis him. At last, quhen the feild was discomfist, he was takin, and nane of his cumpany saiffit bot himself; for he was knawin for ane of the maist vailyeant knichtis in Albion. This Erle was namit Archebald Tineman; for he wan nevir feild that he was in, howbeit he faucht ay with gret manheid. He tint ane of his ene at the battal of Homildon; and at this feild, he tint ane of his stanis. At last, quhen he was brocht to the supper, at the Quenis tabill of Ingland, efter that mony lordis of Ingland war menand thair hevy woundis gottin in this last battal; he said, "Thay sit full stil, that hes ane revin breik." And thocht the victory succedit to King Hary, yit it was not but gret slauchter of his best capitanis: bot mair nowmer war slane of his contrapart.

Hary Perse, Erle of Northumbirland, knawing baith his sonnis slane in this last battal at Schrewisbery, traistit na felicite to abide in Ingland; and come in Scotland, with his nepot: and was ressavit be Hary Wardlaw, Bischop of Sanct Androis.

## Chap. Fifteenth.

*How James, second son to King Robert, was tane be Inglismen.  
Of the tennour of the letteris send with him.*



Ow was King Robert advertist, that his son, the Duk of Rothesay, was deceissit, with gret martyrdome, in the Tour of Falkland; and throw his deith, he grew ilk day in gret sorow and malancoly. At last, he send for his brothir, Robert, Duk of Albany; and accusit him for the treasonable slauchter of the Duk of Rothesay, his son. Duk Robert, be mony vane reasonis, schew him innocent of the Duk of Rothesayis slauchter; and promittit, gif the king wald pas with him to Edinburgh, to deliver the limmaris bound in his handis, quhilkis war occasion of his sonnys deith. The king, richt desirus to revenge his sonnys deith, come out of Bute, in ane cheriot, to Edinburgh. And in the mene time, Duk Robert deliverit in his handis certane limmaris, to be punist for the slauchter of the said Duk, howbeit thay nevir saw him in thair dayis. And thocht thir limmaris war accusit and punist to the deith, yit the Duk was haldin ay in suspicion to the king; for he semit to usurpe the croun, quhen al the kingis sonnys war slane: and, thairfore, King Robert besocht God to send vengeance on the said Robertis posterite, and al otheris quhilkis war occasion of his son the Duk of Rothesayis deith.

King Robert, efter his returning to Bute, send his second son, James, Prince of Scotland, to Walter Wardlaw, Bischop of Sanct Androis; with the son of Hary Haitspur, quhilk was nepot to the Erle of Northumbirland, and equale in age to the said James. The Bischop of Sanct Androis, knawing Duk Robert set, with uter besines, to conques the croun; send secreit writingis to the king, and schew it was richt diffcil and dangerus to kepe his son in Scotland, considering the Governour had al the realm under his obesance. Thus was it concludit be the king to send his son othir in France or Ingland, quhare he nicht eschew al treason devisit aganis him.



Sone efter, ane schip was providit with all necessaris, and tender supplicationis direckit baith to the King of France and England, to ressave him under thair targe, protection, and benevolence, gif it happinnit him to arive within ony of thair realmes. Hary, Lord Sinclair, the secund Erle of Orknay, was chosin to this besines, and pullit up salis at the Bas; havand the said James, and the young Perse, with mony othir noblis and gentlemen of Scotland, in his cumpany. This James, richt wery, be uncouth aire and corruption of seis, desirit to refresche him on the land; and was takin, with al his cumpany, be that maner. Otheris writis, that he was takin at Flamburgh-heid, apoun the seis, be Inglismen; quhilkis war advertist, be treason of certane Scottis, of his passage to France. Treuth is, he was takin the ix yeir of his age, the xxx day of Marche; fra our redemption, mcccciv yeris: and was haldin in captivite be Inglismen, xviii yeris.

Efter his taking, he presentit thir supplicationis, quhilkis war direckit fra his fader King Robert, to King Hary; quhais tennour efter followis: “ Robert, King of Scottis, to Hary, King of Ing-  
 “ land, greting. Thy gret magnificence, humilite, and justice, ar  
 “ richt patent to us, be governance of thy last army in Scotland;  
 “ howbeit sic thingis had bene uncertane to us afore. For thought  
 “ thow semit as ennime, with maist auful incursionis in our realm;  
 “ yit we fand mair humaniteis and pleseir, than dammage, be thy  
 “ cuming to our subdittis: specially to thame that ressavit thy no-  
 “ bil fader, the Duk of Longcastel, the time of his exile in Scotland.  
 “ We may not ceis, thairfore, quhil we ar on life, bot ay luif and  
 “ loif the, as maist nobil and worthy prince, to jois thy realme:  
 “ for thocht realmes and nationis contend amang thameself, for con-  
 “ ques of glore and landis; yit na occasion is amang us, to invade  
 “ athir realmes or liegis with injuris; bot erar to contend amang  
 “ ourself, quhay sall persew othir with maist humanite and kindnes.  
 “ As to us, we will meis all occasion of battal, quhare ony occurris,  
 “ at thy pleseir. Forthir, becaus we have na les sollicitude in pre-  
 “ serving our children fra certane deidly ennimes, than had, sum  
 “ time, thy nobil fader; we ar constrainit to seke support at uncouth  
 “ princis: howbeit, the invasion of ennimes is sa gret, that smal de-

“ fence occurris aganis thame, without thay be preservit be amite  
 “ of nobill men. For the warld is sa full of perversit malice, that  
 “ na cruelte nor offence may be devisit in erd, bot the samin may  
 “ be wrocht be motion of gold and silver. Heirfore, becaus we  
 “ know thy Hienes ful of mony nobil virtewis, with sic pissance and  
 “ riches, that na prince in our days may be compair thairto; we  
 “ desire thy humanite and support at this time. We traist it is not  
 “ unknowin to thy Majeste, how our eldest son, David, is slane,  
 “ miserabilly, in preson, be our brothir, the Duk of Albany, quhome  
 “ we chesit to be Governoure, quhen we war fallin in decrepit age,  
 “ to our subdittis and realme. Besekand thy Hienes, thairfore, to  
 “ be sa favorable, that this berar, James, our secund and allaverly  
 “ sonne, may have targe to leif under thy faith and justice; to be  
 “ sum memory of oure posterite: knawand the unstabil conditioun  
 “ of mænnis life, sa suddanly alterit; now flurisand, and suddanly  
 “ falling to uter consumption. Forthir, beleif weill, quhen kingis  
 “ and princis hes na othir beild bot in thair awin folkis, thair empire  
 “ is caduke and fragill; for the mind of commoun pepill ar evir  
 “ flowand, mair inconstant than wind. Yit, quhen princis ar robo-  
 “ rat, be amite of othir uncouth kingis, thair brethir and nichtbouris;  
 “ na adversite may occurre, to eject thaim fra thair dignite riall.  
 “ Forthir, gif thy Hienes think nocht expedient (as God forbid!) to  
 “ obtemper to thir our desiris; yit we request ane thing, quhilk was  
 “ ratifyit in oure last trewis and conditioun of peace, That the sup-  
 “ plicatioun maid be ony of the two Kingis of England or Scotland,  
 “ sall stand in maner of saif-condict to the berar: and thus we de-  
 “ sire to be observat to this oure allanerly sonne. And the gracious  
 “ God conserve the, maist nobill prince!”

## Chap. Sixteenth.

*Of the gret lamentation maid be King Robert the Thrid, for the taking of his son. And of his Deith.*



WHEN thir letteris war red be King Hary, he callit his lordis to ane counsall, to avise quhat was to be done in this mater. Sum of thame, irkit with lang weris, and movit of commiseration for the adversite falling to King Robert, said, Best was to obtemper his desiris; for his son was cum of his benevolence to seke refuge againis ennimes. Otheris war far discrepant fra that purpos; sayng, James wes takin in time of weir; and his fader, King Robert, not only invading Inglismen with continewal weris, bot ressetting thair ennimes in his realme: and alliegit that sindry Scottis come in support of Hary Haitspure, and othir conspiraturis, at the last battal of Schrewisbery. Thus was it concludit to kepe the said James as lauchfull presoner. Yit, be benevolence of King Hary, war chosin sa wise and expert preceptouris, to instruk him in virtew and science; that he was na les resolute in every science, than he had bene perpetually occupyit bot in ane: for he was weil lernit to fecht with the swerd, to just, to turnay, to worsill, to sing and dance; and was ane expert medicinar; richt crafty in playing baith of lute and harp, and sindry othir instrumentis of musik. He was expert in gramer, oratry, and poetry; and maid sa flowand and sententious versis, that apperit weil he was ane naturall and borne poete. He was, als, ane cunning theolog. For he lernit all his science during the time of his captivite; and was haldin, all the said time, in gret admiration to the pepil for his singuler virtew: thus succedit his captivite to his gret proffet and honoure.

King Robert, herand how his son was tane, on this maner, be Inglismen, maid ane hevvy lamentation, and said, “ Had I maryit, “ as othir anciant Kingis, my progenitouris, of Scotland did afore, “ with nobil princis, and kingis of honest nationis; I had not bene

“lichtlit and contempnit, as I am now, with my liegis: for my eldest son is slane; and the tothir chasit of the cuntre, and, for falt of freindis, tane with ennimes. This may be exampil to al kingis efter me succeding, nevir to degrade thair majeste and blud-riall with lawar blud than thaimself: for, be that way, thay sal be lichtlit and contempnit with thair awin subdittis, and in na estimation amang uncouth princis.”

King Robert tuk sic malancoly for the taking of his son with Inglismen on this maner, that he deceissit sone efter, in the xvi yeir of his regne; fra the incarnation, mccccvi yeris; and was buryit in Paslay, with his Quene Annabell, afore rehersit.

King Robert was ane man of gret stature, richt liberall and gracious in all his werkis. Howbeit, he was menyeit be ane straik of ane hors, as we have schawin. He was richt fervent in his devotion; and sa merciful to the pepil, that he wald suffer na injuris done aganis thame, but punitioun. Gif he nicht have past throw the cuntre but impediment of his feit, the realme suld have bene governit with na les felicite, in his dayis, than it was in ony othir princis time afore. Duk Robert, efter his deith, wes chosin, be new election, Governour; and gidit the realme, efter the kingis deith, with better justice than afore.

In the mene time, the castel of Jedburgh wes tane be men of Tevidale, and cassin down to the ground.

Archebald, Erle of Douglas, herand that King Robert was deceissit, maid ane way for his redemption, and returnit in Scotland.

Not lang efter, ane counsal was set to restore George, Erle of Marche, to his honour and landis. Efter lang disputation, it was concludit that he suld want ane part of his landis, namit Annerdale and Lochmaben; and the said landis to pas under perpetuall dominion of the Douglas. Be thir conditionis, the Erle of Marche was restorit to his landis and peace.



## Chap. Seventeenth.

*How the Universite of Sanct Andros tuk beginning. How gret virtew and police was brocht in Scotland be King James the First. How gret skaith fullis in this realm, be promotion of vicius prelatis.*



T this time, rais gret trubil in Scotland, be Donald of the Ilis. For William, Erle of Ros, sonne to Hew Ros, quhilk was slane afore at Halidoun Hill, had two douchteris : of quhilk, the eldest was gevin in mariage to Walter Lesly, with the erldome of Ros ; and gat on hir, ane son, namit Alexander ; and ane douchter, quhilk was, efter, maryit on Donald of the Ilis. This Alexander succedit to the erledome of Ros, efter the deith of his fader Walter ; and maryit ane douchter, namit Eufamia, quhilk was heritour to the erledome of Ros. The Duke of Albany persuadit this Effem, quhen scho was young, but ony experience, to resing the said erledome in his handis, under this condition : “ Gif scho deceissit without airis of hir body, the said “ erledome sall cum to his secound son, Johne, Erle of Buchquhan. “ And gif the said Johne deceissit but airis-male gottin of his body, “ his brothir Robert sal succed. And failyeing of his airis-male in “ the same maner, the erledome of Ros sal cum than to the croun.” Thir thingis done, than, with gret slicht, Effem deceissit, be industry, as was belevit, of Duke Robert ; that the erledome suld cum to his son. Be this way, Johne, Duke Robertis secound son, quhilk was Erle of Buchquhan afore, was maid Erle of Ros ; and left bot ane douchter behind him, quhilk was maryit on William Seytoun, knight. For thir causis, the Seytonis clamit the lordschip of Buchquhan.

Donald of the Ilis, herand his wiffis ant deceissit, come to Duke Robert, desiring the landis of Ros to be gevin to him, as nerrest and lauchfull heritour thairto. Nochtheles, he gat not bot repuls : and, thairfore, he come, with all the power of the Ilis, and subdewit

Ros to his opinion. Nochit content of thir boundis, he come throw Murray, Bogheval, and sindry othir boundis lyand thairabout; syne come to Garioch, to birne Abirdene.

To punis thir attemptatis, come Alexander Stewart, Erle of Marre, and faucht aganis the said Donald at Harlaw, quhair gret slauchter was maid on all sidis. In this battall, pcccc Hielandmen war slane; with Makelane and Makinthos, principal capitanis under Donald of the Ilis. And of the Erle of Marris side, war slane Alexander Ogilvy, serc of Angus; James Skrimgeour, Constabil of Dundee; Alexander Irrewin of Drum; Robert Mald of Panmure; Thomas Murray; William Abirnethy of Saltoun; Alexander Straitoun of Lourestoun; Robert Davidstoun, Provost of Abirdene,—knichtis; with mony othir. This battall was strikin on Sanct James Evin, the yeir of God, mccccxi yeris. Donald, efter this discomfitoure, fled with gret deligence to the Ilis. Nochtheles, Duke Robert persewit the said Donald so scharly, that he come in wil, efter that he was sworn nevir to invade the realme with mair truibill.

Nocht lang efter this battal, Patrik Dunbar, secound sonne to the Erle of Marche, wan Fast Castell; and tuke Thomas Haldane, capitane thairof, presoner.

At this time, the brig of Roxburgh was brokin be William Douglas of Drumlanerik, and the toun of Roxburgh brint.

And in this ilk yeir, began the Universite of Sanct Andros. Mony excellent and noble clerkis war brocht out of sindry cuntreis to be preceptouris in it. Followit gret confluence of young pepil, out of al partis of Scotland, for desire of letteris: throw gret exercition of virtew, quhilk began to spreid fast in this cuntre; specially at the cuming hame of King James the First in Scotland. This noble prince was sa ful of virtew, that he held al men of science in gret reverence; gevand his perpetual besines to caus his pepill increas in all honest craftis and virtew, and to bring thameself in honour and glore, to thair posterite. And that his cieteyanis suld lerne plesand and honest craftis, to remove thair idill and rude maneris, to quhilkis thay war afore accusmat; at his first returning in Scotland, he thocht na thing sa gud as to bring craftsmen and export clerkis out of uncouth realmes, to decore his commoun weill.

He brocht in Scotland xviii Doctouris of Theology, viii Doctouris of Decreis, with mony othir expert men in al science; and promovit thaim to sindry prelacyis. Attour, nane was that time, that had ony singular virtew or cunning, bot was sufficiently promovit to sum leving be him. Na man was promovit to bishopprikis in his dayis, without he war of singular erudition and science. Gret felicite succedit to Scottis in his dayis; as the proverbe sayis, “Happy ar the “pepill that hes ane philosophoure to thair king.” Bot, allace! how far is now oure time different fra thay dayis! For I beleve nane hes sic eloquence nor fouth of langage, that may sufficiently deplore the gret displesouris that fallis to us, for laik of letteris and virtew in our princis. In thay dayis, quhen maist grave personis, of maist erudition and virtew, war socht out of al partis, to be in cumpany with the princis, to nuris thaim in virtew and princely maneris. Now ar chosin nane to that effect, bot thay that ar maist ignorant and mischevous limmaris, havand nane othir ingine, bot only to nuris the princis in vice and insolence: trow quhilk, na les infelicite hes fallen to the princis of the realme than to the pepil thairof. Nane rasit in dignite, office, honour, nor benefice, bot maist unhappy and avaritious pepill, void of all virtew and gud maneris; and sa gret ennimes to men of letteris, that thay may not suffer thame to rise in proffit, dignite, or honouris; apperaundly as thay wald na virtew suld spreid in the cuntre, bot the pepill ay, be thair ignorance, to be abusit; in aventure, gif the pepil war brocht to perfite knowlege, that thay suld othir constrane thir prelatiis to amend thair livis, or ellis to spulye thaim of the pray and gudis thay swelly in thair corruptit usis. Lat thaim amend sic faltis that hes the charge thairof: howbeit, nathing movis us, bot commiseratioun and piete, to detest thair viciis.

## Chap. Eighteenth.

*How the Erllis of Buchquhan and Wigtoun went with gret armyis, in support of France ; and of the deith of Duke Robert.*



IN this ilk time, Johne Drummond slew, treasonably, Patrik Graham, Erle of Strathern ; nochtwithstanding the assurance tane betwix thaim. The nobillis maid sic diligence, that this Drummond was finaly takin, and punist for the said crime.

Nocht lang efter, rais gret weris betwix Charlis the vi, King of France, and Hary the v, King of England. King Charlis held sindry landis of France fra King Hary, howbeit thay pertenit to him be just heritage. At last, King Hary, be lang sege, wan the town of Hunflew ; syne, with proude baner, come throw Picardy, and waistit all boundis thairof, quhill he come to Blainge. And quhen he was returning in England, come on him sindry princis, and gaif him battall : nochtheles, thay war al slane, and thair army discomfist.

In the mene time, King Hary was advertist of gret rebelloun maid aganis him in Walis : throw quhilk, he was constranit, nochtwithstanding his victory, to return in England. Efter his cuming, met him the Prince of Walis, with mony gret princis of England, of his opinion, and gaif him battall, and put King Hary to flicht. King Hary, notwithstanding this discomfitour, come agane with new army, in Walis, and brocht thaim, at last, to irrecoverabill subjection.

Qubil sic thingis war done in England, William Haliburtoun wan the castel of Werk, and slew al personis found in it. Howbeit, it succedit, sone efter, to his gret infelicite : for, sindry Inglismen knew all the secretis of the place, and clam up throw ane scheild, and brak the wall in sic maner, that thay maid ane quiet passage to thair fallowis. Thus was the castel tane be Inglismen, and all Scottis foundin in it slane.



About this time was ane gret sisme in the Kirk, thre papis creat atanis. To repair thir arrouris, followit the Counsall of Constantine: in the quhilk, thir thre papis war ejeckit, and the fourt creat be the said counsall.

In the yeur, fra our redemption mccccxix, the thrid day of September, deceissit Robert, Duke of Albany, quhilk was Governour of Scotland xv yeris efter the deith of King Robert the Thrid: ane vailyeant and noble prince all his dayis.

King Charlis, at this time, send in Scotland the Erle of Vandoun, and Chancellor of France, to gett support of Scottis aganis Ingland, and promittit gret wagis, landis, and officis, til all Scottis that wald cum in defence of his realme. Sone efter, Johnne Stewart, Erle of Buchquhan, secund son to Duk Robert, and Archebald Douglas, Erle of Wigtown, past in France, with vii.m armit men, and war tenderly ressavit be King Charlis. This ordinance of Scottis cum-and, as said is, in France, maid King Hary of Ingland richt com-movit: and, thairfore, to caus the said ordinance to depart out of France, he gart the nois and rumour pas throw all boundis of his realme, that he was to cum haistely, with ane army, on the Scottis. For feir of thir novellis, the Scottis lay, al the nixt simer, on the bordouris, abidand the cuming of his army.

In the mene time, King Hary past in Normandy, and opprest the inhabitantis thair of with gret injuris, and subdewit the town of Roan to his empire. At last, quhen he was cumin to maist triumphe of victory, abill to have gottin the haille dominioun of France, he was vincust be ane lady, and gaif his besines fra chevelry to lust and amouris. Be this way, King Hary put end to his weris, and tuke Katrine, the douchter of Charlis, the vi of that name, King of France, in mariage, under thir conditionis: "Gif King Charlis "deceissit afore King Hary, the said King Hary sall succeid to the "crown of France. And gif Hary deceissit first, levand behind him "ane sonne, gottin on the said King Charlis douchter, this son sall "succeid to the crown of France, efter the deith of King Charlis." Be quhilk conditioun, King Charlis son was spulyeit of all richt that he had to the crown of France, and King Charlis to regne allanerly during his life. This peaceshort time indurit; and, thairfore, the said

Erllis of Buchquhan and Wigtoun, with thair ordinance, war the mair plesandly tretit be the King and Dalphine of France ; and gat the toun of Casteltoun, with the castell thairof, to remane intill, quhill thay had schawin sum honest vassalage.

### Chap. Nineteenth.

*How the Duke of Clarence was slane ; with mony othir lordis of Ingland, at Bauge. Of the Deith of King Hary, and King Charlis.*



Ow war the Erllis of Buchquhan and Wigtoun advertist, that Thomas, Duk of Clarence, was cuming, with x.m men, to sege the toun and castell of Bauge, with othir sindry landis of Orleance, quhilk pertinit to the Dalphine of France. The Erle of Buchquhan, knawing the subtell slichtes of Inglismen, send his cousin, Schir Johne Stewart of Dernely, knight, to spy thair army : bot he was sone efter chasit to the Scottis, and schew how the Duke was cumand, with al his ordinance, in arrayit battall, on thaim. The Scottis, incontinent went to harnes, and met the Duk of Clarence on ane plane, beside the said toun, quhare baith the armyis ruschit togidder, in maist fury. At the first juning, Thomas, Duke of Clarence, was hurt in the face, with ane speir, be the knight of Swintoun, and was efter slane be the Erle of Buchquhan. The residew of Inglismen, astonist be slauchter of the Duke of Clarence and othir gret princis of thair land, gaif bakkis. The Scottis ceissit not fra continewal chace of Inglismen, quhil it was far run within the nicht. In this battall war slane, the Duke of Clarence, the Erle of Reiddisdale, Lord Ros, Lord Gray, and mony othir gret baronis, to the nowmer of xvi.c : and of thame war takin, the Erle of Huntingtoun ; the Erle of Somerside, and his brother ; quhilkis war brethir to King James the Firstis wife. This battal was strikin on Pasche evin, fra our redemption mccccxxi yeris. The Dalphine of France, glaid of

this victory, gaif sindry landis to the Erle of Buchquhan, and maid him Constable of France.

King Hary, movit in gret ire, for slauchter of his brothir, the Duk of Clarence ; come with ane new army in France : and had with him James, Prince of Scotland ; traisting to draw the Scottis out of France, be his auctorite ; for the Dalphine of France rais ilk day in mair pissance and honour, be vassalage of sindry chosin campionis of Scotland. King Hary, schort time efter, send for the said prince, to cum to the counsall, quhare he was avising with his noblis, be quhat ingine and slichtis he micht best invade his ennimes. King Hary, at the cuming of the said James, began to schaw quhat displeseir bene done to him be Scottis, baith in England and France. Efter that he had schawin mony humaniteis done to him, and his fader, King Robert, he desirit the said James to pas to the Scottis, in France, and to command thame, in his name, to returne in Scotland. King Hary promittit, gif the said James brocht this mater to gud effect, not only to remit his ransoun, bot to send him in Scotland with gret riches and honour. To thir wordis answerit James : “ In sa far as thow, noble prince, hes schawin, or will schaw, ony  
“ humaniteis towart me ; I sall laubour, sa far as is in me, to do the  
“ pleseir effering thairto. Nochtheles, as to this mater, quhilk thow  
“ desiris me to labour, I mervel nocht litill, that thow consideris  
“ nocht, how I have na power abone the Scottis, sa lang as I am  
“ ane privat man, and haldin in captivite. Nochtheles, wer I put  
“ to liberte, and the Scottis maid my lawchfull subdittis, I wald  
“ glaidlie laubour all materis to thy pleseir.” Als sone as he had said thir wordis, he departit fra the counsall. Than said King Hary : “ Maist happy peple sall thay be, that happinnis to get yon  
“ nobil man to thair prince.”

Mony jeoperdeis, and frequent skarmussing, wer maid in this yeir, betwix the Dalphine of France, and Inglismen. The Inglismen had, this time, all Normandy, and Gasconye, under thair empire ; and bure sic hatrent aganis the Scottis, that thay slew thame quhare thay wer tane, with maist schamefull deid, howbeit, thay usit not sic cruelteis on othir pepill.

Quhen King Hary had distroyit sindry boundis of Britane, with gret heirschippis and slauchter, he invadit the landis and Kirk of Sanct Fiacre : and, be vengeance of God, he wes strikin with sic infirmite, that na ingine of man micht cure him. At last, quhen he had demandit the medicinaris, quhat maledy this bene falling to him sa haistely ; thay said, It wes the maledy of Sanct Fiacre ; quhilk wes sum time ane Scot, and descendit of the nobill blude thairof. Than said King Hary : “ I se nocht bot all Scottis born in perdition of us ; quhilkis ar aye sa gret ennimes to us, leiffand and deid, at hame and on feild : for thay persew us with na les hatrent, now quhen thay ar eikit amang the noumer of Sanctis, than quhen thay wer into this present life.” King Hary, seeing his infirmite increas ilk day more, causit him to be brocht to Cornwel, quhare he miserabilly deceissit : and wes brocht in ane cape of leid, in Ingland, and buryit amang the sepulturis of othir kingis.

At this time, Charlis the VI, King of France, deceissit. Eftir quhom, succedit Charlis, the VII of that name : be quhais deith, the gret fervour of weris began to cule betwix Inglismen and Scottis. And for that cause, the Erlis of Buchquhan and Wigtoun returnit in Scotland. Sone eftir thair returning, thay come with ane army to Berwik, and lay lang at the sege thairof, but ony werkis worthy to have memory. And thairfore, this jurnay wes callit The Dirlin Raid.



## Chap. Twentieth.

*How ambassatouris war send in Ingland, for redemption of James the First. How the Franchemen and Scottis war discomfist at Vernoll; and of gret vassalage done be the Madin of France.*



ETIR deith of Duk Robert, his son, Mordo Stewart, Erle of Fiffe and Menteith, wes maid Governour, and josit the said office foure yeris. Howbeit, he wes richt unganand thairto; for he had nocht sic wisdome and manheid as his fader, Duke Robert, had afore him. He wes ane soft prince; but ony fortitude in adversite, or temporance in prosperite. Sum time he apperit so febill, that na consolatioun micht rais him in esperance of better fortoun; sum time he wes our severe, and more cruell in executioun of justice than the mater requirit: and so necligent in chastifying of his sonnis, Walter and Alexander, that thay finalie conspirit aganis him: uncertane quhidder the same procedit be softnes of his mind, in so far, that he couth nocht punis the iniquiteis of his sonnis, for the fervent luf and affection he had to thame: or gif thair faltis wer so gret, that thay deservit more punishment than he micht use on thame; for thay wer delatit of sindry oppressionis, be the pepil. This Walter, incurrit extreme indignation of his fader, for ane falcon, quhilk he slew, in contemptioun of his fader. Becaus his fader wald not gif him the said falcon with pleseir, he slew the halk apon his faderis hand. Duk Mordo, movit with this gret contemptioun, said: "O Walter, sen thou and thy brothir will not be rewlit be my soft empire, I sall bring him hame, that sal chaistifie yow and me baith."

Sone eftir, he convenit all his noblis to ane counsall; and desirit thaim to send ambassatouris in Ingland, for redemption of James, the First of that name, that he micht return in Scotland, and ressave the governance thairof. Oftimes gret felicitieis cumis be contentioun of unhappy parteis, invading othir with athir injuris: as happinnit at this time, be this haisty debait rising betwix Duk Mordo and his

sonnis: for wer nocht thair contentioun, James the First had nevir cumin in Scotland, the quhilk had bene richt dammageus to the realme. Bot we will returne to our historie.

The Erle of Buchquhan, Constable of France, belevit litill proffet or pleseir to fall to him be the hame-cuming of James the First; becaus his fader, Duk Robert, held him so lang out of his realme: and thairfore he solistit his gudfader, Archebald, Erle of Dowglas, to pas with him in France. Sone eftir, the said Erlis past, with x.m chosin men, in France; and wer ressavit with gret honour be Charlis the vii, King of France. And eftir that the King had put all thair folkis in ordinance, he maid the Erle of Douglas Duk of Turine: for he wes ane nobill man. Howbeit, he wes more vailyeant than fortunat.

In the mene time, the Duk of Bedfurd, Lieutenand to the King of Ingland, come with gret army in France. And eftir that he had win mony townis and villagis in France, he segit ane toun, namit Lyver, and brocht it to sic necessite, that the capitane thairof gaif plegis to rander it to Inglismen, gif he gat na rescours within schort time. King Charllis, knawand the castell forsaid in sic dangeir, send the Duk of Lanson, and the Erlis of Buchquhan and Dowglas, with the residew of his army, to rescours the said hous. Afore thair cumin, thay wer advertist, that Inglismen had gottin the hous randerit to thame, and tane ane othir toun of Normandy, namit Varnol. Incontinent, thay went to harnes, and arrayit thame on the plane, nocht far fra the toun. And quhen the armyis wer reddy to june, the Duk of Lanson, richt invyful that Scottis suld rise in ony landis, or honouris, within France; come away, with xx.m men. The Erlis of Douglas and Buchquhan, nochtwithstanding this treason, ruschit forthwart, with pert curage, on thair ennimes, and faucht, with gret manheid, to the deith. Nochtheles, baith the armyis of Scotland and France wer finaly discomfist and put [to] flicht.

In this unhappy battall wer slane, Johne, Erle of Buchquhan, Constable of France; Archebald, Erle of Douglas, Duke of Turine, and Lieutenand of France; Archebald Douglas, his son, Erle of Wigtoun; with mony of all the Scottis company. Thair bodyis wer buryit, with gret lament of pepill, in the Kirk of Sanct

Graciane, within the toun of Turine. And of Franchemen wer slane, the Erle of Ventodore; the Sereif of Narbone; with mony othir wageouris and commonis, to the nowmer of vii.m; and of thame wer taikin, the Marcheall of France, with mony othir noblis.

Efter this discomfiture, succedit gret calamite and displeiseir to Franchemen, in al boundis of thair realme; few partis thairof untakin or unsegit be Inglismen. Thus had the Franchemen bene brocht to uter rewine, wer nocht, Jane, the Madin of France, cloithit baith in mannis array and hardiment, creekit King Charlis, fra extreme desolatioun, in esperance of better fortoun. This Madin come out of Lorine in France, send nocht but speciall favour of God: be quhais hardiment and happy victoryis, King Charlis recoverit his realme, and ejeckit Inglismen out of all boundis thairof. Bot at last, scho wes taikin at Luffingburgh, be the Burgundianis, and sald to Inglismen; quhilkis brocht hir, sone efter, to Roan: quhare thay accusit hir of socery and incantationis; sayng, That scho, aganis thair lawis and institutionis, bure armour and mannis claitheis under the figour of ane woman. Finalie, the tyranny of Inglismen wes sa gret, that thay wald heir nane of hir reasonis nor excuse, bot brint hir cruelly to deith: for, be hir industry and vassalage, thay tint the dominion of France. Scho confessit, schortlie afore hir deith, sa lang as scho keippit hir virginite, scho wes victorius in every battall, but ony experience of evill fortoun; and fra scho wes corruppit, scho wes maid sone pray to hir ennimes.

At this time, Robert Patillok come out of Scotland with ane army, to King Charlis the Sevint; and recoverit sindry boundis of France out of Inglismennis handis: and wes callit, thairfore, be the inhabitantis thairof, Pittit Roy of Gasconye.

And sa endis heir, the xvi Buk of thir Croniklis.

# The Sevintene Buke.

---

HEIR BEGINNIS THE SEVINTENE BUKE

OF THE

CRONIKLIS OF SCOTLAND.

---

## Chap. First.

*How James the First was redemit. Of his Coronation and actis.*



FTIR deith of Archebald, Erle of Douglas, Duke of Turine, as we have schawin, at Varnoll; succedit his son Archebalde, the thrid of that name, Erle of Douglas. This Erle of Douglas, and William Hay, Constable of Scotland, and Hary, Bischop of Aberdene, wer send as ambassatouris in Ingland, for redemptioun of James the First; and drest the mater to sic point, that he sal return to his realme, and pay, for his ransoun, c.M markis striveling: of quhilk soum, the ta half sal be remittit for his tochir; and for payment of the tothir half, sindry lordis sonnys of Scotland to be gevin in plege to King Hary the vi. Few of thir lordis sonnys returnit hame; bot deceissit afore thay wer redemit.



This James, for his singulare virtew, had mony freindis in Ingland: amang quhilkis wer speciall and maist tender to him, Johne Bewfurd, Erle of Somerside, and his brothir, the Cardinal of Ingland. Thir two nobillmen, with mony gret princis of Ingland, convoyit him to the bourdouris of Scotland: for he maryit the said Erlis douchter; and gat fra him, beside mony goldin and silver veschell, sindry riche and precious hingaris, in quhilkis war the history of Hercules, maist curiously wrocht.

Thus entrit Prince James in Scotland; and come, on Care Sunday, in Lentern, to Edinburgh: quhare he was ressavit with all the Lordis of Scotland, Spirituall and Temporall, with maist honour. Gret confluence of pepil come to him, out of all partis of Scotland, richt desirus to se him: for mony of thame had nevir sene him afore; or ellis, at leist, the prent of his visage was out of thair memory. Howbeit, thay war weil informit of his singulare virtew, mony yeris afore. Als sone as the solempnite of Pasche was done, he come to Perth, and sone efter went to Scone; quhare he was crownit, with his lady, Jane, be Duke Mordo, and Hary, Bischop of Sanct Androis, the XXI day of May; fra our redemption, mccccxxiv yeris.

Mony nobil men come out of Ingland with James the First, and gat landis fra him: amang quhom was ane namit Andro Gray, quhilk was rewardit with sindry landis. Be him rais the surname of Grayis in Scotland; quhais posterite perseveris yit amang us, cled with gret landis and honouris, baith in Gowry and Angus.

Sic thingis done, the king returnit to Edinburgh, and summond all thame that josit ony auctorite during the time of Duk Robert and Duk Mordo, Governouris. And in the first, convenit to him the Chancellar, the Thesaurer, the Clerk of the Register, the Comptrollar, and all otheris that bure ony chargis concerning the kingis rentis. At last, quhen he, be lang compt, had found the maist part of all the landis and rentis pertening to the crown waistit be his emis, Duke Robert and Duke Mordo, Governouris, amang thair freindis, and nathing left to sustene the crown except the customes of burrowis; he was nathing content of this estate: howbeit, he schew gud vult for the time.

Als sone as he had avisit with al evidentis and rollis pertenand to the crown, he set ane parliament in Edinburgh; and, be advise of

the thre estatis, was ordanit ane general taxt, to be rasit throw the realme: xii pennyis of the pound, of al landis in Scotland, spirituell and temporal; and iv pennyis for ilk kow, ox, or hors; for the space of two yeris to cum, for payment of his ranson. This taxt was rasit for the first yeir; bot in the secound, rais sic murmur amang the pure commonis, that he remittit the residew, and tuke nevir taxt of Scotland, efter that, quhill his douchter was to be maryit with the Dalphine of France. Amang mony othir thingis done in this parliament, the pepill complanit of sindry oppressionis done to thame be Duke Mordois sonnys, and otheris gret men of his realme. The king, incontinent, gart arrest Walter Stewart, son to Duke Mordo; with Malcolme Fleming of Cumernald, and Thomas Boyd of Kilmarnok. Walter was send in ward to the Bas; bot Malcolme and Thomas war send to ward in Dalkeith. Nochtheles, the king tuk bot ane easy compositioun for thame of money, efter that all parteis war sithit. In this parliament, King James gaif his aith of fidelite, to debait the liberteis of haly kirk to the end of his life: and all the remanent baronis, efter him, gaif thair aithis on the same maner.

Not lang efter, ane uthir counsall was set at Perth: in the quhilk, the king gart arrest Duk Mordo, and Alexander his son; Archebald, the thrid of that name, Erle of Douglas; his brothir, William, Erle of Angus; George, Erle of Marche; Adam Hepburn of Halis; with mony othir gret baronis of Scotland: and put thame all in sindry castellis and strenthis, to remane in ward quhil he war avisit. Incontinent, he tuk the castellis of Falkland and Doun of Menteith. Duk Mordo was send to Carlavrok, and his Duches was put in Temptalloun.

## Chap. Second.

*How Duk Murdo and his two sonnys war justifyit be King James.  
How the Erle of Cathnes was slane at Inverlochty, and the Erle  
of Mar vincust.*



**I**N Beltane Day, in the yeir nixt following, callit the Inventioun of the Haly Croce; James Stewart, the thrid son of Duke Mordo, movit with gret ire, that his fader and brethir war haldin in captivite, come with ane gret power to Dunbritane, and brint it; efter that he had slane Johnne Stewart of Dundonald, with xxxii men in it. The king, richt commovit for thir attemptatis, followit on this James sa fersly, that he was chasit in Ireland; quhare he deceissit. On the v day efter, war brocht to the king v complecis of the said James; and thay war hingit and quarterit at Striveling.

The king continewit his parliament to the xviii day of May, in Striveling. And thair himself sittand, with septoure, swerd, and crown, in jugement; Walter Stewart, son and aire to Duk Mordo, was convickit, and heidit afore the castel. On the morow, Duk Mordo, and his secund son Alexander, and Duncane Stewart, Erle of Lanax, war convickit and forfaitit for crimis of lese majeste; and heidit afore the castell, on the same maner. Be forefaltoure of Duk Mordo and his sonnys, the erledomes of Fiffe, and Menteith, and Lanax, come in the kingis handis. The remanent lordis and gret baronis, quhilkis war in ward for the time, at the kingis pleseir, war richt affrayit, herand the scharp execution of justice maid on Duke Mordo and his sonnys. Nochtheles, thay war put to liberte within ane yeir efter, and recounsaltit to the kingis favoure.

In the nixt yeir, quhilk was fra our redemption mccccxxvii, the king tuk Alexander, Lord of the Ilis, Erle of Ros, at Innernes. On the morow, war tane sindry wickit limmaris and oppressouris of the cuntre, and hingit on jebattis. On the thrid day efter, this

Lord of the Ilis was accusit afore the king, for intertening of thevis, and not bringing of thame to the kingis justice, quhare thay micht be apprehendit. Becaus this Lord of the Ilis promittit to amend sic thingis in times cuming, he was put to liberte: throw quhilk, followit gret trubill; for, within few dayis efter, he brint the town of Innernes, and lay ithandly segeand the castell thairof, quhill he was finaly advertist that the king was cumand on him, with gret power; and than he fled in the Ilis. At last, this Lord of the Ilis, seand sa mony pepil lyand, ilk day, in wait, to bring him to the kingis justice; come, dissagisit in pure array, and fell down on kneis afore the king, at Halyrudhous, on Pasche Day; quhare he was sittand at his orison: and desirit grace, for His saik that rais, as that day, fra deith. The king, at requeist of the quene, saiffit his life; and commandit him to remane quhil the service war done. Than the king began to muse, gif he restorit this Alexander to his landis and honouris but ony forthir punition, it suld be occasion to conspire aganis him in times cuming. And, thairfore, the said Alexander was send to Schir William Douglas, Erle of Angus, the kingis sister son, to remane in his castell of Temptalloun; that na trubill suld rise be his freindis. Eufame, his moder, douchter to Walter, sum time Erle of Ros, was wardit in Sanct Colmes Inche; for scho was ane gret solister of him to attempt sic besines aganis the king.

Nocht lang efter, Donald Ballocht, brothir to the said Lord Alexander of the Ilis, come with ane gret power of men in Lochquhaber. The Erles of Mar and Cathnes, to saif the cuntre fra trubill, come with thair folkis, and faucht with the said Donald at Inverlochty; quhare the Erle of Cathnes was slane, and the Erle of Mar discomfist. Thus returnit Donald, with victory, and gret pray of guddis, in the Ilis.

The king, incontinent, to punis thir attemptatis, come with ane army to Dounstafage, purposing to have passit in the Ilis: and, thair, met him all the heidismen and clannis thairof, excusing thair offence; saying, Thay war constrainit, aganis thair will, to pas with the said Donald, in displeseir of the cuntre. All thir clannis war finaly tane in favour be the king, and sworn to persew the said Donald to the deith.



Not lang efter, this Donald fled in Ireland; quhare he was slane, and his heid brocht to Striveling, to the king.

### Chap. Third.

*Of gret Justice done be King James the First in al partis of Scotland. Of the Nativite of James the Secund. Of sindry actis done be the said noble Prince, James the First.*



HIS trubill dantit in maner foresaid, King James past throw al boundis of his realme, and punist mony strang limmaris and oppressouris of his pepil to the deith. Na remissioun gevin afore be the Governour, was admittit afore his justice; for thay war expirit be his deith. Attoure, the king thoct it nocht plesand to God, nor profitable to the common weil, that sa mony slauchteris, reiffis, and oppressionis, done afore in the cuntre, for falt of justice, war unpunist. It is said, the first two yeris of his regne, mmm pepill war slane be his justice, for sindry auld crimes and offencis committit aganis the pepil in the yeris afore.

And thoct this punition apperit sufficient ineuch to all pepil in his realme; yit ane limmer, namit Angus Duffe, of Strathern, come with ane cumpany of thevis, and tuk ane gret pray of gudis out of Murray and Cathnes. Incontinent, followit on him Angus Murray, with gret power. And this othir, Angus Duffe, na thing afrayit of his cuming, met him, on the same maner, at Strachnavern. Followit ane scharp battal, fochtin with sic cruelte on ilk side, that xii personis war left onely on live. King James, herand this slauchter, said, He was na les sorowfull for the slauchter of the men of Cathnes than Murray, howbeit nane was left on live, that micht be punist for the offence thair of.

At this time, was ane othir gret limmer, namit Makdonald Ros; quhilk grew, be spulyeis and heirschippis of the pepil, in gret riches. This limmer schod ane pure wedo with hors schone, becaus scho

said scho suld gang to the king, and revele his wekit oppressionis. Als sone as scho was helit of hir woundis, scho past to the king, and schew the gret cruelteis done be this limmer. The king maid, sone efter, sic deligence, that he tuk this Makdonald, with XII of his complecis, and punist thame with maist schamefull deith.

In the thrid yeir efter, quhilk was fra our redemption mccccxxx, on the xvi day of October, Jane, the quene, was deliver of two sonnys atanis, Alexander and James. The first deceissit in his infance; the nixt was James the Secund, quhilk succedit immediatly efter his fader to the croun. Mony gret baronis and lordis war present at thair baptime. Thair, war I knichtis maid: amang quhom was first, William, son to Archebald, Erle of Douglas; quhilk succedit efter him to the erldome of Douglas.

In the nixt yeir efter, the king arrestit Archebald, Erle of Douglas, Duke of Turine; and held him in lang captivite and ward. At last, be supplication of the quene, and othir gret prelatis of the realme, the king remittit his offencis, and put baith him and Alexander, Erle of Ros, to liberte.

Als sone as the realme was brocht to gud tranquillite on this maner, that passingeris nicht travel but trubill in all partis thair of; he maid officiaris and jugis to pas throw all partis of his realme; that justice nicht have place als weil in hie as the law partis. He causit the provestis and bailyeis of ilk town to use veschel of just mesuris, concerning the interchange of vittallis, wine, and aill. Othir mesuris, that war not markit with the mark of the bailyeis or provest, war brokin, and the occupiaris thair of condampnit in gret sowmes of money. At last, quhen he had reparit the strenthis of his realme with siclike munitionis as afferit, he veseit the Universite of Sanct Androis, oftymes present at thair generall disputationis; and tuk sic plesoir thairintil, that he dotat the Universite with sindry privilegis, and gaif thaim power to cheis maist perfit personis, that he nicht put thaim to gret prelacyis of Scotland, as thay vakit. Thus war men ay promovit to benifices effering to thair eruditoun and knowlege. Thairfore, all maner of virtew spred fast during his time; and above al othir commoditeis, the service of God incressit with gret reverence and honour, in maist crafty musik, as yit occurris to our dayis.

In the nixt yeir, quhilk was fra our salvation MCCCCXXXI, Hary the VI, King of Ingland, come to Paris, and was crownit in Nostre Dames Kirk, havand bot XII yeris of age. And yit he was, within few yeris efter, put baith fra the empire of Ingland and France, and come, fugitive, to King James the Thrid: be quhome he was plesandly ressavit. And yit he was ane notabil example of the unstabil and unsickir chance of fortoun; sen he that was sum time king of two maist pissant kingdomes, was put fra thame baith, and constrainit to seke refuge at uncouth pepill.

### Chap. Fourth.

*How the Bishop of Sanct Androis, be lang precheing, dissuadit the riottus custome of Bankettis.*



OCHT lang efter, wes ane parliament at Perth. Amang mony othir actis done at this parliament, to remove the surfet expensis maid in riottus cheir and bankettis, quhilkis war brocht in Scotland be Inglismen, at the hamecuming of King James; to na les dammage of mannis bodyis, than wasting of thair guddis: rais up Hary Wardlaw, Bischop of Sanct Androis, and said in this maner: “Suppos mony nobil werkis, “maist wise prince! ar brocht in this realme be thy cuming; as “justice, religion, and polesy, with mony othir gud lawis, to the “proffet of the common weill: na thing pretermittit nor left un- “done, that micht proffet or avance thy realme: all honest ma- “neris usit afore amang us, ar be thy wisdome confirmit; and al “new bonteis now appering amang us, ar cummin only be thy in- “dustry: forthir, the mair cure and laubour that thow hes tane to “bring sic honest institutionis amang us, I think thay suld the mair “deligently be kept:—now, thair is ane lurkand pest, fast burge- “and with sic irremediable vennome, that gif the samin be not “haistely remedyit, all thir commoditeis brocht be thy cuming in “this realme sal be of litill effect. The noblis that sittis heir in thy

“ presence hes desirit me til schaw this mater in thair name; and  
 “ to desire thy Hienes to schaw thy wisdome als weill in this mater  
 “ as in othir thingis be the done. Sindry nobill men, sic as war thy  
 “ freindis in Ingland, ar cumin in this cuntre, not unworthy to have  
 “ thy favour. Howbeit, thay have brocht with thame the maneris  
 “ of Inglismen, quhilkis ar richt dammageus to thy pepill. And  
 “ thought thair maneris be not schamfully to thair awin cuntre, be-  
 “ caus thair pepil is accustomit thairwith; I think it is ane gret sin  
 “ to rut thy pepill into sic venomus maneris: I mene, thir super-  
 “ flew and costlie coursis of metis that thay persuade men to eit and  
 “ drink, mair than is sufficient to the nurising of nature. Will thou  
 “ considder the temperance usit amang oure auld faderis, thou sall  
 “ find nathing sa contrarius thairto as this new glotony brocht now  
 “ amang us. And yit I wait not quhidder this sorrowfull pest is  
 “ cumin amang us mair in our awin defalt, or be defalt of Inglis-  
 “ men; considder, we have gevin place thairto so sone. Yit, in  
 “ quhatsumevir way this unhappy custome is cum amang us, it is to  
 “ be contemptit, for the mony vicis that followis thairapon; sic as  
 “ ar intemperance, lust, sleuth, reif, and waisting of gudis: for gif  
 “ temperance be nurisar of al virtew, than intemperance is moder  
 “ til al vice. Forthir, lust and intemperance ar sa knit togidder,  
 “ that thay may na wayis be severit fra othir: and he that is ser-  
 “ vand to his wambe, man obey al thingis that it desiris. Than  
 “ followis, be lust of wambe, defloration of virginis, adultre, and  
 “ incest. Thir mischevis and vennome of young men followis one-  
 “ ly be superflewite of metis and drinkis: and fra ane man be gevin  
 “ anis to pleseir of his wambe, he becumis idill, but ony thoct of  
 “ thingis to cum: and ay the mair that the ingine of man is gevin  
 “ thairto, the mair feirsly rinnis he til every kind of vice. And  
 “ thoct ane man have waistit his patrimony in sic superflew meitis  
 “ and drinkis; yit the vennome that he swelleis, be fenyeit pleseir  
 “ thairof, sal nevir sevir fra him quhil he be deid.”

Be thir and siclik wordis, Bischop Hary dissuadit the king and  
 his pepil fra al superflew coursis and immoderat bankettis. Noch-  
 theles, this intemperance is risin to sa insatiabil voracite, that na  
 foule in the air nor fische in the see ar sufficient to satisfy the hungry



appetite of glotonis, quhill thair wambe be sa boldin, that thay may not draw thair aind; with mony othir siclik skaithis daily falling to thame, as we se be experience.

### Chap. Fifth.

*Of the Sege of Roxburgh. How the King brocht mony craftismen in this realme. How Paule Craw was brint, and the Charturaris of Perth foundit.*



IN the same yeir, the xvii day of Juny, was ane terribil eclipse of the son, at iii houris efter none. The day mirknit half an houre togidder, as it had bene nicht; and thairfore it was callit The Blak Houre.

At the nixt Lammas efter, the king past, with ane army, to sege the castell of Marchmond; that is to say, Roxburgh. The Scottis war nowmerit in this army to cc.M men, by futmen and caragemen. At last, quhen the king had lyne at the sege foresaid xv dayis, and waistit al his munitioun and powder, he returnit hame, but ony mair felice succeeding to his army.

Sone efter the returning of the army, deceissit Robert Cardin, Bischop of Dunkeld. Efter quhome, succedit Bischop James Kennedy, the kingis sister son, gottin on the Countes of Angus; and within ii yeir efter, he was translatit to the sait of Sanct Androis. King James, to agment his common weill, and to caus his liegis incres in mair virtew, brocht mony nobill craftismen out of France, Flanderis, and othir partis: for the Scottis war exercit in continewall weris, fra the time of King Alexander the Thrid, to thay dayis; thus war all craftismen slane be the weris.

Nocht lang efter, was tane in Sanct Androis ane man of Brum, namit Paule Craw, precheand new and vane superstitionis to the pepil; specially aganis the sacrament of the alter, veneration of sanctis, and confession to be maid to preistis. At last, he was brocht afore the theologis, and al his opinionis condampnit. And,

becaus he perseverit obstinatly to the end of his pley, he was condampnit and brint. He confessit afore his deith, that he was send out of Beum, to preiche to Scottis the herisyis of Hus and Wicleif. The king commendit mekil this punition; and gaif the abbacy of Melros to Johne Fogo, for he was principall convikar of this Paule.

King James, quhen the realme was brocht to gret tranquillite and peace, on this maner, past oftymes amang his subdittis, specially his marchandis; to that fine, that na thing suld be unknowin to him in his realme. At last, quhen he had considerit the maneris of thair banketting, he reprevit thaim; becaus thay sufferit men to pay in thair houssis, efter that thay war callit to thair dinnaris and supparis.

At this time, was foundit the Abbay of Charturaris monkis, beside Perth, with gret magnificence of King James.

In the nixt yeir, come ambassatouris in Scotland fra King Hary, desiring the band of France to be dissolvit betwix Scottis and Franchemen; and promitting, gif the Counsall of Scotland wald assent thairto, to geif our Berwik, with all the landis lyand betwix Tweid and the Recroce, in Northumberland. The king, knawing nocht bot dissait in thair promittis, depeschit thame, but ony mair commoning in thay materis.

## Chap. Sixth.

*How the Erle of Marche was forefaltit. Of sindry vassalagis done be the Erle of Mar; and of his gret industry and wisdom.*



THE yeir fra the incarnation, i thousand, iv hundred, xxxiii yeris, the king tuke George Dunbar, son of the Erle of Marche that rebellit aganis King Robert the Thrid, his fader; and wardit him in the Castell of Edinburgh. And sone efter, send William, Erle of Angus; William Creichtoun, Chancellar; Adam Hepburn of Halis; with scharp writtingis, to the capitanis and keparis thair of, to deliver the said castel, but ony tary, in thair handis. Thus was the castel randrit, but ony mair tary.

The king, incontinent, set ane parliament at Perth; and, thair, was George, Erle of Marche, forefaltit for the treasonabil rebellion of George, his fader, aganis King Robert the Thrid. Be this way, failyeit the nobil and anciant hous of the erldome of Marche; quhilk flurisit sa mony yeris, to the gret defence and munition of this realme: and for small offence brocht to nocht. The king, movit be sum miseration, within schort time efter, gaif the erldome of Buchquhan to the said George, with ane yeirlye pension of cccc markis, to be payit to him of the said erledome of Marche. This pension was brukit be the said George, and Patrik his sonne, quhil the cuming of King James the Secound to perfite age.

In the same yeir, deceissit Alexander Stewart, Erle of Mar. This Alexander was ane bastart son of Alexander, Erle of Buchquhan, afore rehersit; quhilk was son to King Robert the Secound. He was ane man of singular virtew, in his tender yeris; and was at the sege of Leodium, quhen it was tane be Phillip, Duke of Burgundie. And, for the gret glore that he wan at the said jornay, he was marryit on ane lady, namit Jane, Countes of Holland. Nochtheles, he was put fra hir: uncertane quhethir it come be the said Countes,

becaus scho had ane othir husband; or becaus the inhabitantis desirit nocht to be mingit with uncouth blude. Within schort time efter, he returnit in Scotland; and send his servandis in Holland, desiring the proffet of his land. And becaus he gat nocht bot repuls thairof, he held continewall weris on the Hollandaris, quhill thay war constrainit to pleis him for all the proffettis bygane, and tuke peace with Scottis for ane hundreth yeris. This Erle of Mar was ane richt industrius and civill man; for he brocht out of Ungary in Scotland, sindry gret hors and meris, to spreid the cuntre be thair generatioun. Thus was the cuntre, within few yeris efter, fillit ful of gret hors; howbeit, afore his time, was nocht bot small naggis in this realme. This wise Erle, for his wisdome, was maid Lieutennand of al the North of Scotland. He was buryit in Dunkeld. Efter his deith, al his landis, riches, and conques war confiscat in the kingis handis, becaus he was gottin of unlauchfull bed.

### Chap. Seventh.

*How Denmark and Scotland war aggret of al debatis. How King James douchter, Margaret, was maryit on the Dalphine of France. And how the Perse was discomfist be the Douglas at Piperden.*



OT lang afore this time, ane herald was send be the King of Denmark in Scotland, desiring the yeirly tribute, aucht to him mony yeris bygane, of the Ilis; according to the promes maid be King Alexander the Thrid. Sone efter, was send be the king, Schir William Creichtoun in Denmark; quhare he dressit all materis sa plesandly, that nocht followit, efter, bot gud peace and amite, betwix the two realmes of Danis and Scottis.

At this time, was send ambassatouris be Charlis the VII, to renew the band betwix Scotland and France. And to roborat the samin with mair permanent felicite, Margaret, eldest douchter to the said King James, wes gevin in mariage to Lowis, Daulphine of France.



Gret provision was maid of schippis, and mony of the grettest noblis of Scotland send to convoy hir in France, with c and xL ladyis, matronis, and virginis: amang quhom was v sisteris of the said Margaret. Ferther, quhen this provision was maid, and the schippis redde to the windis; come ane herald of Ingland, desirand the king nocht to send his douchter in France: and schew, gif he war repugnant thairto, his douchter suld be tane, with all hir cumpany, be Inglismen, lyand on the see, abiding hir cuming. King James, nochtwithstanding this bost and minassing of Inglismen, commandit the marineris to pull up salis with the mair deligence. And in the mene time, the Inglismen that lay in wait for taking of the said Margaret and hir cumpany, be aventure, come upon ane flote of Spanyeartis; quhare gret slauchter was on athir side. And in the mene time, quhen thay war fechtand maist feirsly, the Scottis navy come throw the seis, but ony sicht of ennimes, and landit at Turine; quhare thay war ressavit with gret triumphe be King Charlis; and the mariage maid, solempnitly, betwix his son, Lowis the Dalphin, and the said Margaret.

Quhil sic thingis war done in France and Scotland, Hary Perse of Northumbirland come, with iv.m men, in Scotland; uncertane, quhidder he come be his awin, or be the kingis auctorite. William Douglas, Erle of Angus, to resist his invasion, come with ane cumpany of chosin men; amang quhom war Adam Hepburn of Halis, Alexander Ramsay of Dalhoussy, and Alexander Elphinstoun of that ilk; and met the said Hary Perse at Piperdene: quhare it was fochtin cruelly, with gret slauchter on al sidis; bot at last the Scottis war victorius.

In this battall, war slane of Scottis, Alexander Elphinstoun of that ilk, with cc gentilmen and commonis of Scotland. Of the said adversar war slane, Hary Cliddisdale, Johne Ogil, Richard Perse, with mD Inglismen; of quhilkis xL war knichtis: and of thame war tane ccc, and brocht in Scotland.

### Chap. Eighth.

*Of the slauchter of King James the First ; and of the punition that was maid thairfore ; and of sindry mervellis sene in Albion.*



RET mischeif and sorow followit in Scotland, efter this discomfitour of Inglismen, at Piperden, be hid wachsing of Walter Stewart, Erle of Athole: quhilk pretendit ay ane richt to the crown, be reason that he was gottin be King Robert the secund, on his first wife. This Erle, as we schew afore, in the genology of Stewardis, was the principal movar of Robert, Duk of Albany, to sla David Stewart, Duk of Rothsay. And efter the hame-cuming of James the First, he solistit the said King to slay Duk Mordo, with all othir Duk Robertis linnage; traisting, quhen thir nobill men wer put down, to find sum hid way to slay the King, and his barnis, that he micht thairefter succede to the crown. And becaus all Duke Robertis sonnys war deceissit; sum of thaim slane at the battal of Vernoll, and otheris justifyit be King James; he perswadit Robert Stewart, his nepot, and Robert Grahame, his cousin, to slay the King. This Robert was, afore, at the Kingis horne, for sindry gret offensys done be him, aganis the Kingis auctorite, and had nathing in mair hatrent than the King. Thir unhappy tratouris, lyand, as said is, in wait, to espy ganand time to fulfill thair cursit purpos; come, sone efter, to the Blak Freris of Perth, quhare the King was lugit for the time: and, be licence of the portaris, thay enterit in the Kingis hall; purposing to have remanit thair, quhill the cuming of ane othir familiar servand to the King, to have gottin entres in the Kingis secret chalmar, be his way, for he was participant with thaim in the said treasoun. Yit, afore the cuming of this man, ane servant, namit Walter Straitoun, opnit the dure, and went furth to ressave wine to the Kingis collation. Als sone as he saw thaim aufully arrayit at the dure, he cryit “ Treason ! ” and maid him, with all his strenth, to return agane: nochtheles, he was sone slane. Yit, the

slaing of him maid sic tary to the laif, that ane young madin, namit Katherine Douglas, quhilk was efter maryit on Alexander Lovell of Bolunny, stekit the dure : and, becaus the bar was away that suld have closit the dure, scho schot hir arme into the place quhare the bar suld have passit. Scho was bot young, and hir bonis not solide, and thairfore, hir arme was sone brokin in schonder, and the dure dOUNg up, be force. Incontinent, thay enterit : and, efter that thay had slane the familiar servandis that maid debait for the time, they slew the King, with mony cruell woundis, and hurt the Quene, in his defence. The principall man that maid debait, at this time, was Patrik Dunbar, brothir to George, umquhill Erle of Marche ; and was left for deid, in the chalmer, in his defence.

This prince wes of mid stature, braid schulderit, and smal waistit ; with all his membris sa weil proporcionat, that na thing failyeit in him that micht be gevin be nature : ane of the maist virtuous princis that evir was afore his dayis ; richt just in all his life, and scharp punisar of vice. He was slane the XXI day of Februar, the XLIV yeir of his aige, in the XIII yeir of his regne ; fra our redemption MCCCXXXVI yeris. His body was buryit in the Abbey of Charteraris, quhilk he fundit schort time afore his deith.

The nobillis, richt sorowfull for his slauchter, maid gret deligence in sercheing of thir forenamit tratouris. Quhill, at last, thay war all apprehendit, and brocht to Edinburgh, quhair thay war punist in this maner : The Erle of Athole, quhilk was principall movar of this treason, was first spulyeit of all his claithis ; saif onely ane linnin curche, to hid his privat memberis. Incontinent, was maid ane instrument of tre, like the drawer of ane wel : and, efter that thay had festenit it in ane cart, thay band this Erle apoun the point of the said drawer, and yeid with the said cart throw the toun ; sum time rasand this traitour, that the pepil micht se him, hie in the aire, and leit him fall doun, with ane swak, apoun the gait : syne brocht him to ane place, quhare maist confluence was of pepill, and crownit him with hait irne ; for ane weche said to him, he suld be crownit King afore his deith. Thir illusionis causit him to leif ay under vane esperance to conques the crown. On the morow, this Erle was

harlit with his complices, throw all streitis of the town. On the thrid day, his wambe was opinit, and his bowellis tane furth, and cassin, flichtrand, in the fire, afore his ene. Efter all tormentis, his hert was tane out of his body, and cassin in the fire. His heid was schorne fra his body, and his body quarterit. His nepot, Robert Stewart, was punist on the same maner. Robert Grahame, principall slayar of the King, was harlit throw the town in ane cart, and the hand that slew the King, bound thairto; and hait irne schot throw al partis of his body, specially quhare thay belevit na haisty deid following. And efter gret punishment tane on him, he was demandit how he durst be sa bald to sla the King; he answerit: "It is bot foly to demand quhat ane man dar do: I durst, said he, leip "in hell, howbeit, hevin and hell war at my chois." Allways, he was condingly punist on the same manner.

In the same time, was in Scotland, Eneas Silvius, ambassatour of Eugenius the iv, Pape of that name; ane man of mony letteris; and was send, be the said Pape, to trete peace betwix Inglismen and Scottis. This Eneas wes, efter, for his singular virtew, maid Pape of Rome. Nochtheles, quhen he was doing his erandis, maist besaly in Scotland, come this invy of fortoun, that the Prince was slane. And fra he saw him deid, he said: "The Scottis war not "worthy to jois ony kingdomes or honouris, bot gif thay condingly "punist the Kingis slauchter." He commendit thame gretumly, quhen he saw sic scharp punishment maid for his slauchter.

In the time of King James the First, war sindry mervellis sene in Albion: ane sow had hir litter with dog heidis: ane calfe was sene with ane hors heid: ane comet apperit lang, afore the Kingis deith, with terribill bemes: and sa vehement frost was in the winter afore, that wine and ail was sauld be pound wechtis, and meltit agane be the fire: ane swerd was sene, fleand in the air, to na les terroure, than admiration of pepil.

And sa endis heir, the xvii buke of thir Croniklis.



THE  
EPISTIL  
DIRECKIT BE THE TRANSLATOURE,  
TO  
THE KINGIS GRACE.

---



RASMUS ROTERODAMUS, in his buke, namit The Institutioun of Cristin Kingis; schawis, maist nobil prince! na thing in mair admiration than werkis of kingis: quhilkis ar sa patent to the sight of pepill, that every man hes thaim in mouth, to thair commendation or re-preif. Thus, may na thing be sa fruteful to dant the commoun errouris of pepill, as honest and virtewis life of kingis: for the life of kingis drawis thair subdittis to imitation of thair werkis, worthy or unworthy; and the same cumis to licht be impulsion of fortoun, that na thing sufferis to be hid. Forthir, in every history that men redis, apperis, evidently, the same maneris with the pepil, quhilkis ar usit be the king. And sen na thing is, that the pepil followis with mair imitation, nor kepis in mair recent memory, than werkis of nobil men; of reason,

thair besines suld be mair respondent to virtew, than of ony othir estatis.

Amang mony knichtly exercitionis usit be nobil princis, I find nane mair profitable to thame, than frequent reding of thir and othir historyis; for in thame may be found mony hailsome documentis. Attoure, the frute of history is sa necessare, that, but it, the dedis of forcy campionis suddandly evanissis. Be contrar, the effect thairof causis thay thingis quhilkis ar mony yeris gone, appere als recent in our memory, as thay war bot recently done. Thairfore, said the moral poete Horace, "He that eildis in his awin cun-tre, not following sic thingis as bene done afore him; for laik of "experience, is bot ane barne."

For thir reasonis, I, that hes bene your humil servitour sen your first infance, hes translatit the History of Scotland, sen the first beginning thairof, in your vulgar langage; that your Hienes may know the vailyeant and nobil dedis done be your progenitouris; and have cognasance how this realme hes bene governit thir MDCCC yeris bygaue: quhilk was nevir subdewit to uncouth empire, bot only to the native princis thairof; howbeit the same hes sustenit gret truble, be weris of Romanis, Inglismen, and Danis, with sindry chancis of fortoun. Heir, may your Hienes understand how your realme suld be governit in justice, and quhat personis ar maist abil to beir auctorite or office thairintil; seand mony of your eldaris degenerat fra virtew, efter that thay war accompanyit with young and insolent pepill; vane fleschouris, quhilkis had na regard to the weil nor honoure of thair prince, bot onely to thair awne commoditeis. I dout not bot, on the same maner, ar mony personis now depending on your Hienes, so vennomit with avarice, that youre Grace can assailye nathing sa dammagius to your honoure or princely estate, bot the same sal be weill commendit be thaim, gif thay find your wil and pleseir set thairto. Nochtheles, youre Hienes is cumin now to sic perfection, that ye understand weill quhay bene presently abusaris, and quha best luffaris of your commoun weil; sen your majeste, be na les manheid than wisdome, hes dantit this region, and brocht the same to sicker rest, gud peace and tranquillite; howbeit the samin couth nocht be done be your gret baronis,

during your tendir aige. Apperis, thairfore, your nobill and worthy deidis procedis mair be naturall inclinatioun and active curage, than ony gudly persuasioun of assisteris. And thocht your Hienes be dotat with ma giftis of nature than hes bene sene afore with ony othir prince; traist fermely, gif sic preeminent giftis of nature be unwarly abusit, na werkis sall follow worthy to have memory.

Thairfore, my soverane, I dare baldly afferme na othir besines sall be mair fruitfull to your hienes, than frequent reding of thir, and siclik historyis. For sic thingis sall nocht onely move yow to imitation of virtew, bot sall infound na les experience and wisdom. than ye war travellit throw the warld, or agit be lang proces of yeris; seand sa mony exemplis of virtewis and vicius leving, with sic illuster dedis of armis, that, gif youre eldaris had possedit prudence equivalent to thair innative manheid, na pepil, of reason, nicht have bene preferrit to thaim in marciall glore: as at mair lenth apperis, in reding of this history. Heir sall youre Grace understand, how inviolatly the faith of Crist hes bene observit be youre progenitouris, nevir abarrand fra sicker religion and piete. Heir sal the braid difference be knawin, betwix kingis and tyrannis. For, as Seneca sayis, in his Tragideis; all ar nocht kingis that bene clothit with purpour and diademe: bot onely thay that sekis na singulare proffet, in dammage of thair commoun weill; and sa vigilant, that the life of thair subdittis is mair deir and precius to thaim than thair awin life. Ane tyrane sekis riches; ane king sekis honoure conquest be virtew. Ane tyrane governis his realme be slauchter, dredoure, and falset; ane king gidis his realme be prudence, integrite, and favour. Ane tyrane suspekis all thaim that hes riches, gret dominioun, auctorite, or gret rentis; ane king haldis sic men for his maist helply freindis. Ane tyrane luffis nane bot vane fleschouris, vicius and wickit limmaris, be quhais counsall he ragis in slauchter and tyranny: ane king luffis men of wisdom, gravite, and science; knawing weill, that his gret materis may be weill dressit be thair prudence. Treuth is, that kingis and tyrannis hes mony handis, mony ene, and mony mo membris. Ane tyrane settis him to be dred; ane king, to be luffit. Ane tyrane rejosis to make his pepill pure; ane king, to mak thame riche. Ane tyrane drawis his pepil to sindry

factionis, discord, and hatrent: ane king makis peace, tranquillite, and concord; knowing nathing sa dammagious as division amang his subdittis. Ane tyrane confoundis al divine and humane lawis; ane king observis thaim, and rejosis in equite and justice. All thir properteis sal be patent, in reding the livis of gud and evil kingis, in the history precedent.

Thus, may your Hienes have gret commodite and plesair be this foresaid storie. For quhat thing may be mair plesand, than to se in this present volume, as in ane cleir mirroure, all the variance of time bygane: the sindry chancis of fortoun: the bludy fechting, and terribill berganis, sa mony yeris continewit, in the defence of your realme and liberte; quhilk is fallin to your Hienes with gret felicite, howbeit the samin hes oftymes bene ransont with maist nobill blude of youre antecessouris. Quhat is he that wil nocht reiose to heir the knichtly affaris of thay forey campionis, King Robert Bruce, and William Wallace? The first, beinnative desire to recover his realme, wasbrocht to sic calamite, that mony dayis he durst nocht appeir in sicht of pepil; bot, amang desertis, levand on rutis and herbes, in esperance of better fortoun; bot, at last, be his singulare manheid, he come to sic preeminent glore, that now, he is reput maist vailyeant and nobil prince, that wes efter or before his empire. This othir, of small beginning, be feirs curage, and corporall strenth, not only put Inglismen out of Scotland, bot als, be feir of his aufull visage, put Edward, King of Ingland, to flicht: and held all the bordouris fornenne Scotland, waist. Siclik mony othir vailyeant princis hes bene in this realme: as Caratak, Galdus, Kenneth, Gregour, Fergus, with mony otheris, precedent in this history. And thought sum of your progenitouris war degenerat fra virtew, followis litill admiration. For of Romane Empriouris mony war vicious: as Nero, Caligula, Heliogabalus, Domicius, Commodus, Vitellius, with mony otheris. And, thought thair vicius dedis bene abhominabill to thair posterite, yit, the deploration of thair calamite, sall move the redaris to imitatioun of virtew. For, it was nevir hard, bot ane man of vicious life hes ane vicious ending: and nocht onely kingis and princis bene dejeckit fra thair imperial estait, quhen thay war aberrant fra virtuous discipline; bot mony nobill baronis on



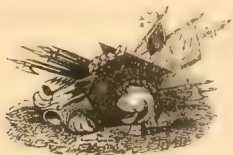
that same maner, quhen thay, be proude insolence, war repugnant to thair superiour. Traist, thairfore, my souveraine, your Hienes wil be put with na les eloquence, than gravite, in memory ; to have fame as it deservis, now presently in this life. Beseikand the glorious and mercyfull Lord, to geif yow grace to perseveir in sic felicite, that we, youre subdittis, may have sufficient motive to desire your Hienes lang on live. The quhilk mot grant, the gratius God ! Amen.

¶ *Finis Epistole.*

---

✠ **Heir endis the Hystory and  
Croniklis of Scotland, with the Cosmography and  
Dyscription thair of. Compilit be the noble Clerk,  
Maister Hector Boece, Channon of Aberdene.  
Translatit, laitly, in our bulgar and com-  
moun langage, be Maister Johne Bel-  
lenden, Archedene of Murray. And  
imprentit in Edinburgh, be me,  
Thomas Davidson, Prenter to  
the Kyngis Hobyll Grace.**

☞ CUM PRIVILEGIO. ☞

























COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY



0035524200

941.01

B633

2

044 82964

941.01  
B633 V2

DEC 10 1942



